

**CIHM  
Microfiche  
Series  
(Monographs)**

**ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches  
(monographies)**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproduction / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

© 1999

## Technical and Bibliographic Notes / Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming are checked below.

- Coloured covers / Couverture de couleur
- Covers damaged / Couverture endommagée
- Covers restored and/or laminated / Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- Cover title missing / Le titre de couverture manque
- Coloured maps / Cartes géographiques en couleur
- Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black) / Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- Coloured plates and/or illustrations / Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- Bound with other material / Relié avec d'autres documents
- Only edition available / Seule édition disponible
- Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin / La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de la marge intérieure.
- Blank leaves added during restorations may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming / Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.
- Additional comments / Commentaires supplémentaires:

L'Institut a microfiliné le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- Coloured pages / Pages de couleur
- Pages damaged / Pages endommagées
- Pages restored and/or laminated / Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- Pages discoloured, stained or foxed / Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- Pages detached / Pages détachées
- Showthrough / Transparence
- Quality of print varies / Qualité inégale de l'impression
- Includes supplementary material / Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image / Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.
- Opposing pages with varying colouration or discolourations are filmed twice to ensure the best possible image / Les pages s'opposant ayant des colorations variables ou des décolorations sont filmées deux fois afin d'obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below / Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10x	14x	18x	22x	26x	30x
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

12x      16x      20x      24x      28x      32x

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

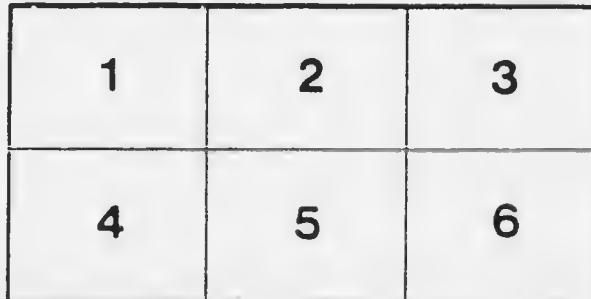
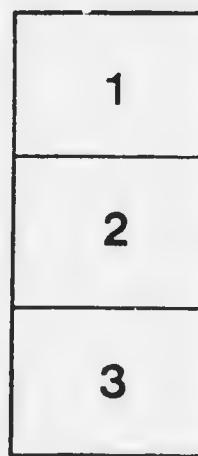
National Library of Canada

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol → (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ▽ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Bibliothèque nationale du Canada

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

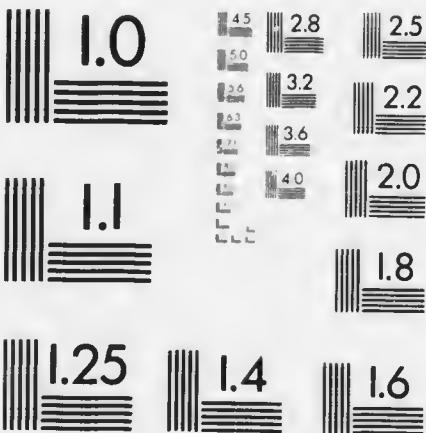
Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plié, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole → signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ▽ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc.. peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street  
Rochester, New York 14609 USA  
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone  
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax



# MATRICULATION LATIN

---

CARROTHERS AND ROBERTSON



THE EDUCATIONAL BOOK CO. LIMITED  
TORONTO



CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.  
*(From the Roman Gallery, British Museum.)*

Twentieth Century Series

---

---

# MATRICULATION LATIN

BY

ADAM CARRUTHERS, M.A.

ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF GREEK, UNIVERSITY COLLEGE,  
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

AND

J. C. ROBERTSON, M.A.

PROFESSOR OF GREEK, VICTORIA COLLEGE,  
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



THE EDUCATIONAL BOOK CO., LIMITED  
TORONTO

PA2095

C3

Entered according to Act of Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand nine hundred and six, by W. J. GAGE & CO. LIMITED, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

812-3-

## PREFACE.

THIS book contains the Caesar and Virgil required for pass University Matriculation, besides a considerable amount of prose Latin for practice in sight reading. It contains also a statement of the principles of Latin syntax, together with exercises in prose composition based on Caesar. This inclusion of selections from both prose and poetry in the same volume is attended with certain advantages, and is not altogether a new departure, as the plan has been followed in recent years in more than one excellent work published in England and the United States for pupils at this stage.

Since the character of the work required, in future, of pupils preparing for the examination in Latin for University Matriculation and Junior Teachers is materially changed, the book has been prepared mainly with a view to meeting the new requirements.

According to the new prescription, special importance is to be attached to the translation at sight of passages of average difficulty from Caesar. The prescribed portion of Caesar, while of an amount sufficient to prepare the pupil for the test of his knowledge of Latin Syntax and his power of idiomatic translation, is obviously too small to give sufficient practice in sight reading. Accordingly, the story of Caesar's Conquest of Gaul (Books I.-IV.) has been given in, as far as practicable, Caesar's own language. This has been reduced in amount to somewhat more than the length of an average book of Caesar, by the elimination of digressions, by the omission or modification of passages of more than average difficulty, and in the earlier sections by a certain measure of simplification. These simplified sections would also serve admirably for an easy transition from the introductory book to the reading of Caesar.

The prescribed text of Caesar has been annotated with a view to the accurate comprehension of the author, to syntactical study and idiomatic translation. The classified index of noteworthy

points of syntax will, we trust, be found useful to both teacher and pupil, especially for purposes of review.

The statement of syntax contains, printed in large type, the more common rules, which should be carefully studied by all pupils, and upon which the exercises in composition are based. It deals also with many points which are not found in the ordinary introductory book, or necessary for the prescribed prose composition, but a knowledge of which, nevertheless, is often required for the intelligent reading of the prescribed authors, and the absence of which would necessitate the use of an additional book on Latin grammar. The portions dealing with these points are printed in smaller type.

Of the sections printed in smaller type the following should be carefully studied: sections 179 to 184 on the use of the tenses; and sections 201 to 205 on idiomatic translation.

An attempt has been made to give an accurate presentation of the rules and facts of Latin syntax, in the light derived from the standard authorities, including Gildersleeve and Lodge, Harkness, Bennett, Allen and Greenough, Lane, West, and Hale and Buck.

To illustrate the common rules of Latin syntax, a double series of exercises on prose composition is given, one series based on the *Bellum Gallicum* generally, the other on the prescribed chapters of Books IV. and V.

The notes on the prescribed Virgil are meant to promote the intelligent and appreciative reading of that author, in other words to help the pupil to understand the author's meaning, to feel the influence of his poetic charm, and to render the Latin lines with taste and sympathy into worthy idiomatic English prose. While it has been deemed undesirable to treat the Virgil, like the Caesar, as a subject of special grammatical study, yet every effort has been made to enable the pupil to cope with those difficulties in Virgilian syntax and Virgilian diction which so often prove a bar to the comprehension or the adequate expression of the poet's meaning.

## CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Introduction to Caesar . . . . .	9
The Story of Caesar's Conquest of Gaul . . . . .	13
Caesar, <i>De Bello Gallico</i> , IV. 20—V. 23 . . . . .	39
Notes on Caesar, <i>De Bello Gallico</i> , IV. 20—V. 23 . . . . .	67
Index of Points of Syntax and Accidence . . . . .	94
Vocabulary to Caesar . . . . .	101
Rules of Syntax and Exercises in Prose Composition . . . . .	169
English-Latin Vocabulary . . . . .	309
Introduction to Virgil's <i>Aeneid</i> . . . . .	323
Virgil, <i>Aeneid</i> I., 1-510 . . . . .	337
Notes on Virgil's <i>Aeneid</i> I., 1-510 . . . . .	355
Vocabulary to Virgil . . . . .	393
Index . . . . .	417

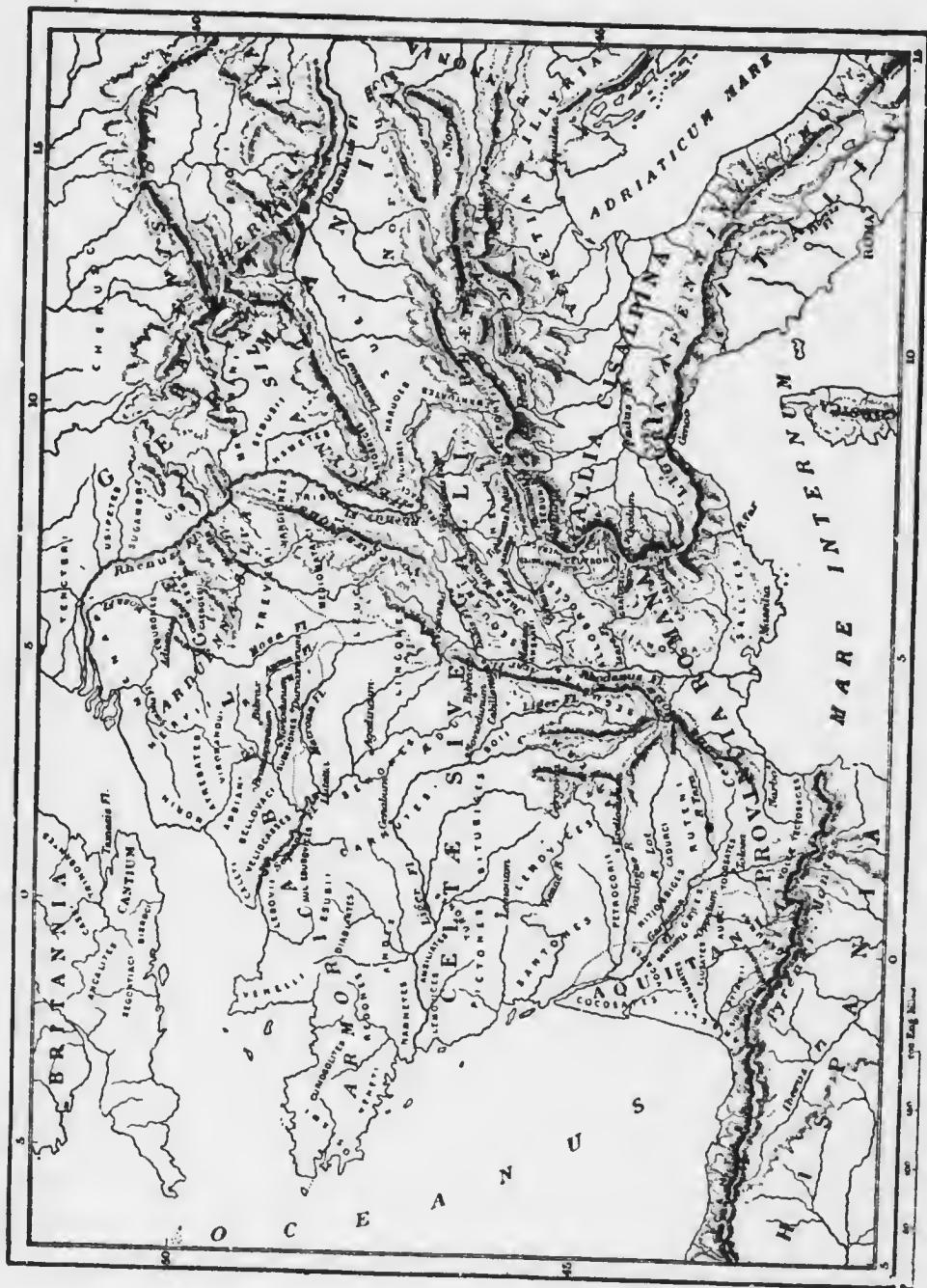
### RULES OF SYNTAX AND EXERCISES IN PROSE COMPOSITION.

Introductory.—Order of Words, Order of Clauses, Concord . . . . .	169
The Accusative and Infinitive . . . . .	176
Complementary Infinitive . . . . .	180
Final Clauses (Clauses of Purpose) . . . . .	183
Consecutive or Result Clauses. Clauses of Characteristic . . . . .	187
Questions, Direct and Indirect . . . . .	190
The Present and Perfect Participles . . . . .	195
The Ablative Absolute . . . . .	199
Verbs Completed by the Dative, Genitive or Ablative. The Impersonal Passive . . . . .	202

	PAGE
Conditional Sentences . . . . .	207
Clauses of Concession. Clauses of Proviso. Conditional Clauses of Comparison . . . . .	211
Uses of the Aaccusative . . . . .	214
Uses of the Dative . . . . .	218
Uses of the Genitive . . . . .	223
Uses of the Ablative . . . . .	229
Verbal Nouus—Infinitive, Gerund, Supine . . . . .	236
Verbal Adjectives—Gerundive, Participles . . . . .	240
Expressions of Place and Time . . . . .	243
Imperative. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive . . . . .	247
Verbs of Fearing. Uses of <b>Quīn</b> and <b>Quōminus</b> . . . . .	251
Duty, Necessity, Possibility, Permission . . . . .	253
Causal Sentences. Uses of <b>Cum</b> . . . . .	256
Temporal Clauses . . . . .	260
Personal, Demonstrative, Reflexive and Possessive Pro- nouns . . . . .	264
Indefinite Pronouns . . . . .	269
The Relative Pronoun . . . . .	273
Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse . . . . .	277
Tenses of the Indicative . . . . .	281
Indirect Discourse ( <b>Orātiō Obliqua</b> ) . . . . .	286
Different Forms of the Noun Clause . . . . .	294
Continuous Prose and Idiomatic Translation . . . . .	298

## ILLUSTRATIONS.

	PAGE
Caius Julius Caesar . . . . .	<i>Frontispiece</i>
Roman Eagle . . . . .	9
<b>Sub Sarcinis</b> . . . . .	31
Roman Sword . . . . .	38
Legionary Soldier . . . . .	50
Armor and Weapons . . . . .	64
Roman Soldiers on the March . . . . .	66
Roman War Galleys . . . . .	79
<b>Testudo (from Trajan's Column)</b> . . . . .	86
Transport Ship . . . . .	94
Attack on a Walled City . . . . .	168
Ancient City Wall and Gate . . . . .	308
Warship . . . . .	322
Virgil . . . . .	323
Juno . . . . .	336
Diana . . . . .	353
 MAP OF GAUL AND BRITAIN . . . . .	8
MAP SHOWING THE WANDERINGS OF AENEAS . . . . .	354





## INTRODUCTION.

CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

### Rise to Eminence.

CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR was born at Rome on the 12th of July, 100 B.C. (or, as Mommsen holds, in 102 B.C.), of one of the oldest patrician families of that city. Although of aristocratic birth, he espoused the cause of the popular party, and after barely escaping with his life on the defeat of that party by Sulla in 82 B.C., he withdrew from active politics for several years. By 70 B.C., however, he had become a favorite of the people, and one of its most influential leaders. He rose rapidly through the various grades of office, being made in succession quaestor, aedile, pontifex maximus (a life-office), praetor, and finally consul in 59 B.C.

### First Triumvirate.

The three leading men of Rome at this time were Pompey, representing the nobles ; Caesar, the leader of the popular party ; and Crassus, whose influence was largely due to his immense wealth. On Caesar's suggestion they formed a coalition (the so-called First Triumvirate), the result of which was to place the practical supremacy of the state in the hands of these three men. The powerful influence of this coalition secured for him,

after his consulship, the administration for five years of the three provinces, Illyricum and Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul.\* In 55 B.C., by an agreement with Pompey and Crassus, this command was extended for another period of five years.

#### Conquest of Gaul and Expeditions to Britain.

From 58 to 51 B.C. Caesar was engaged in the conquest of Gaul. In the first three campaigns he made himself master of that country from the Province and the Pyrenees to the Rhine and the Ocean. In the fourth year (55 B.C.), after driving back across the Rhine certain invading German tribes, Caesar late in the summer undertook a reconnoitring expedition to Britain. He did not venture inland, and returned in a few weeks, but "he had learned where and how to land, and had noted the British method of fighting; above all he had accustomed his men to the sight of the sea and the painted barbarians." Caesar was not satisfied with this expedition, and in the next summer (54 B.C.), in spite of growing disaffection in Gaul, set sail for Britain with a much larger force, as if for a serious invasion. But though he subdued all the south-eastern districts, the Britons fought obstinately, and he had to withdraw at the end of the summer without being able to make any permanent impression upon this distant country, which was not again visited by a Roman army for nearly a century. The remaining three years (53 to 51 B.C.) were spent in completing the subjugation of Gaul, and especially in crushing the insurrections that from time to time broke out. Among the results of Caesar's conquest of Gaul were, first, that the boundaries of the Roman empire were now extended to the English Channel and the Rhine, and secondly, that the Roman language and civilization became so firmly implanted in Gaul that, even after nearly two thousand years, the language of that country (the French) is a modified Latin, and its laws and institutions show everywhere the in-

---

\* For the various senses in which the word *Gaul* is used, see the Vocabulary under *Gallia*.

fluence of Rome. A more immediate result also was to furnish Caesar with an army of experienced and devoted veterans, such as the Roman world had never before seen.

#### Civil War and Death.

After the conquest of Gaul, civil war arose between Caesar and Pompey, now his sole remaining rival, Crassus having fallen in battle in the East. By the overthrow of the Pompeian party Caesar became practically supreme ruler of the Roman world. He showed unexpected clemency to his former opponents, and began a brilliant career as administrator and reformer. But the Roman aristocracy, alarmed at his great power and popularity and their own loss of prestige, formed a conspiracy to remove him, being actuated in some cases by jealousy, in others by an honest but short-sighted desire to bring back republican freedom; and on the Ides (the 15th) of March, 44 B.C., "the foremost man of all this world" fell beneath the daggers of the conspirators, at the base of Pompey's statue. Saddest of all, one of his many wounds was dealt by the hand of his intimate friend Brutus.

#### Personal Appearance.

We are told that in personal appearance Caesar was noble and commanding. He was tall of stature and of slender build, his complexion was pale, his nose prominent and decidedly "Roman," his eyes were black, keen and full of expression. In later life he had a tendency to baldness. His constitution was naturally delicate, and he was subject to attacks of epilepsy, but by constant exercise and temperate living he managed to acquire vigorous health, so that he could endure the most prolonged toil and most arduous exertions.

#### Versatile Genius.

The genius of Caesar was many-sided, and he excelled in everything he undertook. Not only was he one of the greatest generals of all time, but he was pre-eminent as a law-giver, a jurist and a statesman. Moreover, he has left behind him a reputation as an orator, a poet, a mathematician, an architect and engineer, while as an historian he will ever rank with the highest.

**Extant Works.**

Caesar was the author of numerous literary works, on many different subjects, but of these all that have come down to us are his *Commentarii De Bello Gallico* (from which the selections contained in this book are taken), and his *Commentarii De Bello Civili* (in three books), a history of the war between himself and Pompey. The Commentaries\* of Caesar are memoirs written by himself, descriptive of his different campaigns. It is uncertain whether the work was written as the war went on, and issued book by book, or whether it was composed towards the end of the war. Each book of the Commentaries on the Gallic War contains the account of a single year's campaign. There are seven books in all, the history of the eighth year's operations having been composed after Caesar's death by Aulus Hirtius, one of his lieutenants.

**Literary Style.**

The *Commentarii*, by universal consent, are written in the purest Latin, in a style marked by great simplicity and conciseness, and, in spite of its condensation, by singular ease and elegance. The best judges among Caesar's contemporaries praise his literary style for its purity of diction, and its business-like directness of expression. Cicero, the best literary critic of his day, has this to say of the Commentaries : "I pronounce them to be, in fact, entirely commendable ; for they are simple, straightforward, of a charming elegance, stripped of all rhetorical adornments." In the choice of words also Caesar is pure and classical, in accordance with the advice quoted from him by the Roman grammarian Gellius, "to shun an uncommon or out-of-the-way word as a ship would a rock."

---

\* *Commentarii*, meaning *sketches*, *jottings*, is used as the title of a book on any subject, but especially an historical one, which is only sketched down or written without careful revision.

## THE STORY OF CAESAR'S CONQUEST OF GAUL.

---

### THE FIRST CAMPAIGN, 58 B.C.

*Caesar, hearing of a threatened emigration of the Helvetian nation, hastens from Rome to Transalpine Gaul to prevent a movement so dangerous to the Roman Province.*

1. Gallia est omnis<sup>1</sup> dīvisa in partēs trēs, quārum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam Galli, qui ipsorum<sup>2</sup> lingua Celtae appellantur. Hōrum omnium fortissimū sunt Belgae, qui ā prōvinciā longissimē absunt, proximique sunt Germāni, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtute praecēdunt, quod ferē cotidiānis proeliis cum Germāni contendunt. Sed undique loci nātūrā continentur: unā ex parte est flūmen Rhēnus altissimus et lātissimus; alterā<sup>3</sup> ex parte mōns Jūra altissimus; tertiā ex parte flūmen Rhodanus nostram prōvinciam<sup>4</sup> ab Helvētiis dīvidit. His dē causis Helvētiī nōn lātē vagāri poterant, nec facile finitimis bellū in ferre. Itaque, cum essent hominēs bellandī cupidi, angustos sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur. His rēbus adducti, oppida sua omnia vīcōsque incendere et dē finib⁹ suis cum omnibus cōpiis exire cōstituērunt et optimam partem tōtius Galliae occupāre.

<sup>1</sup> Translate **omnis** by *as a whole*, in opposition to the narrower sense in which Caesar proceeds to speak of the **Galli**.

<sup>2</sup> Translate by *their own* (in opposition to that of the Romans).

<sup>3</sup> Translate here by *a second*.

<sup>4</sup> Since 118 B.C. the southern part of France had been a Roman province (hence the modern name *Provence*). See the map of Gaul.

**2.** Itineribus omnino<sup>d</sup> duobus domo<sup>1</sup> exire poterant; quodrum unum erat per Séquanós, angustum et difficile; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multo facilius. Caesar, cui prōvineia Gallia eō anno dēserēta erat, audivit Helvētiōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnāri. Statim ab urbe proficēsitur et in Galliam pervenit. Ubi dē ējus adventū Helvētiī certiorēs faeti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; sed Caesar negat sē posse iter<sup>2</sup> ulli per prōvinciam dare. Relinquēbatur una<sup>3</sup> per Séquanōs via. Mox Caesari renūtiātur Helvētiōs per agrum Séquanōrum iter in Santorum finēs facere, qui nōn longē à prōvineiā nostrā absunt. Intellegēbat periculōsum prōvineiae fore<sup>4</sup>, si hominēs bellieōsī, populi Rōmāni inimici, prōvinceiae finitiū essent<sup>5</sup>. Ob eās causās in Italiam contendit; duās ibi legiōnēs cōseribit, et trēs ex hibernis ēlūcit; cum his quīnque legiōnibus in Galliam per Alpēs ire contendit.

*Caesar surprises the Helvetians at the river Arar, and soon after, near Bibracte, inflicts a crushing defeat on the remainder. The survivors are sent back to the homes they had abandoned.*

**3.** Helvētiī jam per finēs Séquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūixerant, et in Aeduōrum finēs pervenerant, eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Itaque nē omnēs fortūnae sociōrum cōnsiderentur, Caesar ē castris profeetus ad Helvētiōs pervenit<sup>6</sup>. Trēs jam partēs Helvētiōrum flūmen Ararim trānsierant; reliquōs aggressus, māgnām partem eōrum concidit; reliqui sēsē in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Hōe proeliō faetō, ut reliquās eōpiās cōsequī posset<sup>7</sup>, pontem facit, atque ita exerceitū trādūcit. Tūm per<sup>8</sup> multōs diēs Caesar Helvētiōs insequitur, novissimumque agmen laceissit.

<sup>1</sup> See 126. [References are to Syntax and Composition, page 169.]

<sup>2</sup> Translate by *passage* or *right of passing*.

<sup>3</sup> Translate *una via* by *only the way*.

<sup>4</sup> **Fore = futūrum esse**, the future infinitive of **sum**.

<sup>5</sup> Translate by *should be* (or *were to be*). **SI** with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive may represent future conditions put in indirect discourse (187, b).

<sup>6</sup> Translate by *came up with*.

<sup>7</sup> For the use of secondary sequence with the historical present see 28, iv.

<sup>8</sup> Translate by *throughout* or *for*.

**4.** Tandem ut reī frumentāiae prōspicceret, iter ab Helvētiis āvertit, atque ad oppidum Aeduōrum māximum et cōpiōsissimum īre contendit. Helvētiī Rōmānōs timōre perterritōs esse et discedero ā sē existimābant. Itaque, itinere conversō, nostrōs īsequī ac lacessero coepérunt. Postquam id animadvertisit, Caesar cōpiās suās in proximum colleū subdūcit, aciemque instruit. Helvētiī impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsi sub prīnam nostram aciem successērunt. Caesar, cohortātus suōs, proclīum commisit. Diū atque āriter pūgnāvērunt. Sed cum diūtius sustinēre nostrōrum im̄petūs nōn possent, Helvētiī lēgātōs dē dēdītiōne ad Caesarem misērunt. Caesar Helvētiōs in finēs suōs, unde profctī erant, revertī jussit, et oppida vīcōsque restituere. Helvētiōrum trecenta et sexāgintā octō milia domō exierant; vix centum et decem milia domum<sup>1</sup> rediērunt.

*The leading men of several Gallic tribes ask Caesar's assistance against Ariovistus, a German king, who had recently gained a footing in central Gaul. Caesar at first tries argument and diplomacy, but in vain.*

**5.** Hoc bellō cōfēctō, tōtius ferē Galliae pīncipēs ad Caesarem convēnērunt atque petiērunt ut sibi auxilium ferret contrā Ariovistum, rēgem Germānōrum, quī multa milia suōrum in Galliam trādūxisset optimumque agrum occupāvisset atque Gallōs ex finib⁹ pelleret. Dēmōstrant Ariovistum Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcissem et nunc crūdēliter imperāre atque obsidēs<sup>2</sup> nōbilissimōrum liberōs poscere; neque posse ejus imperium diūtius sustinēri. His rēbus cōgnitī Caesar Gallōrum animōs cōfirmāvit, pollicitusque sē Galliam ab Ariovistī injūriā dēfēnsūrum. Hāc orātiōne habitā pīncipēs dīmisit. Simul Gerīnānōs cōsuēscere<sup>3</sup> in Galliam trānsire populō Rōmānō periculōsum esse vidēbat, nē, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, in pīvinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contenderent. Itaque cōstituit ad

<sup>1</sup> See 125.

<sup>2</sup> Translate by *as hostages*; for the case see 69, v.

<sup>3</sup> See the second illustrative sentence in 110 with the footnote.

Ariovistum légātōs mittere qui ab eō postularent ut aliquem locum colloquiō<sup>1</sup> diceret.

**6.** Quod<sup>2</sup> eum nōlet Ariovistus facere, iterum ad eum Caesar légātōs mittit qui postularent primum nē amplius Germānōs trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde ut obsidēs Gallis redderet nēve bellum iis inferret. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit sē Gallōs vīcisse atque jūre bellī ūti cōstituisse; sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque Gallis injūriā<sup>3</sup> bellum illatūrum sī imperiō suō pārērent<sup>4</sup>; atque sī Caesar vellet sēcum congregāti, intellectūrum quanta esset virtūs invietōrum Germānōrum.

**7.** Eōdem tempore Caesar certior factus est Germānōs, qui nūper in Galliam trāsportātī essent, finēs Aeduōrum populārī, et māgnam multitudinem Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēni vēnisse, qui Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur. Quibus<sup>5</sup> rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus, nātūrāre cōnstituit nē nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiis Ariovisti sēsē conjungerent. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē comparātā, māgnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit. Cum tridū viam prōcessisset, nūntiātūm est ei Ariovistū cum suis omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum Vesontiōnēm, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, contendere. In eō oppidō onūm rērum quae ad bellum ūsuī erant summa erat facultās, idque nātūrā locī ēgregiē mūniēbātur. Hūc Caesar contendit, occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat.

*Deceived by false reports, the Roman soldiers are at first reluctant to advance, but Caesar calms their fears. On drawing near the Germans, Caesar has an interview with Ariovistus which the enemy's treachery renders fruitless.*

**8.** Dum paucōs diēs ibi reī frūmentāriæ causā morātur, militēs falsis rūmōribus māgnopere perturbātī sunt. Nam Galli ac mercā-

<sup>1</sup> Translate the dative by *for*.

<sup>2</sup> To emphasize the connection with the preceding words, Latin often uses *qui* for *hic* or *is*, placing it even before a conjunction. Here *quod* (literally *which thing*) is the object of *facere*; translate by *this* (172).

<sup>3</sup> Translate by *wrongfully* (103).

<sup>4</sup> For *pārērent* and *vellet* compare footnote 5, page 14.

<sup>5</sup> Compare footnote 2 above, and translate as if it were *ha*.

tōrēs Germānōs ingentī māgnitūdine<sup>1</sup> esse corporum, incrēdibiliq[ue] virtūte praedicābant. Caesar eum animadvertisset militēs propter timōrem castra movēre ac signa contrā hostēs ferre nōlle, convocatō concilio, dēmōstrat Germānōs saepē ab Helvētiis superatōs esse, qui tamen parēs esse exercitui Rōmānō nōn potuissent. Tum affirmāvit sē proximā nocte quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, atque si praetereā nēmō sequerētur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret. Hāc ḍrātiōne habitā, summa alacritās et cupiditās belli gerendī innāta est<sup>2</sup>, atque quārtā vigiliā, ut<sup>3</sup> dixerat, profectus est cu[m] omni exercitū. Septimō diē ab exploratōribus certior factus est Ario[ist]i cōpiās passuum quattuor et vīginti abesse.

**9.** Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, Ario[ist]us lēgātōs ad cu[m] mittit qui dicērent Ario[ist]um, cu[m] Caesar propius accessisset, colloqui eum eō jam velle: simul postulāvit nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret, sed ut uterque cu[m] equitātū veniret; verēri<sup>4</sup> sē nē per insidiās<sup>5</sup> ab eō circumveniārētur. Plānitiēs erat māgna inter castra Ario[ist]i et Caesaris. Eō uterque cu[m] equitātū ad colloquium venit, atque cu[m] paucis equitibus in medium plānitem prōgreditur. Reliqui equites mediocri intervallō<sup>6</sup> cōstitērunt.

**10.** Caesar initiō ḍrātiōnis ostendit quanta a sē senātūque beneficia Ario[ist]us accēpisset; simul docēbat Aeduōs diū sociōs populi Rōmāni fuisse. Postulāvit deinde eadem quae<sup>7</sup> lēgāti. Ario[ist]us respondit sē rogātum esse ā Gallis ut Rhēnum trānsiret; nōn sēsē Gallis sed Gallōs sibi bellum posteā intulisse; atque iniquum esse exercitum Rōmānum<sup>8</sup> in suōs finēs vcnīre. Postulāvit

<sup>1</sup> Translate **māgnitūdō corporū** by *stature*.

<sup>2</sup> Translate *was aroused*.

<sup>3</sup> Ut, in the sense of *as*, takes the indicative.

<sup>4</sup> The infinitive is in indirect discourse, the verb of *saying* being easily understood. For nē=lest or that after verbs of fearing see 138.

<sup>5</sup> Translate by *treacherously*.

<sup>6</sup> The ablative, as well as the accusative, may be used to express distance (101, i). Translate here by *at*.

<sup>7</sup> Translate by *made the same demands as*.

<sup>8</sup> See footnote 3, page 15.

igitur ut Caesar décederet et liberum possessionem Galliae sibi trideret. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesari nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propnis accēdere, et bipidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conjicere. Caesar loquendi finem fēcit, sēque ad suōs recēpit, nūisque imperāvit, nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rejicerent, nē pulsī hostēs dicere possent sē in colloquiō per iusdiās circumventōs. Quibus rēbus cognitis, multō mājns studium pūgnandi exercitui injectum est<sup>1</sup>.

*After several delays, Caesar comes to a decisive engagement with Ariovistus, completely routs the Germans and drives them back across the Rhine.*

11. Post pauēos diēs Ariovistus, castris mōtis, practer castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et milibus passuum duobus<sup>2</sup> ultrā eum castrū fēit, eō cōsiliō<sup>3</sup> ut frūmentō commeātūque Caesarem interclūderet. Tum diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castris suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem instrūxit. Ariovistus autem, etsī dīmicandī potestās nōn deerat, his omnīlus diēlūs exercitū castris continuīt, et equestri proeliō eotīdiē contendit. Ubi eum castris sē tenēre Caesar intellexit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibēretur, ultrā eum locum ubi Germānī cōsēderant, circiter passūs secentōs ab iis, castris idōneum locū dēlēgit, aciēque triplici instrūctā ad eum loeum vēnit. Prīnam et secundam acīcī in armīs esse<sup>4</sup>, tertiam castra mūnīre jussit. Tum cōpiās Ariovistus mīsit quae nostrōs mūnītiōne<sup>5</sup> prohibērent. Cacar tamen, ut anteā cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostēm pōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere jussit. Mūnītis castris, duās legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra mājōra redūxit.

<sup>1</sup> Translate **Inſtitō** and the dative by *inspire* (or *arouse*) *in*.

<sup>2</sup> For the ablative expressing distance see footnote 6, page 17.

<sup>3</sup> Translate by *with this design*, explained by the following clause.

<sup>4</sup> Translate by *kept in camp*.

<sup>5</sup> Translate by *to remain under arms*.

<sup>6</sup> Translate by *from fortifying*.

**12.** Proximō diē Caesar ē castris utrisque cōpiās suās edūxit, paulumque à mājoribus castris prōgressus aciem instrūxit, hosti- busque pūgnandi potestātem fecit<sup>1</sup>. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitū in castra redūxit. Posterō diē praeſidiō utrisque castris quod satis esse visum est reliquit, atque tripliē instrūctā aciē usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germāni suās cōpiās edūxerunt, omneisque aciem rēdis et carris circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fūgā relinquerētur. Eō nūlīcēs imposuērunt, quac in proelium proficiscentēs militēs flentēs implorābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānis trāderent.

**13.** Caesar à dextro cornū, quod eam partem minime firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium cōmisiit. Ita nostri acriter in hostēs, signō datō, impetum fecerunt, itaque<sup>2</sup> hostēs celeriter prōcurrerunt, ut spatiū pīla in hostēs coujieendī nōn dārētur. Rejectis pilis, communis gladiis pūgnant. Cum hostiūm nūciēs à sinistro cornū pulsa atque in fugā conversa esset, à dextro cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant<sup>3</sup>. Id cum animadvertisset Pūblius Crassus, qui equitātū pracerat, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostris subsidiō misit. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs erga vertērunt, neque prius fugere dēstirerunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quinque pervenērunt. Ibi perpauē salūtem reppererunt; in<sup>4</sup> hīs fuit Ariovistus, qui nāvieulam dēligātam ad ripam naetus, eā profūgit. Reliquōs omnēs cōsecutī equitēs nostrī interfecrunt.

**14.** Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum uāntiātō, Suēbī qui ad ripas Rhēni vēneraut, domum reverti coepērunt. Caesar ūnā aestātē duobus māximis bellis cōfectis, mātūrius paulō quam tempus

<sup>1</sup> Translate by *gave an opportunity*.

<sup>2</sup> **Itaque**, here two words, **Ita + que**.

<sup>3</sup> Translate the imperfect by *kept pressing* (180, b).

<sup>4</sup> Translate by *among*.

anni postulabat, in hiberna in<sup>1</sup> Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit. Hibernis Labiēnum lēgātum praeſēcit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam profectus est.

### THE SECOND CAMPAIGN, 57 B.C.

*Learning that the tribes of the Belgae are combining against the Romans, Caesar advances into their territory and encamps on the bank of the river Axona.*

**15.** Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur<sup>2</sup>, litterisque item Labiēni certior fīebat omnēs Belgās contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāre. Conjūrandī hae erant causae: pīmum verēbantur nē omni pācātā Galliā ad Belgās exercitus noſter addūcerētur; dcinde populi Rōmāni exercitum hiemāre in Galliā cōnsuēscere<sup>3</sup> nōlēbant; nōnnūlli etiam ex potentiōribus, qui rēgna occupāre cupiēbant, molestē ferēbant quod minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō<sup>4</sup> cōsequī possent. His nūntiis litterisque commōtus, Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscriptis et initā aestātē<sup>5</sup>, in interiōrem Galliam qui dēdūccret<sup>6</sup>, Quintūni Pedium lēgātum misit. Ipse, cum pīmum pabulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Imperat Gallis qui finitimē Belgis erant uti<sup>7</sup> ea, quae apud eos gerantur, cōgnōscant sēque dē his rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōglī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūci. Tuī vērō rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet, diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

<sup>1</sup> Translate by *among*; the phrase modifies a verb of motion (127, iv).

<sup>2</sup> The imperfect denotes repeated action, *kept coming in*; so **fīebat**, *was repeatedly informed*.

<sup>3</sup> Translate by *that an army should become accustomed* (21).

<sup>4</sup> Translate by *under our rule*.

<sup>5</sup> An ablative absolute; translate by *at the beginning of summer*.

<sup>6</sup> For the relative clause of purpose see 26.

<sup>7</sup> Distinguish **utī** = **ut** and **utī** the infinitive of **utor**.

**16.** Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnī opīniōne<sup>1</sup> vēnisset, Rēmī, qui proximī Galliae cx<sup>2</sup> Belgis sunt, ad eum lēgātōs misērunt, qui dicerent sē neque cum Belgis reliquīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāsse<sup>3</sup>, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta<sup>4</sup> facere; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, qui cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs con junxisse. Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae cīvitātēs in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent<sup>5</sup>, sic reperiēbat<sup>6</sup>: plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānis, Rhēnumque<sup>7</sup> antiquitus trāductōs propter loci fertilitatēm ibi cōsēdisse, Gallōsque, qui ea loca incolerent, expulisse.

**17.** Dē numerō cōrum Rēmī dīcēbant quantam quisque multitudinem in commūni Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit<sup>8</sup> sē cōgnōvisse. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auētōritāte et hominū numerō valēre<sup>9</sup>; hōs pollicitōs esse sexāgintā mīlia armātōrum, tōtīusque belli imperium<sup>10</sup> sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitimōs; fīnēs lātissimōs ferāeissimōsque agrōs possidēre; oppida habēre numerō duodecim, pollicēri mīlia armāta quinquāgintā; totidem Nerviōs, qui māximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur<sup>11</sup> longissimēque absint; quīndeciū mīlia Atrebates, Ambiānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs vigintī quīnque mīlia, Menapiōs septem mīlia, Caletōs decem mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduātueōs decem et novem mīlia.

**18.** Caesar Rēmōs cohortātūs liberāliterque ḫrātiōne prōsecūtus<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Literally *than all expectation*; translate by *than any one had expected*.

<sup>2</sup> To be taken closely with **proximī** and translated by *of*

<sup>3</sup> A contracted form for **conjūrāvīsse**.

<sup>4</sup> Translate by *his bidding*.

<sup>5</sup> Translate by *what their strength was* (72).

<sup>6</sup> Translate by *he obtained this information*.

<sup>7</sup> **Rhēnum** depends on **trāns** in **trāductōs** (69, iv).

<sup>8</sup> For the tense see 190, vi.

<sup>9</sup> Translate **plūrimum valēre** by *were the strongest*; the infinitive, like those which follow, depends on **cōgnōvisse**.

<sup>10</sup> Translate by *the supreme command*.

<sup>11</sup> Translate by *are considered*; **ferī** is the predicate nominative.

<sup>12</sup> Translate by *addressing them with kindly words*.

omnem senatum ad se convenire, principumque liberos obsidēs ad se adducēt jussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad dieū faeta sunt. Tum postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpias in unum locum coactas ad se venire vīdit, neque jam longē abesse ab iis, quos miserat, exploratōribus cōgnōvit, flūmen<sup>1</sup> Axonam, quod est in extrēmis Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit, atque ibi castra posuit. In cō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titurium Sabinum lēgātūm cum sex cohortib⁹ relinquit: castra pedum<sup>2</sup> duodecim vallō fossāque duodēviginti pedum<sup>3</sup> mūnīrī jubet.

*After an unsuccessful attack on Bibrae, the Belgae advance against Caesar. They are, however, defeated with great slaughter at the river Axona, and at once disband.*

**19.** Ab his castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrae aberat milia passuum oētō. Id māgnō impetū Belgae oppūgnāre coepérunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est<sup>4</sup>. Sed eum finem oppūgnandī nōx fēcisset<sup>5</sup>, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et gratiā inter suos, qui tum oppidō praeſuerat, unus ex iis, qui lēgāti<sup>6</sup> dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse<sup>6</sup>. Eō mediā noete Caesar sagittariōs et funditōres subsidiō oppidānis<sup>7</sup> mittit; quōrum adventū, hostēs, paulisper apud oppidum morāti agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulāti, omnibus vīcis aedificiisque, quos adire potuerant, ineēnsis ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiis contendērunt.

<sup>1</sup> Notice the double accusative with **trādūcere** (69, iv).

<sup>2</sup> Referring to the height and width respectively.

<sup>3</sup> For the use of the impersonal passive see 56. Translate by *they held out or the defence was maintained* (203, d).

<sup>4</sup> Translate **finem fēcisset** by *put an end (to)*.

<sup>5</sup> Translate by *as ambassadors*, referring to those mentioned in § 16 above.

<sup>6</sup> **Nisi...posse** is indirect discourse, depending on the idea of *saying implied in nūntium mittit*.

<sup>7</sup> For the double dative see 81.

**20.** Caesar duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōnscripserat, in castris relictis, reliquās sex legiōnēs p̄d̄ castris in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex eastris ēductās<sup>1</sup> instrūxerunt. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsirent<sup>2</sup>, hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illis initium trānseundi fieret<sup>3</sup>, ut impeditōs aggredierentur, parāti in armis erant. Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendēbatur<sup>4</sup>. Ubi neutrī trānseundi initium faciunt<sup>5</sup>, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūnen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra eastrā dēmōstrātum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnāti sunt eō cōnsiliō, nt, sī possent<sup>6</sup>, castellum, cui praeerat Quintus Titurius lēgātus, expūgnārent pontemque interseinderent; sī minus potuissent<sup>7</sup>, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, qui māgnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, eōimeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

**21.** Caesar certior faetus ab Tituriō omnem equitātum et levis armatūrae<sup>8</sup> Nunidās, funditōrēs sagittariōsque pontem trādūeit atque ad eos contendit. Āriter in eō locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostri in flūmine aggressi māgnū eōrum numerum occidērunt: per eōrum corpora reliquī andāeissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitudine tēlōrum repulsi sunt. Hostēs nbi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et de flūmine trānseundō spēm sē fefellisse<sup>9</sup> intellexerunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, coneiliō convocātō cōstituērunt optimum esse, domum snam quemque reverti et, quōrum in finēs p̄imum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxisse<sup>10</sup>, ad eos dēfendendōs undique eonvenire. Eā rē cōstitūtā secundā vigiliā māgnō eum strepitū ac tumultū eastrīs ēgressī sunt nūllō<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Translate by *led out and* (43, c; 50, iii).

<sup>2</sup> See the second and third illustrative sentences in 177.

<sup>3</sup> Translate **Initium faciō** by *take the first step (in), or set the example.*

<sup>4</sup> See 56. Translate by *a cavalry engagement was going on* (203, d).

<sup>5</sup> For the tense see 187, b, i.

<sup>6</sup> Translate by *light armed*, literally *of light equipment*.

<sup>7</sup> From **fallō**. **Ipsōs**, in contrast with the Romans.

<sup>8</sup> Translate by *should lead* (187, b, i); the antecedent of **quōrum** is **eōs**.

<sup>9</sup> Translate **nūllō . . . Imperiō** by *without any . . . control*.

certō ōrdine neque imperiō, sic ut cōsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur.

**22.** Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā īnsidiās veritus, quod, quā dē causā discēderent, nōndum perspexerat, exercitū<sup>1</sup> equitātumque castris continuit. Prīmā lūce cōnfirmātā rē<sup>2</sup> ab explōrātōribus omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur, misit. His Quintum Pedium et Lūcium Cottam lēgātōs praeſecūtātōs p̄fēcīt. Titum Labiēnum lēgātūm eum legiōnibus tribus subsequī jussit. Hi novissimōs adorti et multa milia passuum prōsecūtī māgnā multitūdinē eōrum fugientium concidērunt, sub occāsumque sōlis sē in castra, ut erat imperātūm<sup>3</sup>, recēpērunt.

*Caesar advances into the Belgian country, reducing the submission of various tribes, and at last comes to the Nervii, the bravest of all the Belgae, who offer resistance.*

**23.** Poſtriđiē ējus diēi<sup>4</sup> Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperen̄t<sup>5</sup>, in finēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitū dūxit, et māgnō itinere cōfectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id oppūgnārē cōnātus, quod vacūm ab<sup>6</sup> dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinē fossae mūriq̄e altitudinem paucis dēfēdēntib⁹ expūgnārē nōn potuit. Castris mūnit̄s, vineās ad oppidum agere, aggerem jacere, turrēs cōſtituere<sup>8</sup> quaeque ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant comparārē coepīt. Tum Galli māgnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante neque audierant, et celeritātē Rōmānōrum permōti, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēdītiōne mittunt. Caesar obsidib⁹ acceptis armisque omni-

<sup>1</sup> Referring to the infantry alone.

<sup>2</sup> Translate by *on the fact being established.*

<sup>3</sup> Translate by *according to instructions* (56; 203, d).

<sup>4</sup> Translate by *next day*; literally *on the morrow of that day.*

<sup>5</sup> See 156, b, with the illustrative sentence.

<sup>6</sup> Translate by *empty* or *destitute of*.

<sup>7</sup> See the last illustrative sentence in 46.

<sup>8</sup> Translate by *erect*. **Quaeque** is two words. **Audierant = audi-  
verant, had heard of.**

bus ex oppidō trāditis in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accēpit<sup>1</sup> exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit.

**24.** Qui cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia passuum quinque abesset, omnēs mājorēs nātū<sup>2</sup> ex oppidō ēgressi manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt, sēsē in ejus fidem ac potestātem venire<sup>3</sup> neque contrā populum Rōmānum armis contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passis manibus suō mōre<sup>4</sup> pācēti ab Rōmānis petiērunt. Caesar, quod erat civitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominū multitudine praestabat, sescentōs obsidēs poposeit. His trāditis omnibusque armis ex oppidō collātis ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānorūm pervenit, qui sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

**25.** Eōrum finēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: esse hominēs ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, qui sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent<sup>5</sup> patrīamque virtūtem prōjēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ullam condicōnem pācis acceptūrōs. Cum per eōrum finēs trīdūm iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvis Sabim flūmen ab eastrī suis nōn amplius<sup>6</sup> milia passuum decem abesse: trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānorūm exspectāre unā cum Atrebatis et Viromanduis, finitiinis suis (nam hīs utrisque persuāserant uti eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); exspectāri etiam ab hīs Aduātucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere: mulierēs quique<sup>7</sup> per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum conjēcisse, quō propter palūdēs exercitū aditus nōn esset.

<sup>1</sup> Translate by *received the surrender of the Suessiones*.

<sup>2</sup> Translate by *the older men or the elders* (102). **Vōce** means *the tones of their voices*, for they could not speak Latin.

<sup>3</sup> Translate by *put themselves under his protection, etc.*

<sup>4</sup> Translate by *according to* (103, iii); so **cōsuētūdīne suā**, page 26.

<sup>5</sup> See 171 and translate by *for surrendering*.

<sup>6</sup> Translate by *more than* (98, iv).

<sup>7</sup> **Quique** has the force of *ēsque qui*. **Quōd** is an adverb = *ad quem*, with antecedent **locutia**; translate by *a place to which*.

*The Nervii plan to surprise the Roman army. The design in part fails, but the Romans are for a time in great jeopardy, the utmost confusion prevailing, because of the suddenness and fury of the enemy's onset.*

**26.** His rōbus eōgnitīs explōrātōrēs eenturiōnēsque praemittit quī locum idōnēmū eastrīs dēligant. Sed quīdam ex dēditieis Belgīs quī ūnā emī Caesare iter faciēbant, ut posteā ex eaptivis eōgnitum est, nocte ad Nerviōs pervaenērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt<sup>1</sup> inter singulās legiōnēs impēdimentōrum māgnū numerū intereēdere, neqne esse quiequam negōtii<sup>2</sup>, eum pīmu legiō in easterā vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnū spatiū abessent, hane sub sarcinīs<sup>3</sup> adorīrī; quā pulsā impēdimentisque direptis futūrum, ut<sup>4</sup> reliquae contrā eōnsistere nōn audērent. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem loeum<sup>5</sup> nostri eastrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summo<sup>6</sup> aequāliter dēelīvis ad flumen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eo flūmine parī aeelīvitātē eollis nāseēbatur adversus huie, ab superiore parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspīcī posset<sup>7</sup>. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in oceultō<sup>8</sup> sēsē eontinēbant; in aperto locō seeundūn flūmen pauac statiōnēs equitū vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō cireiter pedūm triūm.

**27.** Caesar equitatū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis<sup>9</sup>; sed ratiō ōrdōque agiminis nōliter sē habēbat ae<sup>10</sup> Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostī appropinquābat, eōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exereitūs impēdimenta colloeāverat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē

<sup>1</sup> For **dēmōnstrāvērunt**. Translate **singulās** by *the severat or every two*.

<sup>2</sup> Translate by *and that there was no difficulty* (86, i).

<sup>3</sup> Translate by *while still burdened with the packs*. (See cut on page 31.)

<sup>4</sup> Translate **futūrum (esse) ut** by *the result would be that* (33, iv).

<sup>5</sup> Omit in translation (173, b).

<sup>6</sup> Translate by *from the top*; but for **ab superiore parte** see 127, v.

<sup>7</sup> Translate by *one could not see* (56).

<sup>8</sup> Translate by *in hiding*. For **pedūm** see 87, iii.

<sup>9</sup> See 103, ii.

<sup>10</sup> Translate by *was different from what* (168, a, i; 12, ii, b).

cōseriptae erant, tōtum r̄gmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nōstrī eum funditōribus sagittārisque flūmen trānsgressi cū hostium equitātū proelium commisērunt. Interim legiōnēs sex, quae p̄imae<sup>1</sup> vēnerant, castra mūnire coepērunt. Ubi p̄ima impēdimenta nōstrī exereitūs ab iis, qui in silvīs abditī latēbant, visa sunt, subitō omnibus eōpīs prōvolāvērunt impētumque in nōstrōs equitēs fēcerunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibili celeritātē adversō colle<sup>2</sup> ad nostra castra atque eōs, qui in opere occupatī erant, contendērunt.

**28.** Caesari omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda<sup>3</sup>: vexillum<sup>4</sup> prōpōnendum, sīgnūm tubā dandum, ab opere revocandi militēs, aciēs instruenda, militēs eohortandī, sīgnūm dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem temporis brevitās et suecessus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibūs<sup>5</sup> duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus militū (nam superiōribus proeliīs exereitātī, quid fieri oportēret, sibi praeseribere poterant), et quod ab opere lēgātōs Caesar diseēdere, nisi<sup>6</sup> mūnitīs castrīs, vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil jam<sup>7</sup> Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant. Caesar neceſſāriis rēbus imparātis ad eohortandōs militēs dēcuerrit et ad legiōnēm deeīmam dēvēnit. Militēs eohortātūs, utī suae pristinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent hostiumque impētum fortiter sustinērent, proeliī eonmittendī sīgnūm dedit. Atque in alteram partem item eohortandi eausā profectus pūgnantibus<sup>8</sup> occurrit.

<sup>1</sup> See 205, a. In the next sentence translate by *the head of the baggage-train* (86, iv, b).

<sup>2</sup> Translate by *up the hill*, literally *by way of the hill facing them* (99, ii, a).

<sup>3</sup> See 120; understand **erat** or **erant** throughout the sentence.

<sup>4</sup> The **vexillum** indicated an impending battle; the **tuba** gave the signal to fall in; the final signal was to begin the battle.

<sup>5</sup> Translate by *these difficulties were relieved by two circumstances* (81); these were, first, *scientia atque ūsus*, and second, **quod . . . vetuerat**. For **quod**, *the fact that*. see 198, c.

<sup>6</sup> See 50, iv.; translate freely by *until after*, etc.

<sup>7</sup> Translate by *no longer*. **Vidēbantur**, as often, means *seemed best*.

<sup>8</sup> Understand **eis, them**; for the dative see 52.

Temporis tanta fuit exigitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dimicandum animus, ut nōn modo ad īsignia<sup>1</sup> accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta dētrūdenda tempus dēfuerit.

**29.** Legiōnis<sup>2</sup> nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, quī in sinistrā parte aciē cōnstiterant, pīlis ēmissis Atrebātēs celeriter ex locō superiore in flūmen compulērunt et īsecūti gladiis māgnam partem eōrum interfēcērunt. Ipsī trārsire flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et redintegratō proeliō hostēs in fugam conjēcērunt. Item aliā in parte diversae<sup>3</sup> duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōfligātis Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressi, ex locō superiore, in ipsis flūminis ripis proeliābantur. At tōtis ferē ā fronte et ab sinistrā parte nūdātis castrīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn māgnō ab eā intervallō septimiū cōstitisset, omnēs Nervii cōfertissimō agmine<sup>4</sup> ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenire, pars castra petere coepit.

**30.** Eōdem tempore equitēs nostri levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum iīs ūnā fuerant, cum sē in castra recipērent, adversis<sup>5</sup> hostībus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant. Simul eōrum qui cum impedimentis veniēbant, clāmor frenitusque oriēbātur<sup>6</sup>. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōti equitēs Trēveri, qui auxiliī causā ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium eastra complērī nostra, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās esse, equitēs, funditorēs, Numidās diversōs dissipatōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vidissent, dēspératī<sup>7</sup> nostrī rēbus domum cor endērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superatōsque, castrīs impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potitōs civitāti renūntiāvērunt.

<sup>1</sup> Such as crests and distinguishing badges. For the tense of dēfuerit see 33, iii.

<sup>2</sup> To be repeated with **decimae**; translate freely by the plural.

<sup>3</sup> Translate by *apart from the rest*; and **Ipsīs**, by *the very*.

<sup>4</sup> Translate by *in a very dense column*.

<sup>5</sup> Translate by *face to face*.

<sup>6</sup> For the number see 12, ii, b.

<sup>7</sup> Used transitively by Caesar in the ablative absolute; translate by *despairing of our success*.

*Caesar by his presence and example at length rallies the legions, and after desperate fighting the Nervii are driven back with enormous loss, and submit to the Romans.*

**31.** Caesār ab decimae legiōnis cohortatiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, suōs urgērī et duodecimae legiōnis cōfertōs milites sibi ad pugnam esse impedimentō vidit, quārtae cohortis omnēs centuriōnēs occisōs esse signiferumque interfectum, signum āmissum, reliquārum cohortium omnēs ferē centuriōnēs aut vulneratōs aut occisōs, et nōnnūllōs ab novissimis proeliō excēdere ac tēla vitāre, hostēs ab utrōque latere instāre et rem esse in angustō, neque ullum esse subsidium, quod submittī posset. Tum vērō scūtō militi<sup>1</sup> dētrāctō, quod ipse cō sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam acicin prōcessit, militēsque cohortatūs sīgna īferre et manipulōs laxāre jussit, quōd facilius gladiis ūti possent. Cūjus adventū spē illatā militibus<sup>2</sup> ac redintegratō animō, paulum hostium impetus tardatūs est.

**32.** Caesār cum septimam legiōnem, quae jūxtā cōstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vidisset, monuit, ut paulatim sēsē legiōnēs conjungerent et sīgna in hostēs īferrent. Interim milites legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitatō<sup>3</sup> in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur, et T. Labiēnus castris hostium potitus, et ex locō superiore quae rēs in nostris castris gererentur cōspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostris misit. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtatiō est facta, ut nostri etiam qui<sup>4</sup> vulneribus cōfecti prōcubuisserent, scūtis innixi proelium redintegrārent.

**33.** At hostēs iam in extrēmā spē salutis<sup>5</sup> tantam virtūtem praestitērunt, ut, cum primi eōrum cecidissent<sup>6</sup>, proximi jacentibus

<sup>1</sup> Translate the dative by *from* (80, a).

<sup>2</sup> See 28, iii.

<sup>3</sup> Translate the dative by *in*, or more freely as in 78, v, c.

<sup>4</sup> Translate by *quicken<sup>g</sup> their pace*. For *summō* see 86, iv, b.

<sup>5</sup> Translate by *even such of our men as*; for *prōcubuisserent* see 32. For the ablative *scūtis* see 107, ii.

<sup>6</sup> Translate by *when hope of safety was all but gone* (86, iv, b).

<sup>7</sup> From *eadō*. Translate *jacentibus* by (*upon*) *the fallen or their prostrate bodies* (78, v, c; 205, g).

insisterent, atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent, et ut<sup>1</sup> ex tumulo tela in nostrōs conjicerent. Hoc proeliō factō et prope ad interneōnen gente ac nōmine Nerviorum redactō, mājorēs nātū, quī nūnā cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectī erant, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, omnīm quī supererant cōnsensū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt. Quōs Caesar snīs<sup>2</sup> finib⁹ atque oppidis nātī jussit, et finitimis imperāvit, ut ab injūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

*The Aduatuci, retiring to a strongly-fortified place, prepare to resist Caesar, but on realizing the efficiency of the Romans' siege artillery, make their submission.*

**34.** Aduatuci, dē qnibus suprā scripsimus, eum omnibus cōpiis auxiliō Nerviis venirent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex itinere domun revertērunt; cūmetis oppidis castellisque dēsertis sua omnia in unum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitum contulērunt. Quem locum duplīcē altissimō mūiō mūnierant: tum<sup>3</sup> māgnī ponderis saxa et praeaeūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. Ac pīmō adventū exercitūs nostri crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisse proeliis<sup>4</sup> eum nostris contendēbant; posteā vāllō passuum in eireuitū quīndecim milium erēbrisque castellis circummūnitī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vineis āctis, aggere exstrūetō, turrem procul cōstitui<sup>5</sup> vidērunt, pīnum irrīdere ex mūrō atque increpātare vōcibus, quod<sup>6</sup> tanta māehinātiō ab tantō spatiō<sup>7</sup> instruerētur.

**35.** Ubi vērō movērī<sup>8</sup> et appropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, nova atque inūsitatā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī sunt; sē nōn existimāre Rōmānōs

<sup>1</sup> Translate by *as*; **conjicerent** depends on the first **ut**.

<sup>2</sup> Translate by *their own*, referring to **quās** (164, i).

<sup>3</sup> Translate by *at this time or now*.

<sup>4</sup> Translate by *skirmishes*.

<sup>5</sup> See footnote 8, page 24; for the historical infinitives following see 112.

<sup>6</sup> See 147. Translate by *at the idea of*.

<sup>7</sup> Translate by *so far off*; **ab** is used adverbially; for **spatiō** see 101, i.

<sup>8</sup> Understand **turrem** as subject. Translate **speciē** by *spectacle*.

sine ope divinā bellum gerere, quī<sup>1</sup> tantae altitudinis machinatiōnēs tantū celeritāte prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestāti permittere dixērunt. His rēbus gestis omnī Galliū pācātā tanta hūjus belli ad barbarōs opīo perlāta est, utī ab iis natiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolement<sup>2</sup>, mitterentur lēgātī ad Caesarem, qui sē obsidēs datūrās<sup>3</sup>, imperāta factūrās pollieērentur.



Sub Sarcinis.

## THE THIRD CAMPAIGN, 56 B.C.

*The tribes on the north-western coast of Gaul, headed by the Veneti, combine to recover their liberty.*

**36.** His rēbus gestis cum omnibus dē eaūs Caesar pācātam Galliam existimāret<sup>4</sup>, atque ita initā hieme in Illyriū profectus esset, quod eās quoque regionēs cognoscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā eoortum est. Ejus belli haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēsēns eum legiōne septimā in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frumenti erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque militum complūrēs in finitimās eīvitātēs frumenti causā dīmisit; qnō in numerō est T. Terrasidius missus in Esubiōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Curiosolitas<sup>5</sup>, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

<sup>1</sup> Translate by *seeing that they* (171).      <sup>2</sup> See 177, i.

<sup>3</sup> Feminine referring to the natiōnēs, whom the envoys represented.

<sup>4</sup> Translate by *had every reason to think*.

<sup>5</sup> In the names of Gallic tribes, the Greek ending -as is often used instead of -es in the accusative plural of Declension III.

**37.** Hūjus est civitatis<sup>1</sup> longē amplissima auctoritas omnis ḏrae maritimae regiōnum cārum, quod et nāvēs habent Veneti plūri-mās, quibus in Britannia nāvigāre cōsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū nauticārum rērum reliquōs antecēdunt. Hi retinent Silium atque Velānum quod per eos suos sē obsidēs, quos Crassō dēdis-sent, recuperātūrōs existimābant. Hōrum auctoritatē fūritimī adlucti (ut<sup>2</sup> sunt Gallōrum subita et repentina cōsilia), cādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missis lēgātis reliquās civitātēs sollicitant, ut in eā libertatē, quam à mājōribus accēperint, permanēre quam Rōmānōrum<sup>3</sup> servitūtem perferre mālin. Omnī ḏrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam per-ductā cōmūnūcē legātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt, si velit suos recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat<sup>4</sup>.

*Caesar builds a fleet and makes other preparations for quelling the revolt, but because of the difficulties of the situation spends most of the summer without making much headway.*

**38.** Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius<sup>5</sup>, nāvēs int̄ l. r. longās uelificārī ī flūmine Ligere, quod īfluit in Oceānum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā īstituī, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī jubet. His rēbus celeriter admini-stratīs ipse, cum p̄imū per anni tempus potuit<sup>6</sup>, ad exercitū contendit. Veneti reliquaēque item civitātēs cōgnitō Caesaris ad-ventū p̄ō māgnitudine periculi bellum parāre et māximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium p̄tinent<sup>7</sup>, prōvidērē īstituunt, hōc mājōre spē<sup>8</sup>, quod multū nātūrā locī cōfidēbant. Pedestria esse itinera

<sup>1</sup> Translate by *this state possesses, or to this state belongs* (83, i).

<sup>2</sup> Translate by *for* (145). Translate **repentina** by *unexpected*.

<sup>3</sup> Translate the genitive by *to* (85, ii).

<sup>4</sup> The idea of *saying* is implied in **legatiōnem mittunt**; translate by *telling him to restore* (186, c, i).

<sup>5</sup> Translate by *too far* (98, vi). Translate **Institutū** by *to be organized*.

<sup>6</sup> Translate by *as soon as the season permitted*.

<sup>7</sup> Equal to **quae ūsūl sunt nāvibus**. Translatō **parāre** by *prepare for*.

<sup>8</sup> Translate by *all the more confidently*; for **hōc** (literally *by this*) see 101, ii, c, and footnote.

econcisa aestuariis, nāvigationem impeditam propter inscientiam locorum paucitatemque portum sciēbant, neque<sup>1</sup> nostrōs exercitūs propter frumenti inopiam diutius apud sē morāri posse cōfidēbant; ac perspiciebant sē plūriūm nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque nullam facultatē habērē nāvium neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī esseūt, vada, portūs, insulās nōvisse.

**39.** His initis cōsiliis oppida mōnūnt, frumenta ex agris in oppida comportant, nāvēs quam plūriūm possunt eōguunt; auxilia ex Britaniā, quae contra cās regiōnes posita est, arcessunt. Erant hae difficultatēs belli gerendi quās snprā ostendimus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitabant: rebelliō facta post dēclitionem, dēfētiō datis obsidib⁹s, tot civitatum eonjūratiō. Itaque cum intellegereret omnes ferē Gallōs novis rēbus studere et ad bellum mōbiliter eeleriterque eexitāri, priusquam plūrēs civitatēs cōspirārent<sup>2</sup>, lātius distribuendum exercitūm putāvit.

**40.** Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātūm in Trēverōs, qnī proximī flūmī Rhēnō suūt, eum equitātū mittit. P. Crassum eum cohortibus legiōnāriis duodecim et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniā proficisci jubet, nē ex his nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ae tantae nātiōnēs conjungantur. Deeimum Brutum adulēsentem elassī Gallicisque nāvibus, quās ex Pietonibus et Santonis reliquisque pācātis regiōnibus convenire jussērat, praeſieit et, cum primum posset, in Venetōs<sup>3</sup> proficisci jubet. Ipse eō pedestribus eōpīs eoutendit. Erant ēiusmodi ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita in extrēmis<sup>4</sup> lingulīs prōmunturiisque propter aestūs neque pedibus aditum habērent<sup>5</sup>, neque nāvibus. Ita oppidōrum oppūgnatiō impediēbatur; ae sī quandō māgnitūdine operis<sup>6</sup> forte superātī, suis

<sup>1</sup> Equal to **et nōn**, the negative going only with **posse**.

<sup>2</sup> Translate by *before . . . should* and compare footnote 5, page 21.

<sup>3</sup> Translate by *into the country of the Veneti* (205, j).

<sup>4</sup> Translate by *the points of* (86, iv, b). With **posita** understand **oppida**.

<sup>5</sup> Translate by *were accessible*.

<sup>6</sup> Translate by *of the siege-works*, and **superātī** by *being overmatched*.

fortūnīs<sup>1</sup> dēspērāre coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium appuīsō, sua dēportābant omnia, sēqne in proxima oppida recipiēbant: ibi sē rūrsus iisdem opportūnitātibus loci dēfendēbant. Haec cō<sup>2</sup> facilius māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs teinpestātibus dētinēbantur, summaque<sup>3</sup> erat vāstō atque apertō mari, māgnīs aestibus, rāris ac prope nūllis portibus, difficultātēs nāvigandi.

*At last a decisive naval battle is fought in which the Romans are completely victorious.*

**41.** Complūribus expūgnātis oppidis, Caesār, ubi intellexit frūstrā tantum<sup>4</sup> labōrem sūnī, statuit exspectandā classēm. Quae ubi convēnit ac pīnum ab hostib⁹ vīsa est, circiter ducentae viginti nāvēs cōrūnā<sup>5</sup> parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ḫnātissimae pīfectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt. Una erat māgnō ūsuī rēs pīparāta ā nostrīs, faleēs pīcacūtæ īsertae affixaēque longuriis. Hīs cum fūnēs, qui antennās ad mālōs dēstinābant, comprehēnsī adductīque erant<sup>6</sup>, nāvīgō rēmīs incitātō pīcrūmpēbantur. Quib⁹ abscīsīs antennāe concidēbant, ut hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētūr.

**42.** Reliquum erat certāmen posītum in<sup>7</sup> virtūte, quā nostri militēs facile superābant atque eo magis, quod in cōspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur; omnēs enim collēs ae loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in<sup>8</sup> mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur. Disjectīs, ut dīximus, antennās, cum singulās bīnae ac ternāe<sup>9</sup> nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs suminā vi trānseē-

<sup>1</sup> Translate the dative by *of*, literally (*lose hope*) *for*. For the tense of *cooperant* and *dēportābant* see 64, v. Translate the three imperfects by *would* (180, b).

<sup>2</sup> See footnote 8, page 32.

<sup>3</sup> With **difficultātēs**. For the intervening ablatives, to be translated by *as*, see 49.

<sup>4</sup> Translate by *all this*. With **exspectandā** understand **esse** (200).

<sup>5</sup> Translate by *of theirs*. For **parātissimae**, *well or fully equipped*, see 44, b. Translate **armōrum** by *of appliances*. With **nostrīs** understand **nāvībus**.

<sup>6</sup> See 149. For the translation of the imperfect see footnote 1 above.

<sup>7</sup> Translate **erat posītum in** by *depended on* (183, c).

<sup>8</sup> Translate by *over*.

<sup>9</sup> Translate by *two or three or by twos and threes*.

dere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fieri animadvertisunt, fugā sulūtem petere contendērunt. Ac jam conversis in eam partem nāvibus, quō ventus ferēbat<sup>1</sup>, tanta subitō malitia ac tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō commovēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōficiendum māximē fuit opportūna : nam singulās nostrā cōsectātī expūgnāvērunt, ut per paucae ex omni numerō noetis interventū ad terrām pērvēnerint. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum<sup>2</sup> tōtiusque ērae maritimae cōfectum est.

#### THE FOURTH CAMPAIGN, 55 B.C.

*Certain German tribes, the Usipetes and Teneteri, hard pressed by their neighbours, cross into Gaul. Caesar, fearing an alliance of Germans and disaffected Gauls, advances to the Rhine, surprises and routs the invaders.*

**43.** Eā, quae secūta est, hieme, Usipetes et item Teneteri māgnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī. Causa trānseundi fuit, quod<sup>3</sup> ab Suēbis complūrēs annōs exagitati bellō premēbantur et agrieultūrā prohibēbantur. Ad extrēmūnam tamen agris expulsi et multis locis<sup>4</sup> Germāniae triennium vngāti ad Rhēnum pērvērunt ; quās regionēs Menapii incolēbant et ad<sup>5</sup> utramque ripam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vīēosque habēbant ; sed tuntae multitūdinis adventū perterriti ex iis aedificiis, quae trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāvērunt et eis Rhēnum dispositis praeſidiis Germānōs trānsire<sup>6</sup> prohibēbant.

**44.** Illi omnia<sup>7</sup> expertīcum neque vi contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clām trānsire propter custodiās Menapiōrum posse, revertī sē<sup>8</sup> in suās sēdēs regionēsque simulāvērunt, et tridui

<sup>1</sup> Translate by *was blowing*. For **quo = in quam** see footnote 7, page 25. Translate **existit** by *came* or *ensued*.

<sup>2</sup> Translate the genitive by *with* or *against* (85, ii).

<sup>3</sup> Translate by *that* (198).

<sup>4</sup> Translate by *through many parts*. For the case see 127, ii.

<sup>5</sup> Translate by *or*.

<sup>6</sup> See 22, i, and for the force of the imperfect, 180, d.

<sup>7</sup> Translate by *every device*, and **vi contendere** by *to force a passage*.

<sup>8</sup> See 18, iv.

viam prōgressi rūrsus revertērunt atque omni hōe itinere ūnā nocte equitātū<sup>1</sup> cōfectō īsciōs inopīnantēsque Menapiōs oppresserunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explōritōrēs certiōrēs faeti sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vīcōs remigrāverant. His interfec̄tis nāvibusque cōrum oceupātis, priusquam ea pars Mempiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiis oceupātis reliquam partem hīnis sē cōrum cōpiis aluērunt.

**45.** His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis capiendis mōbiles et novis plērumque rēbus student, mātūrius, quam eōnsuērat<sup>2</sup>, ad exercitum profieiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset ea quae fore<sup>3</sup> suspicātus erat facta cōgnōvit : missās lēgātiōnēs ab nōnnūllis eivitātibus ad Germānōs quae invitārent eōs, uti ab Rhēnō discēderent, pollicērenturque omnia, quae postulāssent<sup>4</sup>, ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adducti Germānī lātius vagābantur et in finēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Caesar, rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctis<sup>5</sup>, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis essc Germānōs audiēbat.

**46.** Cum ab hoste octō mīlia passuum abesset, aeiēm tripliem īstitui equitātūmique agmen subsequi jussit, et celeriter itinere cōfectō prius<sup>6</sup> ad hostium castra pervēnit quam, quid agerētur, Germānī sentire possent. Quī celeritāte adventūs nostri perterriti, neque cōsiliī habendi neque arma capiendi spatiō datō<sup>7</sup>, perturbantur, cōpiāsne<sup>8</sup> adversus hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere, an

<sup>1</sup> Translate by *with*, literally *by means of*. Translate **itinere . . . cōfectō** by *having covered . . . distance*.

<sup>2</sup> For the tense see 182, *e*; = **cōnsuērat**.

<sup>3</sup> Translate by *would be the case*; = **futūra esse**. Translate **facta (esse)** by *had happened*.

<sup>4</sup> See 187, *b*, *i*; = **postulāvissent**.

<sup>5</sup> Translate by *levied*. Omit **locis** in translation, and see footnote 5, page 26.

<sup>6</sup> **Prius . . . qnām** = **priusquam**, to be taken with **possent** (156, *b*, *i*).

<sup>7</sup> Translate by *and having no time for holding, etc.*

<sup>8</sup> Translate **-ne . . . an . . . an** by *whether . . . or . . . or*. See 38 (last example).

fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quī<sup>1</sup> eeleriter arma capere potuērunt, paulisper nostris restitērunt atque inter earrōs impedimentaque proelium communisérunt: at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mīlierumque (nam eum omniibus suis domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere eoepit; ad quōs cōnseetandōs Cae. ar equitātum mīsit.

*To prevent any further inroads, Caesar builds a bridge across the Rhine, and crossing into Germany, so overawes the German tribes that at his approach they flee into the forests of the interior.*

**47.** Germānī post tergum elāmōre audītō, eum suōs interfieī vidērent, armīs abjeetīs signisque militāribus relictis sē ex eastrīs ejēeērunt, et eum ad cōfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā<sup>2</sup> fugā dēspērātā māgnō numerō interfectō reliqui sē in flūmen praeecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitudine, vī flūminis oppressi periērunt<sup>3</sup>. Nostrī ad ūnum<sup>4</sup> omniēs ineolumēs perpauēs vulneratīs ex tanti belli timōre<sup>5</sup>, eum hostium numerus eapitum quadrūgentōrum trīgintā milium fuisse, sē in castra recēpērunt.

**48.** Germānieō bellō cōfēetō multīs dē causis Caesa.<sup>6</sup> statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit jūstissima<sup>7</sup>, quod, eum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rēbus<sup>8</sup> eōs timēre voluit, eum intellegerent et posse et audēre populū Rōmānī exercitū Rhēnum trānsire. Itaque, etsī summa diffīlētās erat faciēndī pontis propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen flūmen ponte jungere<sup>9</sup> dēcrēvit. Diēbus decem, quibus<sup>9</sup> māteria coēpta erat eomportāri,

<sup>1</sup> Translate by *those who*. Translate *suis* below by *their families*.

<sup>2</sup> Translate by *further*; see footnote 7, page 28.

<sup>3</sup> From **pereō**. Translate **oppressi** by *overcome*.

<sup>4</sup> Translate by *to a man*.

<sup>5</sup> Translate by *after (or relieved from) all their dread of a formidable war*. Translate **cum** by *for*. For the case of **mīllium** see 87, iii.

<sup>6</sup> Translate by *the strongest*. For **quod** see footnote 3, page 35.

<sup>7</sup> Translate by *interests or security* (79).

<sup>8</sup> Translate by *to bridge the river*.

<sup>9</sup> Translate by *within ten days after*, literally *within the ten days within which* (131). For **coēpta erat**, *had begun*, see 22, iii.

omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem<sup>1</sup> pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiam petentib⁹ liberāliter respondit obsidēsque ad sē addūcī jubet. At Sugambrī finibus suīs excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās<sup>3</sup> abdiderant.

**49.** Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus omnibus vīcis aedificiisque incēnsis frūmentisque succisis sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit, atque iīs auxilium suum pollicitus, sī<sup>4</sup> ab Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab iīs cōgnōvit: Suēbōs, posteāquam per explorātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīssis, uti dē oppidis dēmigrārent<sup>5</sup>, liberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvis dēpōnerent, atque omniēs, qui arma ferre possent, ūnum in locum convenirent: hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōstituisse<sup>6</sup>. Quod ubi Caesar coiperit, oīnnibus rēbus iīs cōfectis, quārum rērum causā<sup>7</sup> trādūcere exercitum cōstituerat, ut Germānīs metum injiceret<sup>8</sup>, ut Sugambrōs ulciscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus omnīnō deceū et octō trāns Rhēnum cōnsūmptis sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

<sup>1</sup> Translate by *end*.

<sup>2</sup> Translate by *on their asking for*.

<sup>3</sup> Translate by *in the solitude of the forests* (127, iii).

<sup>4</sup> Translate by *in case*. For the subjunctive see 177.

<sup>5</sup> The three subjunctive clauses depend on the idea of *telling* implied in **nūntiōs dīmīssis**; translate by *instructing them to*, etc. (191).

<sup>6</sup> Coordinate with **dīmīssis**.

<sup>7</sup> Translate by *having attained all the objects for which*.

<sup>8</sup> Translate by *namely to inspire*, etc. For the dative see 78, v, c. The **ut** clauses are in apposition with **rēbus**.



Roman Sword.

C. JULII CAESARIS  
COMMENTARII  
DE BELLO GALLICO.

LIBER QUARTUS.

*Having decided on an expedition to Britain, Caesar tries in vain to get information about the island from Gallic traders.*

20. Exiguā parte aestatis reliquā Caesar, (etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs,) tamen) in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus annī ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īsulam adīsset et genus hominū perspexisset, loca, portūs, adītūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque iīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ūram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus neque quanta esset īsulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus institūtīs ūterentur, neque qui essent ad mājōrum nāvium multitūdiinem idōnei portūs, reperīre poterat.

*Caesar sends Volusenus to reconnoitre. Meanwhile he receives offers of submission from several states of Britain. Volusenus returns with but little information.*

1 21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā 2 praemittit. Huic mandat, ut explorātis omnibus rēbus 3 ad sē quām p̄imū revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in 4 Britanniam trājectus. Hūe nāvēs undique ex finitimis regiōnibus et quām superiōre aestātē ad Veneticum bellum 5 effēcerat classem jubet convenīre. Interim eōnsiliō ejus cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īsulae cīvitātib⁹ ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī pollieantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī 6 obtemperāre. Quibus auditīs liberāliter pollicitus hor- tatusque, ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum 7 remittit, et eum iīs ūnā Commiūm, quem ipse Atrebatis superātis rēgem ibi cōstituerat, eūjus et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābatur, cūjusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, 8 mittit. Huie imperat, quās possit, adeat cīvitātēs hortāturque, ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque eeleriter 9 eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectis regiōnibus omnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredi ae sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat. 38

*After receiving the submission of certain of the Morini, Caesar collects his fleet and makes his final arrangements.*

1 22. Dūa in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum eausā morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnē-

runt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōsiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperīti bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae imperāset, factūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis ὡpportūnē accidisse<sup>2</sup> arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque belli gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupatiōnēs Britanniæ antepōuendās jūdicābat, māgnūm iīs numerum obsidum imperat.<sup>3</sup> Quibus adduetis eōs in fidem recēpit. Nāvibus circiter octōgintā onerāriis coāctis contrāctisque,<sup>4</sup> quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstīmābat, quod practereā nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōrī lēgātīs praefectisque distribuit. Hīc accēdēbant duodēvīgintī<sup>5</sup> ouerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ab mīlibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur, quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent: hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitū<sup>6</sup> Q. Titūriō Sabīnō et L. Aurunculeiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ab quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dūcendum dedit; P. Sulpiciū<sup>7</sup> Rūfūm lēgātūm cum eō praeſidiō, quod satis esse arbitrābatur, portum tenēre jussit.

*He reaches Britain, but has difficulty in getting a suitable landing-place.*

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigan-<sup>1</sup> dum tempestātem tertīā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredī et nāvēs cōscendere et sē sequī jussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset admini-<sup>2</sup> strātūm, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quārtā cum p̄mīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās

3 hostium cōpiās arimātās cōspexit. Cūjus locī haec erat nātūra, atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbatur, utī 4 ex locīs superiōribus in litus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendū nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs 5 exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitūm convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset, et quae fierī vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut reī mīlitāris ratiō, māximē ut mari- timae rēs postulārent, (ut) quae celereū atque īstābilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtūm et ad tempus omniēs rēs ab 6 iīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissis et ventū et aestū ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs circiter milia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs cōstituit.

*The Britons, following along the shore, vigorously oppose the landing.*

1 24. At barbarī cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō praemissō equitātū et essedārīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi 2 prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās sumnia difficultās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō cōstituī nōn poterant, mīlitibus autem īgnōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus 3 erat pūgnandū, cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī omniibus membrīs expeditīs, nōtissimīs locīs andācter tēla conjicerent et equōs īsuēfactōs in- 4 citārent. Quibus rēbus nostri perterriti atque hūjus omnīnō generis pūgnae imperīti nōn eādem alacritātē ac studiō, quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōsuērant, ūtēbantur.

*Cæsar manœuvres to dislodge the enemy, while a brave standard-bearer gallantly heads a rush towards the shore.*

25. Quod ubi Cæsar animadvertisit, nāvēs longās quārunt et speciēs erat barbaris inūsitatior et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior, paulum removērī ab onerāriis nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstitūtū atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac submovērī jussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium 2 figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitatō genere tormentōrum permōtī, barbārī cōstitērunt ac paulum modo pedem retulērunt. Atque nostrīs mīlitib⁹ cunetantibus, māximē 3 propter altitudinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, contestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēliciter ēveniret: “Dēsilīte,” inquit, “mīlītēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere: ego certē memin reī pūblicae atque imperātorī officium praestiterō.” Hōc cum vōce māgnā dixisset, sē ex 4 nāvī projēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum 5 nostri cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus adnitterētur, univerī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvi⁹ bus cum cōspexissent subsecūtī hostibus appropinquārunt.

*The Romans, after much fighting, gain the shore and put the Britons to flight.*

26. Pūgnātū est ab utrīsque āriter; Nostrī tamen, 1 quod neque ordinēs servāre neque firmiter īsisterē neque signa subsequī poterant atque aliis aliā ex nāvī, quibuscumque signis occurriterat, sē aggregābat, māgnopere perturbabantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadis, ubi ex 2 lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōspexerant, incitatīs equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs cir-

cūmsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla con-  
 4 jiciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās  
 longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia militib⁹ com-  
 plērī jussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōspexerat, hīs subsidia  
 5 submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōstitērunt, suīs  
 omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs  
 in fugam dedērunt, neque longius prōsequī potuērunt,  
 quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque ūnūlām capere nōn  
 potuerant. Hōe ūnum ad prīstīnam fortūnam Caesari  
 dēfuit.

*The Britons sue for peace.*

1 27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā  
 recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt ;  
 obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāsset factūrōs pollicitī sunt.  
 2 Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā  
 dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum.  
 3 Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs orātōris modō  
 Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehendērunt atque in vin-  
 4 cula conjēcerant, tum proeliō factō remīsērunt. In petendā  
 pāce ējus reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et  
 5 propter imprūdentiam ut ignōscerētur petīvērunt. ✓Caesar  
 questus, quod, cum ultīgō in continentem lēgātīs missis  
 pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent,  
 6 ignōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit ; quōrum  
 illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus  
 7 locis arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. ✓In-  
 tereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs jussērunt, pīncipēsque un-  
 dique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesari commendāre  
 coepērunt.

*Interv. 21. 1*

*A portion of Caesar's ships crossing later is dispersed by a storm and driven back to the mainland.*

28. His rēbus pāce cōfirmātā post diem quārtum, 1 quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs duodēvīgintī, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiore portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appro-2 pīnqūārent Britanniae et ex castris vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad īferiōrem partem īinsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, māgnō suī cum perīculō dējicerentur. Quae tamen 3 ancoris jactis cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō ad- versā nocte in altum profeetac continentem petiērunt.

*The same storm does great damage to the vessels which had crossed with Caesar, and causes much alarm in the camp.*

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, qui diēs 1 maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuēvit, nostrisque id erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās 2 nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat quāsque in āridūm subdūixerat, aestus complēbat, et one- rāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās afflīctābat, neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctis reliquae cum essent 3 fūnib⁹, ancoris reliquīsque armāmentīs āmissis ad nāvi- gandum inūtilēs, māgna, id quod necesse erat accidere, totius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs 4 erant aliae, quibus reportāri possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsūi, et, quod omnibus cōstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum hīs in locīs in hiemem prōvisum nōn erat.

*Learning of these misfortunes, the Britons who had submitted decide to renew the war, and secretly gather forces.*

1 30. Quibus rébus cōgnitīs p̄incipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convenerant, inter sē collocūtū cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegērent et paucitātem militum ex eastrōrum exiguitāte cōgnōcerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiora; quod sine impedimentis 2 Caesar legionēs trānsportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxē-  
runt rebelliōne factā frūmentō commētūque nostrōs pro-  
hibēre et rem in hiemem prōducere, quod hīs superatīs aut  
reditū interclūsīs nēminem posteā belli īferendī causā in  
3 Britannianī trānsitūrum cōfidēbant. Itaque rūrsus con-  
jūratiōne factā paulatīn ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam  
ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

*Caesar, becoming suspicious, collects provisions in the camp and repairs the shattered fleet.*

1 31. At Caesar, etsī nōidum cōrum cōsilia cōgnōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsirē dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābatur. 2 Itaque ad oīnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotidiē in castra cōferēbat et quae gravissimē afflīctae erant nāvēs, cārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et quae ad eās rēs erant 3 ūsuī ex continentī comportāri jubēbat. Itaque, cūm summō studiō ā militib⁹ administrāretur, duodeciū nāvibus āmis-  
sīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī commodē posset, effecit.

*A legion out foraging is surprised and surrounded by the Britons.  
Caesar goes to its relief.*

1 32. Dūi ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātū missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā

*post tākes Tūtīm.*

ad id tempus bellī suspicione interpositā, cum pars hominum  
in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, iū quī  
prō portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesari mūntiāvērunt  
pulverem mājōrem, quam cōsuētūdō ferret, in eā parte  
vidērī, quam in partem legiō iter fēisset. Caesar id, quod 2  
erat, suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōsiliū,  
cohortēs, quae in stationibus erant, sēcum in eam partem  
proficisci, ex reliquīs duās in stationem cohortēs succēdere,  
reliquās armāri et cōfestim sēsē subsequī jussit. Cum 3  
paulō longius ā castris prōcessisset, suos ab hostibus premī  
atque aegrē sustinēre et cōfertā legiōne ex omnibus parti-  
bus tēla conjici animadvertisit. *Nam quod omni ex reliquīs 4*  
partibus dēmessō frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspieāti  
hostēs hūe nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlituerant;  
tum dispersōs dēpositī armīs in metendō occupatōs subito 5  
adortī pauēs imperfectī reliquōs incertis ordinib⁹ pertur-  
bāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdedērant. *recipere*

*A description of the British mode of fighting with chariots.*

33. Genus hōe est ex essedīs pīgnacē. Prīmō per omnēs 1  
partēs perequitant et tēla eonjiciunt atque ipsō terrōre  
equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbant,  
et cum sē inter equitum turmās īsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs  
dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgæ interiū paulatim 2  
ex proeliō exeēdunt atque ita currūs collocant, ut, sī illī ā  
multitudine hostium premantur, expeditū ad suos recep-  
tum habeant. *Ita inobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem 3*  
peditum in proeliis praestant, ac tantum ūsū cotidiānō et  
exercitatiōne efficiunt, utī in dēclīvī ac praeципitī loeo  
incitatōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ae flectere et

*Stabat  
Kenneley  
will*

*Tum Tum*

per tēnōnem percurrere et in jugō īsistere et sē inde in eurūs citissimē recipere cōsuērint.

*On Caesar's approach the Britons withdraw, and spend the next few days in collecting larger forces.*

1 34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostrīs novitātē pūgnacē tempore opportūmissimō Caesar auxilium tulit: namque ējus adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timore re-2 cēpērunt. Quō faetō ad lacessendum hostem et ad com-mittendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē locō eontinuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legionēs 3 redūxit. Dum haee geruntur, nostrīs omnībus occupātīs, 4 quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sūl' eon-tinuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in cas-5 trīs continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīserunt panicitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt, et quanta praedae facienda atque in perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētur, 6 sī Rōmānōs castris expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter māgnā multitūdine peditatūs equitatūsque coactā ad castra vēnērunt.

*When the Britons come against his camp, Caesar meets them and routs them with great slaughter.*

1 35. Caesar etsī idem, qnod superioribus diēbus acciderat, fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte periculū effugerent, tamen naetus equitēs eireiter trīgintā quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dietum est, sēcum trāns-2 portāverat, legionēs in aciē prō castrīs eōnstituit. Com-missō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs 3 ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. *Quōs tantō spatiō*

*tempus*

secūtī, quantum cursū et viribus efficere potuērunt, complurēs ex iis occidērunt, deinde omnibus longē latēque aedificiis incēnsis sē in castra recōpērunt.

*Having received the enemy's submission, Caesar returns to Gaul, the summer being now over.*

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostib⁹ missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar nūmerum obsidū, quem ante imperāverat, duplīcāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī jussit, quod propinquā diē aquinoctiī infirmis nāvibus hiemī nāvigatiōnem subjiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem naētr⁹ paulō post medium noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incoluēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex iis onerariae duae cōsdeim, quōs reliquī, portūs capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infrā dēlatae sunt.

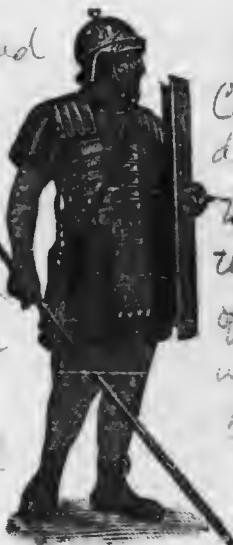
*A detachment of the Romans, after landing, is attacked by the Morini, but is rescued by Caesar.*

37. Qrib⁹ ex nāvib⁹ eum essent expositi mīlitēs circiter trecenti atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniā proficīseēns pācātēs reliquerat, spē praedae adducti pīmō nōn ita māgnō suōrum nūmerō circumstetērunt ac, sī sēsē interfici nōllent, arma pōnere jussērunt. Cum illi orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominū circiter mīlia sex convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnēi ex eastris equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōris quattuor fortissimē pūgnāvērunt et paucis vulnerib⁹ acceptis complurēs ex his occidērunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in cōspectum vēnit, hostēs abjectis armīs terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum nūmerus est occīsus.

*After crushing this uprising Caesar arranges his winter camps.*

1 38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātūm eum iīs legiōnibus, quās ex Britanniā redūxerat, in Morinōs, qui 2 rebellōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī eum propter siccitātēs palūdūm, quō sē recipērent, nōn habērent, quō superiōrē annō perfūgiō fuerant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem La- 3 biēni pervēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgāti, qui in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agris vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnīs, quod Menapii sē omniēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad 4 Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae omnīnō civitātēs ex Britanniā 5 obsidēs mīserunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum vīgintī supplicatiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

Some time people had no place to retreat to, owing to the continued dryness of the marshes which they had made up for the year before, almost all of them fell into latitudinā.



Legionary Soldier.

Following on  
Caesar's  
dispatches after  
these events, a  
thanksgiving  
of 20 days  
was declared  
by the senate.

## LIBER QUINTUS.

*Caesar orders more vessels to be built; he then spends the winter in attending to the affairs of his two other provinces.*

1. L. Domitiō Ap. Claudiō cōsulibus, discēdēns ab hibernis Caesar in Ītaliā, ut quotannīs facere cōsuērat, lēgātis imperat, quōs legiōnibus praeſēcerat, utī quam plūrimās possent hieme nāvēs aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās cūrārent. Eārum modū fōrmamque dēmōnstrat. 2 Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnēsque paulō facit humiliōrēs, quam quibus in nostrō marī ūtī cōsuēvimus, atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtatiōnēs aestuum minus māgnōs ibi fluctūs fierī cōgnōverat; ad onera ac multitudinem jūnientōrum trānsportandam paulō lātiōrēs, quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās 3 omnēs āctuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem humilitās multum adjuvat. Ea, quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs, 4 ex Hispāniā apportārī jubet. Ipse, conventibus Galliae 5 citerioris peractis in Illyricum proficisciatur, quod ā Pirūstīs finitimam partē prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, cīvitātib⁹ militēs imperat certumque in 6 locum convenire jubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pirūstae lēgātōs 7 ad eum mittunt, qui doceant nihil eārum rērum pūblicō factum cōsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrant omnibus ratiōnibus dē injūriis satisfacere. Perceptā orātiōne eōrum 8 Caesar obsidēs imperat eosque ad certam diem addūcī jubet; nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō cīvitātēm persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat. Iīs ad diem adductis ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter 9 cīvitātēs dat, qui lītem aestiment poenamque cōnstituant.

*Returning in the spring he orders the fleet and army to assemble for another expedition to Britain, then goes to the country of the Trereri, whose loyalty was suspected.*

1 2. His cōfectis rēbus conventibusque perāctis, in citeriore Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficisci citur. Eo cum vēisset, eirenit omnibus hibernis singulārī mīltum studio in summā omnium rērum inopīā circiter sese centās ējus generis, cūjus suprā dēmonstrāvimus, nāyēs et longās viginti octo, invenit īstrūctās, neque multum abesse ab eo, quin paucis diēbns dēdūcī possint. Quādā mīlitātis mīlitibus atque iis qui negōtiō praeſuerant, quid fieri velit ostendit, atque omnēs ad portum Itium convenire jubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam trājectum esse cōgnōverat, circiter mīlium passuum trīgintā ā continentī; huic rei quod satis esse vīsum est mīlītūm reliquit. Ipse cum legiōnibns expeditis quattuor et equitibus octingentis in fīmēs Trēverōram proficisci eitur, quod hī neque ad concilia yēiēbant, neque imperiō pārēbant, Germānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre diebantur.

*Two vital chiefs of the Trereri appeal to Caesar.*

1 3. Haec cīvitātēs longē plūrimū tōtūs Galliae equitātū valet māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut suprā dēmonstrāvimus, tangit. In eā cīvitātē duo dē principātū inter sē contendēbant, Indūtiomārus et Cingētorīx; ē quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legiōnumque adventū cōgnitum est, ad eum vēnit; sē suōsque omnēs in officiō futūrōs, neque ab amīcitiā populi Rōmānī dēfectūrōs confirmāvit, quaque in Trēverīs gererentur, ostendit. At Indūtiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere, iīsque, quī

per aetatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam Arduen-nam abditis, quae ingentī magnitudine per mediōs finēs Trēverōrum à flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parare instituit. Sed posteāquam nōnnūllī p̄ncipēs 5 ex eā cīvitāte et familiāritāte Cingetorīgis adducti et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterriti ad Caesarem vēnērunt, et dē suīs privātum rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam cīvitāti cōusulere nōn possent, veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur, Indūtiomārus lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit: sēs 6 ideicrō ab suīs discēdere atque ad eum venire nōnisse, quō facilius cīvitātem in officiō continēret, nē oīnis nobilitātis discessū plēbs propter imprūdentiam lāberētur; itaque esse cīvitātem in suā potestāte, sēsēque sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, suās cīvitatisque fortūnās ējus fidei permīssūrum.

*Caesar decides in favor of Cingetorix, while requiring the submission of Indutiomarus.*

4. Caesar, etsī intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dicrentur, 1 quaeque eum rēs ab institūtō cōnsiliō dēterrēret, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēverīs cōnsūmēre cōgerētur, omnibus ad Britanniū bellum rēbus comparātīs, Indūtiomārum ad sē cum ducentīs obsidibus venire jussit. Hīs adductīs, in 2 iīs filiō propinquīsque ējus omnibus, quōs nōminātim cōvērērat, cōnsolātus Indūtiomārum hortātusque est, utī in officiō manēret: nihilō tamen sēcius p̄ncipib⁹ Trēverōrum 3 ad sē convocātīs hōs singillātim Cingetorīgi conciliāvit: quod eum meritō ējus à sē fierī intellegēbat, tum māgnī interesse arbitrābātur ējus auetōritātem inter suōs quam plūrimū valēre, cūjus tam ēgregiam in sē voluntātem

3  
cōfēctus  
why not  
quod?

¶ perspexisset. Id tulit factum graviter Indutiomarus, suam gratiam inter suos minui, et qui jam ante inimicō in nos animo fuisset, multo gravius hoc dolore exarsit.

*Coming to the seaport Caesar finds the fleet and army ready.*

1 5. His rebus constitutis Caesar ad portum Itium cum 2 legionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit sexaginta naves, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestate rejectas cursum tenuere non potuisse atque eodem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquias paratas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus in 3 struntas invenit. Eodem equitatus totius Galliae convenit numerō milium quattuor, principesque ex omnibus civitatis 4 bus; ex quibus per paucos, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, reliquos obsidum loco secum ducere decreverat, quod cum ipse abesset, motum Galliae verebatur.

*Dumnorix, a disaffected and ambitious Gaul, causes trouble.*

1 6. Erat una cum ceteris Dumnorix Aeduus, de quo ante ab nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis constituerat, quod eum cupidum reram novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis 2 cognoverat. Accedebat huc, quod in concilio Aeduorum Dumnorix dixerat sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri; quod dictum Aedu graviter ferabant, neque recusand aut deprecand causam legatos ad Caesarem mittere audiebant. 3 Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primo precibus petere contendit, ut in Gallia relinquetur; partim quod insuetus navigandi mare timet: partim quod religionibus impediri senseret. Postea quam id obstinat sibi negari videt, omni spē impetrandi

ademptā p̄incipēs Galliae sollicitāre, s̄evocāre singulōs hortārique coepit, ut in continentī remanērent; metū ter-5 ritāre: nōn sine causā fieri, ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōsilium Caesaris, ut, quōs in cōspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret; fidēm reliquīs interpōnere, jūsjūrandū 6 poscere, ut, quod esse ex usū Galliae intellēxissent, cōmūni cōsiliō administrārent. *V*Haec a complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur. *report*

*Caesar delays his departure in order to check disaffection. Dumnorix flees, but is overtaken and slain.*

7. Quā rē cōgnitā, Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Aeduāe 1 dignitatis tribuēbat, coerceendum atque dēterrendum, qui bñseumque rēbus posset, Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod 2 longius ējus āmentiam prōgredi vidēbat, prōspiciendum, nē quid sibi ac rei pūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter 3 vīgintī quīnque in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōsuēvit, dabat operam, ut in officiō Dumnorīgem continēret, nihil tamen sēcius omnia ējus cōsilia cōgnōsseret; tandem idōneām nactus tempestātem 4 mīlites equitēsque cōnsendere in nāvēs jubet. At omnium 5 inneditis animis, Dumnorīx cum equitibus Aeduōrum ā castrīs īsciente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē 6 nūntiātā Caesar intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositis māgnam partem equitātūs ad eum īsequendum mittit, retrahīque imperat; si viim faciat neque pāreat, 7 interfici jubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō factūrum arbitrātus, quī praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille enim 8

revocatus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suorumque fidem implorāre coepit, saepe clamitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse cīvitatis. Illi, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equites Aeduī ad Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

*Caesar crosses over to Britain and lands unopposed.*

1. 8. His rēbus gestis Labiēnō in continente cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duobus relīctō, ut portū tuērētur et rem frumentāriam prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cognōseret, cōnsiliumque pro tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continentē reliquerat, ad sōlis oceāsum nāvēs solvit, et lēnī Africō prōvectus mediā circiter nocte vento intermissō cursum nōn tenuit, et longius dēlātus aestū, ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relītam cōspexit. 3 Tum rūrsus aestū commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet, quā optimum esse ēgressum 4 superiōre aestāte cōgnōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit mīlitum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriis gravibusque nāvigiis nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum 5 adaequārunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus meridiānō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hostis est 6 vīsus; sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvīs cōgnōvit, cīnī māgnāe manūs eō convēnissent, multitudine nāvium perterritae, quae cū amōtinīs prīvātīsque, quās suī quisque commodī fēcerat, amplius octingentae ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ā litore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant. L

*Leaving a strong guard with the ships he advances into the interior and drives the enemy from one of their strongholds.*

9. Caesar exposito exereitū et locō castris idoneō captō,<sup>1</sup> ubi ex captīvis cōgnōvit quō in locō hostiū cōpiae cōsēdissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relēctis et equitibus trecentis, quī praeſidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in litorē mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorām relinquēbat; et praeſidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praeſēcit. Ipse noctū progressus mīlia passuum circiter duodecim hostiū cōpiās cōſpicātus est. Illī, equitātū atque essedīs ad flīmen<sup>3</sup> progressī, ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās<sup>4</sup> abdidērunt locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītū, quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbantur, causā jam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbris arboribus succīsīs omnēs introitīs<sup>5</sup> erant praeclūsī. Ipsī ex silvīs rārī prōpīgnābant nostrōsque<sup>6</sup> intrā mūnītiōnēs ingredī prohibēbant. At mīlītēs legiōnis<sup>7</sup> septimae testūdine faetā et aggere ad mūnītiōnēs adjectō locum cēpērunt eosque ex silvīs expulērunt paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequī<sup>8</sup> vetuit, et quod locī nātūram ignōrābat, et quod māgnā parte diēi cōsumptā mūnītiōnī castrōrum tempus reliquī volēbat.

*As troops are setting out in pursuit, news comes of serious damage caused to the fleet by a storm.*

10. Poſtrīdiē ējus diēi māne tripertītō mīlītēs equitēsque<sup>1</sup> in expeditiōnēm mīſit, ut eōs, qui fūgerant, perſequerentur. Hīs aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum jam extēmī essent<sup>2</sup> in prōspectū, equitēs à Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt, quī

nūntiārent superiore nocte māximā coortā tempestāte prope omnēs nāvēs afflīctās atque in litore ējectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernātō-  
rēsque vim tempestatis patī possent ; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium māgnūm esse incommodū acceptum.

*Caesar returns, arranges for the repairing of these losses, and again sets out agaist the enemy, now under Cassivellaunus.*

1 11. His rēbus cōgnitī Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī atque in itinere resistere jubet, ipse ad nāvēs 2 revertitur ; eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiis litterisque cōgnōverat, cōram perspicit, sīc ut āmissis circiter quadrāgintā nāvibus reliquiae tamen refici posse māgnō negōtiō vidēren-  
3 tur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī 4 aliōs arcessī jubet ; Labiēnō seribit, ut, quam plūrimās posset, iīs legiōnibus, quae sunt apud eum, nāvēs īstituat.  
5 Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operaē ac labōris, tamen com-  
mōdissimum esse statuit, omnēs nāvēs subdūcī et cum  
6 castris ūnā mūnitōne conjungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs  
decem cōsūmit, nē nocturnī quidem temporibus ad labō-  
7 rem militum intermissīs. Subductī nāvibus castrīsque  
ēgregiē mūnitīs cāsdem cōpiās, quās ante, praeſidiō nāvibus  
8 reliquit : ipse eōdem, unde redierat, proficisciatur. Eō cum  
vēnisset, mājōrēs jam undique in eūm locūm cōpiae Britan-  
nōrum convēnerant, summā imperī bellique administrandī  
conūmūnī cōsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō, cūjus fīnēs ā  
maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tame-  
9 sis, ā mari circiter mīlia passuum octōgintā. Huic superiore  
tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus continentia bella interces-  
serant : sed nostrō adventū perniōtī Britannī hunc tōtī  
bellō imperiōque praeſēcerant.

*A description of the people, products and climate of Britain.*

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos 1, in insula ipsi memoria proutum dicunt; maritima pars ab 2 iis, qui praedae ac bellorum inferendi causam ex Belgio transierunt (qui omnés ferē iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eō pervenērunt) et bellō illatō ibi remanserunt atque agrōs colere coepérunt. Hominum est infinita 3 multitudo crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicis cōsimilia, pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur [aut aere] aut nummō 4 auro aut tāleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummō. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis 5 regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed ejus exigua est cōpia; aere utuntur importatō. Materia cūjusque generis, ut in Galliā, est praeter fāgum atque abicem. Leporem et gal- 6 linam et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tanien alunt animi voluptatisque causam. Loca sunt temperatiōra quam in Galliā, remissioribus frigoribus.

*The geography of Britain.*

13. Insula naturā triquetra, cūjus unum latus est contrā 1 Galliam. Hujus lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter milia passuum quīngenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam 2 atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, dimidiō minor, ut aestimatur, quam Britannia; sed parī spatiō transmissūs atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc 3 mediō cursū est insula, quae appellatur Mona; complures praetereā minōres subjectae insulae existimantur; dē quibus insulis nonnulli scripsērunt diēs continuos trīgintā sub-

4 brūmā esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē cō percontatiōnibus  
reperiēbāmus, nisi certis ex aquā mēnsūris breviōrēs esse  
5 quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Hūjus est longitūdo  
lateris, ut fert illōrum opiniō, septingentōrum mīlīum.  
6 Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs; cuī partī nūlla est objecta  
terra, sed ējus angulns lateris māximē ad Germāniā  
spectat. Hoe mīlia passuum octingenta in longitūdinē  
7 esse existimātur. Ita omnis īsula est in circuitū vīcīēs  
centum mīlīum passuum.

*The manners and customs of the Britons.*

1 14. Ex his omnībus longē sunt hūmānissimī, quī Cantūm  
incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnīs, neque multū ā  
2 Gallicā differunt cōsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plēriique frūmenta  
nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt  
vestiti. Omnes vērō sē Britāni vitrō īficiunt, quod  
caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōe horridiōrēs sunt in  
3 pūgnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō, atque omniā parte  
4 corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxōrēs  
habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē communēs, et māximē  
5 frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum liberīs; sed, si qui  
sunt ex līs nātī, cōrūm habentur liberī, quō pīmū virgō  
quaeque dēdueta est.

*The Romans are surprised while building a camp, but drive off the enemy.*

1 15. Equitēs hostiū essedāriique acriter proeliō cum  
equitatū nostrō in itinere cōflīxerunt, tamen ut nostrī  
omnībus partibus superiorēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās  
2 collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectis cupidius  
3 īsecūtī nōnnūllōs ex suis āmiserunt. At illī intermissō

spatīo imprudēntibus nostrīs atque occupātis in mūnitōne  
castrōrum subitō sē ex silvis ejēcērunt, impetūque in eōs  
factō, qui erant in statōne prō castrīs collocātī, acriter  
pūgnāvērunt; duābusque missis subsidiō cohortib⁹ a<sup>4</sup>  
Caesare, atque his p̄mīs legiōnum duārum, cum hac  
<sup>veniunt</sup> perexiqūo intermissō loci spatīo inter sē cōstitiſſent, novō  
genere pūgnacē perterritis nostrīs, per mediōs audācissimē  
perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q.<sup>5</sup>  
Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus militū, interficitur. Illī plūri-  
bus submissīs cohortib⁹ repelluntur.



Armor and Weapons.

*The disadvantages under which the Romans lay in fighting with the Britons.*

1 16. Tōtō hōe in genere pūgnæ, cum sub oculis omnium  
ae prō castrīs dūnicārētur, intellēctuū est nostrōs propter  
gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īsequī cēdentēs possent  
neque ab sīgnīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad  
2 hūjus generis hostem; equitēs autem māgnō cum periculō  
proeliō dūnicāre, proptereā quod illī etiam cōsultō plērumi-  
que cēderent et, cum paulum ab legionibus nostrōs remōvis-  
sent, ex essedīs dēsilirent, et pedibus disparī proeliō con-  
3 tenderent. Equestris autem proeliī ratiō et cēdentibus et  
4 īsequentibus pār atque idem periculum īferēbat. Accēdē-  
bat hūc, ut numquam cōnferti, sed rāri māgnīsque inter-  
vallīs proeliārentur statiōnēsque dispositās habērent, atque  
aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfatī-  
gātis succēderent.

*The Romans are again attacked, but inflict such a defeat on the Britons that a large part of them disband.*

1 17. Posterō diē procul à castrīs hostēs in collibus cōn-  
stitērunt, rārique sē ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē nostrōs  
2 equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed meridiē cum Caesar  
pābulandī causā trēs legionēs atque omnēm equitātum eūn  
C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus  
ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sīc utī ab sīgnīs legionibusque  
3 nōn absisterent. Nostrī ācrīter in cōs impetū factō rep-  
pulērunt, neque fīuem sequendī tēcērunt, quoad subsidiō  
cōfī i equitēs, cum post sē legionēs vidērent, praccipitēs  
4 hostēs ēgērunt; māgnōque cōrum numerō interfēctō neque  
suī colligendī neque cōsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī

facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus, quae undique<sup>5</sup> convēnerant, auxilia discussērunt, neque post id tempus umquam summīs nōbīscum cōpiis hostēs contendērunt.

*Caesar forces a passage across the Thames.*

18. Caesar cōgnitō eōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesium<sup>1</sup> in finēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedib⁹, atque hōc aegrē, trānsirī potest. Eō<sup>2</sup> eūn vēnisset, animum advertit ad alterām flūminis rīpam māgnās esse cōpiās hostium īstrūctās. Rīpa autem erat<sup>3</sup> aeūtis sudibus praefixis mūnīta, ējusdemque generis sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine vēgēbantur. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs<sup>4</sup> ā captīvīs perfugīsque Caesar praeimissō equitātū cōfestim legiōnēs subsequī jussit. Sed eā celeritātē atque eō impetū<sup>5</sup> mīlitēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitū sustinēre nōn possent, rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugacē mandārent.

*Cassivellaunus, avoiding a pitched battle, harasses Caesar's line of march.*

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī dē-<sup>1</sup> posītā spē contentiōnis, dīmissīs ampliōrib⁹ cōpiis, milib⁹ circiter quattuor essedāriōrum relīctis, itinera nostra servābat, paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locisque impeditis ac silvestrib⁹ sēsē occultāba<sup>t</sup> atque iīs regiōnibus, quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat, pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus noster liberius<sup>2</sup> praedandī vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs ējēcerat, omnībus viīs sēmitīsque essedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat, et māgnō cum pēriculō nostrōrum equitū cum iīs cōfligēbat atque

3 Nōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. ✓ Relinquēbātur, ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnnū discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum in agrīs vāstandīs incendiīsque faciendīs hostibus nocērētur, quantum labōre atque itinere legiōnārī mūlitēs efficere poterant. ✓

*The Trinobantes, a powerful British tribe, submit to Caesar.*

1 20. Interim Trinobantēs, prope fīrmissima cārum regiōnum cīvitās, ex quā Mandubraciūs adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem Galliam vēnerat, cūjus pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnūm obtinuerat, imperfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vītāverat, lēgātōs ad 2 Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque 3 imperāta factūrōs ✓ petunt, ut Mandubracium ab injūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat, atque in cīvitātem mittat quī prae- 4 sit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsidēs quadrāgiātā frūmentumque exercituī Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illī imperāta eeleriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerū frūmentumque nīsērunt.

*Many other tribes now submit, and Caesar captures the 'town' of Cassivellaunus.*

1 21. Trinobantib⁹ dēfēnsis atque ab omni mīlitū in- jūriā prohibit⁹, Cēnimāgnī, Segontiācī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī, 2 Cassī lēgātiōnib⁹ missis sēsē Caesari dēdunt. Ab hīs eōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidū Cassivellaunī abesse silvās palūdibusque mūnitū, quō satis māgnus hominū 3 pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidū autem Britannī voeant, cum silvās impeditās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vītandae causā convenire cō- 4 suērunt. Eō proficisciuit cum legiōnib⁹; locū reperit

égregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum ; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppūgnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī 5 mīlitum nostrōrum impetuū nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidī ejēcērunt. Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris re- 6 pertus, multīque in fugā sūnt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

*A sudden attack on the camp by the sea is repulsed, and Cassivellaunus sues for peace.*

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur Cassivellaunus ad 1 Cantiū, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōstrāvimus, quibus regiōnib⁹ quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorīx, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat, utī coāctīs omnībus cōpiīs castra nāvālia dē imprōvīsō adoriantur atque oppūgnent. Iī cum ad castra vēnissent, 2 nostri ēruptiōne factā multīs eōrum interfectis, captō etiam nōbili duce Lugotorīge, suōs incolumēs redūxērunt. Cas- 3 sivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs acceptīs, vāsātīs finibus, māximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebatem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum cōnstituisset hiemāre in 4 continentī propter repentinōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facile extrahī posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat, et quid in annōs singulōs vectigālis populo Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōnstituit ; interdīcit atque 5 imperat Cassivellaunō, nē Mandubaciō neu Trinobantibus noceat.

*Caesar returns to the mainland.*

23. Obsidibus acceptīs exercitūm redūcit ad mare, nāvēs 1 inveniūt refectās. Hīs dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum māg- 2 num numerū habēbat, et nōnnūllae tempestātē dēperierant

nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre īstituit.  
 3 Ac sīc accidit, utī ex tantō nāvium numerō tot nāvigātiōni-  
 bus, neque hōc neque superiore annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis,  
 4 quae mīlītēs portāret, dēsiderārētur; at ex iīs, quae inānēs  
 ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, et priōris commeātūs  
 expositīs mīlitib⁹s, et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrā-  
 verat numerō sexāgintā, per paucae locūn caperent; reliquae  
 5 ferē omnēs rējicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesār  
 frūstrā cxspectāsset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūde-  
 rētur, quod acquinoctium suberat, necessāriō angustius  
 6 mīlītēs collocāvit, ac summā tranquillitatē cōsecūtā, se cūndā  
 initā eum solvisset vigiliā, pīmā lūce terram attigit omuēs-  
 que incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.



Roman Soldiers on the March.

## NOTES ON CAESAR, BOOK IV.

N.B.—The references are to the sections of the Syntax and Composition, beginning at page 169.

The following abbreviations are used: cf.=compare; ch., chap.=chapter; fn.=footnote; lit.=literally; sc.=supply, or understand; trans.=translate, translation.

### CHAP. 20.

1. *exigua*: emphatic from position. *parte reliqua*: abl. absolute (49); equivalent to an *etsi* clause (48); trans. 'although only a small part . . . and although . . . yet Caesar made an effort.' *omnis*: 'as a whole.' *ad septentriones vergit*: 'lies towards the north.' *bellis*: for case see 130. *hostibus subministrata*: sc. *esse* (14); 'had been furnished to the enemy.'

2. *si*: 'even if.' *gerendum*: see 119. *deficeret*: 'did not enable him,' lit. ? (175; 187, b). *usui*: see 81. *fore*: see 14; the subject is contained in the clauses *si modo . . . cognovisset*. *adisset*: for *adiisset*.\* For the mood and tense see 187, b, i.; trans. 'approached,' lit. 'should have approached.' *genus hominum*: 'the character of the inhabitants.' *quae omnia*: 'all of which,' lit. ? (86, iv. a). *fere*: with *omnia*.

\* Contracted forms in the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses:

(a) Perfects in *-āvī*, *-ēvī*, and also *mōvī* and *nōvī* (from *moveō* and *nōseō*), often drop *v* before *-is-*, *-er-* or *-ēr-* and contract the two vowels thus brought together to *ā*, *ē*, *ō* respectively; e.g., *mōrat* for *mōverat*, *cōsuērunt* for *cōnsuēvērunt*, *imperāisse* for *imperāvisce*.

(b) Perfects in *-īvī* also drop *v* before *-is-*, *-er-* or *-ēr-*, but the vowels thus brought together are contracted (to *I*) only before *-is-*; e.g., *adisset* for *adiisset*. Before *-er-* and *-ēr-*, *I* is shortened to *i*; e.g., *audierat* for *audiuerat*.

But *ēb* and its compounds, also *petō* and *dēstīb*, drop *v* also in the first and third singular and first plural of the perfect indicative.

3. neque . . . quisquam : 'no . . . one,' lit. ? illo : adverb. iis ipsis : i.e., *mercatoribus*. Gallias : 'Gaul.' The plural has reference to the triple division of Gaul with which Caesar begins his Commentaries on the Gallic War: *Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres* (page 13).

4. vocatis : trans. by 'although' (48). quanta esset . . . portus : depending on *reperire poterat* (35). belli : 'in war' (85, ii.). uterentur : 'they had' (54). qui essent . . . portus : 'what harbors suitable for . . . existed.' majorum : 'larger than usual' (98, vi.) ; the war-galleys and transports being larger than the coasting vessels of those regions. poterat : for the imperfect see 180, b.

## CHAP. 21.

1. Ad haec cognoscenda : with *praemittit*, not with *idoneum* (119). priusquam faceret : 'before making' (156, b). idoneum : 'a suitable person.' arbitratus : see 44, ii.

2. Huic : for the case see 52. ut exploratis . . . revertatur : for the subjunctive see 27 ; trans. 'to find out . . . and return' (47, c). quam primum : see 174, i.

3. in : trans. 'into the country of' (205, j). inde . . . trajectus : the straits of Dover are meant.

4. quam . . . classem : 'the fleet which' (173, c i.). ad : 'for.' Veneticum bellum : the year before (56 B.C.) the tribes on the north-west coast of Gaul, headed by the Veneti, combined to recover their liberty, but were defeated by the Romans in a sea-fight.

5. qui polliceantur : trans. 'to promise'; see 26. dare : irregularly used for *se daturos esse* (17; 22, vi.). imperio : see 52.

6. Quibus, eos : both referring to *legati* (50, iii. and fn.) ; trans. quibus by 'these' (172). liberaliter pollicitus : '(and) having made liberal promises,' lit. ? (203, d). permanerent : see 27. domum : see 125.

7. una : adv. Commium : with *militi*. superatis : referring to 'That day he overcame the Nervii' (57 B.C.), with which people

the Atrebates were allied (see pages 24-30). **constituerat**: 'had made.' **ibi**: i.e., among the Atrebates. **his**: of Gaul, not Britain. **magni habebatur**: 'was valued highly'; for *magni* see 88.

8. **quas . . . civitates**: 'all the states he can,' lit. 'the states which he can'; sc. *adire*. **possit**: see 175. **adeat**: with the same force as *ut adeat*, 'to visit'; so *hortetur* and *nuntiet* (186, 1, c, i.). **ut fidem sequantur**: 'to embrace the alliance,' depending on *hortetur*.

9. **regionibus**: 'country.' **quantum**, etc.: 'so far as one could who,' etc.; more lit. 'so far as opportunity could be given to one who'; for *tantum facultatis quantum* (174, ii.), 'according to such measure of opportunity as could be given.' The whole clause has the value of an adverbial acc. modifying the abl. absol. **auderet**: for mood see 32. **quacque** := *et quae*. **perspexisset**: see 36, i.

## CHAP. 22.

1. **parandarum**: see 119. **moratur**: for the tense see 153. **de . . . consilio**: 'for their previous conduct,' lit. 'with regard to the policy of previous time.' They had joined the Belgian confederacy against Caesar two years before, and the next year had been in alliance with the Veneti. **quod**, etc.: 'in that, being uncivilized,' etc. **consuetudinis**: see 90. This 'custom' was, as the Roman poet Virgil expressed it:

'The ways of peace to proclaim,  
Mercy to show to the fallen, the proud with battle to tame.'

**populo**: trans. by 'on' (79). **fecissent**: for mood see 147. **-que**: joins *excusarent* and *pollicerentur*. **ea quae**: 'whatever.' **imperasset**: see on *adisset*, ch. 20, 2.

2. **satis**: 'quite.' **post tergum**: 'behind him.' **has tantularum**, etc.: 'attention to such trifling matters,' lit. ? (85, ii.). **anteponendas**: sc. *esse*. **Britanniæ**: dat. (78, v. c); meaning the expedition against Britain. **iis imperat**: 'requires (or demands) of them' (55, iii.). **Quibus**: the hostages; trans. as in ch. 21, 6. **eos**: the Morini. **in fidem**: 'under his protection.'

3. **coactis contractisque**: the former of impressing into service, the latter of gathering to one place. **quot**: 'the number which,' lit. 'as many as'; **quot** is subject of **esse**. **quod**, etc.: 'all the ships of war he had besides,' lit. ? (86, i.). This clause furnishes the object of *distribuit*.

4. **Huc accedebant**: 'besides this there were,' lit. 'to this were added.' **ab**: used adverbially = 'away'; or trans. 'at a distance of.' **milibus**: see 101. **passuum**: see 86. **tenebantur quo minus**, etc.: 'were detained . . . and prevented from being able.' **Quo minus**, lit. 'whereby the less,' may also be written as one word. **possent**: see 139, a.

5. **ducendum**: for the gerundive with *do*, here agreeing with *exercitum*, see 121.

### CHAP. 23.

1. **ad navigandum**: see 114, c. **tertia vigilia**: the time from sunset to sunrise was divided into four equal watches (*vigiliae*), and the time from sunrise to sunset into twelve equal hours (*horae*), the length of each varying with the season. **solvit**: se. *naves*. **ulteriore**: 'farther,' i.e., up the coast. The exact localities are unknown.

2. **A quibus . . . administratum**: 'as these carried out their instructions,' lit. ? For the impersonal passive see 56. For *tar-dius*, 'too slowly,' see 98, vi. The result was that Caesar reached Britain *cum primis* (not *cum omnibus*) *navibus*. **expositas copias armatas**: 'the armed forces displayed.'

3. **Cujus**: 'this' (172). **haec**: 'as follows'; more fully explained by *atque . . . con-uebatur*. **ita anguste**, etc.: 'so closely bordered.' [Many editions read *angustis* (with *montibus*), meaning 'steep,' or 'close to the sea.']. **uti**: another form for *ut*; distinguish from *utī*. **in**: trans. 'to.' **posset**: for the mood see 29.

4. **dum convenienter**: depending on *exspectarit*: 'till . . . should assemble,' or more freely 'for . . . to assemble' (155, b). **ad**: 'until.'

5. **quae fieri vellent**: 'what he wished done' (21). **monuit . . . administrarentur**: 'instructed them to do everything (promptly)

at the signal and at the (proper) moment, as the science of warfare, and especially naval warfare, required, seeing that this (latter) was subject to rapid and uncertain changes.' *ut ratio . . . ut res*: *nt* = 'as,' and is repeated with each subject. *postularent*: for mood see 170, i. and 175. *ut quae*: i.e., *maritimae res*; 'inasmuch as these'; *ut* might be omitted, and merely heightens the causal force of *quae* and the subjunctive (171 and fn.). *monuit administrarentur*: with the same force as *monuit ut administrarentur*; cf. *adeat*, ch. 21, 8 (186, 1, c. i.). *ad nutum et ad tempus*: the former referring to *celerem*, the latter to *instabilem*.

6. *uno*: 'one and the same.' *dato, sublati*s: trans. by principal clauses (47, c). *litore*: abl. absolute; trans. by 'off.'

#### CHAP. 24.

1. *quo genere*: 'the sort of force that,' lit. 'which kind (i.e., of warriors),' referring to both *equitatu* and *essedariis* (173, c, ii.). *consuerunt*: cf. on ch. 20, 2, fn. *copiis*: see 103, ii. *egredi*: 'from landing' (22, i.). *prohibebant*: for tense see 180, d.

2. *has*: referring to what follows. *nisi . . . non*: 'only,' lit.? *militibus autem . . . desiliendum erat*: 'while the soldiers had to leap down' (120, ii.); similarly *consistendum* and *pugnandum*. For the dative see 120, i. *ignotis locis*: 'who were unacquainted with the ground'; lit. 'the ground (being) unknown'; abl. absolute (49). So *impeditis manibus*. *oppressis*: dat. agreeing with *militibus*.

3. *cum illi*: 'whereas the enemy.' *ex arido*: modifying *conjicerent*. *omnibus . . . locis*: in contrast to *ignotis . . . manibus*, section 2; 'having all their limbs free and being perfectly familiar with the ground,' lit.? *insuefactos*: 'who were trained (to this).' *conjicerent, incitarent*: see 151, fn.

4. *generis*: see 90. *eadem . . . quo*: for agreement see 11, i.; for *quo* = 'as' see 174. *consuerant*: see ch. 20, 2, fn. *uti, utebantur*: 'display' or 'show.'

#### CHAP. 25.

1. *Quod*: object of *animadvertisit* (172, a). *naves*: subject of *removeri, incitari* and *constitui*. *quarum*: 'whose.' *inusitatiōr*:

'less familiar,' i.e., than that of the *nares onerariae*. **et motus**, etc.; 'and (whose) movements were quicker for service,' i.e., 'were more easily managed.' **ad**: 'on.' **apertum latus**: i.e., the right side, unprotected by shields. **quae res**: 'a manœuvre which,' lit.? **usui**: as in eh. 20, 2.

2. **remorum motu**: the Britons used only sails with their large vessels. **paulum modo**: 'but only a little.'

3. **atque**; 'and now.' **cunctantibus**: trans. by 'while' (41, a; 47, a.). **qui aquilam ferebat**: 'the eagle-bearer.' For **qui = is qui** see 173, a. **ut . . . eveniret**: see 27. **ea res**: 'his (lit. that) undertaking.' **legioni**: see 79. **inquit**: 'cried'; for position and use see 18, vi. **Desilite**: the imperative. **vultis**: from *volo*. **praestitiero**: trans. freely by future; for the force of the future perfect see 184, ii.

4. **voce magna**: 'in a loud voiee' (103).

5. **inter se**: 'one another,' lit.? (164, ii.). **ne . . . admitteretur**: 'not to ineur,' lit.? (27). **dedecus**; i.e., the loss of the eagle. **universi**: 'in a body'; section 6 shows that Caesar is speaking only of those on the same ship as the standard-bearer.

6. **Hos item**, etc.: 'when those in the nearest ships saw them, they also,' etc.; lit. 'when also from the nearest ships they saw these.' **hostibus**: see 52. **appropinquarunt**: see eh. 20, 2, fn.

#### CHAP. 26.

1. **Pugnatum est**: see 56. **alius alia ex navi**: 'the men from the different ships,' lit. '[one man from one ship and] another from another ship.' For this idiom see 168, a. **quibuscumque . . . occurrerat**: 'to whatever . . . they fell in with.' For the dat. see 78, v. c. For the tense see 183, b. So *conspexerant*, section 2, and *conspexerat*, section 4.

2. **vero**: 'while.' **ubi**: 'whenever.' **adoriebantur**: trans. by 'would' (180, b). So *circumsistebant* and *conjiciebant*. **plures**: nominative; see Vocabulary.

3. **in universos**: 'at the main body'; opposed to *singulares*.

4. **item**: '(and)also.' **quos . . . his**: freely, 'to whomsoever,' transposing the elauses; or 'whenever . . . any . . . to them,'

without transposing. *jussit, submittebat*: notice the change of tense; the perfect expresses a single command; for the imperfect see 180, b. *his*: see 79.

5. *simul* := *simul atque*. *suis consecutis*: 'with their comrades following' (50, ii.). *neque*: 'but . . . not.' *longius*: 'any distance' (98, vi.) *ad pristinam*, etc.: 'to complete Caesar's usual good fortune,' lit.? For dat. see 80, e.

## CHAP. 27.

1. *proelio*: trans. by 'in' (99). *de*: trans. 'to treat for.' *daturos*: sc. *se* (18, x.). *quaeque*: as in ch. 21, 9. *imperasset*: cf. ch. 22, 1.

2. *quem supra*, etc.: 'who, as I stated before, was sent,' etc.; lit.? (18, vi.). *demonstraveram a Caesare*: notice that Caesar the writer (first person) is always distinguished from Caesar the commander (third person). For the tense see 183, a, i.

3. *Hunc, illi*: object and subject respectively of *comprehendent*. *egressum*: modifying *hunc*; trans. 'on his landing' or 'when he landed.' *cum deferret*: 'although he was bearing' (65, a). *modo*: 'in the capacity of'; or freely, 'as' (103). *tum*: trans. by 'now.'

4. *rei*: 'act.' *imprudentiam*: i.e., their ignorance of the customs observed between nations. *ut ignosceretur*: 'that pardon be granted (them),' or 'to be pardoned' (27 and 57; see also 203, d).

5. *quod . . . intulissent*: see 147 and 198, b. *cum . . . missis . . . petissent*: 'although they had sent . . . and sought,' lit.? (65, a). *petissent*: see ch. 20, 2, fn. *ignoscere*: sc. *se*: notice the tense (15, a). *imprudentiae*: for dat. see 52.

6. *illi*: see 160, i. *arcessitam . . . daturos*: sc. *esse*; 'that they would send for . . . and give up,' lit.? The tense of *arcessitam* is relative to *daturos*, not to *dixerunt* (41, b). *diebus*: see 131.

7. *suos*: subject of *remigrare*. *agros*: 'their lands.'

## CHAP. 28.

1. *His rebus*: 'by this means,' lit.? *post diem . . . ventum*: 'three days after he came' = *die quarto postquam*, etc.; *post* (the

adverb) coming before *die quarto* was felt to have the force of a preposition, and made to govern the acc. **quartum**: the Romans in reckoning from one date to another counted in both extremes, where we include but one. **est ventum**: see 56. **naves**: subject of *solverunt*, a rare use. **demonstratum est**: 'mention has been made.' (203, d.) **superiore**: in ch. 23, 1, called *ulteriorem*. **vento**: see 103.

2. **viderentur**: 'were in sight.' **posset**: see 29. So *refercentur* and *dejicerentur*. **inferiorem**: i.e., towards the S.W. **propius occasum**: see 70, i. **sui**: 'to themselves' (85, ii.); another reading is *suo*, with the same trans. (85, iv.).

3. **quae tamen**, etc.: 'and as (*cum*) these had nevertheless (i.e., in spite of the danger) cast anchor, and were filling,' etc.; or *tamen* may apply to the whole sentence, and be opposed to the words just preceding, 'however as these.' **necessario . . . profectae . . . petierunt**: 'they were compelled to put out . . . and make for,' lit.? **adversa nocte**: 'in spite of the darkness,' lit. 'the night facing them' (46).

#### CHAP. 29.

1. **nocte**: that of August 30-31, 55 B.C., according to astronomical calculations. **esset**: 'there was' (31). **qui dies**: 'a time which.' (173, c, ii.). **maritimos aestus maximos**: 'very high tides'; our spring-tides. **consuevit**: 'is wont,' or trans. by 'usually.' **incognitum**: the tides at the straits of Dover are 20 or 25 feet high, those in the Mediterranean insignificant.

2. **uno**. as in ch. 23, 6. **naves . . . complebat**: keep the Latin order and trans. by the passive voice. So *onerarias . . . afflictabat*. **quibus**: 'in (lit. with) which.' **transportandum . . . curaverat**: 'had had . . . brought over' (121). **ad**: 'at.' **neque ulla**: 'and no,' lit.? **administrandi, auxiliandi**: the former referring to those on board, the latter to those on shore. **administrandi**: sc. *naves*.

3. **fractis**: trans. both abl. absol. and *cum* by 'as.' **amissis**: trans. 'having lost' or 'through the loss of.' **magna**, etc.; 'great alarm inevitably (or as was inevitable) arose throughout,' etc.;

lit.? **id quod**: 'a thing which' (173, d); **id** is in apposition with the clause *magna . . . facta est*, and **quod** is subject of *accidere* (141, b). **exercitus**: for case see 85.

4. **neque aliae**: trans. by 'no other.' **possent**: see 32. **omnibus constabat**: 'it was generally agreed'; more lit. 'agreed among all'; for dat. see 80, b, ii. **hiemari oportere**: 'that they must winter' (56 and 140, b). **in hiemem**: 'for the winter.'

## CHAP. 30.

1. This sentence may be conveniently broken into four in English, viz., after *collocuti*, *transportaverat* and *producere* (204); trans. as if the Latin read *collocuti sunt; intellegebant et cognoscebant; itaque duxerunt; nam confidebant.* **principes**: subject of *duxerunt*, section 2. **inter se**: see 164, ii. **Romanis deesse**: freely, 'that the Romans were without,' lit.? **quae**: referring to *castrorum*. **hoc angustiora**: 'all the smaller' or 'more contracted for this reason' (101, ii. c and fn.).

2. **optimum factu**: 'the best thing to do'; for the supine see 117. **duxerunt**: 'concluded.' **rebellione facta**: 'to renew the war and.' **prohibere, producer**: subjects of *esse*. **frumento**: see 93; so *reditu*. **rem**: 'the campaign.' **superatis**: trans. by 'if' (47, a; 48). So *interclusis*. **confidebant**: see 146.

3. **rursus**: not 'a second time,' but referring to the return to their former attitude. **agris**: as in ch. 27, 7. **deducere**: 'to bring down,' i.e., to the coast.

## CHAP. 31.

1. **ex eventu navium**: 'from what had happened to his ships,' (85, ii.). **ex eo, quod**: 'from the fact that' (198). **fore, etc.**: 'suspected that that would happen which (actually) did occur.' **accidit**: for the mood see 175, i.

2. **ad**: 'for or to meet.' **subsidia comparabat**: 'he set about making provision' (180, d). **quae . . . naves, earum** := *earum navium quae*, 'of the ships which' (173, c, i.). **quae**: 'whatever'; sc. *ea* as subject of *comportari*. **res**: 'purpose.' **erant**: for the mood see 175, i. **continenti**: see on V. ch. 8, i.

3. **cum . . . administraretur**: 'as the soldiers worked,' cf. ch. 23, 2. **studio**: see 103. **amisis**: trans. by 'although.' **reliquis . . . effecit**: 'he made it possible to sail satisfactorily with the rest,' lit. 'he brought it about (or managed) that the voyage could be made,' etc. **navigari**: see 56. **posset**: see 33, v. **effecit**: notice the tense as compared with that used in section 2 (180, c, iii.).

## CHAP. 32.

1. **geruntur**: see 153. **ex consuetudine**: 'as usual'; to be taken with *una*, not *missa*. **frumentatum**: the supine (116). **ad**: 'up to.' **interposita**: 'having arisen' i.e., between the time of the surrender and the present. **cum**: 'as' or 'for,' explaining the preceding words. **hominum**: 'of the people or natives.' **ventitaret**: 'kept coming'; a frequentative verb.\* **quam consuetudo ferret**: 'than usual,' 'than was customary,' lit. 'than custom brought' (175). **in ea . . . partem**: 'was visible in the direction in which'; for *partem* see 173, b.

2. **id, quod erat**: 'what was actually the case.' *Id* is explained by the appositive clause *aliquid id . . . consilii*. **aliquid consilii**: 'some plan' (86, i.). **initum**: sc. *esse*. **in stationibus**: 'on guard'; the plural because of the four gates of a Roman camp. **ex**: 'of' (86, iii.). **in stationem succedere**: 'to take their place on guard'; the singular of the general idea of guarding. **reliquas**: i.e., four of the ten cohorts in the legion. **armari**: 'to arm themselves' (164, iv.).

3. **paulo longius**: 'some little distance' (98, vi.). **conferta**: trans. by 'as,' giving the reason for *ex omnibus partibus*.

4. **una erat reliqua**: 'only one remained.'

5. **dispersos**: sc. *nostros*; trans. by a 'when' clause; so *occupatos*. **incertis ordinibus**: giving the reason for *perturbarerant*;

\* **FREQUENTATIVES, INTENSIVES, OR ITERATIVES** are verbs of the first conjugation, ending in **-it** or **-itō**, which denote *repeated* or *vigorous* action; as, *jactō*, *brandish*, from *jactō*, *hurl*. They are formed generally from the supine stem of verbs, but when formed from the first conjugation end in **-ittō** (not **-ittō**). Double frequentatives in **-ittōtō** occur, based on other iteratives in **-itō**; as *ventitōtō*, *keep coming*.

it was difficult to find their proper places in the cohorts. The pluperfects in sections 4 and 5 tell what had happened prior to Caesar's arrival in section 3.

## CHAP. 33.

1. **hoc**: 'as follows.' **ex essedis pugnae**: 'of chariot fighting'; see 85, iv. fn. **per omnes partes**: 'in all directions.' **ipso terrore equitum**: 'by the very (or mere) terror caused by their horses'; for the gen. see 84. **ordines**: i.e., of their opponents. **equitum**: i.e., their own. Caesar had no cavalry with him. **insinuaverunt**: see 182, c.

2. **ita**: 'in such a way.' **illi**: i.e., those who had dismounted to fight on foot. **premantur, habeant**: trans. by the pres. indic., and for the mood see 177, i. and 29 respectively, and also 60; or trans. by 'should' and 'would' respectively, and for the mood see 63 (and 29).

3. **tantum efficiunt**: 'become so expert,' lit.? **loco**: 'ground.' **per**: 'along.' **consuerint**; see ch. 20, 2, fn., and for the mood 29.

## CHAP. 34.

1. **quibus rebus**: abl. of means. **perturbatis nostris**: may be dative with *auxilium tulit* (79), or abl. absolute. **novitate**: trans. by 'because of' (96). **adventu**: see 130.

2. **quo facto**: 'in spite of this,' more lit., 'although this was done' (48). **ad**: 'for,' depending on *alienum*. **suo loco**: 'on his own ground' (127, ii.). **brevi . . . intermisso**: 'after a short interval,' lit.?

3. **haec**: referring to the whole incident. **occupatis**: trans. by 'while.' **qui erant reliqui**: 'those who remained,' i.e., the Britons spoken of in ch. 32, 1, *pars . . . remaneret* (173, a). **discesserunt**: i.e., from their homes to join their countrymen (see ch. 30, 3).

4. **secutae sunt**: 'there followed' (12, a, iv.). **continerent, prohiberent**: for the mood see 32.

5. **quanta** 'what' or 'how favorable.' **facienda**: 'for obtaining' (119). **sui liberandi**: see 119, iv. **expulissent**: for the mood and tense see 187, b, i.

## CHAP. 35.

1. **idem . . . fore**: 'that the same thing would happen.' **ut . . . effugerent**: 'namely, that . . . would escape,' in apposition with *idem* (197). **si**: 'even if.' **essent pulsi**: for the mood and tense cf. on *expulissent*, eh. 34, 5. **dicatum est**: cf. on *demonstratum est*, eh. 28, 1.

2. **diutius**: 'any longer,' i.e., than the beginning of the battle. (98, vi.).

3. **secuti . . . occiderunt**: se. *nostri*. **tanto spatio**: freely, 'as far,' lit. 'by way of' (i.e., over) as great a space' (99, ii. a). **quantum . . . efficere**: 'as their speed and strength allowed,' or 'as their running powers held out' (a case of hendiadys), lit.? *Cursus*=rate of running, *vires*=powers of endurance.

## CHAP. 36.

2. **His numerum duplicavit**: 'from these he required double the number,' lit., 'for these he doubled,' etc. **die**: 'the time,' or 'the season'; *dies* is sometimes fem. in the sing., chiefly in the sense of a fixed time. **propinqua . . . navibus**: trans. by 'as' (49).

3. **medium noctem**: 'midnight' (86. iv. b).

4. **quae**: 'the ships.' **ex . . . duae**: we should say 'two of the transports,' lit.? **quos reliqui**: 'as the others,' lit. 'which the other (crews reached)'; *reliqui*, masc., by sense constriction (13, N.B.). **infra**: i.e., towards the S.W.

## CHAP. 37.

1. **Quibus navibus**: the two just mentioned. **castra**: that of Sulpicius Rufus, ch. 22, 6. **proficiscens**: 'on setting out' (41). **primo**: adverb. **non ita magno**: 'with a not very large,' lit.? **si . . . nollent**: 'if they did not wish to be killed' (175); for *sece*, see 22, v.

2. **ad clamorem**: 'in answer to the shouting.' **hominum**: as in ch. 32, 1; with *milia* (86). **suis auxilio**: 'to aid his men' (81).

3. **amplius horis**: 'more than,' etc. *Horis* may be the abl. of

comparison, equivalent to *quam horas* (98), or the abl. of time within which (131, i.), uninfluenced by *amplius* (98, iv.). **paucis**: 'but a few.'

4. **Postea quam**: answering to *primo*, section 1; generally written as one word.

## CHAP. 38.

2. **siccitates**: trans. by the singular; in Latin the plural of an abstract noun (here due to the plural *paludum*) is used to denote various instances of a quality or its existence in different objects. **quo . . . haberent**: 'had no place to which to retreat,' or 'had no place of retreat,' more lit. 'had not whither they could retreat' (32). **quo . . . usi**: trans. immediately after *paludum*, to which *quo* refers. For the agreement of *quo* sec 13, i. **perfugio**: 'as a place of refuge' (55, v.). **fuerant usi**: see 182, i. **in potestatem pervenerunt**: 'fell into the hands,' lit.?

3. **omnes**: nom. **in silvas**: see 127, iii.

4. **in**: 'among' or 'in the country of' (205, j). **neglexerunt**: add in trans. 'to do so.'

5. **His rebus**: referring to the whole of the summer's campaign. **ex litteris Caesaris**: 'in consequence of despatches from Caesar.' **dierum**: see 87. **supplicatio**: 'a public thanksgiving,' celebrated by solemn sacrifice in the temples at Rome. At the end of the campaign two years before, Caesar had written, "for these acts a thanksgiving for fifteen days was decreed, an honor which up to that time no one had received."



Roman War Galleys.

## NOTES ON CAESAR, BOOK V.

---

### CHAP. I.

1. **consulibus**: see 49. **discedens ab**: 'on leaving.' **Italiam**: the province of Cisalpine Gaul (*Gallia Citerior*), in which Caesar spent each winter, attending to its administration. **ut**: 'as,' in which sense it takes the indic. **legionibus**: see 78, v. c. **quam plurimas possent**: sc. *aedificare*; 'as many as they could' (174, i.). For the mood of *possent* see 175. **uti aedicandas curarent**: 'to have built' (121). For the tense of *curarent* see 78, iv.

2. **Ad**: 'for.' **onerandi**: trans. by 'in.' **subductiones**: cf. on *siccitates*, IV., ch. 38, 2. **facit humiliores**: sc. *eas*. **quam quibus**: 'than those which'; sc. *eas* (98, iii.). **nostro mari**: the name Mediterranean was not then in use. **id eo magis**: 'all the more so'; with *id* sc. *facit* ('he does'), and cf. on *hoc*, IV., ch. 30, 1. **minus magnos**: 'smaller.' **fieri**: 'are caused.' **transportandam**: for the agreement see 11, i. **reliquis maribus**: the various parts of the Mediterranean were given separate names by the Romans.

3. **actuarias**: pred. adj.; *nares actuariae* were swift galleys, impelled by oars as well as by sails. **fieri**: for the infin. pass. with *impero* see 22, vii. **quam ad rem**: 'to which end.'

4. **Ea quae sunt**: 'what is.' **Hispania**: Spain was rich in iron and material for ropes.

5. **Ipse**: in contrast with the *legati* of section 1, who were left to carry out his orders. **conventibus**: the governor of a province was also its supreme judge. **Illyricum**: another of Caesar's three provinces. **finitimam**: i.e., to the *Pirustae*. **audiebat**: 'he heard'; the tense implies that the news came more than once.

6. **imperat**: cf. on IV., ch. 22, 2.

7. *nihil*: 'none,' lit. ? *publico consilio*: 'with the sanction of the community (or state)'; as opposed to the work of irresponsible individuals. *demonstrant*: coordinate with *mittunt*, not with *doceant*. *omnibus rationibus*: 'in every way.' *de*: 'for.'

8. *ad*: 'by.' *diem*: for the gender see on IV., ch. 36, 2. *fecerint*: 'they do.' For the mood and tense see 187, b.

9. *ad diem*: 'at the (appointed) day.' *dat*: 'he appoints.' *aestiment*: 'assess.'

### CHAP. 2.

2. *circuitis . . . invenit*: 'he visits . . . and finds.' *studio*: with *instructas*. *in summa inopia*: '(although) amidst,' or freely 'in spite of,' or 'although there was,' etc. *cujus*: sc. *gene* is *nares*; trans. freely 'which,' as though it were *quod*, the object of *demonstravimus*. *longas*: sc. *nares*. *neque multum*, etc.: 'and that they are almost ready to be launched'; lit. 'and that it is not far from this but that,' etc. (139, c). *diebus*: see 131.

3. *Collaudatis*: more emphatic than *laudatis*. *negotio*: see 78, v. c. *quid fieri velit*: cf. on IV., ch. 23, 5. *omnes*: sc. *nares*. *portum Itium*: the exact locality is unknown. *militum*: see 87; modifying *trajectum*. *huic rei*: 'for this purpose,' i.e., for bringing the fleet safely to its appointed place. *satis militum*: 'a sufficient force,' lit. ? (86, i.).

4. *concilia*: Caesar regularly established these councils or assemblies among the conquered tribes, whom he thus kept in official relations with himself. *veniebant, parebant*: see 180, b.

### CHAP. 3.

1. *plurimum*: adverb. *equitatu*: see 102. *supra*: Book III. speaks of 'the Treveri, who are next to the river Rhine.' The last words of chap. 2 show why he here dwells on their position.

2. *inter se*: 'with each other' (164, ii.).

3. *alter*: here 'the latter,' lit. 'the one.' *cognitum est*: see 56. *se . . . futuros*: with *confirmavit*. *in officio*: 'true to their allegiance,' lit. ? *populi*: objective gen. (85, ii.); trans. by 'with,' not 'of.'

4. **cogere**: depending on *instituit*, and connected by (*iis*)*que* with *parare*. **per**: 'by reason of.' **in armis esse**: 'be under arms,' or 'bear arms.' **ingenti magnitudine**: see 105; modifying *quae* with the force of an appositive adj.; freely 'which is of vast extent and,' etc. **medios**: see 86, iv. b.

5. **Cingetorigis**: cf. on *populi*, section 3. **de suis privatim rebus petere**: 'to seek their own private advantage,' lit. ? **privatim**: the position makes it almost equal to the adj. *privatis*. **civitati**: see 79; in contrast with *suis privatim rebus*. **possent**: for mood see 147. **ne**: 'lest' or 'that'; for the subjunctive see 138.

6. **sese noluisse**: sc. 'saying' or 'who say,' implied in *legatos mittit* (191); *sese* refers to the subject of *mittit*. **idcirco**: explained by *quo . . . laberetur*. **quo . . . contineret**: see 28, iii. **ne . . . laberetur**: 'lest . . . should' (24). **discessu**: abl. of time, suggesting also the cause.

7. **permitteret**: see 192. **in castra**: see 127, iv. **sus s, civitatis**. both modifying *fortunas*.

#### CHAP. 4.

1. **qua de causa**: 'why.' **instituto**: 'original,' lit. ? **omnibus . . . comparatis**: modifying the preceding words.

2. **in**: 'among.' **filio**: in apposition with *his*. **evocaverat**: sc. *Caesar*. **consolatus**: sc. *est*; because of the enforced exile (as hostages) of himself and his kinsmen.

3. **nihilo**: see 101. **principibus, hos**: the same persons; see 50, iii. fn. **quod**: conjunction. **cum . . . tum**: 'not only . . . but also.' (151, v.). **merito . . . fieri**: 'that he was treating him according to his desert,' for *a se fieri = se facere*, see 56. **merito**: see 103, iii. **magni interesse**: see 53, b, ii.; the subject is the clause *auctoritatem . . . valere*. **cujus . . . perspexisset**: 'seeing that he had observed his,' etc.; for subj. see 171. **suos**: referring to *eius* (165, ii.). **tam**: omit in trans.

4. **factum**: noun. **suam . . . minui**: in apposition with *id factum*; 'that . . . should be lessened.' **qui fuisse**: 'whereas (or

while) he had been' (171). **animo**: see 105. **hoc dolore**: 'at this grievance' (96); more lit. 'through indignation at this' (205, c).

## CHAP. 5.

2. **factae erant, erant profectae**: for the mood see 175, i. **eodem**: adverb. **omnibus rebus**: 'in all respects,' lit. 'with all things.'

3. **numero**: modifying *milium*; for the abl. see 102. *milium*: modifying *equitatus* (87); trans. 'the cavalry, four thousand in number.'

4. **obsidum loco**: 'as hostages,' lit. ? (127, ii.). **cum abesset**: 'while he was absent,' or 'in his absence,' for the fut. ind. of the actual thought (187, b; 178, ii.).

## CHAP. 6.

1. **ante . . . dictum est**: 'we have spoken before.' Book I. tells how four years before Dumnorix had stirred up hostility to Caesar among the Aedui. Caesar had pardoned him, but had ever since carefully watched his conduct. **eum**: sc. *esse*. **animi**: 'pride' or 'ambition'; for the case see 87.

2. **Accedebat** **huc quod**: 'besides this'; more lit. 'to this was added the fact that' (198). **deferri**: notice the tense (15, a). **quod dictum**: 'a statement which.' **neque**: 'but yet . . . not.'

3. **factum**: se. *esse*, or as in ch. 4, 4. **Ille**: 'Dumnorix,' **omnibus**: 'all manner of.' **petere contendit**: 'sought earnestly,' lit. ? **quod . . . timeret**: 'on the ground that he was unaccustomed . . . and dreaded'; for the mood see 177. **navigandi**: see 90. **diceret**: for the mood see 177, ii.

4. **id**: the request to be left behind. **sibi**: 'him'; indirect object.

5. **territare**: 'he kept alarming'; historical infin. (112); for the form see IV., ch. 32, 1, fn. **fieri esse**: in trans. supply 'say-ing' from *territare* (191). **ut . . . spoliaretur, ut . . . necaret**: see 197, a, and 196, c. **nobilitate**: see 93. **quos**: trans. after its antecedent *hos* (5, i.). **vereretur**: see 175. **ut . . . traductos necaret**: 'to carry over . . . and kill' (43, c; 50, iii.).

6. *reliquis*: i.e., the other *principes* than himself. *interponere*, *poscere*: cf. on *territare*, section 5. *quod*: 'whatever.' *intellexissent*: for the mood and tense see 187, b, i. *ut . . . administrarent*: giving the contents of the oath (196). *communi consilio*: 'by concerted action.' *deferebantur*: not once only, hence imperfect.

## CHAP. 7.

1. *tantum dignitatis tribuebat*: 'had such respect,' lit? (86, i.). *coercendum*: sc. *esse statuebat* (56 and 200, a). *quibuscumque . . . posset*: 'by whatever means he could'; for the mood see 175.

2. *longius*: 'still farther,' i.e., than at present. *prospicendum*: sc. *esse statuebat* (56 and 200, a). *quid nocere*: 'to do any harm'; for the acc. see 72. *sibi*: i.e., Caesar. *ne . . . posset*: see 28, i.

3. *commoratus*: 'while waiting,' or 'as he was waiting'; for the tense see 44, ii. *omnis*: omit in trans. *ut . . . contineret*: see 27: so *cognosceret*.

4. *milites*: the infantry, belonging to the Roman legions, as opposed to the cavalry, who were native auxiliaries.

5. *impeditis*: 'while . . . were occupied.' *insciente Caesare*: 'without Caesar's knowledge' (49). *domum*: 'for home' (125).

6. *omnibus rebus*: 'everything (else).' *retrahi*: cf. on *jieri*, ch. 1, 3.

7. *vim faciat*: 'offers violence or makes resistance'; for fut. indic. of direct discourse (187, b). *se absente*: 'in his (i.e., Caesar's) absence.' *qui . . . neglexisset*: 'seeing that he,' etc.; for the mood cf. on *perspexisset*, ch. 4, 3. *praesentis*: 'in his presence'; lit. '(of him) while present.' *imperium*: 'authority.'

8. *enim*: 'in fact.' Another reading is *autem*. *clamitans*: see IV., ch. 32, 1, fn. *liberum, liberae civitatis*: both predicates of *se esse*; trans. 'a free man and a citizen of a free state' (86).

9. *erat imperatum*: see 57.

## CHAP. 8.

1. *continenti*: elsewhere in Caesar, *continenti*, with the regular abl. ending of an I-stem. *pro tempore et pro re*: 'as time and circumstances suggested,' lit. 'in accordance with,' etc.

2. *pari quem*: 'the same as' (174). *ad*: 'about.' *provectus*, etc.: 'was carried forward . . . but as the wind fell . . . could not keep,' etc. *longius*: 'too far' (98, vi.). *orta luce*: 'at sunrise,' lit. ? (50, ii.). *sub sinistra*: 'on the left'; the current had carried the vessels out of the Channel into the North Sea. *relictam*: 'behind him.'

3. *qua*: 'where'; adv. See IV., ch. 23, 6. *egressum*: a noun.

4. *admodum laudanda*: 'deserving of great praise' (118). *vectoriis . . . navigiis*: 'with transport ships, and those, too, heavily laden.' *non intermisso*: 'without relaxing,' or trans. by principal clause coordinate with *adaequarunt*, for which cf. IV., ch. 25, 6.

5. *Accessum est navibus*: 'the ships reached,' lit. ? (56). *Navibus* is abl. of means. *neque hostis*: 'but no enemy.'

6. *cum*: 'although' (65, a). *quae cum annotinis*, etc.: 'of which, including those of the previous year . . . eight hundred were in sight'; for the nom. *quae* see 86, iv., a. *quisque*: probably confined to rich officers and Gallic nobles. *sui commodi*: 'for his own convenience'; a predicate possessive gen. (83, i.), here expressing purpose. Some editions read *sui commodi causa*. *amplius octingentae*: for the case see 98, iv.

### CHAP. 9.

1. *castris*: for the dat. see 78, ii., or 81. *qui . . . essent*: 'to protect the ships,' lit. ? (81). *de tertia vigilia*: 'early in the third watch'; *de* suggests that a portion of the watch had passed. The third of the four night watches would begin at midnight. *eo minus*: cf. on *eo magis*, ch. 1, 2. *navibus*: see 79. *relinquebat*: notice the tense. *et*: omit in trans.; another reading is *Ei*.

3. *equitatu*: see 103, ii. *ex loco superiore*: belonging to the whole clause, not to *prohibere*; the north bank was higher than the south. *nostros prohibere*: 'to check the advance of our men.'

4. *egregie munitum*: 'well protected.' *opere*: 'by art,' lit. 'by fortification'; explained by section 5. *ut videbantur*: 'as it seemed, or apparently,' lit. ? (18, vii.).

6. *ingredi prohibebant*: cf. on IV., ch. 24, 1.

7. **testudine**: a *testudo* was formed by the soldiers holding their shields over their heads so that they overlapped and formed a continuous cover, which received its name from its resemblance to a 'tortoise shell.' **aggere**: this was to put them on a level with those defending the walls. **ad**: 'against or close to.' **paucis**: as in IV., ch. 37, 3.

8. **eos**: i.e., *milites*, subject of *prosequi*. **fugientes**: object of *prosequi*; see 44, i. a. **longius**: cf. on ch. 8, 2, or on IV., ch. 26, 5. **munitioni**: see 81.



**Testudo (From Trajan's Column).**

#### CHAP. 10.

1. **postridie ejus diei**: 'on the very next day,' lit. 'on the morrow of that day' (83, iv.). **in**: 'on,' lit. 'with a view to.' **expeditionem**: strictly, a rapid march of a flying column of *expediti* (ch. 2, 4).

2. **aliquantum itineris**: 'some distance,' lit? (86, i.). **extremi**: 'only the last (or rearguard),' i.e., of the troops sent out. **in litore**:

another reading is *in litus* (127, iii.). **neque subsisterent**: 'would (lit. did) not hold'; for the mood see 175; for the tense see 180, b.

3. **eo concursu**: 'the colliding thus resulting'; *eo* refers to what is implied in the preceding lines.

### CHAP. 11.

1. **revocari**: i.e., from pursuing the enemy. **resistere**: here meaning 'to halt.' Another reading is *itinere desistere* (93).

2. **eadem quae**: 'the same state of affairs as' (174). **sic**: 'to this extent,' or 'with this qualification,' here in a limiting sense, restricting the force of the previous words *eadem . . . perspicit*, and explained by the following *ut* clause (33, vi.). **amissis**, etc.: with concessive force. **reliquae posse viderentur**: 'the rest, it seemed, could.' lit. ? (18, vii.)

4. **scribit ut instituat**: see 28, v. **quam plurimas posset**: cf. on ch. 1, i. **iis legionibus**: 'with the aid of,' etc. (99, i.). **posset**, **sunt**: for the mood see 175, i. For the change of tense see 190, vi.

5. **multae**: for the agreement see 11, i. **operae ac laboris**: see 87, iii. **commodissimum**: 'the best plan.' **naves subduci**: see 110, fn., or trans. by changing the voice.

6. **ne nocturnis**, etc.: freely 'not allowing the soldiers' work to cease even at night,' lit. ? **ad**: 'with respect to.'

7. **quas ante**: sc. *reliquerat*.

8. **summa imperii**, etc.: 'the chief command and direction of the war,' lit. 'the chief part of the command and of the directing of the war.' **summa**: a noun, abl. absol. **communi consilio**: 'by common consent.' **dividit**: trans. by changing the voice. **a mari**: i.e., from the south shore where Caesar had landed.

9. **Huic cum**, etc.: 'between this man and the other states . . . had arisen'; for the dat. see 78, v. c., as also for *bello imperioque*.

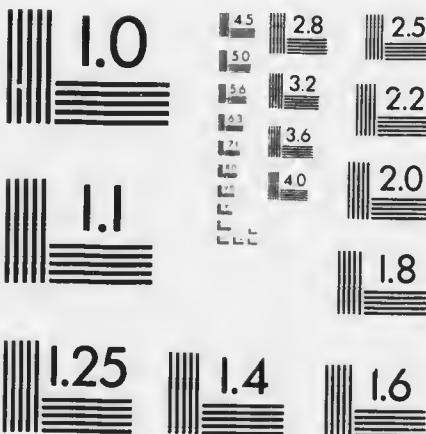
### CHAP. 12.

1. **quos . . . dicunt**: *quos* is subject of *natos (esse)*; *proditum (esse)* depends on *dicunt*, and has for its subject *quos natos (esse)*. Trans. 'of whom they themselves state there is a tradition that they were born,' or more freely 'who, according to their own



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street  
Rochester, New York 14609 USA  
(716) 482-0300 - Phone  
(716) 288-5000 - Fax

tradition, were born.' Another reading is *ipsa*, with *insula*. **memoria**: abl. of means.

2. **pars**: sc. *incolitur*. **qui omnes**: 'all of whom' (86, iv., a). **iis**: 'the.' **quibus . . . pervenerunt**: freely 'from which they have sprung and have come there.' **civitatibus**: see 173, b.

3. **aedificia**: sc. *sunt*. **consimilia**: appositive, not predicative. **Gallicis**: sc. *aedificiis*; 'those of the Gauls.'

4. **aut . . . aut**: 'partly . . . partly.' **ad . . . examinatis**: 'of a fixed weight,' lit. ? **pro**: 'as.'

5. **mediterraneis**: the tin mines of Cornwall are referred to, Caesar mistaking the distant west, of which he had heard, for an inland district. **maritimis**: iron was once mined in the south of England, now chiefly in the north. **ejus**: i.e., iron, which, being a hard metal to work, has generally been neglected by native tribes, even where it is abundant. **importato**: in emphatic position, 'the bronze they use is imported' (3, a). **cujusque**: 'every' (169, a). **praeter**, etc.: an error on Caesar's part.

6. **fas**: sc. *esse*. **haec**: neut. plur. referring to the animals just mentioned (13, ii.). **animi**: 'amusement,' lit. 'the feelings.' **Loca**: 'the climate,' lit. 'the country.' **remissioribus**: 'less severe' (44, i., b); for the case see 49.

### CHAP. 13.

1. **natura**: 'in shape' (102). **triquetra**: sc. *est*. **cujus**: 'of it.' **alter**: 'one,' corresponding to *inferior*. **ad**: 'at.' **quo**: adverb. **appelluntur**: 'put in.'

2. **alterum**: sc. *latus*; 'the second side.' **ad Hispaniam**: as the ancients had no compasses, and seldom sailed out of sight of land, they easily fell into error as to the relative position of distant places. **qua ex parte**: see 127, v. **dimidio minor**: 'half as large,' lit. ? (101). **pari spatio**, etc.: freely 'at the same distance as the passage from Gaul to Britain'; lit. 'of the same length of passage across as is (the passage across) from Gaul to Britain.' For the abl. *spatio* see 105; with *est* sc. *transmissus*; for *atque* see 174.

3. **hoc medio cursu**: 'the middle of this passage,' i.e., to Ireland (86, iv. b). **Mona**: this name was afterwards given to Anglesea,

but probably the Isle of Man is here meant. **subjectae**: sc. *esse*. **insulae**: the Hebrides or Orkney islands probably. **nonnulli**: though Caesar was the first Roman to land in Britain, it had been visited by Greeks. **sub**: 'at the time of.' **bruma**: for *brevima=brevissima*, sc. *dies*. **esse**: the subject is *noctem*.

4. **Nos**: contrasted with *nonnulli*. For the plural see 157, ii. : cf. the use of *demonstravimus* in ch. 2, 2 and ch. 3, 1. **reperi-bamus**: trans. by 'could'; the tense implies frequent attempts during Caesar's stay. **nisi**: 'except that.' **certis mensuris**: 'by exact measurements.' **ex aqua**: 'by water,' i.e., with a water-clock or *clepsydra*, which worked on the principle of the hour-glass.

5. **ut . . . opinio**: 'as their belief goes'; freely 'as they believe.' **illorum**: referring to *nonnulli* of section 3. **milium**: sc. *passuum*; for the case see 87, iii.

6. **Tertium**: se. *latns*. **angulus**: the same as *alter angulus*, section 1. **milia**: see 128; another reading is *milium*, as in section 5. **in**: 'in'; the acc. because of the notion of extending over space.

7. **vicies centum**: 'two thousand.' **milium**: for the case cf. on section 5.

#### CHAP. 14.

1. **qui**: see 173, a. **quae regio**: see 173, c. ii. **omnis**: 'entirely.'

2. **Interiores plerique**: 'most of those in the interior'; *plerique*, an adj. modifying *interiores*, which is used as a substantive. **lacte, pellibus**: see 99. **sunt vestiti**: see 164, iv., and 182, e. **hoc**: 'thus,' lit. ? (101, ii. c). **aspectu**: see 102.

3. **sunt**: freely 'they have.' **capillo, parte**; see 105, ii. **rasa**: trans. freely by the active voice.

4. **Uxores communes**: acc. Caesar is probably in error on this point. **deni duodenique**: 'in groups of ten or twelve.' For *-que*, lit. 'and (in other cases)', cf. in English 'three and four times a day.' **inter se**: omit in trans.

5. **si qui**: se. *liberi*; 'if any' (166, a). **habentur**: 'they are regarded,' with pred. nom. *liberi* (12, c). **quo**: adv. = *ad quos*; 'to whom.'

## CHAP. 15.

1. **tamen ut**: 'yet so that.' **omnibus partibus**: 'everywhere.' **fuerint, compulerint**: for the tense see 33, iii.
2. **compluribus**: *i.e.*, of the Britons. **cupidius**: see 98, vi.
3. **illi**: see 160, i. **spatio**: *i.e.*, of time; cf. section 4. **castorum**: a camp was made at the end of each day's march.
4. **missis**: trans. by 'when.' **subsidio**: 'to their aid' (81). **atque his**: 'and these too.' **primis**: apparently the first cohort of a legion was its best. **cum**: 'although.' **intermisso loci spatio**: 'leaving an interval.' **inter se**: with *intermisso*. **perterritis**: trans. by 'as.' **per medios**: 'between them,' *i.e.*, through the *per exiguum spatum*. **seque . . . receperunt**: not meaning 'they got away,' as the last words of section 5 show, but that they charged back again through the open space to their original position.

## CHAP. 16.

1. **domicaretur**: see 56. **nostros**: the legionary soldiers, as contrasted with *equites*, section 2; subject of *esse*. **cedentes**: acc.; 'the retreating enemy' (44, i., a). **possent**: see 175. **ab signis discedere**: they had been trained to fight in solid ranks only. **minus**: 'not well.' **ad**: 'to face.'
2. **autem**: 'while.' **proelio**: see 99. **illi**: 'the enemy.' **cederent**: see 175. **cum**: 'whenever.' **removissent**: for the mood and tense see 149 and 187, b. **nostros**: here = *equites*.
3. **Equestris**: with *proelii*. **autem**: 'moreover.' **ratio**: 'regular method,' or 'ordinary style'; in opposition to the unfamiliar tactics described in the last line of section 2. **cedentibus, insequentibus**: either dat. of the participle, referring to the Romans, or perhaps abl. absolute with *Britannis* understood. In either case Caesar is thinking of the danger to his own native cavalry, due to the superiority of the British horsemen. **inferebat**: 'brought' (180, b).
4. **Accedebat** **huc ut . . . proeliarentur**: cf. on eh. 6, 2; see 197 and 200, c. **intervallis**: see 103. **stationes**: 'reserves or supports.' **alios ali**: 'one another' (168, a. ii.). **exciperent**: 'relieved.' **-que**: 'and thus.'

## CHAP. 17.

1. **rari**: 'here and there' (205, *h*). **lenius**: 'with less vigor.'
2. **tres**: an unusually large force; cf. IV., ch. 32, 1. **cum**: 'under.' **ad . . . advolaverunt**: see 78, v. *b*. **sic uti . . . absisterent**: 'so as to attack even the standards,' etc.; lit.? They were not afraid to attack even the main body escorting the actual foragers.
3. **subsidio**: for abl. (= 'in') with *confisi* see 107, ii. **praecipites**: predicate acc. **egerunt**: see 155, *a*.
4. **sui colligendi**: see 119, iv.
5. **Ex**: 'after.' **quae . . . auxilia**: the *majores copiae* of ch. 11, 8. **discesserunt**: 'disbanded.' **summis copiis**: 'with their full force,' or 'in full force' (103, ii.).

## CHAP. 18.

1. **consilio**: that, apparently, which is described in ch. 19. **Tamesim**: certain I-stems with nom. in -is (including names of rivers and towns) have the ace. in -im, and abl. in -i. **in fines**: see 127, iv. **hoc**: 'here,' 'at this'; se. *loco*.
2. **animum advertit**: also written *animadvertisit*, and with the same force. **ad**: 'on.'
3. **præfixis**: driven into the face of the bank. **defixæ**: driven into the bed of the river.
5. **ea, eo**: 'sueh' (159, i.) **cum . . . extarent**: 'although only their heads were above the water,' lit.? (101). **-que**: 'but.'

## CHAP. 19.

1. **ut demonstravimus**: with *deposita spe*. **supra**: eh. 17, 5. **amplioribus copiis**: 'the greater part of his forces,' lit.? **relictis**: trans. freely by 'kept.' **servabat**: for the force of this and the succeeding imperfects see 180, *b*. **quibus**: 'where,' or 'through which.'
2. **cum**: 'whenever.' **ejecerat**: for the mood and tense see 149. **liberius**: with *ejecerat*; for the meaning see 98, vi.; so *latius* and *longius*, section 3. **viis**: see 99, ii. *a*. **periculo equitum**: 'danger to cavalry'; for the gen. see 85, ii. **hoc metu**: 'through fear of this,' lit.? (205, *c*). Cf. *hoc dolore*, eh. 4, 4.

3. **Relinquebatur ut . . . pateretur**: ‘the only course left was for Caesar not to allow his men to leave,’ etc. For *ut pateretur* as subject clause see 197, fn. ; for *discedi* see 56. **tantum noceretur**: freely ‘to do as much harm’ (72; 57). **in**: ‘in the way of.’ **labore atque itinere**: ‘by laborious marching’ (hendiadys), contrasted with the dashing cavalry raids.

## CHAP. 20.

1. **Trinobantes**: with *mittunt*, section 2. **ex qua . . . vita-  
verat**: this parenthesis may be translated after *legitos . . . mit-  
tunt*, section 2, and broken at *cuius pater*, thus: ‘The Trinobantes  
send, etc. ; from this state, etc. ; his father, etc. ; they promise,  
etc.’ **fidem secutus**: ‘attaching himself to,’ lit. ? **continentem  
Galliam**: ‘the mainland of Gaul’ (89, i.). **obtinuerat**: *obtineo*  
does not mean ‘obtain’ (203, f, iii.). **ipse**: ‘while he himself,’ or  
'but who himself' (170, iv.).

2. **sese dedituros**: sc. *se* as subject, *sese* being object.

3. **Cassivellauni**: ‘on the part of C.’ or ‘at the hands of C.’ (84). **mittat qui praesit**: ‘to send (some one) to govern’ (173, a).

4. **exercitui**: see 79. **ad numerum**: ‘to the required number.’ Note the asyndeton in the last sentence (as also with *ipse* in section 1). Note, too, *his*, *eos* and *illi* used of the same persons.

## CHAP. 21.

1. **defensis**: i.e., against Cassivellaunus. **militum**: cf. on *Cas-  
sirellauni*, ch. 20, 3.

2. **his**: sc. *legatis*, from *legationibus*. **quo**: adverb. **satis  
magnus**: ‘a considerable.’ **convenerit**: for the mood and tense  
see 186, 2; 187, b.

3. **oppidum vocant**: ‘call it a town’; the object of *vocant* is  
found in the clause *cum . . . munierunt*. The Gauls, on the other  
hand, had regular towns in which they dwelt. **silvas impeditas**:  
'a piece of woods difficult of access.' **munierunt**: see 149.

4. **opere**: cf. on ch. 9, 4. **ex**: ‘on’ (205, b). **hunc**: ‘it’; lit.  
'this (place).'

5. *morati*: 'after holding out.' *non tulerunt*: 'could not withstand.'

6. *repertus*: sc. *est*. *multi*: 'many (of the enemy).'

### CHAP. 22.

1. *quibus regionibus praerant*: 'over which . . . ruled' (78, v. c). *his*: i.e., the kings. *navalia castra*: see ch. 11, 5.

2. *incolumes*: acc. with *suos*; *sui* is here identical with *nostri*.

3. *per*: 'through the mediation of' (99, i.).

4. *neque multum*: 'and little.' *id* := *non multum aestatis*, 'that little.' *in annos singulos*: 'yearly,' lit. 'for the years one by one.' *vectigalis*: see 86, i. *penderet*: 'should pay'; for the mood see 186, 1, b, i., and 200, a.

5. *interdicit atque imperat*: emphatic repetition; 'he absolutely forbids . . . to harm,' or 'he expressly orders . . . not to harm.' *neu*: 'or,' lit. ? (28, ii.).

### CHAP. 23.

2. *commeatibus*: for the abl. see 103.

3. *tanto numero*: see IV., ch. 22, 3 and 4, and V., ch. 2, 2, and ch. 8, 6. *tot navigationibus*: 'although there were so many passages' (49). *portaret*: 'had on board'; the subj. may be by attraction (177, i.) (so *remitterentur*, section 4, but not *curarerat*, which is not so essential a part of the sentence) or may perhaps be characteristic (32).

4. *et . . . et*: dividing these empty vessels into two classes, to the latter of which *mitterentur*, not *remitterentur*, would more strictly apply; trans. 'both those which had made the first trip . . . and those which,' etc. *prioris commeatus*: sc. *ex naribus* (87). *postea*: i.e., after Caesar had set out for Britain with the fleet built during the winter. *faciendas curaverat*: cf. on ch. 1, 1. *numero*: for the abl. see 102. *sexaginta*: acc. agreeing with *quas*. *locum caperent*: 'reached their destination,' i.e., Britain. *caperent, rejicerentur*: with *sic accidit uti*.

5. *quod*: 'for.' *necessario collocavit*: cf. on IV., ch. 28, 3.

6. *consecuta*: sec 50, ii. *cum solvisset*: freely 'he set sail . . . and.' *inita vigilia*: 'at the beginning of the watch,' abl. absol.



Transport Ship.

INDEX OF POINTS OF SYNTAX AND ACCIDENCE  
IN CAESAR, B. G. IV. 20—V. 23.

A. CASE CONSTRUCTIONS.

**Nominative**: in apposition, iv. 22, 1.—in predicate, iv. 32, 1; v. 9, 6; 11, 8; 13, 3; 14, 5; 16, 4; 17, 1.—of personal pronoun, iv. 25, 3; v. 13, 4; and *ille* or *illi* often.

**Genitive**: (a) *possessive*; in predicate, v. 8, 6.—with *postridiē*, v. 10, 1; with *causā*, v. 9, 4; 12, 6, and often with gerund or gerundive.

(b) *subjective*; iv. 27, 3; 33, 1; 34, 1; 35, 2; v. 2, 2; 3, 6; 8, 2; 8, 3; 10, 3; 11, 6; 22, 3.

(c) *objective*; iv. 20, 4; 22, 2; 28, 2; 29, 3; 31, 1; 32, 1; 37, 1; v. 3, 3; 3, 5; 6, 4; 9, 8; 19, 1; 19, 2.—with adjectives; iv. 22, 1; 24, 4; v. 6, 1; 6, 3.

(d) *partitive*; with neutrals, iv. 21, 9; 22, 3; 32, 2; v. 1, 7; 2, 3; 7, 1; 10, 2; 22, 4 (twice).—with *milia*, iv. 37, 2 and often *passuum*, as v. 2, 3; 13, 7.—with superlatives; v. 3, 1; 15, 4; 20, 1.—in predicate; v. 7, 8.

- (e) *quality*; iv. 22, 1; 38, 5; v. 2, 2; 2, 3; 5, 3; 12, 5; 16, 1; 18, 3; 23, 4.—in predicate; v. 6, 1; 11, 5; 13, 5; 13, 7.
- (f) *price*; iv. 21, 7; v. 4, 3.

**Dative:** (a) *indirect object*; iv. 22, 1; v. 6, 4; 18, 5; and often.—with adjectives; iv. 20, 2; 21, 7; 29, 1; v. 9, 1(?); 12, 3.—with special intransitive verbs; iv. 21, 2; 21, 5; 21, 8; 27, 5; v. 1, 1; 2, 4; 7, 2; 19, 3; 22, 1; 22, 5 (twice). [*Imperō* with dat. and acc., iv. 22, 2; v. 1, 6; 20, 4].—with compound verbs; iv. 25, 6; 26, 1; 28, 2; v. 2, 3; 11, 9; 16, 4; 22, 1; and combined with acc., v. 1, 1; 9, 1; 11, 9.

- (b) *interest*; iv. 25, 3; 26, 4; 36, 2; v. 3, 5; 9, 1; 20, 4.
- (c) *purpose*; iv. 29, 4; 31, 2; v. 1, 4; 2, 3; 9, 1(?); 9, 8; 15, 4.
- (d) *interest and purpose (double dative)*; iv. 20, 2; 25, 1; 37, 2; v. 9, 1; 11, 7.
- (e) *possession* (with *dēsum*), iv. 26, 5; 30, 1.
- (f) *apparent agent*; iv. 24, 2.

**Accusative:** (a) *predicate acc.*; iv. 21, 7; 23, 2; 26, 2; 26, 4; 37, 1; v. 1, 2; 1, 3; 16, 4; 17, 3; 21, 3; 22, 2; 23, 1; 23, 6.

- (b) *limit of motion*; iv. 21, 6; v. 7, 5.
- (c) *extent of space*; iv. 23, 6; v. 9, 2; 10, 2; 11, 8; 13, 1; 13, 6.
- (d) *duration of time*; iv. 34, 4; v. 7, 3 (twice); 13, 3.
- (e) *adverbial*; v. 1, 3; 2, 2; 3, 1; 7, 2; 14, 1; 19, 3.
- (f) *with propius*; iv. 28, 2.

**Ablative:** (a) *separation*; iv. 21, 9; 24, 1; 30, 2 (twice); 34, 5; v. 6, 5; 11, 1 (?).

- (b) *cause*; iv. 34, 1; v. 4, 4.
- (c) *comparison*; iv. 37, 3 (?).
- (d) *means or instrument*; iv. 22, 4; 24, 2; 25, 1; 25, 2; 26, 4; 27, 1; 28, 3; 29, 2; 29, 4; 31, 3; 32, 5; 33, 3; 35, 1; 35, 3; 37, 1; v. 1, 5; 1, 8; 5, 2; 6, 3; 6, 5; 7, 1; 8, 4; 8, 5; 9, 4; 11, 4; 12, 1; 13, 4; 14, 2; 15, 1; 16, 2; 17, 1; 18, 5; 19, 1; 19, 2 (twice); and often.—with *ūtor* often; in iv. 38, 2, with double abl.

- (e) *measure of difference*; iv. 22, 4; v. 13, 2; so *multō*, v. 4, 4; *nihilō*, v. 4, 3; 7, 3; and *paulō*, iv. 23, 2, and often. *Hōc* or *eō* with comparatives, iv. 30, 1; v. 1, 2; 9, 1; 14, 2.
- (f) *specification*; v. 3, 1; 5, 5; 13, 1; 14, 2; 23, 4.
- (g) *manner and attendant circumstances*; iv. 25, 4; 27, 3; 28, 1; 31, 3; 33, 1; v. 1, 7; 2, 2; 11, 2; 16, 2; 16, 4; 18, 1; 18, 5; 23, 2; of accordance; v. 1, 7; 4, 3; 6, 6; 11, 8.
- (h) *accompaniment*; iv. 24, 1; v. 9, 3; 17, 5.
- (i) *quality*; v. 3, 4; 4, 4; 13, 2; 14, 3.
- (j) *place where*; iv. 34, 2; v. 5, 4; 15, 1; 18, 1; 19, 1; with *cōfidō*, v. 17, 3.
- (k) *time when*; iv. 20, 1; 34, 1; v. 3, 6; 23, 6; and often with words expressing time; (but not *cōsulibus*, v. 1, 1; *lūce*, v. 8, 2; *vigiliā*, v. 23, 6).
- (l) *time within which*; iv. 27, 6; 37, 3 (?); v. 2, 2.
- (m) *absolute*; concessive (= *although*); iv. 20, 4; 31, 3; 34, 2; v. 11, 2; 23, 3.—conditional (= *if*); iv. 30, 2.—with pres. partie.; iv. 25, 3; v. 7, 7; 16, 3 (?).—with deponent perf. partie.; iv. 26, 5; v. 8, 2; 10, 2 (twice); 23, 6.—with noun or adj. as predicate; iv. 20, 1; 23, 6; 24, 2; 24, 3; 28, 3; 32, 5; 36, 2 (twice); v. 1, 1; 7, 5; 12, 6; 15, 3; 23, 3.—with negative; v. 8, 4; 11, 6.—referring to object in acc.; iv. 21, 6; v. 4, 3.—with subject omitted; v. 16, 3 (?).

#### B. MODAL CONSTRUCTIONS.

- (a) **Final or purpose clauses:** *adverbial*; with *ut* or *nē*; v. 3, 6; 4, 1; 8, 1; 10, 1; 23, 5; with *quō*; v. 3, 6.—*relative*; iv. 21, 5; 22, 1; v. 1, 7; 1, 9; 9, 1; 10, 2; 20, 3.—*substantival*; iv. 21, 2; 21, 6; 21, 8; 25, 3; 25, 5; 27, 4; v. 1, 1; 4, 2; 6, 3; 6, 4; 6, 5; 6, 6; 7, 2; 7, 3; 8, 3; 11, 4; 20, 3; 22, 1; 22, 5 (with *neu*); with *ut* omitted; iv. 21, 8; 23, 5.—with *vereor*; v. 3, 5.—with *quōminus*, iv. 22, 4.—with *quīn*, v. 2, 2.
- (b) **Consecutive or result clauses:** *adverbial*; iv. 23, 3; 28, 2; 33, 2; 33, 3; v. 11, 2 (restrictive); 15, 1; 17, 2; 18, 5.—*substantival*; iv. 29, 1; 31, 3; 35, 1; v. 6, 5; 16, 4; 19, 3; 23, 3 and 4.

- (c) **Relative clauses of characteristic**; iv. 21, 9; 29, 4; 34, 4; 38, 2; v. 23, 3 and 4 (?).
- (d) **Indirect questions**; iv. 20, 4; 21, 9; 23, 5; 34, 5; v. 2, 3; 3, 3; 4, 1; 8, 1; 9, 1.—**deliberative**; v. 22, 4.
- (e) **Relative clauses** [see also under a, c, g, i].—often with *qui* or *ut* (=as) and the indic.—in indirect discourse in subj.; iv. 21, 8; 22, 1; 23, 5; 27, 1; 32, 1 (twice); v. 1, 1; 6, 5; 6, 6; 7, 1; 11, 4; 21, 2.—in subj. by attraction, v. 23, 3 and 4 (?).—in indic., though with indirect discourse; iv. 30, 1; 31, 1; 31, 2; 32, 2 (twice); 35, 1; v. 5, 2 (twice); 11, 4.—with *quicunque*, iv. 26, 1 (indic.); v. 7, 1 (subj. in indirect discourse).
- (f) **Temporal clauses**: *ubi* and indic.; iv. 25, 1; 26, 2 (frequentative); v. 9, 1.—*simul (atque)* and indic.; iv. 26, 5; 27, 1; v. 3, 3.—*posteaquam* and indic.; iv. 37, 4; v. 3, 5; 6, 4.—*postquam* and indic.; iv. 28, 1.—*dum* (=while) and indic.; iv. 22, 1; 32, 1; 34, 3; v. 22, 1.—*dim* (=until) and subj.; iv. 23, 4.—*quoad* and indic.; v. 17, 3.—*priusquam* and subj.; iv. 21, 1.—*cum*, frequentative and indic.; iv. 33, 1; v. 19, 2; 21, 3; with subj. in indirect discourse; v. 16, 2.—*cum* and subj.; iv. 25, 4; 25, 6; 26, 4; 28, 2; 32, 3; 37, 1; 37, 2; v. 1, 6; 2, 2; 10, 2; 16, 1; 17, 2; 18, 2; 22, 2; 23, 5; 23, 6; in v. 5, 4, in indirect discourse for the fut. indic.
- (g) **Causal clauses**: often with *quod* and indic.—with *quod* and subj. in indirect discourse; iv. 22, 1; 27, 5; v. 6, 3 (twice, *diceret* exceptional); 10, 2; 16, 1; 16, 2.—with *quoniam* and subj., in virtual indirect discourse; v. 3, 5.—with *cum* and subj.; iv. 23, 2; 28, 3; 29, 3; 30, 1; 31, 3; 32, 1; 38, 2; v. 17, 3; 22, 4.—with *qui* and subj.; iv. 23, 5; v. 4, 3; 7, 7.—with *quod* = *the fact that*; v. 6, 2.
- (h) **Conditional clauses**: in direct discourse; iv. 25, 3; v. 13, 4.—in indirect discourse; iv. 20, 2 (twice); 33, 2 (perhaps attraction); 34, 5; 35, 1; 37, 1; v. 1, 8; 3, 7; 7, 7.
- (i) **Concessive or adversative clauses**: with *etsi* and indic.; iv. 20, 1; 31, 1; 35, 1; v. 4, 1; 11, 5.—with *cum* and subj.; iv. 24, 3; 27, 3; 27, 5; v. 8, 6; 15, 4; 18, 5.—with *qui* and subj.; v. 4, 4.
- (j) **Infinitive**: *complementary*; with *polliceor*, iv. 21, 5; with *imperō*, v. 1, 3; 7, 6.—with *prohibeō*, iv. 24, 1; v. 9, 6; 19, 2.—with *vereor*, v. 6, 5.

*in indirect discourse*; introduced informally, v. 3, 6; 6, 5.—with subj. nee. omitted, iv. 27, 1; 27, 5; v. 20, 2.—with **statuō**, v. 7, 1; 11, 5.—*substantival*; iv. 30, 2; v. 4, 3; 4, 4; 11, 5; 12, 6.—*historical*; v. 6, 5; 6, 6.

- (k) **Gerund**: *genitive*; with **causā**, v. 6, 2; 17, 2; 19, 2; with other nouns, iv. 29, 2; v. 1, 2; 6, 4; 8, 4; 17, 3; 17, 4; with adjective, v. 6, 3.—*accusative*; with **ad**, iv. 23, 1; 23, 4; 29, 3; v. 5, 2.—*ablative*; with **in**, iv. 32, 5.
- (l) **Gerundive**: as mere predicate adj., v. 8, 4.—passive periphrastic; iv. 22, 2; 24, 2; 36, 2; v. 7, 1; 7, 2.—gerundive construction; *genitive*, with **causā**, iv. 22, 1; 30, 2; v. 12, 2; 21, 3.—with other nouns, iy. 22, 2; 34, 5; v. 11, 8.—with **sui**, iv. 34, 5; v. 17, 4.—*accusative*, with **ad**, iv. 20, 2; 21, 1; 22, 3; 29, 4; 31, 2; 34, 2; v. 1, 2; 1, 4; 7, 6.—*ablative*, with **in**, iv. 27, 4; v. 19, 3.—*predicatively*, with **cūrō**, iv. 29, 2; v. 1, 1; 23, 4; with **dō**, iv. 22, 5.
- (m) **Supine**: in -um, iv. 32, 1; in -ū, iv. 30, 2.
- (n) **Participles**: used as substantives, iv. 27, 3; v. 4, 3; 4, 4; 6, 3 (?); 9, 8; 16, 1; 16, 3 (?); 16, 4; 20, 2; 20, 4.—used as adj. and compared, v. 12, 6.—as predicative complement, iv. 22, 2; 26, 2; 26, 4; 37, 1; v. 2, 2; 16, 4; 23, 1.—present part., iv. 25, 3; 26, 2; 26, 4; 37, 1; v. 1, 1; 7, 7 (twice).—perfect partic. with future reference, iv. 27, 6; 30, 2; v. 6, 5; 22, 1.—perfect partic. with force of present, v. 7, 3; and often with verbs of *thinking*.

#### C. USE OF TENSES.

**Present**: historical present: with primary sequence, iv. 21, 2; 21, 5; 21, 8; and often with secondary sequence, iv. 21, 9; v. 1, 1; 11, 2; 22, 4; with shift of sequence, v. 7, 7; 11, 4.—present subj., in indirect discourse for fut. indic.; v. 7, 7.—with **dum** (=while); iv. 22, 1; 32, 1; 34, 3; v. 22, 1.

**Imperfect**: as past progressive, iv. 29, 2; v. 3, 2.—of repeated or habitual action (or repeated failure), iv. 20, 4; 25, 3; 26, 1-4; 31, 2; v. 1, 5; 2, 4; 6, 6; 10, 2; 13, 4; 16, 2; 16, 3; 19, 1; 19, 2.—inceptive, iv. 31, 2 (*comparābat*).—conative; iv. 24, 1; v. 9, 6.—with peculiar force, **accēdēbat** and **relinquēbātur**,<sup>1</sup> iv. 22, 4; v. 6, 2; 16, 4; 19, 3.—imperf. subj. in indirect discourse for fut. indic.; iv. 20, 2; v. 5, 4.

<sup>1</sup> In view of the literal meaning of these verbs, we should expect the pluperfect.

**Perfect** : rendered by present (*cōsuēvi*), iv. 24, 1; 29, 1; 33, 3; v. 1, 2; 7, 3; 21, 3.—in frequentative clauses, iv. 33, 1; v. 14, 5; 21, 3.—perf. subj., in clause of result; v. 15, 1.—perf. subj., in indirect discourse for fut. perf. indic.; v. 1, 8.

**Pluperfect** : rendered by past (*cōsuēveram*), iv. 24, 4; v. 1, 1.—in frequentative clauses, iv. 26, 1; 26, 4; v. 16, 2; 19, 2.—plupf. subj. in indirect discourse for fut. perf. indic., iv. 20, 2; 22, 1; 27, 1; 34, 5; 35, 1; v. 6, 6.—*ūsi fuerant*, iv. 38, 2.—*dispositās habērent*, v. 16, 4.

**Future perfect** : iv. 25, 3.

#### D. MISCELLANEOUS.

- (a) impersonal passive ; iv. 23, 2; 24, 2; 26, 1; 27, 4; 28, 1 (twice); 29, 4; 31, 3; 35, 1; v. 3, 3; 4, 3; 6, 1; 7, 2; 7, 9; 8, 5; 16, 1 (twice); 19, 3 (thrice).
- (b) passive with reflexive force ; iv. 32, 2; v. 14, 2.
- (c) *videor* and *dicor* used personally ; v. 2, 4; 9, 4; 11, 2.
- (d) *necesse est*, iv. 29, 3; *oportet*, iv. 29, 4; *interest*, v. 4, 3.
- (e) *quam* with superlative ; iv. 21, 2; v. 4, 3; with *possum* added, v. 1, 1; 11, 4.
- (f) comparative with standard of comparison unexpressed ; iv. 20, 4; 23, 2; 25, 1; 26, 5; 30, 1; 32, 3; 35, 2; v. 7, 2; 8, 2; 9, 8; 15, 2; 16, 1; 19, 2 (twice); 19, 3; 23, 5.
- (g) *amplius* with *quam* omitted ; iv. 37, 3; v. 8, 6.
- (h) distributive numerals ; v. 6, 4; 14, 4; 22, 4.—numeral ad- verb ; v. 13, 7.
- (i) relative pronoun and pronominal adjective [see also under Modal Constructions, a, c, e, g, i].  
with coordinating force ; iv. 23, 3; 24, 4; and often ; in adverbial dependent clause ; iv. 23, 2; 25, 1; 28, 2; and often.—with antecedent omitted (= *is quī*) ; iv. 22, 3; 25, 3; 27, 1; 31, 2; 34, 3; v. 1, 2 (twice); 2, 3; 6, 6; 14, 1; 20, 3.—with antecedent repeated ; iv. 32, 1; v. 2, 3; 12, 2; 13, 3.—with antecedent following ; iv. 26, 4; 31, 2; v. 6, 5; 17, 5.—with antecedent incorporated into relative clause ; iv. 21, 4; 21, 8; 24, 1; 29, 1; 31, 2; v. 6, 2; 14, 1; 22, 1.—*quicunque*, iv. 26, 1; v. 7, 1.—*idem* *qui*, iv. 24, 4; 35, 1; 36, 4; v. 11, 2; 11, 7.—*pār qui*, v. 8, 2 [*pār atque*, v. 13, 2].—*tantus quantus*, iv. 35, 3; v. 19, 3; with *tantus* omitted, iv. 21, 9.

- (j) **is** (=such): v. 18, 5.—**hōc mētū** = **hūjus reī metū**; v. 19, 2; similarly 4, 4.
- (k) **ille**, marking change of subject; iv. 24, 3; 27, 3; 27, 6; 33, 2; 37, 2; v. 6, 3; 7, 8; 7, 9; 9, 3; 15, 3; 15, 5; 16, 2; 20, 4.
- (l) indefinite pronouns and pronominal adjectives: **quis (qui)**; v. 7, 2; 14, 5.—**quisquam**; iv. 20, 3 (twice).—**ullus**; iv. 29, 2; 32, 1; v. 23, 3.—**nūllus**; iv. 28, 2; v. 13, 6.—**aliquis**; iv. 26, 2; 32, 2.—**nōnnūlli**; v. 3, 5; 13, 3; 15, 2; 23, 2.—**alius**; iv. 26, 3; 29, 4; v. 11, 3; 21, 5; repeated, iv. 26, 1; 28, 2; v. 16, 4.—**alter**; v. 3, 3; 13, 1; 18, 2; (=the second) 13, 2.—**cēteri**; v. 6, 1.—**quisque**; v. 8, 6; 12, 5; 14, 5.—**uterque**; iv. 26, 1.
- (m) **inter sē**: (=one another); iv. 25, 5; 30<sup>1</sup>; v. 3, 2; 14, 4.
- (n) **post diem quartum quam**; iv. 28, 1.
- (o) **cum . . . tum**; v. 4, 3.
- (p) **nē . . . quidem**; v. 11, 6.
- (q) **inquit**; iv. 25, 3.
- (r) **medius**; iv. 36, 3; v. 3, 4; 8, 2; 13, 3.
- (s) adjective with adverbial force; v. 9, 6; 16, 4; 17, 1.
- (t) plural of abstract nouns; iv. 38, 2; v. 1, 2.
- (u) first plural = **I**; **nōs**, v. 6, 1; 13, 4; cf. also, v. 2, 2; 3, 1; 19, 1; 22, 1.
- (v) concords: apposition; v. 3, 4; 4, 2; 20, 1 (twice).—agreement with nearer noun; iv. 24, 4; v. 1, 2; 11, 5.—sense construction; iv. 36, 4.

#### E. ACCIDENCE.

- (a) third declension, I-steins; accus. in -im, v. 18, 1; abl. in -i, **nāvi**; iv. 21, 9, and often; **continenti**, iv. 31, 2, and often, but **continente**, v. 8, 1.
- (b) **jūsjurandum**; v. 6, 6; **rēs pūblica**, iv. 25, 3; v. 7, 2; **yīs**, **vīrēs**, iv. 25, 3; v. 7, 7; 10, 2; **fās**, v. 12, 6; **locus**, **loca**, v. 8, 6, and often.
- (c) **firmiter**; iv. 26, 1.
- (d) **nōbiscum**; v. 17, 5; **sēcum**, iv. 32, 2; 35, 1; v. 5, 4; 6, 1.
- (e) frequentative verbs; iv. 32, 1; v. 6, 4; 7, 8.
- (f) contracted verbal forms; iv. 20, 2; 22, 1; 24, 1; 24, 4; 25, 6; 27, 1; 27, 5; 33, 8; v. 1, 1; 8, 4; 21, 3; 23, 5.

# VOCABULARY

TO

## CAESAR DE BELLO GALLICO

### A.

**A.**, an abbreviation for **Aulus**.

**a**, **ab**, (abs), prep. with abl., (ā before consonants; ab before vowels and consonants; abs once before te), *away from, from, at a distance of; by; on the side of, at, on, in*.

**ab-dō**, ere, -didi, -ditum, *hide, conceal*; part. *abditus*, a, um, as adj., *hidden, secluded*.

**ab-dūcō**, ere, -dūxi, -ductum, *lead away, carry off*.

**ab-eō**, ire, -ii (-iui), -itum, *go away, depart*.

**abi-ēs**, -etis, f., *fir*.

**ab-jiciō**, ere, -jicxi, -jectum, *throw away; throw*.

**ab-jungō**, ere, -janxi, -janc-tum, *detach, separate, part*.

**ab-riplō**, ere, -ripul, -reptum, *carry off, snatch*.

**abs**, see **ā**.

**abs-eldō**, ere, -eldi, -elsum, *cut off, cut, cut away; cut down*.

**absēns**, -entis, *absent*

**absimilis**, e, *unlike*.

**ab-sistō**, ere, -stidi, *withdraw, keep away from*.

**ab-stineō**, ere, -tinxi, -tentum, *refrain, abstain, spare*.

**ab-trahō**, ere, traxi, tractum, *drag away, carry off*.

**absum, abesse, āfui**, *be absent, be wanting; be far, be distant; take no part in, keep aloof; lack, be lacking*.

**abundō, āre, āvi, ātum, abound**, *be strong in*.

**ac** (shorter form for **atque**, used only before vowels), *and, and further; in comparisons, than, as*.

**ac-cēdō**, ere, -cessi, -cessum, *approach, draw near, come up; be added*.

**accelerō, āre, āvi, ātum, hasten**.

**acceptus**, a, um, *from accipio*.

**ac-cidō, ere, -cidī, fall**; *befall, happen, occur; turn out*.

**ac-eldō, ere, -eldi, -elsum, cut into, cut**.

**ac-cipiō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, receive, take; suffer, meet with; accept; find; hear; part. acceptus, a, um, as adj., acceptable, popular**.

**ac-cilivis, e, rising, sloping**.

**ac-cilivitās, -tatis**, f., *ascent, slope, steepness*.

**Accō, -ōnis**, m., *a chief of the Senones*.

**accommodō, āre, āvi, ātum, fit, adjust; adapt, suit**.

**accūratē, adv., carefully, elaborately**.

**accurrā, ere, -curri or -cucurri, cursum, run up, rush up, hasten**.

**accusō, āre, āvī, ātum, accuse,** find fault, censure.

**ācer, crīs, crē, sharp, keen, violent,** severe.

**acerbē, adv., bitterly, keenly;** acerbe ferre, be distressed by.

**acerbitās, -tātis, f., bitterness;** suffering, distress.

**acerbus, a, um, bitter, painful.**

**acervus, I, m., heap, pile.**

**aciēs, ēl, f., keenness, fierce glance;** line of battle; battle.

**ac-quirō, ere, -quislvi, -quisl-** tum, gain, gain advantage.

**ācriter, adv., (ācrīs, accerrimē),** fiercely, hotly, desperately.

**āctuārius, a, um, light, swift.**

**āctus, a, um, from ago.**

**acūtur, a, um, sharp, pointed.**

**ad, prep. with acc., to, towards;** with a view to, for; according to; near, by, in, among; (with numerals), about.

**adāctus, a, um, from adigo.**

**adaequō, āre, āvī, ātum, equal;** make equal.

**adumō, āre, āvī, ātum, love** greatly, become enamored of, take a fancy to.

**ad-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, add,** join; make an addition.

**ad-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -duetum,** lead, bring; bring in, conduct; draw towards, draw taut; induce, influence, force.

**adēmptus, a, um, from adimo.**

**adeō, adv., so, so much.**

**ad-eō, ire, -il (-ivī), -itum, go** to, advance; attack; visit; reach, get at; approach.

**adeptus, a, um, from adipiscor.**

**adequitō, āre, āvī, ātum, ride** up.

**ad-haerēscō, ere, -haesi,** -haesum, adhere, cling to, catch fast to.

**adhibeo, āre, ul, itum, call in,** admit; bring along; use, show.

**adhorter, ārl, ātus sum, urge,** exhort, encourage.

**adhuc, adv., till now, up to the** present, as yet.

**Adiatunus, I, m., a chief of the** Soutiates.

**ad-lgō, ere, -ēgl, -āctum, drive** up; drive in; hurl, cast; move up; force, bind.

**ad-imō, ere, -ēml, -ēmptum,** take away, destroy; cut off.

**ad-ipiscor, I, -eptus sum, obtain, win.**

**aditus, ūs, m., approach, access,** means of approach; right of approaching, admittance; inter-course.

**adjaceō, ēre, ul, be adjacent,** border upon.

**ad-jiciō, ere, -jēcl, -jectum,** cast; add; throw up.

**adjūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum, ad-** judge.

**ad-jungō, ere, -jānxl, -jānc-** tum, join, unite, ally; annex.

**adjūtor, ōrls, m., assistant, ally.**

**ad-Juvō, āre, -Jūvl, -Jūtum,** assist, help; aid; be of assistance, further.

**Admagetobriga, ae, f., a town in** Gaul, of uncertain position.

**admātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum,** mature; hasten.

**administer, trl, m., assistant,** priest.

**administrō, āre, āvī, ātum,** carry out, execute, attend to; manage; issue.

**admīrō, ārl, ātus sum, wonder** at, admire, be surprised.

**ad-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum,** allow, incur; commit; let go; part. admissus, at full speed.

**admodum, adv., very, very much,** exceedingly; with numerals, fully, quite.

**admoneō, āre, ul, itum, warn,** advise.

**adolēscēns, see adulescens.**

**adolēscēntia, see adulescentia.**

**adolēscēntulus, see adulescen-** tulus.

**ad-olēscō, ere, -olēvi, -ultum,** grow up.  
**ad-orior, IrI, -ortus sum,** attack, assault.  
**ad-sclscō, ere, -sclvi, -scltum,** join, unite, take.  
**adsistō, see assisto.**  
**ad-sum, esse, -fui,** be present, be at hand, be near; aid, assist.  
**Aduātuca, ae, f.,** a stronghold in the north-east of Gaul.  
**Aduātuci, örum, m.,** the *Aduatuci*, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.  
**adulēscēns, -entis, m.,** young man; the younger.  
**adulēscēntia, ae, f.,** youth.  
**adulēscēntulus, I, m.,** a mere youth.  
**adventus, ūs, m.,** arrival, approach, coming.  
**adversārius, I, m.,** opponent, enemy.  
**adversus, a, um,** opposite, facing, in front; adverse, unsuccessful.  
**adversus, prep. with acc.,** against.  
**ad-vertō, ere, -verti, -versum,** turn towards; w. *animūm*, observe, notice.  
**advocō, āre, āvI, ātum,** call, summon.  
**advolō, āre, āvI, ātum,** fly to, rush upon or to.  
**aedificiūm, I, n.,** building.  
**aedificō, āre, āvI, ātum,** build.  
**Aeduus, I, m.,** an *Aeduan*; in plur., the *Aedui*, a tribe in the centre of Gaul.  
**aeger, gra, gruin,** sick.  
**aegrē, adv.,** (*aegrilus, aeger-rimē*), scarcely, with difficulty.  
**Aemilius, I, m.,** *Lucius Aemilius*, a cavalry officer with Caesar.  
**aequālīter, adv.,** uniformly.  
**aequinoctium, I, n.,** equinox.  
**aequitās, -tatis, f.,** fairness, justice; w. *animi*, contentment.  
**aequō, āre, āvI, ātum,** make equal, equalise.  
**aequus, a, um,** level; fair, just; even, equal; favorable; contented, calm, resigned.  
**aerārius, a, um,** of copper, copper.  
**aes, aeris, n.,** bronze; copper; money; *aes alienum*, debt.  
**aestās, -tatis, f.,** summer.  
**aestimatiō, -ōnis, f.,** valuation, estimate.  
**aestimō, āre, āvI, ātum,** estimate, value, regard.  
**aestivus, a, um,** of summer.  
**aestuārium, I, n.,** estuary, inlet.  
**aestus, ūs, m.,** heat; tide.  
**aetās, -tatis, f.,** age, years.  
**aeternus, a, um,** perpetual, unending.  
**afferō, afferre, attuīl, allātum,** bring; bring forward, announce; cause, bring about, produce.  
**af-ficiō, ere, -fēl, -fectum,** affect, visit, treat; translate freely in act. by cause, produce, inflict; in pass. by suffer, experience, enjoy, be afflicted with, be subjected to, be in.  
**af-fligō, ere, -flxi, -flxum, fas-**ten, attach.  
**af-flingō, ere, -flnxi, -fletum,** invent further, or in addition.  
**affinitās, -tatis, f.,** relationship, marriage.  
**affirmatiō, -ōnis, f.,** assurance, assertion.  
**afflūxus, a, um,** from *affligo*.  
**affletō, āre, āvI, ātum,** buffet, toss about; damage, wreck.  
**afflotus, a, um,** from *affligo*.  
**af-fligō, ere, -flxi, -fletum,** shatter, damage, wreck; throw down, bear down.  
**af-store, from adsum.**  
**Āfricus, I, m.,** south-west wind.  
**Agedincum, I, n.,** a town in the north central part of Gaul.  
**ager, agri, m.,** field, land, country, territory.  
**agger, eris, m.,** mound; heap of earth; dam, rampart.

**ag-gredior**, I., -gressus sum, attack.

**aggregō**, āre, āvī, ātūm, attach, join.

**agltō**, āre, āvī, ātūm, discuss.

**agmen**, -mlns, n., army on the march, line of march, column; w. prlmum, the van; w. novis slnum, the rear.

**agō**, ere, ēgl, āctūm, drive, carry off; bring up, advance; take; drive down; run; do, carry on, work, act; treat, plead, discuss, confer; hold; express.

**agrlcultūra**, ae, f., agriculture, tilling the land, farming.

**alacer**, cris, cre, eager.

**alacritās**, -tātis, f., eagerness, ardor.

**älārli**, örum, m. plur., auxiliaries (usually placed on the wings).

**albus**, a, um, white.

**alcēs**, is, f., elk.

**Alesla**, ae, f., a town in the central part of Gaul.

**allās**, adv., at another time; **alias**... alias, at one time....at another, now....now.

**allēnō**, āre, āvī, ātūm, attenuate, estrange; deprive of reason, frenzy, distract.

**allēnus**, a, um, of another, of others, another's; unfavorable; strange, foreign; out of place.

**aliō**, adv., elsewhere.

**allquamdlū**, adv., for some time.

**allquandō**, adv., at some time; at last, at length.

**allquantō**, adv., somewhat.

**allquantus**, a, um, some; neut. as subst., some portion, a considerable part.

**allqui**, qua, quod, some, any.

**aliquis**, quid, someone, something.

**aliquot**, indeclinable, several, some.

**allter**, adv., otherwise, in a different manner, else.

**allus**, a, ud, other, another; different; allus....alius, one....another; ali....all, some....others.

**allātus**, a, um, from affero.

**al-lclō**, ere, -lexi, -lectum, entice, allure, attract.

**Allobroges**, um, m., the Allobroges, a tribe in the northern part of the Province.

**alō**, ere, alul, altum, nourish, support, feed; maintain, keep; strengthen, increase, foster.

**Alpēs**, ium, f. plur., the Alps.

**alter**, era, erum, the other; the second; another; alter....alter, the one....the other.

**alternus**, a, um, alternate.

**altiltūdō**, -inis, f., height; depth; thickness.

**altus**, a, um, high, lofty; deep; neut. as subst., altum. I., n., the deep, deep water, the sea.

**alūta**, ae, f., leather.

**ambactus**, I., m., vassal, retainer.

**Ambarri**, örum, m., the Ambarri, a tribe north of the Province, on the Rhone.

**Ambiānl**, örum, m., the Ambiani, a tribe in the north of Gaul, on the Channel.

**Amblbaril**, örum, m., the Ambibari, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.

**Ambiliātl**, örum, m., the Ambiliati, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.

**Ambiorix**, Igis, m., a chief of the Eburones.

**Amblvaretl**, örum, m., the Ambivareti, a tribe in the centre of Gaul.

**Amblvaritl**, örum, m., the Ambivariti, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

**ambō**, ae, ð, in plur. only, both.

**āmentla**, ae, f., madness, folly.

**āmentum**, I., n., thong (for throwing a javelin).

**amfractus**, see anfractus.

**amicltia**, ac, f., friendship, alliance.

**amicus**, a, um, friendly, devoted.

**amicus**, I., m., friend; ally.

**ā-mittō, ere, -mis, -missum,** lose; let slip.

**amor, óris, m.,** love, affection.

**amplē, adv.,** largely, generously; compar. **amplius,** more, further, besides.

**amplificō, áre, ávi, átum,** increase, heighten.

**amplitū-dō, -dinis, f.,** size, extent; greatness.

**amplus, a, um,** large, great; magnificent, noble, high.

**an, conj., or.**

**Anartēs, ium, m.,** the Anartes, a tribe in Dacia, north of the Danube.

**Ancalites, um, m.,** the Ancalites, a tribe in Britain.

**au-ceps, -cliptis,** double, twofold.

**ancora, ae, f.,** anchor.

**Andecumborius, I, m.,** one of the Remi.

**Andēs, ium, m.,** the Andes, a tribe near the mouth of the Loire.

**ānfrāctus, ūs, m.,** bend, circuit, winding.

**angulus, I, m.,** corner, angle.

**angustē, adv.,** closely; sparingly.

**angustiae, árum, f. plur.,** narrow pass, defile; strait, trouble, difficulty.

**angustus, a, um,** narrow, small, contracted; steep; neut. as subst., critical position.

**anima, ae, f.,** soul.

**animadver-tō, ere, -ti, -sum,** notice, observe; attend to, punish.

**animal, -alis, n.,** animal, living being.

**animus, I, m.,** soul, mind, heart, spirit, will; feelings; courage; character, disposition; consciousness; pride, ambition; pleasure, amusement.

**anuōtinus, a, um,** of the year before.

**annus, I, m.,** year.

**annuus, a, um,** yearly, for a year.

**ānsler, eris, m.,** goose.

**ante, prep. w. acc.,** before; adv., before, formerly, previously; above.

**anteā, adv.,** before, formerly, previously; hitherto.

**ante-eēdō, ere, -cessi, -cessum,** go before, go in advance, precede; outstrip, anticipate; surpass, excel.

**antecursor, óris, m.,** scout, vanguard, advance guard.

**ante-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -latum,** prefer, consider superior.

**auteuna, ae, f.,** sail-yard.

**ante-pónō, ere, -posui, -positum,** place before, regard of more importance than.

**antever-tō, ere, -ti, -sum,** prefer.

**antiquitus, adv.,** from early times, in olden times, of old, long ago.

**antiquus, a, um,** ancient, old, remote.

**Antistius, I, m., Caius Antistius Reginus,** one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**Antōnius, I, m., Marcus Antonius,** one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**Ap.,** a contraction for **Applus.**

**aper-lō, ire, ul, -tum,** open; perf. part. pass. **apertus** as adj., open, unprotected, uncovered, exposed; clear; unchecked.

**apertē, adv.,** openly.

**Apollō, -inis, m.,** Apollo, a Roman god.

**apparō, áre, ávi, átum,** prepare, make ready.

**appellō, áre, ávi, átum,** call, name; address, call upon, accost.

**ap-pellō, ere, -pull, -pulsum,** bring in to shore, land, bring to land.

**ap-petō, ere, -petivi, -petitum,** seek, aim at; approach.

**Applus, I, m.,** a Roman praenomen.

**applicō, áre, ávi, átum,** apply; with reflexive, lean against.

**apportō, áre, ávi, átum,** bring.

**approbō, āre, āvi, ātum, ap-**rove of, commend.

**appropinquō, āre, āvi, ātum,**approach, draw near.

**appulsus, a, um, from appello,**ere.

**Aprilis, e, adj., of April.**

**aptus, a, um, suited, suitable, apt.**

**apud, prep. w. acc., at, with, among,**near, in the presence of; in one's opinion.

**aqua, ae, f., water.**

**aquatiō, -ōnis, f., getting water.**

**aquila, ae, f., eagle, the ensign of**a Roman legion.

**Aquiliēta, ae, f.,**a Roman colony at the head of the Adriatic.

**aquillifer, erl, m., eagle-bearer,**standard-bearer.

**Aquitānia, ae, f., Aquitania,**the southwestern part of Gaul, between the Garonne and the Pyrenees.

**Aquitānus, I, m., an Aquitanian;**in plur., the Aquitani, a people akin to the Spaniards rather than to the Gauls, dwelling in the southwestern part of Gaul.

**Ar-ar, -aris, m., the Arar,**a river flowing south into the Rhone.

**arbiter, trl, m., arbitrator.**

**arbitrium, I, n., pleasure, will,**judgment.

**arbitror, ārl, ātus sum, think,**consider, judge.

**arbor, oris, f., tree.**

**arecessō, ere, -lvi, -lsum, sum-**mon, send for; invite, call in.

**ārdeō, ēre, īrsi, īrsum, burn,**be on fire, be inflamed.

**Ardueuna, ae, f.,**a forest in the north-east of Gaul.

**arduuus, a, um, difficult; steep.**

**Arecomici, īrum, m. plur., the**Arecomici, a tribe in the Province near the Pyrenees.

**Aremoricus, a, um, Armorican;**Aremorica was a collective name given to many tribes in the northwest of Gaul.

**argentum, I, n., silver.**

**argilla, ae, f., clay.**

**āridus, a, um, dry;**neut. as subst., dry land.

**arlēs, -etis, m., ram, battering-**ram; buttress.

**Arlovistus, I, m.,**a chief of the Germans.

**Aristius, I, m., Marcus Aristius,**a military tribune with Caesar.

**arma, īrum, n. plur., arms; tack-**ling.

**armāmenta, īrum, n. plur., tack-**ling, rigging.

**armātūra, ae, f., armor, equip-**ment.

**armō, āre, āvi, ātum, arm,**equip; perf. part. in plur. as subst., armed men.

**Armoriceus, a, um, see Are-**moricus.

**Arpinēus, I, m., Caius Arpinius,**a Roman knight with Caesar.

**ar-riplō, ere, -ripul, -reptum,**seize, lay hold of, secure.

**arroganter, adv., with presumption, insolently.**

**arrogantia, ae, f., presumption,**arrogance, insolence.

**ars, artis, f., art.**

**artē, adv., closely, tightly, com-**pactly.

**articulus, I, m., joint.**

**artifelium, I, n., handicraft; ac-**complishment, skill; artifice, craft.

**artus, a, um, dense, thick.**

**Arvernum, I, m., an Arvernian;**in plur., the Arverni, a tribe south of the centre of Gaul.

**ark, arcis, f., citadel, stronghold.**

**a-scendō, ere, -scendi, -scēn-**sum, climb, ascend, mount.

**ascēnsus, īs, m., ascent, ascending;**means of ascent.

**aspectus, īs, m., appearance,**sight.

**asper, era, erum, severe, fierce,**violent.

**assiduus**, a, um, *constant, continued, incessant.*

**assistō**, ere, *astitī*, *stand near, appear.*

**assuē-faciō**, ere, -fēci, -factum, *accustom, train.*

**assuē-scō**, ere, -vi, -tum, *become accustomed.*

**at**, conj., *but; yet, at least.*

**atqne**, conj., *and, and further; in comparisons, than, as.*

**Atre-bas**, -batis, m., *an Atrebatician; in plur., the Atrebates, a tribe in the northern part of Gaul, near the straits of Dover.*

**Atrius**, I, m., *Quintus Atrius, an officer of Caesar's.*

**at-texō**, ere, -texul, -textum, *weare on, weave.*

**at-tingō**, ere, -tigl, -tāctum, *touch, border on; reach.*

**attrib-uō**, ere, -ul, -ūtum, *assign, give.*

**attuīl**, from *afferō*.

**auctor**, órlis, m., *adviser, approver, advocate, instigator.*

**auctōri-tās**, -tātlis, f., *influence, weight, prestige; power.*

**auctus**, a, um, *part of augeo, increased, advanced, strengthened.*

**audāclia**, ae, f., *boldness.*

**audācter**, adv., *boldly, confidently, fearlessly.*

**audeō**, ère, *ausus sum, dare, venture, attempt.*

**audiō**, ire, Ivi, Itum, *hear, listen to, hear of; pres. part., audiēns, -entis, obedient.*

**audītiō**, -ónis, f., *hearsay, rumor.*

**augeō**, ère, *auxīl, auctum, increase, strengthen, promote.*

**Aulercl**, órum, m. plur., *the Au-le-ci, a race in the north-west of Gaul, divided into four tribes, the Eburovices, Brannovices, Diablinnes and Cenomani.*

**Aulus**, I, m., *a Roman praenomen.*

**aureus**, a, um, *of gold, golden.*

**auriga**, ae, m., *charioteer.*

**auris**, is, f., *ear.*

**Aurunculētus**, L, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

**Ausei**, órum, m. plur., *the Ausci, a tribe near the Pyrenees.*

**ausus**, a, um, from *audeo*.

**aut**, conj., *or, or else; repeated, either...or.*

**autem**, conj., *but, whereas, while; moreover, now.*

**autumnus**, I, m., *autumu.*

**auxīl**, from *augeo*.

**auxiliāris**, e, *auxiliary; piur. as subst., the auxiliaries.*

**auxillīor**, árl, átus sumi, *give aid, help, assist.*

**auxillīum**, I, n., *aid, help, assistance; resource, support; in plur., auxiliaries, reinforcements.*

**Avarleēnsis**, e, of *Avaricum.*

**Avarleum**, I, n., *a town in central Gaul, near the Loire.*

**avāritia**, ae, f., *greed, covetousness.*

**á-vchō**, ere, -vexl, -vectum, *carry off.*

**áver-tō**, ere, -tl, -sumi, *turn away, turn or put aside; alienate.*

**avis**, is, f., *bird.*

**avus**, I, m., *grandfather.*

**Axona**, ae, f., *a river in the north of Gaul, joining the Seine.*

B.

**Bacēnis**, is, f., *a forest in Germany.*

**Baculus**, I, m., *Publius Sextius Baculus, a centurion in Caesar's army.*

**Baleāris**, is, m., *Balearic, from the Balearic islands.*

**balteus**, I, m., *belt, sword-belt.*

**Balventius**, I, m., *Titus Balventius, a centurion in Caesar's army.*

**barbarus**, a, um, *foreign, uncivilized, rude, barbarian; m. as subst., barbarus, I, m., a barbarian.*

**Basilus**, I, m., *Lucius Minucius Basilus, an officer with Caesar.*

**Batavi, örum, m. plur.,** *the Batavians*, a tribe at the mouth of the Rhine.

**Belgae, ärnum, m. plur.,** *the Belgians*, a people occupying the north-east of Gaul, and largely of German origin.

**Belgium, I, n.,** *Belgium*, the country of the *Belgae*.

**bellicösus, a, um,** *warlike*.

**bellens, a, um,** *of war, in war*.

**bellō, är, avl, åtum,** *make war, fight*.

**Bellovac, örnum, m. plur.,** *the Bellovaci*, a tribe in the northern part of Gaul.

**bellum, I, n.,** *war*.

**bene, adv.,** (*meillus, optimē*), *well, successfully*.

**beneficium, I, n.,** *kindness, service, favor*.

**benevolentia, ae, f.,** *good will; kindness*.

**Blbracte, ls, n.,** the chief town of the Aedui, in the central part of Gaul.

**Blbrax, -actis, f.,** a town of the Remi, in the northern part of Gaul.

**Blbroci, örnum, m. plur.,** *the Blbroci*, a tribe of Britain.

**biduum, I, n.,** *two days, space of two days*.

**biennium, I, n.,** *two years*.

**Bigerriones, um, m. plur.,** *the Bigerriones*, a tribe near the Pyrenees.

**blnl, ae, a,** *two each, two by two, two*.

**blpartitō, adv.,** *in two divisions*.

**bipedālis, e,** *two feet (thick)*.

**blpertitō, see blpartito.**

**bis, adv.,** *twice*.

**Bituriges, um, m. plur.,** *the Bituriges*, a tribe in the centre of Gaul, on the Loire.

**Boduognatus, I, m.,** a leader of the Nervii.

**Boii, örnum, m. plur.,** *the Boii, the Boians*, a nation originally living in Germany on the Danube.

**bonitās, -tatis, f.,** *goodness, excellence, fertility*.

**bonus, a, um (mellor, optimus),** *good*; *n. as subst., bonum, I, advantage*; *in plur., goods, property*

**bōs, bovis, m.,** *ox*.

**bracechium, I, n.,** *arm*.

**Brannovices, um, m. plur.,** *the Brannovices*, a branch of the Aulerci, in the north-west of Gaul.

**Brannovii, örnum, m. plur.,** *the Brannovii*, a tribe in Gaul.

**Bratuspantium, I, n.,** a town of the Bellovaci, in the north of Gaul.

**brevis, e, short;** *as adv., brevi, in a short time*.

**brevitās, -tatis, f.,** *shortness; short, stature*.

**breviter, adv.,** *briefly*.

**Britanni, örnum, m. plur.,** *the Britons*.

**Britannia, ae, f.,** *Britain*.

**Britannicus, a, um, of Britain,** *or with the Britons*.

**brüme, ae, f.,** *the winter solstice*.

**Brütus, I, m.,** *Decimus Brutus*, a lieutenant with Caesar.

## C.

C., an abbreviation of **Gatus** (or **Calus**).

**Cabillōnum, I, n.,** a town of the Aedui, in the central part of Gaul.

**Cabūrus, I, m.,** *Caius Valerius Caburus*, a Romanized Gaul.

**cacūmen, -inis, n.,** *top, point*.

**cadāver, -cris, n.,** *dead body, corpse*.

**cadō, ere, cecidi, casum,** *fall, be slain*.

**Cadureus, I, m.,** *one of the Cadurci*; *in plur., the Cadurci*, a tribe in Aquitania.

**caedēs, ls, m.,** *slaughter, massacre, murder*.

**caedō, ere, cecidi, caesum,** *cut down, fell*.

**caelestis, e,** *heavenly*; *m. plur. as subst., the gods*.

**caerimōnia, ae, f., ceremony,** sacred rite.

**Caeroesl, órum, m. plur., the Cuernesi,** a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

**caeruleus, a, um, blue, dark blue.**

**Caesar, aris, m., Caius Julius Caesar,** a Roman general; also *Lucius Caesar*, a lieutenant with Caesar.

**Calus, I, m., see Galus.**

**calamitās, -tātis, f., disaster, defeat, loss.**

**Calendae, árum, f. plur., the Calends,** the first day of each month.

**Caletēs, um, and Caletl, órum, m. plur., the Caletes or Caleti,** a tribe at the mouth of the Seine.

**callidus, a, um, shrewd, cunning.**

**cálō, ónis, m., soldier's servant, camp-follower.**

**campester, tris, tre, of or on the plain; level.**

**campus, I, m., field, plain.**

**Camulogenus, I, m., a chief of the Aulerici.**

**Canintus, I, m., Caius Caninius Rébilus,** a lieutenant of Caesar.

**canc, ere, cecinl, cantum, sing, sound.**

**Cantabri, órum, m. plur., the Cantabrians,** a tribe in the north of Spain.

**Cantium, I, n., Kent,** in the south-east of England.

**caper, pri, m., goat.**

**capillus, I, m., hair.**

**capio, ere, cépl, captum, take, catch, seize; get, occupy, reach; captivate, overcome; take up, choose, adopt.**

**capra, ae, f., she-goat.**

**captivus, I, m., captive, prisoner.**

**captus, ús, m., capacity, nature.**

**cap-ut, -itis, n., head; person; life; mouth (of a river).**

**careō, ère, ul, be without, go without.**

**carina, ae, f., keel.**

**Carnutēs, um, m. plur., the Carnutes,** a tribe in central Gaul on the Loire.

**carō, carnis, f., flesh, meat.**

**car-pō, ere, -psl, -ptum, criticize, blame.**

**carrus, I, m., cart, wagon.**

**cárus, a, um, dear, valuable.**

**Carvilius, I, m., a king ruling in Kent.**

**casa, ac, f., hut.**

**cáseus, I, m., cheese.**

**Cassi, órum, m. plur., the Cassi,** a tribe in Britain.

**Cassianus, a, um, of or with Cassius.**

**cassis, -idis, m., helmet.**

**Cassius, I, m., Lucius Cassius,** a Roman general, consul in B.C. 107.

**Cassivellaunus, I, m., a British chief.**

**castellum, I, n., fort, stronghold.**

**Casticus, I, m., a chief of the Sequani.**

**castra, órum, n. plur., camp, encampment.**

**cásus, ús, m., happening, occurrence; accident, chance; fate, disaster; emergency.**

**Catamantaloedes, Is, m., a chief of the Sequani.**

**caténa, ae, f., chain.**

**Caturiges, um, m. plur., the Caturiges,** a tribe in the Province, near the Alps.

**Catuvoles, I, m., a chief of the Eburones.**

**causa, ae, f., cause, reason; case; pretext, excuse; condition; in abl. sing., for the sake of, for the purpose of.**

**cautē, adv., cautiously, with caution.**

**cautēs, Is, m., sharp rock, reef.**

**Cat. arillus, I, m., a chief of the Iudui.**

**Cavarinus, I, m., king of the Senones.**

**caveō, ère, cavi, cantum, be on one's guard; give security.**

**cēdō, ere, cessāt, cessum, retreat,** give way, retire; yield; withdraw.

**celer, eris, ere, swift, speedy,** sudden.

**celeritās, -tatis, f., swiftness,** speed, rapidity.

**celeriter, adv., (celerius, celer-** rīmē), swiftly, quickly, rapidly.

**cēlō, āre, āvī, ātum, conceal,** hide.

**Celtæ, ārum, m. plur., the Celts,** or Gauls, one of the three great nations inhabiting Gaul.

**Celtillus, I, m., a chief of the** Arvern.

**Cēnabēnsis, Is, m., a man of** Cenabum; in plur., the people of Cenabum.

**Cēnabum, I, n., a town of central** Gaul, on the Loire.

**Cēnigmagni, örnum, m. plur., the** Centimagni, a tribe of Britain.

**Cēnomāni, örnum, m. plur., the** Cenomani, a tribe in the northwest of Gaul.

**cēns-eō, ēre, -si, -sum, be of opini-** on, think; hold, decree; advise.

**cēnsus, ūs, m., census, enumera-** tion.

**centum, a hundred.**

**centuriō, -ōnis, m., centurion (an** officer in the Roman army).

**ēpli, from caplo.**

**cernō, ere, crēvi, crētum, per-** ceive, see, make out.

**certāmen, -minis, n., contest;** engagement.

**certē, adv., certainly, with cer-** tainty; at least.

**certus, a, um, certain, fixed, speci-** fied, sure, definite; trustworthy;

**certorem facere, to inform.**

**cervus, I, m., stag; fork-shaped** branch.

**cēs-pes, -pitis, m., sod, turf.**

**cēteri, ae, n., the others, the rest.**

**Centrones, n.m., m. plur., the** Cœtrones, 1. a tribe in the Alps; 2. a tribe of the Belgæ.

**Cevenna, ne, f., the Cévennes,** a mountain range in the south-east of Gaul, west of the Rhone.

**Chérusci, örnum, m. plur., the** Cheruscæ, a German tribe.

**elbāris, n, nm, of food;** n. plur. as subst., food, provisions.

**elbus, I, m. food.**

**Cleerō, önis, m., Quintus Tullius** Cicero, one of Caesar's lieutenants, and a brother of the orator.

**Climberlus, I, m., a chief of the** Suebi.

**Cimbri, örnum, m. plur., the** Cimbri, a German tribe that invaded Gaul about 110 B.C.

**Cingetorix, -Igīs, m., 1. a chief of the Treveri; 2. a king of Kent.**

**cīn-gō, ēre, -xi, -etum, sur-** round, encircle; man.

**clippus, I, m., post, stake, palisade.**

**cīrelmns, I, m., pair of compasses**

**cīrelter, adv. and prep. w. acc..** about.

**cīrcuitus, a, um, perf. part. of** cīreunio.

**cīrcuitus, ūs, m., circumference,** circuit; detour, circuitous route.

**cīreum, prep. w. acc., around,** about, near.

**cīreum-cīdō, ere, -cīdi, -cīsum,** cut around, cut; perf. part. pass. isolated, steep.

**cīreumelū-dō, ere, -si, -sum,** encircle, line, put a rim around.

**cīreum-dō, -dare, -dedi,** -datum, put around; surround, encircle.

**cīreum-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -dūtum,** lead around; draw around.

**cīreum-eō, -Ire, -II (-Ivi), -Itum** or cīreultum, go around, surround; make the rounds of, visit.

**cīreum-fundō, ere, -fūdi, -fū-** sum, pour around, hence, in pass., rush in from all sides, crowd around; surround.

**cīreum-jēlō, ere, -Jēel, -Jec-** tum, place around.

**cīreum-mittō, ere, -mis, -mis-** sum, send around.

**circummūnlō, Ire, Ivl, Itum,** fortify all round, protect.

**circum-plexor, I. -plexus sum,** surround; embrace, include.

**circum-sistō, ere, -stetl, sur-** round, hem in, crowd around; rally around.

**circum-spectō, ere, -spexl,** -spectum, look about for, look carefully at; consider, examine carefully.

**circum-stō, -stāre, -stetl, sur-**round.

**circumvallō, āre, āvl, ātum,** surround with walls, invest, blockade.

**circum-vehō, ere, -vexl, -vec-**tum, carry around; in pass., ride around.

**circum-venīlō, Ire, -vēnl, -ven-**tum, surround, get round, outflank; outwit, betray, deceive, defraud.

**cis, prep. w. acc., on this side of.**

**Cisalpinus, a, um, Cisalpine,** on this (i.e. the Italian) side of the Alps.

**Cisrhēnānus, a, um, on this** (i.e. the western) side of the Rhine.

**Cita, ae, m., Caius Fufius Cita,** a Roman knight.

**citerior, lus, (comparative) hither,** nearer.

**citō, adv., (citus, citissimē),** quickly.

**citō, āre, āvl, ātum,** hasten; perf. part., cītātus, as adj., swift.

**citrā, prep. w. acc., on this side of.**

**citrō, adv., hither.**

**civis, ls, m., citizen.**

**civitās, -tatis, f., state; citizen-**ship.

**clam, adv., secretly.**

**clāmitō, āre, āvl, ātum,** cry out, keep shouting.

**clāmor, -ōris, m., shout,** shouting, cry.

**clandestinus, a, um, secret.**

**clārus, a, um, loud, distinct.**

**classis, ls, f., fleet.**

**Claudius, I, m., Appius Claudius,** consul in 51 B.C.

**claudō, ere, clausl, clausum,** close; w. agmen, bring up the rear.

**clāvus, I, m., nail.**

**clémentln, ae, f., mercifulness,** moderation, forbearance.

**clēns, -entis, m., dependant, re-**tainer, vassal.

**clēntēla, ae, f., dependency,** vasalage; protection; in plur., dependants.

**clivus, I, m., slope, ascent.**

**Clōdius, I, m., Publius Clodius,** a bitter partisan of Caesar.

**Cn.,** an abbreviation for Gnaeus.

**concurrō, āre, āvl, ātum,** heap up, crowd together.

**coāctus, a, um, from cogo.**

**coāctus, ūs, m., compulsion.**

**coagmentō, āre, āvl, ātum,** fasten together.

**Cocosates, um, m. plur., the Co-**coses, a tribe of Aquitania.

**coēgl, from cogo.**

**co-emō, ere, -ēnl, -emptum,** buy up.

**co-cō, -Ire, -ll (-Ivl), -ltum,** unite, join.

**coepī, isse, coepitus sum,** began, have begun.

**coerceō, ēre, ul, Itum,** restrain, check.

**cōglō, āre, āvl, ātum,** consider, think, reflect, have thoughts; take thought, plan.

**cōgnātlō, -ōnls, f., kinship;** kinsmen, clan, family connections.

**cō-gnōscō, ere, -gnōvl, -gnl-**tum, perceive, learn, find out, ascertain, become acquainted with; inquire into; in perf. tenses, know, be aware.

**cōgō, ere, coēgl, coāctum,** collect, gather, get together; compel, force, be urgent.

**co-hors, -hortis, f., a cohort,** one tenth of a legion.

**cohortātō, -ōnls, f., encouraging, address.**

**cohortor, ārl, āt is sum, encourage, address, urge.**

**cōfīre, from cōfō.**

**collātus, a, um, from cōfēro, collādō, āre, āvl, ātum, praise, extol, highly commend.**

**colligō, āre, āvl, ātum, fasten, pin together.**

**col-ligō, ēre, -lēgl, -lēctum, gather, collect; acquire; with se, collect one's self, recover, rally.**

**collīs, ls, m., hill.**

**colloēō, āre, āvl, ātum, place, station; arrange, stow; settle; give in marriage.**

**colloquīum, I, n., conversation, interview, conference.**

**col-loquor, I, -locūns sum, converse, confer, have an interview.**

**colō, ēre, colōl, cultum, till, cultivate; worship.**

**colōnla, ae, f., colony, settlement.**

**color, ōrls, m., color.**

**com-būrō, ēre, -busl, -būsum, burn up.**

**com-ea, -ltls, m., companion, attendant.**

**comītla, -ōrum, n. plur., comītia, election.**

**comītor, ārl, ātus sum, accompany.**

**commeātus, īs, m., supplies, provisions; passage, trip.**

**commemorō, āre, āvl, ātum, mention, speak of, relate.**

**commendō, āre, āvl, ātum, commend.**

**commicō, āre, āvl, ātum, visit, resort, go to and fro.**

**commītus, adv., hand to hand, in close combat.**

**commīssūra, ae, f., juncture, joining.**

**com-mittō, ēre, -mīsl, -mīssum, join; w. proellum, begin; on trust, put trust in; allow, commit, do; leave it possible, allow to come about.**

**Commīlus, I, m., a king of the Atrebates.**

**commōdē, adv., easily, to advantage, effectively, conveniently.**

**commōdus, a, um, fitting, suitable, advantageous, favorable; neut. as subst., commōdum, I, advantage, interest, convenience, blessing.**

**commōne-fuelō, ēre, -fēcl, -fuetum, remind.**

**commōrō, ārl, ātus sum, stay, delay, linger.**

**com-mōveō, ēre, -mōvl, -mōtum, move; alarm, disturb; influence, impress.**

**commōnleō, āre, āvl, ātum, communicate, share, consult, imparte; join, add.**

**com-mōnlō, Ir, lyl, lnum, strongly fortify, secure; build.**

**commōnls, e, common, general, joint, concerted.**

**commōtātō, -ōnls, f., change; turn.**

**com-mōtō, āre, āvl, ātum, change, exchange.**

**comparō, āre, āvl, ātum, compare; prepare, provide, procure, raise, get.**

**com-pellā, ēre, -pull, -pulsuim, drive, drive in, gather.**

**compendium, I, n., gain, profit.**

**com-perlō, Ir, -perl, -pertum, learn, find out, discover; perf. part. as adj., certain.**

**com-plexor, I, -plexus sum, embrace; include, enclose.**

**complēō, ēre, -ēvl, -ētum, fill, fill up; man.**

**complūrēs, a, several, many, a great many.**

**comportō, āre, āvl, ātum, bring in, collect.**

**compre-hendō, ēre, -hendl, -hensum, seize, grasp, catch, capture; take.**

**comprobō, āre, āvl, ātum, approve, justify, confirm.**

**compulsus, a, um, from compello.**

**cōnītūm.** I, n., attempt, under-taking.  
**cōnātūs, ūs,** m., attempt.  
**cōn-eēdō,** ere, -eessl, -eessum, grant, allow, permit; yield, give in.  
**cōnērō, āre, āvl, ātūm,** contend, fight.  
**cōn-cessus, ūs,** m., permission.  
**cōn-eidō,** ere, -eidl, fall, fall down.  
**cōn-eidō,** ere, -eidl, -eisum, cut down, stay; perf. part. as adj., cut up, broken.  
**cōnēllō,** āre, āvl, ātūm, win over; gain, obtain.  
**cōnēlūm,** I, n., meeting, assembly, council.  
**cōncēlsus,** a, um, from concēdo.  
**cōncētō,** āre, āvl, ātūm, arouse, stir up, call out.  
**cōncēlāmō,** āre, āvl, ātūm, cry out, call out, shout.  
**cōn-eħidō,** ēre, -eħisl, -eħisum, shut up, enclose.  
**Cōnēnetodūmūs,** I, m., a leader of the Carnutes.  
**cōnērep-ō,** āre, -ul, -ltūm, clash, make a clashing noise.  
**cōn-eurrō,** ere, -eurrī (-eueur-ri), -eurstūm, run together, rally, rush up, hasten, flock.  
**cōnēursō,** āre, āvl, ātūm, run to and fro.  
**cōnēursus, ūs,** m., running together, rally, crowd; rush, onset, charge; collision.  
**cōdeutnō,** āre, āvl, ātūm, declare guilty.  
**cōdīclō,** -ōnlī, f., terms, agreement, condition; state.  
**cōdōnō,** āre, āvl, ātūm, give up, forgive for the sake of.  
**Condriūsl,** ūrum, m. plur., the Condriasi, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.  
**cōn-dūcō,** ere, -dūxl, -ductum, gather, assemble: hire.

**cōn-ferelō, īre, -feral, -fertum,** pack closely; perf. part. cōnfertus, u, um, crowded, in close array, in close order.  
**cōnferō, cōnferro, contull, col-lātūm,** gathēc, collect, bring in, convey; with se, betake one's self; compace; put off, postpone; lay the blame on, ascribe.  
**cōnfertus,** a, um, from cōnferelō.  
**cōnfestim,** adv., immediately, at once.  
**cōn-fielō,** ere, -feel, -fectum, finish, carry out, complete, accomplish; make out, work up; exhaust, wear out.  
**cōnfidō,** ere, -fisus sum, trust, rely on, have confidence.  
**cōn-fligō,** ere, -flxl, -fixum, fasten.  
**cōnflīns,** e, adjacent, neighboring.  
**cōnflīnlūm,** I, n., neighborhood, borders.  
**cōn-flo,** -florl, irregular pass. of conflo.  
**cōnfīrmātlō, -ōnlī,** f., assurance, assertion.  
**cōn-fīrmānō,** āre, āvl, ātūm, strengthen; establish, fix; declare, give pledge; encourage, reassure, confirm, rouse.  
**cōnfīsus,** a, um, from confido.  
**cōn-fiteor,** ērl, -fessus sum, confess, acknowledge.  
**cōnfixus,** a, um, from configo.  
**cōnflagrō,** āre, āvl, ātūm, be on fire, be in flames.  
**cōnfiłetō,** āre, āvl, ātūm, harass.  
**cōnfligō,** ere, -flxl, -fletum, contend, engage, fight.  
**cōnfluēns,** entls, m., confluence, juncture.  
**cōn-fluō,** ere, -flxl, gather, flock.  
**cōn-fuglō,** ere, -fugl, flee for refuge, flee.  
**cōn-fundō,** ere, -fādl, -fāsum, mix, gather together.  
**cōn-gredīlō,** I, -gressus sum, meet; engage, contend, fight.

**congressus** ūs, m., *engagement, conflict.*

**conjectūra**, ae, f., *conjecture, guess.*

**con-jicō**, ere, -jēcl, -jectum, *huri, cast, throw; drive; put, place; w. se, rush.*

**con-junctini**, adv., *jointly, together.*

**con-jungō**, ere, -jānxi, -junctum, *join, connect, unite.*

**con-jānx**, -jngis, m. and f., *husband; wife.*

**conjūratiō**, -ōnis, f., *conspiracy, combination, league.*

**conjirō**, āre, āvl, ātum, *take a (joint) oath, conspire, combine.*

**cōnor**, ārl, ātus sum, *try, attempt, undertake, make an attempt.*

**conqul-ēscō**, ere, -ēvi, -ētum, *rest.*

**con-quirō**, ere, -quisivi, -quisitum, *search for, hunt up, collect.*

**cōnsanguineus**, I, m., *kinsman.*

**cōn-scendō**, ere, -scendi, -scēnum, *ascend, mount; embark on, go on board.*

**cōnscientia**, ae, f., *consciousness.*

**cōn-selscō**, ere, -selvi, -seltum, *resolve on; w. sibl mortem, commit suicide.*

**cōnsclus**, a, um, *conscious.*

**cōn-scribō**, ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *write; enlist, enroll, levy.*

**cōnsecrō**, āre, āvl, ātum, *consecrate.*

**cōnsector**, ārl, ātus sum, *follow up, pursue.*

**cōnsecūtus**, a, um, *from consequor.*

**cōnsēdl**, from *consido.*

**cōnsēnsiō**, -ōnis, f., *unanimity.*

**cōnsēnsus**, ūs, m., *agreement, consent.*

**cōn-sentīō**, I, re, -sēnsi, -sēnum, *agree, combine, conspire.*

**cōn-sequor**, I, -secūtus sum, *follow, overtake; attain, obtain, secure; succeed.*

**cōnservō**, āre, āvl, ātum, *preserve, save, spare, protect; observe, maintain.*

**Cōnsidius**, I, m., *Publius Considius, one of Caesar's soldiers.*

**cōn-sldō**, ere, -sēdl, -sessum, *encamp, take up a position; settle; hold a session.*

**cōnsilium**, I, n., *deliberation, consultation; plan, design, resolve, purpose; prudence, discretion; counsel, advice; council.*

**cōnsimiliis**, e, *very similar, like.*

**cōn-sistō**, ere, -stītl, *take up position, stand, get a footing; halt, stop, make a stand; ground; settle; consist of, depend on.*

**cōnsobrinus**, I, m., *cousin.*

**cōnsolōr**, ārl, ātus sum, *console.*

**cōspectus**, ūs, m., *sight, view, presence.*

**cōn-spīcō**, ere, -spexi, spectum, *catch sight of, observe, see.*

**cōnspīceor**, ārl, ātus sum, *catch sight of, observe, see.*

**cōnspirō**, āre, āvl, ātum, *combine, conspire.*

**cōnstanter**, adv., *uniformly; firmly, steadily.*

**cōnstantia**, ae, f., *firmness, steadfastness, constancy.*

**cōnsternō**, āre, āvl, ātum, *dismay, impress.*

**cōn-sternō**, ere, -strāvi, -strātum, *cover, floor.*

**cōnstipō**, āre, āvl, ātum, *crowd, press.*

**cōnstitl**, from *consisto.*

**cōnstit-uō**, ere, -ul, -ūtum, *establish, arrange, appoint, fix; decide, resolve, determine; place, station, draw up.*

**cōn-stō**, āre, -stītl, -stātum, *cost; depend on; remain, be unchanged; impersonal use, it is certain, agreed, established, evident.*

**vōn-suēscō.** *ere, -suēvl, -suētum,* become accustomed; in perf. *tenses, be accustomed.*

**cōnsuētū-dō, -dīnis.** *f., custom, habit.*

**cōn-sul, -sulla.** *m., consul,* the chief magistrate of Rome, of whom there were two, elected for a year.

**cōnsulātus, ūs.** *m., consulship.*

**cōn-sul-ō.** *ere, -ul, -tum,* consult, discuss, deliberate; provide for, take thought for, have regard for.

**cōnsultō.** *āre, āvl, ātum,* deliberate, take counsel.

**cōnsultō, adv., designedly, on purpose.**

**cōnsultum, l.** *n., decree.*

**cōn-sūmō, ere, -sūmpsi, -sūmptum, spend; consume, exhaust.**

**cōn-surgō, ere, -surrēxi, -surrēctum, rise up.**

**contabulō, āre, āvl, ātum, built up (by stories).**

**contaglō, -ōnis,** *f., contact, contagion.*

**contaminō, āre, āvl, ātum, contaminate, stain.**

**con-tegō, ere, -tēxi, -tēctum, cover up.**

**con-tempnō, ere, -tempsi, temp-tum, despise.**

**contemptō, -ōnis,** *f., contempt.*

**contemptus, ūs,** *in., scorn; object of contempt.*

**conten-dō, ere, -dl, -tum, hasten, make one's way, push on; strive, exert one's self; struggle, fight, contend; maintain, insist.**

**contentlō, -ōnis,** *f., struggle, contest.*

**contentus, a, um,** content, satisfied.

**contestor, ārl, ātus sum,** call upon, invoke.

**contex-ō, ere, -ul, -tum, weave, join, construct.**

**contigi,** from contingo.

**continēns, entis,** *f., the continent, mainland.*

**continenter,** *adv., continually, uninterruptedly, without stopping.*

**continental,** *ae, f., self-control, self-restraint.*

**con-tincō, ēre, -tinul, -tentum,** hold together; contain, hem in, restrain, keep, hold; bound, surround, occupy; pres. part. as adj., continual, incessant, uninterrupted, unbroken, continuous.

**con-tingō, ere, -tigl, -tāctum,** touch, reach, extend to; happen, fall to the lot of.

**continuātlō, -ōnis,** *f., continuance, succession.*

**continuō, adv., at once, immediately.**

**continuous, a, um,** successive, unbroken, continuous.

**cōntlō, -ōnis,** *f., assembly, meeting.*

**cōntlōnor, ārl, ātus sum,** address.

**contrā, 1. adv., ag-inst;** otherwise; **contra atque,** contrary to what; 2. prep. w. acc., opposite, over against; against.

**con-trahō, ere, -trāxi, -trāctum,** make smaller, reduce; collect, gather together.

**contrārius, a, um,** opposite; **ex contrario,** on the contrary.

**contrōversia, ae, f., quarrel, dispute, feud.**

**contumēlla,** *ae, f., disgrace, insult, affront; buffetting, violence.*

**convul-ēscō, ere, -ul,** recover, regain health.

**convallis, ls,** *f., (enclosed) valley.*

**con-vehō, ere, -vexl, -vectum,** gather, bring in.

**con-venlō, Ire, -vēnl, -ventum,** come together, meet, assemble, gather; come, arrive; be agreed upon; be fitting.

**conventus, ūs,** *m., meeting, assembly; assizes.*

**conver-tō, ere, -tl, -sum,** turn, turn about; change, alter; w. alagna, wheel about.

**Convictollatāvis**, **is**, **m.**, an Aeduan of high rank.

**con-vincō**, **ere**, **-vici**, **-victum**, prove, bring home.

**convocō**, **āre**, **āvl**, **ātum**, call together, call, summon.

**co-orior**, **Irl**, **-ortus sum**, arise, spring up, break out.

**cōpla**, **ae**, **f.**, supply, abundance, quantity; resources, wealth; in plur., forces, troops.

**cōplōsus**, **a**, **um**, well-supplied, rich.

**cōpula**, **ae**, **f.**, grappling hook.

**cor**, **cordis**, **n.**, heart; **cordi esse**, be dear, be cherished.

**cōram**, **adv.**, in person, face to face.

**corium**, **I**, **n.**, skin, hide.

**cornū**, **ūs**, **n.**, horn; wing (of an army).

**corōna**, **ae**, **f.**, garland; circle; sub corona, at auction.

**corp-us**, **-oris**, **n.**, body, person; dead body, corpse; system.

**cor-rumpō**, **ere**, **-rūpl**, **-rup-tum**, destroy.

**cort-ex**, **-icis**, **m.**, bark.

**Cōrus**, **I**, **m.**, the north-west wind.

**cotidīanus**, **a**, **um**, daily; regular, usual.

**cotidīē**, **adv.**, daily, every day.

**Cotta**, **ae**, **m.**, *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**Cotus**, **I**, **m.**, an Aeduan of high rank.

**crassitū-dō**, **-dīnis**, **f.**, thickness.

**Crassus**, **I**, **m.**, 1. *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, a Roman general, consul 55 B.C.; 2. his son, *Marcus Crassus*, quaestor in Caesar's army; 3. a younger son, *Publius Crassus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**cratēs**, **is**, **f.**, hurdle, wickerwork.

**crēber**, **bra**, **brum**, frequent, numerous, crowded.

**crēbrō**, **adv.**, frequently, at short intervals.

**crē-dō**, **ere**, **-didi**, **-ditum**, believe; trust.

**cremō**, **āre**, **āvl**, **ātum**, burn.

**creō**, **āre**, **āvl**, **ātum**, appoint, elect.

**Crēs**, **Crētis**, **m.**, a Cretan.

**crēsēō**, **ere**, **crēvl**, **crētum**, grow, become powerful, rise.

**Critōgnātus**, **I**, **m.**, a chief of the Arvernī.

**cruelatūs**, **ūs**, **m.**, torture, cruelty.

**crudēlitās**, **-tatis**, **f.**, cruelty.

**crudēliter**, **adv.**, cruelly.

**crūs**, **crūris**, **n.**, leg.

**cubile**, **is**, **n.**, bed, resting place.

**culmen**, **-minis**, **n.**, height, summit.

**culpa**, **ae**, **f.**, blame, fault.

**cultus**, **ūs**, **m.**, refinement, civilization, style of life; care, habit.

**cumi**, **prep.** w. **abl.**, with, together with.

**cumi**, **conj.**, when, whenever, while; as, since; although; cum primum, as soon as; cum...tum, both...and, not only...but also.

**cunctatiō**, **-ōnis**, **f.**, hesitation, delay.

**cunctor**, **ārl**, **ātus sum**, hesitate, delay.

**cunctus**, **a**, **um**, all, all together.

**cunctatiū**, **adv.**, in the form of a wedge, in a compact mass.

**cuneus**, **I**, **m.**, wedge.

**cunelulus**, **I**, **m.**, burrow; mine.

**cupidē**, **adv.**, eagerly.

**cupiditās**, **-tatis**, **f.**, eagerness, eager desire.

**cupidus**, **a**, **um**, eager, desirous, fond, ambitious.

**cup-lō**, **ere**, **-lvi**, **-lrum**, be eager; be well disposed.

**cūr**, **adv.**, why.

**cūrā**, **ae**, **f.**, care; curiae esse, be one's care, be carefully attended to.

**Curiosolites**, **um**, **m.**, the Curiosolites, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.

**cūrō, àre, àvl, àtum, attend to, take care; with gerundive, cause to be (done), have (done).**  
**cūrrō, ere, cūcurrl, cursum, run.**  
**currus, ūs, m., chariot.**  
**cursus, ūs, m., running, speed, pace; course; voyage, passage.**  
**custōdia, ae, f., guard, garrison.**  
**custōdiō, Iro, Ivl, Itum, guard, eus-tōs, -tōdis, m., guard; watch, spy.**

**D.**

**D., an abbreviation for Decimus.**  
**Dācl, òrum, m., plur., the Dacians, a tribe of central Europe, living north of the Danube.**  
**daninō, àre, àvl, àtum, condemn, find guilty; perf. part. as subst., damnātus, I, m., criminal, outlaw.**  
**damnum, I, n., loss.**  
**Dānuvius, I, m., the Danube.**  
**dē, prep. w. abl., from, down from; in accordance with, for; of, out of; about, concerning, of.**  
**dēbeō, ère, ul, Itum, owe; ought, should, cannot help; in pass., be due.**  
**dē-cēdō, ere, -cessl, -cessum, withdraw, depart; keep aloof, shun; die.**  
**decent, ten.**  
**dēceptus, a, um, from decipio.**  
**dē-cernō, ere, -crévl, -crētum, decide, determine; decree, order.**  
**dēcertō, àre, àvl, àtum, fight, fight a decisive battle, decide the issue.**  
**dēcessl, from decesso.**  
**dēcessus, ūs, m., departure; ebb.**  
**Decetia, ae, f., a town of the Aedui, on the Loire.**  
**dē-cidō, ere, -cidl, fall.**  
**decimus, a, um, tenth.**  
**Decimus, I, m., a Roman praenomen.**

**dē-cliplō, ere, -cèpl, -ceptum, deceive.**  
**dēclarō, àre, àvl, àtum, declare, proclaim.**  
**dēclivis, e, sloping; neut. as subst., slope.**  
**dēclitās, -tātis, f., downward slope.**  
**dēcrētum, I, n., decree, decision.**  
**dēcrētus, a, um, from decerno.**  
**dēcrēvl, from decerno.**  
**decunānus, a, um, w. porta, the rear gate.**  
**decurlō, -ónis, m., decurion, a cavalry officer.**  
**dē-currō, ere, -currI(-cucurrl), -cursuu, run down.**  
**dēdec-us, -oris, n., disgrace.**  
**dedl, from do.**  
**dēdidl, from dedo.**  
**dēditicius, a, um, surrendered; m. as subst., one who has surrendered, prisoner, subject.**  
**dēditiō, -ónis, f., surrender, submission, capitulation.**  
**dē-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, surrender, give up; devote.**  
**dē-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead away, take away, withdraw, remove; bring; influence; launch; lead (home), marry.**  
**dēfatigātiō, -ónis, f., exhaustion.**  
**dēfatigō, àre, àvl, àtum, weary, exhaust, wear out.**  
**dēfectiō, -ónis, f., revolt.**  
**dē-fē-dō, ere, -fendi, -fēsum, repel; defend, protect.**  
**dēfēnsiō, -ónis, f., defence, protection.**  
**dēfēnsor, -óris, m., defender.**  
**dē-forō, -ferre, -tull, -lātum, carry, bring, convey; in pass., drift, fall, be turned aside; report; give, confer.**  
**dēfessus, a, um, worn out, weary, exhausted.**  
**dē-ficlō, ere, -fēol, -fectum, fail, give out, be wanting; revolt, forsake.**

dē-**figō**, ere, -**fixī**, -**fixum**, *fix, set, fasten, plant firmly.*

dē-**flītō**, ire, **Ivi**, **Itum**, *fix, assign.*

dē-**fluō**, ere, -**fluxī**, -**fluxum**, *flow off, divide.*

dē-**fore**, fut. infin. of *desum*.

dē-**fōrmī**, e, *ill-shaped, unsightly, unattractive.*

dē-**fugiō**, ere, -**fūglī**, -**fugitum**, *avoid, shun.*

dē-**neeps**, adv., *in turn, after that.*

dē-**inde**, adv., *then, thereupon, next.*

dē-**jectus**, ūs, m., *slope, abrupt side.*

dē-**jelō**, ere, -**jēclī**, -**jectum**, *throw down, cast down; carry down, overthrow; drive off, dislodge; disappoint.*

dē-**lātus**, a, um, from *defero*.

dē-**lectō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *delight; in pass., take pleasure in.*

dē-**lēctus**, ūs, m., *levy.*

dē-**lēctus**, a, um, and dē-**lēglī** from *dligo*, ere.

dē-**lēo**, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *destroy, overthrow; wipe out.*

dē-**llberō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *discuss, consider, deliberate.*

dē-**llibrō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *strip of bark, peel.*

dē-**lētūm**, I, n., *offence, fault.*

dē-**lligō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *fasten, tie, moor.*

dē-**lligō**, ere, -**lēglī**, -**lēctum**, *pick out, choose, select.*

dē-**lēt-ēscō**, ere, -**ulī**, *hide, lurk, lie concealed.*

dē-**mentia**, ae, f., *madness, folly.*

dē-**metō**, ere, -**messulī**, -**messum**, *cut, reap.*

dē-**migrō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *depart, move away, abandon.*

dē-**min-uō**, ere, -**ulī**, -**ntum**, *diminish, lessen, take away, detract, abate.*

dē-**mittō**, ere, -**misī**, -**missum**, *let down, lower; w. se, descend, be disheartened; perf. part., dē-missus, bowed, drooping, low-lying.*

dē-**mō**, ere, dē-**mplī**, dē-**emptum**, *take down.*

dē-**mōnstrō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *point out, explain, state, mention.*

dē-**mōrōr**, ārl, ātus sum, *delay, retard.*

dē-**mūm**, adv., *at last, at length.*

dē-**negō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *refuse, deny.*

dē-**nīl**, ae, a, *ten each, in groups of ten.*

dē-**nīque**, adv., *at length, finally; at least.*

dē-**nūs**, a, um, *dense, close, thick.*

dē-**nūntiō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *announce, give notice, warn, threaten.*

dē-**pellō**, ere, -**plū**, -**pulsūm**, *drive off, or away, dislodge.*

dē-**per-dō**, ere, -**diū**, -**ditum**, *lose, forfeit.*

dē-**per-eō**, -ire, -**llī**, *perish, be lost.*

dē-**pōnō**, ere, -**posulī**, -**positum**, *lay aside, give up; deposit, store; place.*

dē-**populor**, ārl, ātus sum, *lay waste, ravage.*

dē-**portō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry off, remove.*

dē-**poscō**, ere, -**poposcl**, *demand, call for.*

dē-**positus**, a, um, from *depono*.

dē-**precātor**, -**tōris**, m., *intercessor, advocate.*

dē-**precor**, ārl, ātus sum, *beg off, avert by prayer, petition against, request (not); pray for mercy.*

dē-**pre-hendō**, ere, -**hendlī**, -**hēnum**, *catch, seize, surprise, come upon.*

dē-**pūgnō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight desperately.*

dē-**pulsus**, a, um, from *depello*.

dē-**rlvō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *divert, draw.*

dē-**rogō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *withdraw, take away.*

dē-**scendō**, ere, -**scendī**, -**scēnsum**, *descend, go down; resort, have recourse, yield.*

dē-**sec-ō**, āre, -**ulī**, -**tum**, *cut off.*

dēser-tō, ère, -ul, -tum, *desert*, abandon, forsake; perf. part. as adj., *solitary*, *lonely*.

dēsértoR, -tōrls, m., *deserter*.

dēsiderō, àre, àvl, àtum, *desire*, *wish for*; *lose*, *miss*.

dēsida, ae, f., *idleness*, *inholence*.

dēsignō, àre, àvl, àtum, *indicate*, *point at*, *aim at*.

dē-sillō, Ire, -silll, -sultum, *leap down*.

dē-sistō, ère, -stítI, -stitum, *stop*, *cease*; *abandon*, *give up*, *desist from*.

dēspectus, a, um, from *despicio*.

dēspectus, ûs, m., *view down*, *prospect* (from a height); *height*.

dēspératiō, -ónis, f., *despair*.

dēspérō, àre, àvl, àtum, *give up hope*, *despair*; perf. part. as adj., *desperate*.

dē-spiciō, ère, -spexl, -spectum, *look down*; *look down upon*, *despise*.

dēpollo, àre, àvl, àtum, *strip*, *deprive*.

dēstinō, àre, àvl, àtum, *fasten*, *make fast*; *appoint*, *set*.

dēstit-uō, ère, -ul, -utum, *abandon*, *desert*.

dē-stringō, ère, -strinxl, -strictum, *draw*.

dēsum, deesse, dēful, *be lacking*, *be missing*, *be wanting*, *fail*; *neglect*.

dēsuper, adv., *from above*.

dēterior, ius, (comparative), *inferior*, *less valuable*.

dēterreō, ère, ul, itum, *deter*, *discourage*, *prevent*.

dētestor, àrl, àtus sumi, *curse*, *denounce*.

dē-tineō, ère, -tinul, -tentum, *detain*, *hinder*; *delay*.

dētræctō, àre, àvl, àtum, *avoid*, *escape*.

dē-trahō, ère, -traxl, -træctum, *take from*, *withdraw*, *remove*; *snatch from*.

dētrectō, àre, see *detracto*.

dētrimentosus, a, um, *detrimental*, *disadvantageous*, *hurtful*.

dētrimentum, I, n., *loss*, *injury*, *damage*; *defeat*.

dē-trudō, ère, -trusl, -trusum, *strip off*, *remove*.

dētull, from *defero*.

dēturbō, àre, àvl, àtum, *drive off*, *dislodge*.

dē-nrō, ère, -ussl, -ustum, *burn down*.

deus, I, m., *god*.

dē-vehō, ère, -vexl, -vectum, *bring*, *convey*.

dē-veniō, Ire, -vénI, -ventum, *come (down)*.

dēvexus, a, um, *sloping*, *descending*; neut. as subst., *descent*, *incline*.

dē-vincō, ère, -victl, -victum, *subdue*, *conquer (completely)*.

dēvocō, àre, àvl, àtum, *call*; *bring*.

dē-voveō, ère, -vövl, -votum, *vow*, *consecrate*, *devote*; perf. part. as subst., *devoted follower*.

dexter, tra, trum, *right*, *on the right*; fem. *dextra*, as subst., (sc. manus), *the right hand*.

dl, or dfl, from *deus*.

Diablintes, um, m., *the Diablintes*, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.

dicō, -ónis, f., *sway*, *rule*, *power*.

dicō, àre, àvl, àtum, *consecrate*, *adjudge*; *give over*.

dictō, ère, dixl, dictum, *say*, *state*, *mention*; *appoint*, *name*; *plead*: *adjudge*, *administer*.

dictiō, -ónis, f., *pleading*.

dictum, I, n., *word*, *order*, *command*.

di-dúcō, ère, -dùxl, -ductum, *divide*, *separate*.

dīs, él, m. (rarely f.), *day*; *time*; *In dies*, *daily*.

differō, differre, distull, dillatum, *differ*, *be different*; *spread*, *scatter*; *put off*, *postpone*.

difficilis, e, *difficult*.

**difflcultas**, -tātis, f., *difficulty*.  
**dif-fidō**, ere, -fīsus sūm, *dis-trust, lack confidence, despair*.  
**dif-fundō**, ere, -fīndI, -fīsum, *spread out; extend*.  
**digitus**, I, m., *finger*.  
**dignitās**, -tātis, f., *worth, esteem; reputation, rank, standing; dignity, honor*.  
**dignus**, a, um, *worthy, worth*.  
**dī-jūdīcō**, āre, āvI, ātum, *decide*.  
**dīlēctus**, a, um, from *dīlīgo*.  
**dīlīgenter**, adv., *carefully, exactly, punctually, scrupulously*.  
**dīlīgentia**, ae, f., *carefulness, care, pains, zeal, attention*.  
**dī-līgō**, ere, -lēxI, -lēctum, *love*.  
**dī-mētlor**, IrI, -mēnsus sum, *measure out, proportion*.  
**dīmīcatlō**, -ōnls, f., *struggle, contest*.  
**dīmīcō**, āre, āvI, ātum, *fight, struggle, contend, engage*.  
**dīmīdīlus**, a, um, *half; neut. as subst, half*.  
**dī-mittō**, ere, -mīsl, -mīssum, *send out, despatch; dismiss, send away; lose, let slip; abandon, give up*.  
**dīrēctē**, adv., *straight, exactly*.  
**dī-rīgō**, ere, -rēxI, -rēctum, *form (in straight line), arrange; perf. part. as adj., dīrēctus, a, um, straight*.  
**dīr-īmō**, ere, -ēmI, -ēptum, *break up*.  
**dī-ripiō**, ere, -ripul, -reptum, *plunder, pillage, seize*.  
**Dīs**, *Dītis*, m., *Pluto, the god of the lower world*.  
**dīs-cēdō**, ere, -cessI, -cessum, *go away, withdraw, depart; with ab, leave; forsake, abandon; swerve from*.  
**dīsceptātor**, -ōrls, m., *judge, umpire*.  
**dīs-cernō**, ere, -erēvI, -erētum, *distinguish*.  
**dīscessus**, ūs, m., *departure, withdrawal*.  
**dīscliplīna**, ae, f., *training, instruction, learning system*.  
**dīs-clīndō**, ere, -clūsl, -clīnsum, *keep apart, separate*.  
**dīscō**, ere, dīdicI, *learn, be instructed*.  
**dīserīmen**, -mīnis, n., *crisis, danger, critical condition*.  
**dīs-entlō**, ere, -eussI, -ensum, *disperse, remove*.  
**dīs-jētēlō**, ere, -jēcl, -jeatum, *break up, scatter; tear off*.  
**dīs-pār**, -paris, *unequal; inferior*.  
**dīsparō**, āre, āvI, ātum, *separate*.  
**dī-spergō**, ere, -spersI, -spersum, *scatter, disperse*.  
**dīs-pōnō**, ere, -posul, -positum, *place at intervals, dispose, post, arrange, set, array*.  
**dīsputātlō**, -ōnls, f., *debate, discussion*.  
**dīsputō**, āre, āvI, ātum, *discuss, engage in discussion*.  
**dīssēnsiō**, -ōnls, f., *dissension, disagreement, dispute, strife*.  
**dīs-sentlō**, ire, -sēnsI, -sēnsum, *dissent, differ, disagree*.  
**dīs-serō**, ere, -sēvI, -situm, *plant here and there, scatter about*.  
**dīshīnulō**, āre, āvI, ātum, *conceal*.  
**dīsippō**, āre, āvI, ātum, *scatter, disperse, rout*.  
**dīs-suādeō**, ēre, -suāsl, -suāsum, *dissuade, oppose*.  
**dīs-tīneō**, ēre, -tinul, -tentum, *Keep apart, separate; keep at a distance*.  
**dīs-tō**, -stāre, *be apart, stand apart, be distant*.  
**dīs-trahō**, ere, -trāxI, -trāctum, *tear apart, wrench asunder*.  
**dīstribūō**, ere, -ul, -ūtum, *assign, allot, distribute, divide*.  
**dīstūll**, from *differo*.  
**dīssimimus**, superlative of *dīves*.

**dīū**, adv., (**dīūtius**, **dīūtissimē**), *long, for a long time; quam dīū, as long as.*

**dīurnus**, a, um, *by day, during the day.*

**dīutinus**, a, um, *long, long-continued.*

**dīuturnitās**, -tātl̄s, f., *length, long duration.*

**dīuturnus**, a, um, *long, prolonged.*

**dīver-tō**, ere, -tl̄, -sum, *separate; perf. part. as adj., dīversus*, a, um, *distant, at a distance, remote; facing in a different direction; different; separate, apart.*

**dīve-s**, -tis, *rich.*

**Dīvleō**, -ōnl̄s, m., *a leader of the Helvetii.*

**dī-vldō**, ere, -vīsl̄, -vīsum, *divide, separate, distribute.*

**dīvinus**, a, um, *divine, sacred.*

**Dīvtiācūs**, I, m., 1. *a leader of the Aedui; 2. a king of the Sues-siones.*

**dō**, dare, *dedi, datum, give, grant, allow, afford; cause; Inter se dare, exchange; w. In fugam, put; operam dare, take pains, see to it.*

**doc-eō**, ére, -ul̄, -tum, *teach, inform, show, state.*

**documentum**, I, n., *evidence, lesson, example, warning.*

**doleō**, ére, ul̄, *grieve, be pained, suffer.*

**dolor**, -ōrl̄s, m., *grief, pain, distress; annoyance, vexation, chagrin, resentment.*

**dolus**, I, m., *deceit, guile, artifice.*

**domesticus**, a, um, *at home; w. bellum, intestine, civil.*

**domellum**, I, n., *home, house, dwelling-place.*

**dominor**, ārl̄, ātum sum, *rule, be master.*

**dominus**, I, m., *master, lord.*

**Domitius**, I, m., *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, consul 54 B.C.*

**domus**, ūs, f., *home, house; domī, locative, at home.*

**Donnotaurus**, I, m., *Caius Vale-rius Donnotaurus, a Romanized Gaul.*

**dōnō**, āre, āvl̄, ātum, *grant, give; present.*

**dōnum**, I, u., *gīt, present.*

**dorsum**, I, n. or **dorsus**, I, m., *ridge.*

**dōs**, dōtl̄s, f., *dowry.*

**druides**, um, m., *the druids, the priests of the Gauls.*

**Dūbls**, ls, m., *a river of eastern Gaul, flowing into the Arar.*

**dubltātl̄o**, -ōnl̄s, f., *doubt, hesita-tion.*

**dubltō**, āre, āvl̄, ātum, *hesitate; doubt, have doubts.*

**dublus**, a, um, *doubtful, uncer-tain.*

**dueentl̄**, ae, a, *two hundred.*

**dūcō**, ere, **dūxī**, *ductum, lead, draw, bring; make, constru-ct, run; marry; put off, prolon-g; reckon, regard, consider.*

**duetus**, ūs, m., *leadership.*

**dum**, conj., *while; until.*

**DūnnorIx**, Igls, m., *a leader of the Aedui.*

**duo**, ae, o, *two.*

**duodeclm**, *twelve.*

**duodeclmus**, a, um, *twelfth.*

**duodēnl̄**, ae, a, *twelve each, twelve.*

**duodēvgintl̄**, indecl., *eighteen.*

**dupl-ex**, -lcis, *twofold, double.*

**duplicō**, āre, āvl̄, ātum, *double.*

**dūrltia**, ae, f., *hardship; hardi-ness, endurance.*

**dūrō**, āre, āvl̄, ātum, *harden.*

**Durocortorum**, I, n., *a town of the Remi, in northern Gaul.*

**dūrus**, a, um, *hard, difficult, severe; inclement.*

**Dūrus**, I, m., *Quintus Laberius Durus, a military tribune with Caesar.*

**dux**, **ducls**, m., *leader, guide*

## E.

é, see ex.

**Ebnrónes**, um, m. plur., *the Eburones*, a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.

**Ebnrovlees**, um, m. plur., *the Eburovices*, a tribe in the northwest of Gaul.

**é-disceō, ere, -didiēl, learn by heart.**

**éditus, a, uni**, from edo.

**é-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, put forth, exhibit, exercise; perf. part. as adj.**, **édatus, a, uni**, elevated, raised, rising, high.

**édoē-eō, ére, -ui, -tum, explain (fully), inform, show.**

**é-dūeō, ere, -dūxi, -dūtum, lead out, lead forth; draw.**

**ef-fareō, ire, -farsl, -fertum, fill up, stop up.**

**effemīnō, áre, ávi, átum, soften, weaken, enervate, make effeminate.**

**efferō, efferre, extuli, élatum, take away, take; disclose, divulge, publish; lift up; elate.**

**ef-fieō, ere, -feēl, -fectum, make, render, cause, produce; bring about, accomplish, bring to pass; complete, finish, cover; get together, furnish.**

**ef-fodilō, ere, -födl, -fossum, dig out, tear out.**

**ef-fuglō, ere, -fugi, -fngitum, escape.**

**egeō, ére, ul, be in need, lack; pres. part. as adj., egēns, -entis, needy.**

**egestās, -tatis, f., need, poverty, destitution.**

**ego, mel, I.**

**é-gredilō, I, -grossus sum, go out, depart, leave, quit; sally out; land, disembark.**

**égregiē, adv., excellently, well, admirably.**

**égregius, a, uni, eminent, marked, admirable, remarkable.**

**égressus, a, uni, from egredilō.**

**égressus, ūs, m., landing.**

**é-jelō, ere, -jēl, -jectum, fling out, drive out, cast up; w. sc, rush.**

**éjusmodi, such, of such a nature, of that sort.**

**é-labor, l, -läpsus sum, slip away, escape.**

**élatus, a, um, from effero.**

**Elaver, -eris, n., the Elaver, a river of Central Gaul, a tributary of the Loire.**

**élécetus, a, um, from eligo.**

**elephantus, I, m., elephant.**

**Eleutetl, örum, m. plur., the Eleuteti, a tribe of southern Gaul.**

**é-lleō, ere, -leul, entice, draw.**

**é-ligō, ere, -legl, -lectum, choose, pick.**

**Elusātes, um, m. plur., the Elusates, a tribe of Aquitania.**

**émigrō, áre, ávi, átum, remove, emigrate.**

**émineō, ére, ul; project, stand out.**

**énimūs, adv., from or at a distance.**

**é-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, send out; hurl, cast; throw aside, drop.**

**emō, ere, éml, émptum, buy.**

**é-násco, I, -nátus sum, grow out.**

**enlm, conj., for, now.**

**énuntiō, áre, ávi, átum, disclose, divulge, tell, reveal.**

**eō, ire, II (lvI), itum, go, march, pass, proceed.**

**eōdem, adv., to the same place, in the same direction.**

**éphippiálatuS, a, um, equipped with saddle-cloths, using saddle-cloths.**

**éphippium, I, n., saddle-cloth.**

**epistola, ae, f., letter.**

**EporedorIX, -Igis, m., the name of two chiefs of the Aedui.**

**epulum.** I, n., in plur., *epulae* *ārum*, f., *banquet*.

**equ-es.** -*itis*, m., *horseman*, *horse-soldier*; in plur., *cavalry*; *knight*, a Roman of rank next to a senator.

**equester.** *tris*, *tre*, of *cavalry*, *cavalry*.

**equitātus,** ūs, m., *cavalry*.

**equus,** I, m., *horse*.

**Eratosthenēs.** Is, m., a Greek writer and scholar of Alexandria, who lived from 276 to 196 B.C.

**érēctus,** a, um, from *erigo*.

**éreptus,** a, um, from *eripio*.

**ergā,** prep. w. acc., *towards*.

**ergō,** adv., *then*, *therefore*.

**ē-rlgō,** ere, -*rēxi*, -*rēctum*, *raise*; perf. part. as adj., **érēctus**, a, um, *upright*, *high*.

**ē-riplō,** ere, -*ripul*, -*reptum*, *take away*, *destroy*; *save*, *rescue*.

**errō,** āre, āvI, ātum, *be mistaken*.

**ē-rumpō,** ere, -*rūpl*, -*ruptum*, *sally out*.

**ēructiō,** -ōnis, f., *sally*.

**essedārius,** I, m., *charioteer*, *chariot-fighter*.

**essedum,** I, n., *chariot*, *war-chariot*.

**Esubii,** ūrum, m. plur., *the Esubii*, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.

**et,** conj., *and*; et....et, *both.... and*.

**etiam,** conj., *also*, *further*; *even*, *still*.

**etsi,** conj., *even if*, *although*.

**ē-vādō,** ere, -*vāsl*, -*vāsum*, *escape*.

**ē-velliō,** ere, -*velli*, -*vulsum*, *pull out*.

**ē-veniō,** ire, -*vēnl*, -*ventum*, *turn out*, *result*.

**ēventus,** ūs, m., *outcome*, *result*; *chance*; *experience*.

**ēvocō,** āre, āvI, ātum, *call out*, *summon*; *challenge*; *call*, *invite*; perf. part. as subst., **ēvocati**.

**ōram,** m., *veterans* (*who had re-entered service*).

**ēvolō,** āre, āvI, ātum, *rush out*, *burst out*.

**ex.** (sometimes ē before consonants), prep. w. abl., *from*, *out of*; of; after, upon: *in accordance with*; *in consequence of*; of direction, on; above.

**exāctus,** a, um, from *exigo*.

**exaglō,** āre, āvI, ātum, *harass*.

**exāmīnō,** āre, āvI, ātum, *weigh*, *test*.

**exāmīnū,** āre, āvI, ātum, *kill*; *weaken*, *exhaust*; perf. part. as adj., **exāmīnūtus**, u, uni, *out of breath*, *breathless*.

**ex-ārdēscō,** ere, -*ārsI*, -*ārsūm*, *blaze forth*; *become enraged*, *become incensed*.

**exaudlō,** ire, Ivi, Itum, *hear clearly*, *near*.

**ex-eēdō,** ere, -*eēsl*, -*eēsum*, *go out*, *withdraw*, *leave*, *quit*.

**ex-eēllō,** ere, -*eēllu*, -*eēlsum*, *excel*, *be eminent*; perf. part. as adj., **exēlsus**, a, um, *lofty*, *high*.

**exceptō,** āre, āvI, ātum, *catch up*, *take hold of*.

**ex-eēldō,** ere, -*eēldI*, -*eēlsum*, *cut down*.

**ex-eēplō,** ere, -*eēpl*, -*eēptum*, *receive*, *meet*; *catch*, *come upon*; *take up*, *catch up*, *follow*, *succeed*.

**excitō,** āre, āvI, ātum, *rouse*, *incite*, *stimulate*; *raise*; *kindle*.

**ex-eēlūdō,** ere, -*eēlūsl*, -*eēlūsum*, *cut off*, *shut out*, *prevent*.

**execōgitō,** āre, āvI, ātum, *think of*.

**exerclō,** āre, āvI, ātum, *torture*, *torment*.

**excubitor,** -tōris, m., *picket*, *sentinel*.

**excub-ō,** āre, -*ul*, -*itum*, *watch by night*, *keep watch*, *be on the watch*.

**execulō,** āre, āvI, ātum, *tread or trample down*.

**excursiō,** -ōnis, f., *sally*

**excūsatiō,** -ōnis, f., *apology*.

**exeñsō, āre, āvl, ātum, excuse;** w. se, apologize.

**exemplum, I, n., example, precedent;** warning, punishment.

**ex-eō, -ire, -īl (-īl), -itum, go out,** go forth, leave, remove, proceed.

**exereō, ēre, ul, itum, train,** exercise, practise, drill, busy.

**exereltālō, -ōnis, f., training,** exercise, practice.

**exereltō, āre, āvl, ātum, train,** practise.

**exereltus, ūs, m., army.**

**ex-hauriō, ire, -hausi, -haustum,** remove, carry off.

**exigō, ere, -ēgi, -āctum, spend,** end; pass., be over.

**exiguē, adv., scantily; barely,** scarcely.

**exiguitās, -tālis, f., scantiness,** smallness, small extent, shortness, meagreness.

**exiguns, a, um, small, scanty.**

**eximius, a, um, remarkable, high.**

**existimālō, -ōnis, f., opinion.**

**existimō, āre, āvl, ātum, think,** believe, consider; estimate.

**exitus, ūs, m., outlet, passage;** departure; outcome, result; end.

**expediō, ire, līl, itum, free;** get ready, arrange; perf. part. as adj., expeditus, a, um, unincumbered, free; rapid, active; in light marching order, light-armed; easy.

**expeditiō, -ōnis, f., expedition.**

**ex-pellō, ere, -pull, -pulsum,** drive out, banish; remove, dispel.

**exper-ior, Irl, -tus sum, try,** make an attempt, test, experience; await.

**explō, āre, āvl, ātum, atone for,** retrieve, repair.

**expl-ō, ēre, -ēvl, -ētum, fill up;** make up, make good; reach, attain.

**explorātor, -tōris, m., scout.**

**explorō, Āre, Āvl, Ātum, examine,** inquire, investigate, reconnoitre, try to find out; perf. part. as adj., exploratus, a, um, certain, assured.

**ex-pōnō, ere, -posul, -positum,** display; disembark, land; set forth, state.

**exportō, āre, āvl, ātum, carry off,** remove.

**ex-poseō, ere, -poposcl, demand.**

**ex-prīmō, ere, -pressl, -pressum,** extort, elicit; raise.

**expūgnālō, -ōnis, f., storming,** taking by storm.

**expūgnō, āre, āvl, ātum, storm,** take by storm, capture; subdue, conquer.

**expulsus, a, um, from expello.**

**ex-quirō, ere, -quislīl, -quislum,** seek out; ask for.

**ex-sequor, I, -secutus sum,** follow out, maintain, enforce.

**ex-serō, ere, -serul, -sertum,** put out; bare, uncover.

**ex-sistō, ere, -stīl, -stītum,** stand out, project; spring up, arise.

**exspectō, āre, āvl, ātum, look for,** await, wait for, wait to see, wait; expect.

**exspollō, āre, āvl, ātum, deprice.**

**ex-stinguō, ere, -stīnxl, -stīncum,** extinguish, destroy.

**extīl, from exsisto.**

**extō, āre, stand out, project.**

**ex-struō, ere, -strīxl, -strūc-tum, pile up, raise, build.**

**exsul, -sulis, m., exile.**

**exter, or exterus, era, erum,** outward, foreign; compar. exterior, outer; superl., extrēmus, farthest, most distant, last, extreme.

**exterreō, ēre, ul, itum, frighten,** terrify.

**ex-timēscō, ere, -timul, fear,** dreaa.

**ex-torqueō, ēre, -torsl, -tor-tum, force, extort.**

**extra**, prep. w. acc., outside of, beyond.  
**ex-trahō**, ere, -trāxī, trāctum, drag out, waste by delay, fritter away.  
**extrēmus**, superl. of exter.  
**extrūdō**, ere, -trūsl, -trūsum, thrust out, force back, shut out.  
**ex-nō**, ere, -nl, -ntum, deprive, strip, despoil.  
**ex-ūrō**, ere, -usl, -ntum, burn up, burn.

**F.**

**faber**, brl, m., workman, engineer.  
**Fabius**, I, m., 1. Quintus Fabius Maximus, a Roman general, B.C. 121; 2. Caius Fabius, one of Caesar's lieutenants; 3. Lucius Fabius, a centurion in Caesar's army.  
**facile**, adv., easily, readily.  
**faciliſ**, e, easy.  
**factinus**, -oris, n., deed, crime.  
**faclō**, ere, fēcl, factum, pass., flō, fieri, factus sum, make; do, act; form, build, construct; render; bring about; in passive, take place, come to pass, happen, result.  
**factiō**, -ōnis, f., party, faction.  
**factum**, I, n., deed, act, action.  
**facultas**, -tatis, f., opportunity, chance, power; supply; in plur., resources, means.  
**fagus**, I, m., beech.  
**fallō**, ere, fefelli, falsum, deceive; disappoint.  
**falsus**, a, um, false, empty.  
**falx**, falciſ, f., sickle, hook.  
**fāma**, ae, f., rumor, report.  
**famēs**, is, f., hunger, starvation, famine.  
**família**, ae, f., household, house, family.  
**familiāris**, e, of a household; masc. as subst., intimate friend.  
**familiāritas**, -tatis, f., intimacy, friendship.

**fās**, n. indecl., right (by divine law).  
**fastigatē**, adv., obliquely, sloping.  
**fastigium**, I, n., slope, elevation, inclination.  
**fastigo**, are, avl, atum, bring to a point; perf. part. as adj., sloping, inclined.  
**fātum**, I, n., fate, lot.  
**faveō**, ère, fāvl, fautum, favor, be favorable to.  
**fax**, faciſ, f., torch, brand.  
**fēlicitas**, -tatis, f., good fortune, success.  
**fēlleiter**, adv., happily, prosperously, successfully.  
**fēmina**, ae, f., woman; female.  
**femī-ur**, -lnis, n., thigh.  
**fera**, ae, f., wild beast.  
**ferāx**, acls, fertile, fruitful.  
**ferē**, adv., almost; about; generally, usually, for the most part; w. negatives, scarcely.  
**ferō**, ferre, tull, lātum, bear, bring, carry; endure, take, stand; experience, suffer, feel; receive win; run, go; regard; call; in pass., rush; signa ferre, advance; w. auxiliū, lend; w. condicōnem, offer; w. in-jurias, commit.  
**ferramentum**, I, n., (iron) tool.  
**ferrārla**, ae, f., iron mine.  
**ferrēus**, a, um, of iron, iron.  
**ferrum**, I, n., iron, iron point, sword.  
**fertiliſ**, e, fertile, fruitful, rich.  
**fertilitas**, -tatis, f., fertility, richness.  
**ferus**, a, um, wild, fierce, ferocious.  
**ferve-faclō**, ere, -fēcl, -factum, heat, make red hot.  
**fer-veō**, ère, -bul, be glowing, be red hot.  
**fibula**, ae, f., brace.  
**fictus**, a, um, from fingo.  
**fidēlis**, e, faithful.

**fidēs, ei, f.,** *pledge, word; trustworthiness, honor; trust, faith, confidence; devotion, loyalty, fidelity; protection, dependence, allegiance, alliance;* **fidēm facere,** give a pledge, gain belief.

**fidūchi, ne, f.,** *reliance, confidence.*

**figūrā, ae, f.,** *shape.*

**filla, ae, f.,** *daughter.*

**fillus, i, m.,** *son.*

**flingō, ere, flingi, flētum, make up, invent.**

**flīlō, ire, līlī, līlum, limit, bound; determine, measure, describe.**

**flīlis, ls, m., end, limit;** in plur., borders, territory, land, district.

**flīlīmūs, a, um, neighboring, adjacent, bordering;** inas. plur. as subst., neighbors.

**flō, flērl, factus sum, pass of faelo, be made, be done; take place, come to pass, happen, result.**

**firmitter, adv., firmly, steadily.**

**firmittī-dō, -dīlis, f., strength.**

**firmō, āre, āvī, ātūu, strengthen, secure.**

**firmus, a, um, strong, powerful.**

**listīnea, ae, f., pile-driver, rammer.**

**Flaēens, I, m., Caius Valerius Flaccus, governor of Gaul in 83 B.C.**

**flāgītō, āre, āvī, ātūu, demand.**

**flamma, ae, f., flame, fire.**

**fleetō, ere, flexī, flexum, bend, turn.**

**flēō, ere, flēvī, flētum, weep, be in tears.**

**flētus, iūs, m., weeping.**

**flō, āre, āvī, ātūu, blow.**

**flōreō, ēre, rī, bloom; pres. part. as adj., flourishing, prosperous, influential.**

**flōs, flōrls, m., flower.**

**fluctus, iūs, m., wave.**

**flūmen, -mīlūs, n., river.**

**fluō, ere, flāxi, fluxum, flow.**

**fodlō, ere, fodl, fossū, dig.**

**foedus, -eris, a., treaty.**

**fore, fut. infin. of sum.**

**forlī, adv., outdoor; without, outside.**

**fōrma, ae, f., shape, form; structure.**

**fors, forte, f.,** (other cases wanting), chance; in abl., perchance, perhaps.

**fortis, e, brave, courageous**

**fortiter, adv., bravely, gallantly, stoutly.**

**fortitū-dō, -dīlis, f., bravery, courage.**

**fortuitō, adv., by chance, accidentally.**

**fortūna, ae, f., fortune, chance, lot, situation; good fortune, success; in plur., possessions, fortunes.**

**fortūnātus, a, um, fortunate.**

**forum, I, n., market place.**

**fossa, ae, f., trench, ditch.**

**fovea, ae, f., pit, pitfall.**

**frangō, ere, frēgl, frāctum, *v. d.*, shatter, wreck; crush.**

**frāter, trīs, m., brother.**

**frāternus, a, um, brotherly, of a brother.**

**frāns, fraudis, f., deception, treachery.**

**fremitus, iūs, m., din, noise.**

**frequēns, entis, numerous, in large numbers.**

**frētus, a, um, relying on, w. abl.**

**frigidus, a, um, cold.**

**frig-us, -oris, n., cold, frost, cold weather.**

**frōns, frontis, f., forehead; front.**

**frāctuōsus, a, um, fruitful, fertile.**

**frāctus, iūs, m., fruit, crops; advantage; profit, income.**

**frūgēs, um, see frux.**

**frūmentārius, a, um, of grain; fertile, productive; res frumentaria, supply of corn, grain, provisions.**

**frumentatīo**, -ōnis, f., getting  
 grain, foraging.  
**frumentor**, ārl, ātus sum, get  
 grain, forage.  
**frumentum**, I, n., grain, corn,  
 crops, provisions.  
**fruor**, I, fructus sum, enjoy, w.  
 abl.  
**frustrā**, adv., in vain, without ef-  
 fect.  
**frāx**, frāgis, (sing. very rare in  
 Latin), crops.  
**Fūsus**, I, m., Caius Fūsus Cita, a  
 Roman knight.  
**fuga**, ae, f., flight, rout; in fu-  
 gam convertere, conjectere or  
 dare, to put to flight.  
**fugīo**, ēre, fūgl, fugitum, flee,  
 escape; avoid, shun.  
**fugitivus**, I, m., runaway slave.  
**fugō**, āre, āvl, ātum, put to  
 flight, rout.  
**fūmō**, āre, āvl, ātum, smoke.  
**fūmus**, I, m., smoke.  
**funda**, ae, f., sling.  
**fundi-tor**, -tōrls, m., slinger.  
**fundō**, ēre, fūdl, fūsum, pour;  
 scatter, rout.  
**fungor**, I, fūnetus sum, dis-  
 charge, perform, w. abl.  
**fūnlis**, is, m., rope, cable.  
**fūnus**, -eris, n., funeral.  
**fūrōr**, -ōris, m., madness, frenzy,  
 rage.  
**fūrtum**, I, n., theft.  
**fūsilis**, e, molten, softened.  
**fūsus**, a, am, from fundo.  
**futūrus**, a, um, from sum.

## G.

**Gaball**, ḫrum, m. plur., the Ga-  
 bali, a tribe in the south of Gaul.  
**Gabīnīus**, I, m., Aulus Gabīnīus,  
 consul 58 B.C.  
**gaesum**, I, n., javelin, spear.  
**Gālus**, I, or Cālus, I, m., a Roman  
 praenomen.

**Galba**, ae, m., 1. *Servius Galba*,  
 one of Caesar's lieutenants; 2. a  
 king of the Suessones.

**galea**, ae, f., helmet.

**Gallia**, ae, f., Gaul, 1. The Roman  
 provinces of Gaul, *Gallia Cisal-  
 pina* or *Citerior*, the northern  
 part of Italy; and *Gallia Trans-  
 alpina* or *Ulterior*, the south-  
 eastern part of France. 2. The  
 country west of the Rhine and the  
 Alps and north of the Pyrenees,  
 thus including France, Switzerland,  
 Belgium and part of Holland  
 and Germany. 3. The central and  
 largest of the three parts into  
 which Gaul in the previous sense  
 is divided, the *Belgae* and the  
*Aquitani* holding the other two.

**Gallīcus**, a, um, of Gaul, of the  
 Gauls, Gallic.

**gallina**, ae, f., hen.

**Gallus**, I, m., 1. a Gaul; 2. *Mar-  
 cus Trebius Gallus*, one of Caesar's  
 officers.

**Garumna**, ae, m., the *Garonne*, a  
 river of south-western Gaul.

**Garumnl**, ḫrum, m. plur., the  
*Garurini*, a tribe near the Pyre-  
 nees.

**Gates**, um, m. plur., the *Gates*, a  
 tribe in the south-west of Gaul.

**gaudeō**, ēre, gavīsus sum, re-  
 joice.

**Geldumnl**, ḫrum, m. plur., the  
*Gedumni*, a tribe in the north-  
 east of Gaul.

**Genāva**, ae, f., *Geneva*, a town of  
 the Allobroges, at the extreme  
 north-east of the Province.

**gener**, erl, m., son-in-law.

**generātim**, adv., by tribes.

**gēns**, gentis, f., tribe, race, nation,  
 clan.

**genus**, -eris, n., race, family;  
 species; kind, sort, class.

**Gergusia**, ae, f., *Gergusia*, a town  
 of the Arverni, in the centre of  
 Gaul.

**Germānia**, ae, f., *Germany*, the  
 region east of the Rhine.

**Germānicus**, a, um, *German, of or with the Germans.*

**Germānus**, I, m., *a German.*

**gerō, ere, gessi, gestum, man-age; carry on, wage; hold; do; in pass., go on.**

**gladius**, I, m., *sword.*

**glæba**, ae, f., *clog, lump.*

**glâns, glandis**, f., *acorn; ball, bullet.*

**glòria, ae**, f., *glory, fame, reputation.*

**glòrior, ārl, àtus sum, boast of, w. abl.**

**Gnaeus**, I, m., *Gnaeus, or Gneius, a Roman praenomen.*

**Gobannitiō, -ōnis**, m., *a man of rank among the Arverni.*

**Gorgobina**, ae, f., *a town in the country of the Acolul, in central Gaul.*

**Grecus**, a, um, *Greek, Grecian; mase, as subst., a Greek.*

**Grâloelli**, órum, m. plur., *the Graioeli, an Alpine tribe between Gaul and Italy.*

**grandis**, e, *large.*

**grâtia, ae, f., favor, good will; influence; gratitude, thanks; gratias agere, render thanks, thank; gratiam referre, make a grateful return, requite; gratiam habere, feel gratitude, be grateful; gratiam latre, win gratitude.**

**grâtulatiō, -ōnis**, f., *congratulation; joy, rejoicing.*

**grâtulor, ārl, àtus sum, congratulate, offer congratulations.**

**grâtus, a, um**, *acceptable, pleasing; neut. as subst., a favor.*

**gravis**, e, *heavy; severe, bitter, serious; solemn; w. actas, advanced.*

**gravitâs, -tatis**, f., *weight; strength, importance.*

**graviter**, adv., *heavily, with effect; severely, bitterly, seriously; graviter ferre, be annoyed, feel keenly.*

**gravor, ārl, àtus sum, be reluctant, object.**

**Grudil, -ōrum**, m. plur., *the Grudil, a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.*

**guberuâtor, -toris**, m., *pilot, helmsman.*

**gustō, àre, àvI, àtum, taste, eat.**

**Gntruâtus**, I, m., *a leader of the Carnutes.*

## H.

**habeō, ère, uI, itum, have, possess, occupy; keep; hold; w. orationem, deliver, make; treat, regard, consider; se habere, to be; w. perf. part. pass., much like Eng. auxiliary verb *have*.**

**haesitō, àre, àvI, àtum, stick fast, be caught.**

**hamus**, I, m., *hook.*

**harpagō, -ōnis**, m., *hook, grapping-iron.*

**Harûdes**, uuI, m. plur., *the Harudes, a German tribe which had crossed into Gaul.*

**haud, adv., not.**

**Helvéticus, a, um, Helvetian, of or with the Helvetii.**

**Helvétius**, a, um, *Helvetian, of the Helvetii; nasc. plur. as subst., the Helvetii, a tribe of Gaul dwelling in modern Switzerland.*

**HelvII, órum, m. plur., the Helvii, a tribe in the Province.**

**Hereynius**, a, um, w. silva, *the Hercynian forest, extending through southern and central Germany.*

**hérèditâs, -tatis**, f., *inheritance.*

**hiberna, óruu**, n. plur., *winter camp, winter-quarters.*

**hibernâcula, órum**, n. plur., *winter-quarters.*

**Hibernia, ae, f., Ireland.**

**hic, hinc, hoc**, *this; he; the following; the present; such; often loosely, that; hoc, neut. abl. as adv., in this way, on this account, and w. comparatives, the.*

**hic**, adv., *here, herein.*

**hīcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm, winter,** *pass the winter.*

**hīems, hīemis, f., winter, stormy weather.**

**hīne, adv., from this point, hence.**

**Hīspānīa, ae, f., Spain.**

**Hīspānīas, a, um, Spanish.**

**homī-ō, -īnis, m. and f., man, person:** in plur., *man, mankind, people.*

**honestus, a, um, honorable, of rank, distinguished.**

**honor, -ōris, m., honor, dignity, distinction; respect; high position.**

**honōrifīens, a, um, honorable, complimentary.**

**hōra, ae, f., hour, (one-twelfth of the daylight).**

**horreō, ērē, uī, shudder at, dread.**

**horribilis, e, dreadful, formidable.**

**horridus, a, um, horrible, frightful.**

**hortor, ārl, ātūs sum, urge, encourage, exhort, cheer on.**

**hospi-tis, -ītis, m., guest, friend.**

**hospi-tium, ī, n., friendship, hospitality.**

**hostis, is, m., enemy.**

**hūc, adv., to this, to this point, to this place, hither, here.**

**hūjusmodi, of this sort, to this effect.**

**hūmānitās, -tātis, f., refinement, accomplishments.**

**hūmānus, a, um, civilized, refined.**

**humili-s, e, low, inferior, humble, of little importance, obscure.**

**humili-tās, -tātis, f., lowness; weakness, insignificance.**

**I.**

**ibi, adv., there.**

**Ieclus, ī, n., a leader of the Remi.**

**ictus, ūs, m., blow, stroke.**

**īdēcīrēō, adv., on that account, for this reason.**

**Idēm, eadem, idem, the same: also.**

**Identidēm, adv., again and again**

**īdōneus, a, um, suitable, fit.**

**īdūs, uum, f. plur., the Ides (the 13th of each month, but in March, May, July and October the 15th).**

**ignis, is, m., fire; camp fire.**

**īgnōbilis, e, unknown, obscure.**

**īgnōminia, ae, f., disgrace.**

**īgnōrō, ārē, āvī, ātūm, not know, be unacquainted with.**

**īgnōscō, ēre, Ignōvī, Ignōtūm, forgive, pardon, w. dat.**

**īgnōtūs, a, um, unknown.**

**īlātūs, a, um, from infero.**

**īlie, īlla, īlūd, that, he.**

**īlie, adv., there, in that place.**

**īlligō, ārē, āvī, ātūm, bind, attach, fasten.**

**īllō, adv., to that point, thither, there.**

**īllāstris, e, distinguished, remarkable.**

**īlyrium, ī, n., a district along the eastern coast of the Adriatic.**

**īmbēcīlitās, -tātis, f., weakness, feebleness.**

**īm-ber, -brīs, m., rain, rainstorm.**

**īmitor, ārl, ātūs sum, imitate.**

**īmīanis, e, huge, enormous.**

**īmīneō, ērē, uī, be near at hand; threaten.**

**īm-mittō, ēre, -mīsl, -missum, send against, hurl; let down, sink, let in.**

**īmīlō, ārē, āvī, ātūm, sacrifice.**

**īmīrtālis, e, immortal.**

**īmūnīs, e, free from taxation or tribute.**

**īmūnītās, -tātis, f., freedom, exemption from public service.**

**īmparātūs, a, um, unprepared.**

**īmpedimentū, ī, n., hindrance, in plur., baggage, baggage-train, baggage-horses.**

**Impediō, ire, ivi, itum, hinder, obstruct, entangle, embarrass; perf. part. as adj., **Impeditus**, a, um, hampered, occupied, intricate, difficult, impassable.**

**Im-pellō, ere, -pelli, -pulsum, urge, instigate, incite.**

**Impendeō, ère, overhang.**

**Impēnsus, a, um, expensive, high.**

**Imperātor, -tōris, m., commander (in chief).**

**Imperātum, I, n., order, command.**

**Imperfectus, a, nm, unfinished, unaccomplished.**

**Imperitus, a, um, inexperienced, unacquainted, w. gen.**

**Imperium, I, n., command, order; power, supreme power, control, rule, supremacy.**

**Imperō, àre, àvi, àtum, levy upon, demand, require, order to furnish; order, command, rule.**

**Impetrō, àre, àvi, àtum, obtain, obtain one's request, accomplish, prevail on.**

**Impetus, ús, m., attack, charge; fury, rush, violence.**

**Implus, a, um, wicked, unholy.**

**Implieō, àre, àvi, àtum, or -ui, -ltum, interweave, interlace.**

**Implōrō, àre, àvi, àtum, beg, entreat, beseech.**

**Im-pōnō, ere, -posul, -positum, place on, put on, mount; levy, impose.**

**Importō, àre, àvi, àtum, bring in, introduce, import.**

**Imprimis, or In primis, especially, particularly.**

**Improbus, a, um, wicked, unprincipled.**

**Imprōvisus, a, um, unforeseen; abl., improviso, as adv., so de improviso, unexpectedly, unaware.**

**Imprudēns, -entis, unsuspecting, off one's guard.**

**Imprudentia, ae, f., thoughtlessness, indiscretion.**

**Impūb-ēs, -eris, chaste, unmarried.**

**Impūgnō, àre, àvi, àtum, attack, fight.**

**Impulsus, a, um, from impello.**

**Impulsus, ús, m., instigation.**

**Impūne, adv., with impunity.**

**Impūnitās, -tātis, f., impunity, exemption from punishment.**

**Imus, a, um, superlative of inferus.**

**In, prep. (1) w. abl., in, at, within, on; among, in the country of; over; considering, in view of; in the case of, in regard to; (2) w. acc., into, to; towards, against, upon, on; until; for, with a view to, according to; in.**

**Inānīs, e, empty, idle, mere.**

**Ineautē, adv., carelessly, incautiously.**

**Incautus, a, um, careless, off one's guard.**

**Incediūm, I, n., fire, burning.**

**In-eendō, ere, -eendl, -eēsum, set on fire, burn; arouse, inflame.**

**Incertus, a, um, uncertain, untrustworthy, confused.**

**In-eldō, ere, -eldi, -eāsum, fall in with, come upon; happen, occur.**

**In-eldō, ere, -eldi, -elsum, cut into.**

**In-eiplō, ere, -eēpl, -ceptum, begin.**

**Inclusus, a, um, from inclido.**

**Inclitō, àre, àvi, àtum, urge on, impel, set in motion; arouse, excite; w. se, rush on, rush in; perf. part. w. equus, at full speed.**

**Incōgnitus, a, um, unknown.**

**Incol-ō, ere, -ul, inhabit, dwell, live.**

**Ineolumis, e, safe, unharmed, in safety, without loss.**

**Ineommōdē, adv., disastrously unfortunately, badly.**

**Incommodum, I, n., disadvantage, misfortune, disaster, loss, reverses.**

**Incredibilis**, *e*, *incredible, extraordinary.*

**Increpitō**, *āre, āvi, ātum, reprove, upbraid, taunt.*

**In-enimbō**, *ere, -enbul, -enbltum, apply or devote one's self.*

**Ineuriō**, *-ōnis, f., raid, inroad.*

**Ineurus**, *ūs, m., attack, incursion.*

**Inēsō**, *āre, āvi, ātum, blame, attack, censure.*

**Inde**, *adv., from that place, thence; then, next.*

**Indicium**, *I, n., information.*

**In-dicō**, *ere, -dixi, -dictum, appoint, proclaim, call.*

**Indictus**, *a, um, (1) from Indico; (2) unpleaded, unheard.*

**Indignē**, *adv., unworthily, undeservedly.*

**Indignitās**, *-tatis, f., indignity, disgrace.*

**Indignor**, *ārl, ātus sum, be indignant.*

**Indignus**, *a, um, unworthy, unbecoming.*

**Indiligēns**, *-entis, careless, indifferent.*

**Indiligenter**, *adv., carelessly.*

**Indiligentia**, *ae, f., indifference, lack of energy.*

**In-dūcō**, *ere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead on, influence, induce; cover.*

**Indulgentia**, *ae, f., indulgence, leniency.*

**Indul-geō**, *ere, -si, -tum, favor, w. dat.*

**Ind-uō**, *ere, -ul, -ūtum, put on; w. se, fall upon, get entangled.*

**Industriē**, *adv., actively, zealously.*

**Indūtiae**, *ārum, f. plur., truce.*

**Indūtioriārus**, *I, m., a chief of the Treveri.*

**In-eō**, *-ire, -ii(-iū), -itum, enter upon, adopt, form, make; estimate; begin; win.*

**Inermis**, *e, or inermus, a, um, unarmed.*

**In-ers**, *-ertis, lazy, unmanly.*

**Infamia**, *ae, f., dishonor, disgrace, disrepute.*

**Infāns**, *-antis, m., infant, child.*

**Infectus**, *a, um, undone, unaccomplished.*

**Inferō**, **Inferre**, **Intull**, **Illātum**, *bring in, put in or upon; introduce, import; cause, inflict, inspire; w. bellum, make, wage (offensive); w. signa, advance; w. causam, advance, allege.*

**Infernus**, *a, um, low; compar. Inferior, lower; inferior; superl. Inflimus, lowest, at the foot or base; neut. as subst., the bottom, the foot.*

**Infestus**, *a, um, hostile.*

**In-ficiō**, *ere, -fēcl, -fectum, stain.*

**Infidēlls**, *e, unfaithful.*

**In-figō**, *ere, -fixi, -fixum, fasten to, fix on.*

**Inflimus**, *a, um, superl. of inferus.*

**Infinitus**, *a, um, endless, boundless, vast.*

**Infirmitās**, *-tatis, f., weakness, sickleness, inconstancy.*

**Infirmus**, *a, um, weak.*

**Influxus**, *a, um, from infligo.*

**In-flectō**, *ere, -flexi, -flexum, bend.*

**In-fluō**, *ere, -flūxi, -fluxum, flow, empty.*

**In-fodlō**, *ere, -fōdl, -fōssum, bury.*

**Infra**, *(1) adv., below, farther down; (2) prep. w. acc., below, less than.*

**Ingēns**, *entis, huge, very large.*

**Ingrātus**, *a, um, displeasing, unacceptable.*

**In-gredior**, *I, -gressus sum, enter.*

**Inimicitia**, *ae, f., enmity, feud.*

**Inimicus**, *a, um, unfriendly, hostile; masc. as subst., enemy.*

**Iniquitās**, *-tatis, f., injustice, unfairness; disadvantage, unfavorable nature or position.*

**Iniquus**, a, um, uneven; unfair; unjust.

**Initium**, I, n., beginning, first; edge, frontier, borders; elements.

**Initus**, a, um, from ineo.

**In-jicō**, ere, -jēcl, -jectum, put on, lay on; inspire, infuse, cause.

**In-jungō**, ere, -jānxl, -jānctum, impose.

**Injuria**, ae, f., wrong, injustice, wrong-doing, injury, violence, outrage.

**Injussū**, abl. used as adv., without one's orders.

**In-nascor**, I, -nātus sum, spring up in; in perf., be inborn, be innate.

**In-nitor**, I, -nīsus or -nīxus sum, lean on.

**Innocēns**, entis, innocent, guiltless.

**Innocentia**, ae, f., innocence, integrity.

**Inopla**, ae, f., want, scarcity, lack, privation.

**Inoplnāns**, -antis, not expecting, unawares, unprepared, off one's guard.

**Inquit**, inquit, defective verb, say.

**Inscēns**, entis, not knowing, being unaware.

**Inscientia**, ae, f., ignorance, lack of acquaintance with.

**Inscius**, a, um, ignorant, unaware.

**In-sequor**, I, -secūtus sum, follow up, pursue.

**In-serō**, ere, -serul, -sertum, insert.

**Insidiae**, árum, f. plur., ambush, stratagem, treachery.

**Insidiōr**, árl, átus sum, lie in wait.

**Insignis**, e, marked, notable, signal; n. as subst., **Insigne**, ls, emblem, badge, token, decoration.

**In-sillō**, Ire, -silul, -sultum, leap at or on.

**Insinuō**, áre, ávl, átum, charge, accuse.

**Insinuō**, áre, ávl, átum, insinuate; w. sc, work one's way in.

**In-sistō**, ere, -stitti, stand, keep one's footing; enter upon, pursue, adopt, devote one's self.

**Insoienter**, adv., insolently, haughtily, immoderately.

**Inspectō**, áre, ávl, átum, look on.

**Instabilis**, e, unsteady, changeable.

**Instar**, accus. as adv., like, w. gen.

**Instigō**, áre, ávl, átum, urge on, incite.

**Institūō**, ere, -ul, -ūtum, undertake, begin, set to; adopt, establish, settle; equip, get ready; train, teach; draw up.

**Institūtum**, I, n., custom, practice.

**In-stō**, árc, -stitti, -stātum, press forward, press on; be at hand; threaten, impend.

**Instrūmentum**, L, n., equipment, furniture.

**In-struō**, ere, -strūxl, -strūctum, draw up, arrange; build, set up, equip.

**Insuē-facō**, ere, -fēcl, -factum, train.

**Insuētus**, a, um, unaccustomed.

**Insula**, ae, f., island.

**Insuper**, adv., above, on top.

**Integer**, gra, grum, unimpaired, fresh, untouched, complete.

**In-tegō**, ere, -tēxl, -tēctum, cover over, cover.

**Intel-legō**, ere, -lēxl, -lēctum, understand, be aware, perceive, see, know, learn.

**Inten-dō**, ere, -dl, -tum, stretch, strain; perf. partic., intent, occupied, engrossed, eager.

**Inter**, prep. w. acc., between, among, during; **Inter se**, one another, to or with one another.

**Inter-cēdō**, ere, -cessl, -cessum, come between, be between, intervene, elapse, exist between.

**Inter-cliplō**, ere, -cēpl, -ceptum, intercept, cut off.

**Inter-clūdō**, ere, -clūsl, -clūsum, cut off.

**inter-dicō, ere, -dixī, -dictum,** forbid, warn; prohibit, exclude.

**Interdiū, adv., by day, in the day-time.**

**Interdum, adv., sometimes.**

**Intereā, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.**

**Inter-eō, -ire, -ī (-īvī), -itum, perish.**

**Interest, from Intersum.**

**Inter-fielō, ere, -fēel, -fectum,** slay, put to death, kill.

**Interim, adv., meanwhile.**

**Interior, comparative adj., inner, interior; plur., those living in the interior.**

**Interitus, ūs, m., death, destruction.**

**Inter-jelō, ere, -jēcl, -Jeetum,** place between, interpose; in pass., be between, intervene, come at intervals.

**Inter-mittō, ere, -mīsl, -mīsum,** leave off, interrupt, stop, break off, discontinue; cease, neglect; let pass, in pass., go by, intervene, elapse; separate; leave free, leave open.

**Interneclō, -ōnis, f., destruction, annihilation, extermination.**

**Interpellō, āre, āvl, ātum, interrupt, disturb, interfere with.**

**inter-pōnō, ere, -posul, -positum,** interpose; allege; pledge; put forward; in pass., intervene.

**Inter-pres, -pretis, m., interpreter.**

**Interpreter, ārl, ātus sum, interpret, explain.**

**Interrogō, āre, āvl, ātum, question.**

**Inter-rumpō, ere, -rūpl, -ruptum,** break down, destroy.

**Inter-selndō, ere, -scldl, -scissum,** cut down, break down, destroy.

**Inter-sum, -esse, -ful, be between, be engaged in, take part in; as impersonal verb, Interest, it is of importance, it concerns.**

**Intervallum, l, n., interval, distance.**

**Inter-venlō, Ire, -vēnl, -ventum,** come up, appear.

**Interventus, ūs, m., intervention, coming on.**

**Intex-ō, ere, -nl, -tum, weave together, plait.**

**Intoleranter, adv., eagerly, recklessly.**

**Intrā, prep. w. acc., within.**

**Intritus, a, um, unexhausted, fresh, not fatigued.**

**Intrō, āre, āvl, ātum, enter.**

**Intrō-dūcō, ere, -dūxl, -dūctum,** lead in, bring in.

**Intro-eō, -ire, -ī (-īvī), -itum,** come in, enter.

**Introtus, ūs, m., entrance, approach.**

**Intrō-mittō, ere, -mīsl, -mīsum,** send in, let in, admit.

**intrōsus, adv., within, into the interior, inside.**

**Intrō-rumpō, ere, -rūpl, -ruptum,** break in, burst in.

**Intneor, ērl, itus sum, gaze on, look at.**

**Intulli, from Infero.**

**Intus, adv., within, inside.**

**Innīstātns, a, um, unusual, strange, novel, unfamiliar.**

**Inūtīls, e, useless, unserviceable, unsuitable.**

**In-venlō, Ire, -vēnl, -ventum,** come upon, find; learn.

**Inventor, -tōrls, m., inventor, discoverer.**

**Inveter-āscō, ere, -āvl, -ātum,** become established, settle.

**In vicem, adv., in turn.**

**Invictus, a, um, unconquered, invincible.**

**In-videō, ēre, -yldl, -vīsum,** envy, be jealous of, w. dat.

**Invidia, ae, f., envy, jealousy.**

**Inviolatūs, a, um, inviolate.**

**Invītō, āre, āvl, ātum, invite, induce, allure.**

**I.**

**Invitus**, *a, um, uncilling, against one's will.*

**Ipsæ**, *a, um, himself, he himself, itself, etc.; very.*

**Iræundia**, *ae, f., wrath, anger, passion.*

**Iræundus**, *a, um, passionate.*

**Ir-rideō**, *ère, -risl, -risum, ridicule, jeer at.*

**Irridileñtē**, *adv., without humor.*

**Ir-rumpō**, *ere, -rūpl, -ruptum, burst in, break in, rush, dash.*

**Irruptiō**, *-ōuls, f., attack, assault.*

**Is**, *en. Id, that; he, she, it, they; w. rel., the; such; abl. eō as adv., so much, the, on that account.*

**Iste**, *a, ud, that of yours, that.*

**Ita**, *adv., so, thus, in this way, as follows, accordingly.*

**Italia**, *ae, f., Italy.*

**Itaque**, *adv., therefore, so, accordingly.*

**Item**, *adv., likewise, also, in the same way.*

**Iter**, **Itineris**, *n., route, march, road, journey; magnum Iter, a forced march; Iter facere, to march.*

**Iterum**, *adv., agāē, a second time.*

**Itlus**, *adj. with portus, a harbor on the north-east coast of Gaul.*

**J.**

**Jaceō**, *ère, uī, itum, lie, be fallen, be dead.*

**Jactō**, *ere, jēcl, jactum, throw, cast, hurl; throw up.*

**Jactō**, *âre, âvī, âtum, shake, toss, fling; discuss.*

**Jactūra**, *ae, f., loss, sacrifice; offer.*

**Jaculum**, *I, n., javelin.*

**Jam**, *adv., now, at length, already; w. negatives, auy move, longer.*

**Juba**, *ae, f., wave.*

**Jubeō**, *ère, Jussi, Jussum, order, bid, command.*

**Judicium**, *I, n., trial; judgment, decision, opinion; abl. Judicēlo, by design, purposely.*

**Judicēo**, *âre, âvī, âtum, judge, decide, consider, think, pronounce.*

**Jugum**, *I, n., yoke; ridge, summit, crest.*

**Jumentum**, *I, n., beast of burden, horse.*

**Junctūra**, *ae, f., joining.*

**Jungō**, *ere, Juxi, Jūnetum, join, unite.*

**Jūnior**, *comparative of Juvenis.*

**Jūnus**, *I, m., Quietus Junius, one of Caesar's officers.*

**Juppiter**, *Jovis, m., Jupiter, the supreme god of the Romans.*

**Jūra**, *ae, in., a mountain range in Eastern Gaul.*

**Jūrō**, *âre, âvī, âtum, swear, take an oath.*

**Jūs**, **Jūris**, *n., right, rights, law, justice.*

**Jūsfūrandum**, *JūrlsJūrandi, n., oath.*

**Jussū**, *abl. used as adv., by order.*

**Jūstitia**, *ae, f., justice, fairness.*

**Jūstus**, *a, um, just, rightful, lawful, fair; proper, regular, due.*

**Juvenis**, *e (comparative Jūnior), young; m. as subst., a young man.*

**Juven-tūs, -tūls**, *f., youth; as collective, youth, young men.*

**Juvō**, *âre, Juvī, Jūtum, aid, help, assist.*

**Jūxtā**, *adv., near, close by.*

**K.**

**Kalendæ**, *ârum, f. plur., the Calends, the first day of the month.*

**L.**

**L.**, *an abbreviation for Lucius.*

**Laberius**, *I, m., Quintus Laberius Durus, a military tribune with Caesar.*

**Labienūs**, *I, m., Titus Labienūs, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

**labor**, -oris, m., *toil, hardship, labor, exertion; endurance, hardness.*

**lābor**, I, **lāpsus sum**, *slip; err, do wrong, fall away; fail, be disappointed.*

**labōrō**, **āre**, **āvl**, **ātum**, *toil, strive, be anxious; be in difficulty, be hard pressed.*

**labrum**, I, n., *lip; edge, rim.*

**lāe**, **laetls**, n., *milk.*

**lacess-ō**, **ere**, **-lvi**, **-lrum**, *provoke, harass, attack, assail.*

**laerlma**, ae, f., *tear.*

**laerluiō**, **āre**, **āvl**, **ātum**, *weep.*

**laetus**, ūs, m., *lake.*

**laedō**, **ere**, **laesi**, **laesnūm**, *injure; violate, break.*

**laetatiō**, -onis, f., *joy, rejoicing.*

**laetitla**, ae, f., *joy, gladness.*

**laetus**, a, um, *glad, joyful, rejoicing.*

**languidē**, adv., *with little energy.*

**languidus**, a, um, *weary, faint, listless, not active.*

**langnor**, -oris, m., *exhaustion, listlessness.*

**lap-is**, -idis, m., *stone.*

**lāpsus**, a, um, *from lābor.*

**laqueus**, I, m., *noose.*

**largior**, I, I, Itu-um, *give bountifully; bribe; supply, afford.*

**largiter**, adv., *abundantly, greatly.*

**largitlō**, -onis, f., *lavishness, bounty, liberality.*

**lassitū-dō**, -dlnis, f., *fatigue, exhaustion.*

**lātē**, adv., *widely, far.*

**latebra**, ae, f., *hiding-place.*

**lateō**, ēre, ul, *lurk, lie concealed; escape notice.*

**lātitū-dō**, -dlnis, f., *width, breadth, extent.*

**Latovcl**, örüm, m. plur., *the Latorici, neighbors of the Helvetii.*

**latrō**, -onis, m., *robber.*

**latrōclnium**, I, n., *robbery, raid.*

**lat-us**, -eris, n., *side, flank.*

**lātus**, a, um, and **lātūrus**, a, um, *from fero.*

**lātus**, a, um, *broad, wide, extensive.*

**laudō**, **āre**, **āvl**, **ātum**, *praise, commend.*

**laus**, **laudls**, f., *praise, merit, glory, fame.*

**lavō**, **āre**, **āvl**, **ātum**, or **lāvī**, *lautum or lōtum, wash; in pass., bathe.*

**laxō**, **āre**, **āvl**, **ātum**, *loosen, extend, open out.*

**lēgātiō**, -oniſ, f., *embassy.*

**lēgātus**, I, m., *ambassador, envoy; lieutenant, an officer next in rank to the commander-in-chief.*

**leglō**, -oniſ, f., *legion, a body of soldiers of the nominal strength of 6000, divided into ten cohorts.*

**leglōnārius**, a, um, *of a legion, legionary.*

**Lemannus**, I, m., *a lake now called Geneva, in eastern Gaul.*

**Lemovices**, um, m. plur., *the Lemovices, a tribe in south-western Gaul.*

**lēnls**, e, *gentle, light.*

**lēnitās**, -tatis, f., *gentleness, sluggishness.*

**lēniter**, adv., *gently, slightly, with little vigor.*

**Lepontli**, -örum, m. plur., *the Lepontii, an Alpine tribe.*

**lep-us**, -oris, m., *hare.*

**Leuel**, örüm, m. plur., *the Leuct, a tribe in north-eastern Gaul.*

**Levac**, örüm, m. plur., *the Levaci, a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.*

**levls**, e, *light; slight, trifling; weak, fickle.*

**levitās**, -tatis, f., *lightness; fickleness, thoughtlessness, inconstancy.*

**levō**, **āre**, **āvl**, **ātum**, *free, relieve*

**tēx**, **lēglis**, f., *law.*

**Lexovll**, örüm, m. plur., *the Lexovii, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.*

**Ilbenter**, adv., willingly, gladly, with pleasure.

**Ilber**, **era**, **erum**, free, independent; unrestricted, undisturbed, untrammeled, unincumbered.

**Ilberalitās**, -tatis, f., generosity, liberality.

**Ilberaliter**, adv., generously, graciously, kindly.

**Ilberē**, adv., freely, without check or restraint.

**Ilberī**, **ōrum**, m. plur., children.

**Ilberō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, free, set free.

**Ilbertās**, -tatis, f., liberty, freedom.

**Ilbrillis**, e, of a pound weight.

**Ilcentia**, ae, f., recklessness, lawlessness.

**Ilceor**, **ērl**, **itus sum**, bid (at auction).

**Illect**, **ēre**, **Illeuit**, it is permitted, allowable; freely, may, might.

**Liger**, -eris, m., the river Loire, in the central part of Gaul.

**Ilgnatiō**, -onis, f., getting wood.

**Ilgnator**, -tōris, m., wood-cutter, gatherer of wood.

**Illicium**, I, n., lily.

**Ilnea**, ae, f., line.

**Lingones**, um, m. plur., the Lingones, a tribe in the eastern part of central Gaul.

**Lingua**, ae, f., tongue; language, speech.

**Lingula**, ae, f., little tongue; tongue of land, headland.

**Hinter**, -tris, f., small boat, skiff.

**Ilnum**, I, n., flax.

**Ils**, **litis**, f., lawsuit, dispute; damages.

**Liscus**, I, m., a leading man of the Aedui.

**Litaviceus**, I, m., a leading man of the Aedui.

**Littera**, ae, f., letter, character; in plur., letter, despatch; documents, records.

**Ut-us**, -oris, n., shore.

**locus**, I, m.; in plur., **loca**, **ōrum**, n.; place, spot, point, position, ground, situation, country; rank; light, character; opportunity, chance; in plur., space, ground, district, region, country, place.

**locutus**, a, um, from **loquor**.

**longē**, adv., far; long.

**longinqnns**, a, um, distant, remote; long, long-continued, protracted.

**longitū-dō**, -dinis, f., length.

**longurius**, I, m., long pole.

**longus**, a, um, long; distant; tedious; navis longa, war-ship, galley.

**loquor**, I, locutus sum, speak, say, converse.

**lōrēa**, ae, f., coat of mail; breast-work.

**Lucanius**, I, m., Quintus Lucanius, a centurion in Caesar's army.

**Lūcius**, I, m., a Roman praenomen.

**Lucretius**, I, m., a leading Gaul, belonging to the Cadurci.

**Lugotor-ix**, -igis, m., a Briton of rank.

**lūna**, ae, f., moon.

**Lutētia**, ae, f., a town of the Parisii, on the Seine.

**lūx**, **lōcls**, f., light, dawn; **prima lūx**, daybreak, dawn.

**luxuria**, ae, f., luxury, luxurious living.

## M.

**M.**, an abbreviation for **Marens**.

**māeरla**, ae, f., walt.

**māehlnatiō**, -onis, f., machine, engine.

**maestus**, a, um, sad, sorrowful.

**magis**, comparative adv., (see magnopere), more, rather.

**magistratus**, iis, m., magistrate; office, magistracy.

**māgniflens**, a, um, splendid, grand.

**māgnitū-dō**, -dinis, f., greatness, vastness, great size; size, extent.

**magnopere**, adv. (*magis*, **māx-**  
**ime**), greatly, very, strongly,  
earnestly.

**māgnum**, a. um (*mājor*, **māxi-**  
**mus**), great, large; loud;  
serious, extensive; **māgnūl**, as  
adv., highly, greatly.

**mājestās**, -tātis, f., dignily, ma-  
jesty.

**mājor**, comparative of **māgnum**;  
in m. plur. as subst., elders,  
ancestors, fathers.

**mālatia**, ae, f., calm, lull.

**male**, adv. (*pējns*, **peſimē**),  
badly, ill, unsuccessfully.

**maleficium**, I., n., mischief, out-  
rage, harm.

**Mallius**, I., m., *Lucius Mallius*, a  
Roman proconsul defeated by the  
Aquitani, B.C. 78.

**mālō**, mālle, **mālnī**, prefer.

**māluš**, I., m., masl, (upright) beam.

**mandātūm**, I., n., order, commis-  
sion, instruction, message.

**māndō**, āre, **āvī**, **ātūm**, order,  
instruct; entrust, give up, com-  
mit, betake.

**Mandubii**, òrum, m., plur., *the*  
*Mandubii*, a tribe in central Gaul.

**Mandubracins**, m., a Briton of  
high rank among the Trinobantes.

**māne**, adv., in the morning.

**māneb**, ēre, **mānsī**, **mānsum**,  
stay, remain; abide by, stand by.

**manipulārls**, ls, m., one belong-  
ing to a company or maniple,  
comrade.

**manipulus**, I., m., maniple, com-  
pany (one-third of a cohort).

**mānsue-facīb**, ēre, -fēcl, -fac-  
tūm, tame.

**mānsuefīb**, passive of **mānsue-**  
**facio**.

**mānsuefō-dō**, -dīnl, f., gentle-  
ness, clemency.

**manns**, f., hand; band, force;  
manū, by arl, by force; **mannū**  
dare, yield, give in.

**Marcomani**, òrum, m. plur., *the*  
*Marcomani*, a German tribe.

**Mārcens**, I., m., *Marcus*, a Roman  
praenomen.

**mare**, **marls**, n., sea.

**maritimus**, a. um, on or of the  
sea, on the coast, maritime, naval.

**Marius**, I., m., *Caius Marius*, a  
famous Roman general and popular  
leader, who lived from B.C. 157  
to 86.

**Mārs**, **Mārtis**, m., *Mars*, the god  
of war.

**mās**, **marls**, m., male.

**matara**, ae, f., (*Celtic*) javelin,  
pike.

**māter**, -trīs, f., mother; **mater**  
**familiae**, matron.

**māterla**, ae, f., timber, wood, ma-  
terial.

**māterlēs**, ēl, f., limber, wood, ma-  
terial.

**māterlor**, ārl, **ātūs sum**, get  
timber, collect wood.

**Matlseō**, -ōnl, f., a town of the  
Aedui.

**mātrīmōntum**, I., n., marriage.

**Matrona**, ae, f., the river *Marne*,  
in northern Gaul.

**mātūrē**, adv. (*mātūrlus*, **mātūr-**  
**rlmē**), early, soon.

**mātūr-ēsēō**, ēre, -ul, ripen.

**mātūrō**, āre, **āvī**, **ātūm**, hasten,  
make haste.

**mātūrus**, a. um, early; ripe.

**māxlmē**, superlative adv. (see  
**magnopere**), very greatly, very  
much, chiefly, most, especially.

**māxlmus**, a. um, superlative of  
**magnus**.

**Māximus**, I., m., *Quintus Fabius*  
*Maximus*, a Roman general, B.C.  
121.

**medeor**, ērl, remedy, relieve.

**medloerls**, e, moderate, ordinary,  
common.

**medloerliter**, adv., in a slight or  
small degree.

**Mediomatriel**, òrum, m. plur.,  
the *Mediomatrici*, a tribe in the  
north-east of Gaul.

**mediterrāneus**, a. um, inland,  
central, interior.

**medius, a, um, middle, central ; intermediate ; generally rendered by middle or half-way.**

**Meldi, örm̄i, m., plur., the Meldi, a tribe in northern Gaul.**

**mellior, comparative of bonis.**

**Melodinum, I, n., a town of the Senones in northern Gaul.**

**membrum, I, n., limb.**

**memini, isse, in perf. tenses only, remember, recollect.**

**memoria, ae, f., memory, recollection, remembrance, tradition; time.**

**Menapii, örm̄i, m., plur., the Menapii, a tribe in the extreme north-east of Gaul.**

**mendacium, I, n., lie, falsehood, false statement.**

**mēns, mentis, f., mind, intellect.**

**mēnsis, is, m., month.**

**mēnsura, ae, f., measure.**

**mēntiō, -ōnis, f., mention.**

**mercator, -tōris, m., trader, merchant.**

**mercatūra, ae, f., trading, traffic, commerce.**

**mer-cēs, -cēdis, f., pay, hire.**

**Mercurius, I, m., Mercury, one of the Roman gods.**

**mereō, ēre, ul, itum, and mereor, ēri, itus sum, deserve, win, earn; serve.**

**meridiānus, a, um, of midday, of noon.**

**meridiēs, ēl, m., midday, noon; the south.**

**meritum, I, n., service, merit, desert; fault.**

**Messalā, ae, m., Marcus Valerius Messala, consul B.C. 61.**

**mētior, iri, mēnsus annī, measure, measure out, distribute.**

**Metlosedum, I, n., a town in northern Gaul.**

**Mētius, I, m., an envoy of Cæsar's.**

**metō, ere, messui, messum, reap, cut grain.**

**metus, ūs, m., fear.**

**mens, a, um, my, mine.**

**mil-es, -itla, m., soldier, man; as collective, the soldiers, soldiery.**

**militāris, e, military, of war.**

**militia, ae, f., (military) service.**

**mille, indeclinable adj.; in plur., millia, imm, n.; thousand.**

**Mīnerva, ae, f., Minerva, a Roman goddess.**

**minimē, adv., superlative of parvum, by no means, very lit' least.**

**minimus, superlative of parvus.**

**minor, comparativ of parvus.**

**Minucius, I, m., Lucius Minucius Basilius, one of Cæsar's officers.**

**min-uō, ere, -ni, -ūtum, lessen, diminish, decrease; settle; ebb.**

**minus, adv., comparative of parvum, less; not; not very, not so well.**

**miror, ārl, ātus sum, wonder at, wonder.**

**mirus, a, um, wonderful, strange, surprising.**

**miser, era, erum, wretched, poor, miserable.**

**misercordia, ae, f., pity, mercy, clemency.**

**miseror, ārl, ātus sum, bewail, deplore, lament.**

**missus, ūs, m., sending, despatch.**

**mitti, e, gentle; superl. adv., mittissimē, gently, mildly.**

**mittō, ere, misi, missum, send, despatch; hurl, throw.**

**mōbilis, e, fickle, changeable.**

**mōbilitas, -tatis, f., fickleness; quickness, activity.**

**mōbility, adv., easily.**

**moderor, ārl, ātus sum, manage, check, control, restrain.**

**modestia, ae, f., self-control, moderation.**

**modo, adv., only, but, merely; just, but now, but recently.**

**modus, I, m., measure, amount; fashion, style, manner, kind, sort.**

**moenla, lum**, n. plur., *walls, fortifications.*

**môlēs, ls**, f., *mass; dyke, dam.*

**molestē, adv.**, *grievously; molest ferre, to be annoyed, be vexed.*

**môlimentum, l**, u., *trouble, difficulty.*

**mollitus, a, um**, from *molo*.

**mollitō, ire, ivi, Itum**, *soften, lessen; make easy.*

**mollis, e**, *weak, yielding, changeable, not firm; smooth, level.*

**mollitū, ae**, f., *weakness, feebleness.*

**mollitēs, ēi**, f., *weakness, lack of endurance.*

**mol-ō, ere, -ui, -lum**, *grind.*

**mômentum, l**, u., *weight, influence, importance.*

**Mona, ae**, f., *an island in the Irish channel.*

**moneō, ère, ui, Itum**, *warn, advise, remind, urge.*

**môns, montis**, m., *mountain; mountain range; hill.*

**mora, ae**, f., *delay.*

**morbus, l**, m., *disease, sickness.*

**Morini, örumi**, m. plur., *the Morini, a tribe in the north of Gaul.*

**morlor, morl, mortuus sum, die.**

**Moritasgus, l**, m., *a chief of the Senones.*

**moror, är, ätus sum, delay, wait, stay, linger; hinder, retard.**

**mors, mortis**, f., *death.*

**mortuus, a, um**, from *morlor*.

**mös, inörls**, m., *manner, custom, way; in plur., habits, character.*

**Mosa, ae**, m., *the Meuse, a river in north-eastern Gaul.*

**môtus, üs**, m., *movement, motion, change; uprising, disturbance, revolt.*

**moveō, ère, mövl, mótni, move; influence.**

**muller, -eris, f.**, *woman.*

**müllō, -önlis**, m., *muleteer, mule-driver.*

**multitū-dō, -dlis**, f., *large number, great number, large body, multitude; number, amount; the common people.*

**multō, äre, ävi, ätum, fine; deprive.**

**multum, adv. (plüs, plürimum)**, *much, often, very.*

**multus, a, um (plüs, plürinus)**, *much; in plur., many; w. dles or nox, far advanced; multo as adv., much, far.*

**mûlus, l**, m., *mule.*

**Münatius, l**, m., *Lucius Munatius Plancus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

**mündus, l**, m., *world, universe.*

**münhuentum, l**, n., *fortification, defence.*

**münlō, ire, ivi, Itum**, *fortify, protect, defend, secure; w. Iter, build, make.*

**müntlō, -önlis**, f., *fortification, construction; fortified works, defences.*

**mün-us, -eris**, n., *duty, task, service; gift, present.*

**mûrälls, e**, *of a wall, used for or from walls, mural.*

**mûrus, l**, m., *wall.*

**mûsculus, l**, m., *shed, penthouse, covered hut.*

**mutillus, a, um**, *maimed, broken.*

**mûtō, äre, ävi, ätum, change.**

## N.

**næctus, a, um**, from *næcseor.*

**nam, conj., for, now.**

**Nammelius, l**, m., *a leading man of the Helvetii.*

**Namnetes, um**, m. plur., *the Namnetes, a tribe at the mouth of the Loire.*

**namque, conj., for.**

**næcseor, l**, *nactus or nanetus sum, find, get, come upon, obtain, secure.*

**Nantuates.**, *num.*, *m.*, *plur.*, *the Nantuates*, a tribe in the Alps, between the province and Italy.

**Narbō.**, *ōnis*, *f.*, a town in the southern part of the province.

**nāseor.**, *ī.*, *nātus sum*, *be born, be sprung from, arise, be bred; of metals, be found.*

**Nasus.**, *ae*, *m.*, a leader of the Suebi.

**nātālls**, *e*, *of birth; dies nātālls*, *birthday.*

**nātlō**, *-ōnis*, *f.*, *race, people, tribe, nation.*

**nātivus**, *a*, *um*, *natural.*

**nātūra**, *ae*, *f.*, *nature, character.*

**nātus**, *a*, *um*, *from nāseor.*

**nātus**, *īs*, *m.*, *birth.*

**nautu**, *ae*, *m.*, *sailor.*

**nātleus**, *a*, *um*, *naval, nautical.*

**nāvālls**, *e*, *naval, of ships.*

**nāvleula**, *ae*, *f.*, *small boat, skiff.*

**nāvgātlō**, *-ōnis*, *f.*, *sailing, navigation, voyage.*

**nāvlḡlum**, *ī*, *n.*, *ship, vessel.*

**nāvigō**, *āre*, *āvl*, *ātum*, *sail.*

**nāvis**, *īs*, *f.*, *ship, boat, vessel; navis longa, warship; navis oneraria, transport.*

**nāvō**, *āre*, *āvl*, *ātum*, *do energetically; operari nāvō, do one's best or utmost.*

**nē**, *conj.*, *that not, lest; w. verbs of urging, asking, etc., not to; w. verbs of hindering, from; w. verbs of fearing, that, lest; w. subj. standing for imperative, not.*

**nē**, *adv.*, *not; ne..quidem, not even.*

**-ne**, *enclitic interrogative particle, in direct questions untranslated; in indirect questions, whether; neene, or not.*

**nee**, *see neque.*

**necessārius**, *a*, *um*, *necessary, urgent, pressing; critical; m. as subst., connection, intimate friend, relative; necessārlō, abl. as adv., of necessity, unavoidably.*

**necessē**, *Indecl. adj.*, *necessary, inevitable; necessē est, often to be rendered by must, can but.*

**necessitās**, *-tāls*, *f.*, *necessity, need; urgency, exigency; interest.*

**necessitn-dō**, *-dlns*, *f.*, *intimacy, close friendship.*

**neene**, *conj.*, *or not.*

**necō**, *āre*, *āvl*, *ātum*, *kill, put to death.*

**neebūl**, *conj.*, *that nowhere.*

**nefārlus**, *a*, *um*, *wicked, atrocious, infamous.*

**nefas**, *n.*, *indecl.*, *wrong, crime.*

**neg-legō**, *ere*, *-lēxī*, *-lēctum*, *neglect, slight, disregard; overlook, be indifferent to.*

**negō**, *āre*, *āvl*, *ātum*, *deny, say ..not; refuse.*

**negōtlor**, *ārl*, *ātus sum*, *do business, carry on business.*

**negōtlum**, *ī*, *n.*, *business, enterprise; task, trouble, difficulty; dare negōtlum, instruct.*

**Nemetes**, *um*, *m. plur.*, *the Nemetes*, a German tribe on the Rhine.

**nēmō** (*nēminis*), *m.*, *gen. and abi.*, *not in use, no one, nobody.*

**nēquāquam**, *adv.*, *by no means.*

**neque**, *or sometimes nec before consonants. adv. and conj., and not, nor; when repeated, neither ..nor.*

**nēquidquām** or **nēquidquam**, *adv.*, *in vain, to no purpose.*

**Nervicus**, *a*, *um*, *of or with the Nervii.*

**Nervius**, *a*, *um*, *Nervian, of the Nervii.*

**Nervīl**, *ōrum*, *m. plur.*, *the Nervii, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.*

**nervus**, *ī*, *m.*, *sinec; strength, vigor, power.*

**neu**, *see neve.*

**nenter**, *tra*, *trum*, *neither; In plur., neither side.*

**nēve** or **nōn**, *or not, and that not, and not to, nor.*

**nex**, *necls*, *f.*, *death.*

**nihil**, n. indecl. *nothing*; acc. as adv., *not at all*.

**nihilum**, I, n., *nothing*; **nihillo**, abl. as adv., *more, no, w. comparative*.

**nimis**, adv., *too*.

**nimus**, a, um, *excessive, too great*.

**nisi**, conj., *if not, unless, except*.

**Nitobroges**, um, m. plur., *the Nitobroges, a tribe on the Garonne*.

**nitor**, I, n<sup>sus</sup> and n<sup>xus</sup> sum, *rely on, w. abl.; strive, endeavor*.

**nix, uix**, f., *snow*.

**nobilis**, e, *noble, of high birth; well-known*; m. as subst., *a noble*.

**nobilitas, -tatis**, f., *high birth; the nobility, the nobles*.

**noceo, ère, n̄l, Itum, harm, injure, do harm to, molest, w. dat.; part. nocens, -entis, guilty**.

**noctis**, abl. as adv., *by night*.

**nocturnus, a, um, by night, in the night, nightly**.

**nodus, I, m., joint**.

**nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, be unwilling, not wish; in imperative, do not**.

**nōmen, -mīnis**, n., *name; reputation, prestige*; in abl., *under the name or pretence of, as, on account*.

**nōmīnātīm**, adv., *by name*.

**nōmīnō, ère, àvī, àtum, name, call, mention**.

**nōn, adv., not, no**.

**nōnāgīntā, ninety**.

**nōndum, adv., not yet**.

**nōnūhil, adv., somewhat**.

**nōnūllus, a, um, some**.

**nōnnunquam, adv., sometimes**.

**nōnus, a, um, ninth**.

**Nōrēla, ae, f., chief town of the Norici.**

**Nōricus, a, um, *Norican, of the Norici, a tribe living inland north of the Adriatic*.**

**nōs, plur. of ego.**

**nōsco, ère, nōvī, nōtum, learn, become acquainted with; in perf., know; part. nōtus, a, um, known, well-known, familiar.**

**nōster, tra, trum, our; in plur. as subst., *our men, troops or forces*.**

**nōtīla, ne, f., knowledge, acquaintance with.**

**nōvem, nine.**

**Noviodūnum, I, n., (1) a town of the Sueones; (2) a town of the Aedui; (3) a town of the Bituriges.**

**nōvitās, -tatis, f., novelty, strangeness.**

**nōvus, a, um, new, fresh; in superlative, latest, last, rear; nōvū res, political change, change of government, revolution.**

**nox, uoxis, f., night.**

**noxa, ae, f., crime, offense.**

**nōbō, ère, nōpsl, nōptum, marry.**

**nōdō, ère, àvī, àtum, bare, expose; strip, clear.**

**nōdus, a, um, uncovered, naked, unprotected, bare.**

**nōllus, a, um, no, none; in gen. dat. and abl. supplies cases of nōmo, no one.**

**nōm, interrogative particle expecting negative answer, not translated.**

**nōmīn, -mīnis, n., divinity, divine power.**

**nōmerus, I, m., number; amount; account; In nōmero, in the light, as.**

**Numida, ne, m., Numidian, from the north coast of Africa.**

**numinus, I, m., coin, money.**

**nōmquam, adv., never**.

**nōne, adv., now.**

**nōnquam, adv., never.**

**nōntīo, ère, àvī, àtum, an-nōnce, report, bring word, tell.**

**nōntīus, I, m., messenger; news, report, message, tidings.**

**nōper, adv., lately, recently.**

**nōsquam, adv., nowhere.**

**nūtus, ūs, m., nod, beck; gestures, signs.**

**O.**

**ob, prep. w. acc., on account of, because of, for; quām ob rem, why.**

**obaterātus, a, um, indebted; m. as suīst., debtor.**

**ob-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum throw out, carry.**

**ob-eō, -ire, -li, -ltum, attend to. obltus, ūs, m., destruction.**

**ob-jelō, ere, -jēci, -jectum, place in the way, throw up, set, oppose; expose; pass., lie opposite, be in the way.**

**oblātus, a, um, from offero.**

**obliquē, adv., obliquely.**

**obliquus, a, um, slanting, oblique.**

**ob-lītis sum, forget, w. gen.**

**obsecrō, āre, āvī, ātum, entreat, beseech.**

**obsequentia, ac, f., compliance, regard.**

**observō, āre, āvī, ātum, keep, observe, regard, follow; watch, note.**

**ob-scs, -sldis, m., hostage.**

**obsessiō, -ōnls, f., siege, blockade.**

**ob-sldēō, ēre, -sēdi, -sessum, besiege, blockade, beset.**

**obslidō, -ōnls, f., siege, blockade; pressure.**

**obsignō, āre, āvī, ātum, seal.**

**ob-sistō, ere, -stīti, resist, withstand, w. dat.**

**obstlnatē, adv., steadily, firmly, persistently.**

**ob-stringō, ere, -strīnxī, -strīctum, bind, put under obligation.**

**ob-struō, ere, -strūxi, -strūctum, barricade, close.**

**obtemperō, āre, āvī, ātum, submit to, obey, w. dat.**

**obtestor, ārl, ātus sum, implore, call upon.**

**ob-tlneō, ēre, -tlul, -tentum, hold, possess, occupy, maintain.**

**obtull, from offero.**

**ob-venlō, Irc, -vēnl, -ventum, fall to, be assigned to; encounter. obvlam, adv., in the way, to meet, w. dat.**

**ocāslō, -ōnls, f., opportunity, time; surprise.**

**ocāsus, ūs, m., setting; solis oceasus, sunset, the west.**

**oc-eldō, ere, -eldi, -ēsnum, set: fall, be slain.**

**oc-eldō, ere, -eldi, -ēsum, slay, kill.**

**occlntatiō, -ōnls, f., concealment. occultē, adv., secretly.**

**occlntō, āre, āvī, ātum, hide, conceal.**

**occultus, a, um, concealed, hidden, secret; in or ex occulto, in secret.**

**occupatlō, -ōnls, f., engagement, occupation.**

**occupō, āre, āvī, ātum, seize, get possession of; occupy, engage; cover.**

**oc-currō, ere, -currī(-encurrī), -cursum, fall in with, meet, come upon, find; resist; provide for; occur.**

**occursō, āre, āvī, ātum, rush upon, charge.**

**Occurus, I, m., (often with mare), the Ocean.**

**Ocelum, I, n., a town on the eastern side of the Alps.**

**ōelus, adv., quickly, swiftly.**

**octāvns, a, um, eighth.**

**oetlingentl, ac, a, eight hundred.**

**oeto, eight.**

**octōdeclm, eighteen.**

**Octodūrns, I, m., a town of the Veragri, in the Alps.**

**octōgintā, eighty.**

**octōnl, ac, a, eight at a time, eight each, eight.**

**oculus, I, m., eye.**

**ōdī, isse,** perf. w. pres. meaning, *hate.*

**odium, I,** n., *hatred.*

**of-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fēnsum,** *hurt, wound; cause harm or mis-hap.*

**offēnsiō, -ōnis,** f., *wounding, hurting.*

**offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblatum,** *present, offer, hold out, give, afford, render; put in one's way or power.*

**officium, I,** n., *service, duty, allegiance.*

**Oifovleō, -ōnis,** m., a king of the Nitiobroges.

**o-mittō, ere, -mis̄l, -missum,** *neglect, give up, leave; throw away.*

**omnīnō, adv., altogether, in all;** w. negatives, *at all*; w. numerals, *only.*

**omnis, e,** *all, every, whole.*

**onerārius, a, um,** *for burdens; navis oneraria, a transport.*

**onerō, āre, āvl, ātum,** *load.*

**on-us, -eris,** n., *burden, weight, bulk; cargo, freight.*

**opera, ae, f.,** *work, exertion; pains, attention; services, aid, agency; operam dare, take pains, see to it.*

**opinlō, -ōnis,** f., *opinion, impression, idea; expectation, anticipation; reputation.*

**oportet, ēre, oportuit,** impersonal verb, *it behoves, it is necessary; render freely by ought.*

**oppidānus, a, um,** *of a town - m. plur. as subst., townspeople.*

**oppidu-n, I,** n., *town.*

**op-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum,** *oppose; pass, lie in the way.*

**opportūnē,** *opportunely, conveniently.*

**opportunitās, -tatis,** f., *fitness; convenience, suitable or favorable nature, convenient opportunity, advantage.*

**opportūnus, a, um,** *opportune, convenient, advantageous.*

**cp-primō, ere, -pressi, -presso-** sum, *overwhelm, crush, surprise; burden, weigh down.*

**oppūgnātiō, -ōnis,** f., *assault, attack; mode of attack.*

**oppūgnō, āre, āvl, ātum,** *attack, assault, storm.*

**(ops), opis, f.,** *help, aid; in plur., resources, power, strength.*

**optimē, adv.,** *superlative of bene, well, excellently.*

**optimus, a, um,** *superlative of bonus, best, very good, most excellent.*

**optō, āre, āvl, ātum,** *desire; perf. part. as adj., optatus, a, um, desirable, acceptable.*

**op-us, -eris,** n., *work, fortification, fortifying, structure; trade, handicraft; opere w. munitus, by art; quanto opere, how much, how greatly, as much as; tanto opere, so much, so earnestly, so vigorously; magnō opere, see magnopere.*

**opus,** n. indecl., *need, necessity; opus est, it is necessary, there is need.*

**ora, ae, f.,** *shore, coast.*

**ōratiō, -ōnis,** f., *speech, address, words, statement, appeal.*

**ōrātor, -tōris,** m., *ambassador.*

**orbis, is,** f., *circle; orbis terrarum, the whole world.*

**Orcynia, ae, f.,** a name given by Greek writers to the Hercynian forest.

**ōr-dō, -dīnis,** m., *rank, row, course, tier; grade, class; arrangement, order.*

**Orgetor-ix, -īgis,** m., *a leading man of the Helvetii.*

**orlor, Irl, ortus sum,** *rise, arise, spring, be born; spring up, begin, start; part. oriēns, -entis, as adj., rising; oriens sol, sunrise, the east.*

**ōrnāmentum, I,** n., *ornament, honor.*

**ōrnō, āre, āvl, ātum,** *adorn, distinguish; supply, equip, furnish.*

ōrō, āre, āvl, ātum, *pray, beg, entreat.*

ortus, a, um, from orior.

ortus, ūs, m., *rising.*

ōs, ūrls, u., *face, mouth.*

Oslsmī, ūrum, m. plur., *the Osismi, a tribe in the extreme north-west of Gaul.*

osten-dō, cre, -cl, -tum, *show, point out, explain, declare, state; reveal, unmask, display.*

ostentatiō, -ōnis, f., *show, display; boastfulness, pride; pretence, deception.*

ostentō, āre, āvl, ātum, *show, display, exhibit, parade.*

ōtium, I, n., *rest, leisure, quiet.*

ōvum, I, n., *egg.*

pār, paris, *equal, like, the same: a match.*

parcē, adv., *sparingly.*

parcō, ere, peperl, parsum or pareltum, *spare, w. dat.; be economical.*

paréns, -entis, m. and f., *parent.*

parentō, āre, āvl, ātum, *avenge, w. dat.*

pāreō, ēre, ul, itum, *obey, submit, w. dat.*

parlō, ere, peperl, partum, *get, acquire, secure, win.*

Parisiī, ūrum, m. plur., *the Parisii, a tribe in northern Gaul on the Selne.*

parō, āre, āvl, ātum, *prepare, get ready, arrange; procure, get, acquire; part. parátus, a, um, as adj., ready, prepared.*

para, partia, f., *part, portion, share; quarter, direction, side; party; way, point, respect.*

partim, adv., *partly; when repeated, often rendered by some... others.*

partior, Irl, itus sum, *dive.*

partus, a, um, from parlo.

parum, adv., (minus, mininē), *little, too little, not much.*

parvulus, a, um, *very small, slight, trifling, insignificant; ab parvulis, from early childhood.*

parvus, a, um, (minor, minimus), *small, trifling.*

passim, adv., *in all directions.*

passus, a, um, from pando or from patior.

passus, ūs, m., *pace (five feet); one thousand paces make one mile.*

pate-faciō, ere, -fēcl, -factum, *open, throw open.*

pate-flō, -flērl, -factus sum, *pass. of patefacio.*

pateō, ēre, ul, *extend, spread out; be open, stand open; part. patēns -entis, as adj., open, exposed.*

pater, -tris, m., *father; in plur. forefathers, ancestors.*

patienter, adv., *patiently.*

## P.

P., an abbreviation for Publius.

pābulatiō, -ōnis, f., *foraging.*

pābulātor, -tōris, m., *forager.*

pābulor, ārl, ātus sum, *forage.*

pābulum, I, n., *fodder, forage.*

pācō, āre, āvl, ātum, *subdue, reduce; part. pācatus, a, um, as adj., peaceful, quiet.*

pactum, I, n., *manner, way; quo pacto, how.*

Padus, I, m., *the Po, a river in Cisalpine Gaul (northern Italy).*

Paemānl, ūrum, m. plur., *the Paemani, a tribe in north-eastern Gaul.*

paene, adv., *almost.*

paenit-et, ēre, -ult, *impersonal, w. acc. of person and gen. of thing, render by be sorry, regret.*

pāgus, I, m., *district, canton.*

palam, adv., *openly, publicly.*

palma, ac, f., *palm, hand.*

pal-ūs, -ūdis, f., *marsh, swamp, fen.*

palūster, tris, tre, *marshy.*

pandō, ere, pandl, passum, *spread out, outstretch; in pass. w. capillus, be dishevelled.*

**patientia**, ae, f., endurance, patience, forbearance.

**patiōr**, I, **passus sum**, suffer. allow, permit; bear, endure, withstand.

**patrīus**, a, um, of one's fathers, ancestral.

**patrōnus**, I, m., patron, lord.

**patruus**, I, m., uncle (on father's side).

**paucl**, ae, a (sing. not in Caesar), few, but few.

**pauclitās**, -tātl̄s, f., small number.

**paulatīm**, adv., gradually, by degrees; gently.

**paulisper**, adv., for a short time.

**paulō**, adv., a little, slightly, somewhat.

**paulūlum**, adv., very slightly, a very little.

**paulum**, adv., a little.

**pāx**, pācl̄s, f., peace.

**peccō**, āre, āvl̄, ātūm, do wrong, commit a wrong.

**pect-us**, -oris, n., breast.

**pecūnia**, ae, f., money.

**pec-us**, -oris, n., cattle; flesh, meat.

**pedall̄s**, e, measuring a foot, a foot thick.

**ped-es**, -itis, m., foot-soldier; in plur., infantry.

**pedester**, tris, tre, on foot, on or by land; of infantry.

**peditātus**, ūs, m., infantry.

**Pedius**, I, m., *Quintus Pedius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**pējor**, pējus, (comparative of malus), worse.

**pellis**, is, f., skin, hide; sub pellibus, in tents.

**pelliō**, ere, pepull̄, pulsum, drive, dislodge, repulse, defeat, rout.

**pendō**, ere, pepend̄l̄, pēnsim, weigh; pay.

**penes**, prep. w. acc., in the power or hands of.

**penitus**, adv., completely, utterly.

**per**, prep. w. acc., through; by means of, by; by way of, over, along; by reason of; **per se**, by or in one's self, so far as (he was) concerned.

**per-agō**, ere, -ēgl̄, -āctum, finish, bring to an end.

**perangustus**, a, um, very narrow.

**per-cipiō**, ere, -cēpl̄, -ceptum, get, acquire; hear, hear of, learn; gain, reap.

**percontātiō**, -ōnl̄s, f., inquiry.

**per-currō**, ere, -curr̄l̄ (-cucurrl̄), -cursum, run along.

**per-cutīō**, ere, -cuss̄l̄, -cussum, hit, strike down.

**per-dlscō**, ere, -didičl̄, learn thoroughly, master.

**per-dō**, ere, -didi, -dltum, ruin; part. perditus, a, um, as adj., abandoned, desperate.

**per-dūcō**, ere, -dūxl̄, -ductum, carry or bring over, bring; prolong; carry, make.

**perendinus**, a, um, after tomorrow.

**per-eō**, -ire, -ll̄ (-lvi), -itum, perish, be killed.

**perequitō**, āre, āvl̄, ātūm, ride through, ride about.

**perexiguus**, a, um, very small.

**perfacilis**, e, very easy.

**per-ferō**, -ferre, -tuill̄, -lātum, endure, bear, submit to; carry, convey, report.

**per-ficiō**, ere, -fēcl̄, -fectum, carry out, finish, accomplish, bring about; build, make.

**perfidaia**, ae, f., faithlessness, treachery.

**per-fringō**, ere, -frēgl̄, -frāctum, break through.

**perfuga**, ae, m., deserter.

**per-fugl̄o**, ere, -fūgl̄, flee, escape; desert.

**perfugium**, I, n., refuge, place of refuge.

**per-gō**, ere, -rēxl̄, -rēctum, proceed, advance.

**perlelltor.** *ārl.* *ātus sum,* *run risk,* be exposed to danger; try, make a test.

**periculōsus.** *a.* *um,* dangerous.

**periculum.** *I.* *n.,* danger, risk; test, trial, attempt.

**peritus.** *a.* *um,* skilled, experienced, familiar, w. gen.

**perlatus.** *a.* *um,* from *perfero.*

**per-legō.** *ere,* *-lēgī,* *-lēctūm,* read through.

**per-luō.** *ere,* *-lūl,* *-lūtūm,* wash; in pass., bathe.

**pernāgnus.** *a.* *um,* very large.

**per-maneō.** *ere,* *-mānsī,* *-mānsum,* continue, remain, persist, abide.

**per-misceō.** *ere,* *-mīscūl,* *-mīxtūm* (*-mīstūm*), mix, mingle.

**per-mlttō.** *ere,* *-mīsl,* *-mīssum,* give up, yield, entrust, leave; allow, grant permission, permit.

**per-moveō.** *ere,* *-mōvī,* *-mōtūm,* move, influence, induce; arouse, alarm, excite.

**per-mulceō.** *ere,* *-mulcī,* *-mulsum,* soothe, calm, quiet.

**perniciēs.** *ēl.* *f.,* destruction.

**perpauci,** *ae,* *a,* very few.

**perpendiculum.** *I.* *n.,* plumb-line.

**per-petlor.** *I.* *-pessus sum,* endure, suffer.

**perpetuus.** *a.* *um,* continuous, unbroken, solid; perpetual, lasting; whole, entire; incessant; In *perpetuum,* for ever; abl. as adv., *perpetuō,* for ever, constantly, uninterruptedly.

**per-quirō.** *ere,* *-quisīvī,* *-quisītūm,* inquire into or about.

**per-rumpō.** *ere,* *-rūpl,* *-rup-tūm,* break through, break, force a way or passage or entrance.

**per-scribō.** *ere,* *-serīpsi,* *-serīptūm,* write out, report, describe fully.

**per-sequor.** *I.* *-secūtūs sum,* pursue, follow up; avenge; attack.

**persevērō.** *are,* *āvī,* *ātūm,* persist.

**per-solvō.** *ere,* *-solvī,* *-solūtūm,* pay.

**per-spīclō.** *ere,* *-spexī,* *-spec-tūm,* see, see through; perceive, understand; observe, examine, inspect, survey; learn, ascertain, find out, become acquainted with.

**per-stō.** *āre,* *-stītl,* *-stātūm,* persist, abide, be firm.

**per-suādeō.** *ere,* *-suāsl,* *-suāsum,* persuade, induce, prevail on, convince, w. dat.

**per-terreō.** *ere,* *āl,* *ātūm,* terrify, frighten, alarm; in pass., be panic-stricken; dismay, demoralize.

**per-timēscō.** *ere,* *-tīmūl,* fear greatly, be much afraid.

**pertinācla.** *ae,* *f.,* obstinacy.

**per-tīneō.** *ere,* *-tīnūl,* *-tentūm,* extend, reach, stretch; lead, tend, have a tendency; concern, relate, belong to.

**pertull,** from *perfero.*

**perturbātiō.** *-ōnlī,* *f.,* alarm, confusion, panic.

**perturbō.** *āre,* *āvī,* *ātūm,* throw into confusion, disconcert, disturb, alarm; in pass., be at a loss.

**per vagor.** *ārl,* *ātūs sum,* roam about.

**per-venlō.** *ire,* *-vēnī,* *-ventūm,* come, reach, arrive.

**pēs.** *pedis.* *m.,* foot: *pedibus,* on foot, by land: *pedem referre,* to fall back, retire, retreat.

**pet-ō.** *ere,* *-īvī,* *-ītūm,* ask, request; seek, ask for, beg, sue for; make for, aim at, attack.

**Petrocorīl.** *ōruni,* *m. plur.,* the Petrocorii, a tribe in south-western Gaul on the Garonne.

**Petrōnlus.** *I.* *m.,* Marcus Petronius, a centurion in Caesar's army.

**Petrosidius.** *I.* *m.,* Lucius Petrosidius, the standard-bearer of one of Caesar's legions.

**phal-anx.** *-angīs,* *f.,* phalanx, column, compact body.

**Pletones.** *um,* *m. plur.,* the Pletones, a Gallic tribe at the mouth of the Loire.

**pletās, -tātis, f., duty or devotion** (*to country*), patriotism.

**plūm, I, n., javelin, spear.**

**plūs, I, m., a maniple or division** of a Roman legion; the senior centurion of the first maniple was chief centurion of the legion.

**plnna, ae, f., parapet, battlement.**

**Pirūstae, árum, m. plur., the** Pirustae, a tribe in Illyricum.

**piscis, ls, m., fish.**

**Pisō, -ōnis, m., 1. Lucius Calpurnius Piso**, a Roman *legatus*, slain by the Tigurini, B.C. 107; 2. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso*, grandson of the above, consul B.C. 58, and Caesar's father-in-law; 3. *Marcus Piso*, consul B.C. 61; 4. an Aquitanian of rank.

**plx, plcls, f., pitch.**

**placeō, ēre, ul, itum, please,** w. dat.; placet, impersonal, it is decided, (one) resolves.

**placidē, adv., calmly, quietly.**

**plācō, āre, āvī, ātum, appease.**

**Plancus, I, m., Lucius Munatius Plancus**, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**plānē, adv., clearly; quite, altogether.**

**plānlīs, ēl, f., plain, level ground.**

**plānus, a, um, level, flat.**

**plēbēs, or plēbs, plēbls, f., the common people.**

**plēnē, adv., entirely, completely.**

**plēnus, a, um, full, complete.**

**plérlique, pléraque, pléraque,** the most, the majority, the greater number.

**plérumque, adv., generally, usually, in most cases.**

**Pleumoxii, órum, m. plur., the** Pleumoxii, a tribe in the north-east of Gaul.

**plumbum, I, n., lead; plumbum** album, tin.

**plūrīnum, adv., most, very much.**

**plūrīmus, a, um, superlative of** multus, most, very much, very many.

**plūs, plūris, comparative of mul-** tūs, more; in plur., several, many.

**pluteus, I, m., screen, moveable** breastwork, defence.

**pōculum, I, n., drinking-cup.**

**poena, ae, f., penalty, punishment;** satisfaction.

**poenitēt, see paenitet.**

**poll-ex, -lēs, m., thumb.**

**policeor, ērl, Itus sum, promise,** make a promise.

**pollicētālō, -ōnis, f., promise,** offer.

**Pompēlus, I, m., Pompey.** 1. *Cneius Pompeius*, consul B.C. 55, proconsul of Spain B.C. 54-50. 2. *Cneius Pompeius*, an interpreter with the Roman army.

**pond-us, -erls, n., weight.**

**pōnō, ere, posul, positum,** place, set, station; w. *castra*, pitch; rest, base, make dependent; lay down; in pass., be situated, be dependent.

**pōns, pontis, m., bridge.**

**poposcl, from posco.**

**populālō, -ōnis, f., ravaging,** raid.

**populor, ārl, ātus sum, ravage,** lay waste, devastate.

**populus, I, m., people, nation.**

**por-rlgō, ere, -rēxI, -rēctum,** stretch forward; part. porrēctus, a, um, as adj., extended.

**porrō, adv., further, moreover.**

**porta, ae, f., gate.**

**portō, āre, āvī, ātum, carry,** bring, convey.

**portōlrum, I, n., customs duty,** toll, tax.

**portus, ūs, m., harbor, port.**

**poscō, ere, poposcl, ask for de-** mand.

**positus, a, um, from pono.**

**possesslō, -ōnis, f., possession,** occupation; in plur. lands.

**pos-sideō, ēre, -sēdI, -sessum,** possess, hold.

**pos-sldō, ere, -sēdI, -sessum,** seize, occupy.

**possūm, posse, potul.** be able, can, be possible; be powerful or strong, have weight or influence.

**post.** 1. adv., afterwards, after; 2. prep. w. acc., after, behind.

**postea,** adv., afterwards; hereafter.

**posteaque tam,** conj., after, when.

**posterus, a, um.** next, following; m. plur. as subst., descendants, posterity.

**post-pōnō, ere, -posul, -positum,** postpone, set aside, disregard.

**postquam,** conj., after, when.

**postrēmō, adv., finally, lastly, at last.**

**postridiē, adv., the next day, on the morrow.**

**postulātum, I, n., demand.**

**postulō, āre, āvI, ātum,** ask, ask for, demand, require.

**potēns, entis,** partic. of possum, powerful, influential.

**potentātus, ūs, m.,** supremacy, chief power, leading position.

**potentia, ae, f., power.**

**potestās, -tātis, f.,** power, control; opportunity, chance, permission.

**potior, Irl.** Itus sum, get control or possession of, gain, obtain, w. abl. or gen.

**potius,** comparative adv., rather, sooner, more.

**potul,** from possum.

**prae,** prep. w. abl., in comparison with; on account of, for.

**praeacūtus, a, um,** sharpened at the end, pointed.

**praebeō, ēre, ul, itum,** furnish, afford, give, cause.

**prae-caveō, ēre, -cāvI, -cautum,** take precautions, be on one's guard.

**prae-cēdō, ēre, -cesal, -cessum,** excel, surpass.

**prae-ceps,** -cipitis, headlong; abrupt, step.

**praeceptum, I, n.,** order, instructions, injunction.

**prae-cliplō, ere, -cēpl, -cep-** tum, order, instruct, give instructions; anticipate.

**praeclpitō, āre, āvI, ātum,** fling, hurl.

**praeclpuē, adv., especially.**

**praeclpuus, a, nm,** special, particular.

**prae-clūdō, ēre, -clūsl, -clū-** sum, close, barricade.

**praeccō, -ōnis, m., herald.**

**Praeconinus, I, m.,** Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**prae-eurrō, ere, -eurrI (-en-** currI), -euraum, hasten on before; anticipate.

**praeda, ac, f., plunder, booty.**

**praedicō, āre, āvI, ātum,** announce, declare, assert, boast.

**praedor, ārl, ātus suni,** plunder, get plunder, pillage.

**prae-dūcō, ēre, -dūxi, -due-** tum, construct in front, carry out.

**praefectus, a, um,** from praeficio.

**praefectus, I, m.,** officer, commander (especially of cavalry), prefect.

**prae-ferō, -ferre, -tuill, -lā-** tum, place before, prefer, esteem more highly; se praeferre, to surpass, outdo.

**prae-ficlō, ere, -fēcl, -fectum,** put or set over, place in command of, give charge of, w. acc. and dat.

**prae-fligō, ere, -flxi, -fixum,** fix before, place at the edge.

**praemet-uō, ere, -ul,** be anxious, fear.

**prae-mittō, ere, -misI, -mis-** sum, send in advance, send on before, send forward.

**praenium, I, n.,** reward, prize.

**praeoccupō, āre, āvI, ātum,** seize beforehand, seize, take possession of.

**praeoptō, āre, āvI, ātum,** prefer.

**praeparō, āre, āvI, ātum,** prepare or get ready beforehand.

**prae-pónō, ere, -posul, -positum,** place or set over, put in command of, w. acc. and dat.

**prae-rūmpō, ere, -rūpl, -ruptum,** break off, snap; part. **prae-ruptus, a, um,** as adj., abrupt, precipitous.

**prae-saeplō, ire, -saepsl, -saep-tum,** block up, barricade.

**prae-scribō, ere, -seripsl, -scriptum,** prescribe, direct, dictate.

**praescriptum, l, n.,** bidding, dictation.

**prae-sēns, -entis,** partic. of **prae-sum, present, instant, in person.**

**prae-sentia, ae, f., the present; presence;** in **prae-sentia, for the moment, at the time.**

**prae-sentlō, ire, -sēnsl, -sēn-sum,** learn of or find out beforehand, have foresight.

**praesertim, adv., especially, particularly.**

**prae-sidūm, l, n., guard, garri-son, (protecting) force; protection, support, escort.**

**praestō, adv., at hand; praesto esse, to meet.**

**prae-stō, āre, -stītl, -stitum or -stātūm, exhibit, show, display; discharge, do; excel, be superior; w. dat.; praestat, impersonal, it is better.**

**prae-sum, esse, -ful, be over, be at head of, have command of; be in charge of, hold; w. dat.**

**praeter, prep. w. acc., beyond, past; except, besides; contrary to.**

**praetereā, adv., besides, moreover.**

**praeter-eō, -ire, -ll (-lī), -ltum, pass over, pass by; part. as adj., praeteritus, a, um, past; n. plur. as subst., the past.**

**praeter-mittō, ere, -misl, -mis-sum, let go by, let pass, lose; pass over, neglect.**

**praeterquam, adv., except.**

**praetor, -tōrls, m., commander; praetor, a Roman magistrate.**

**praetōrius, a, um, of a commander or praetor; praetoria cohors, body-guard.**

**prae-ūrō, ere, -ussl, -ūstum, burn at the end or point.**

**prae-vertō, ere, -vertl, -ver-sum, anticipate, prevent, w. dat.**

**prāvus, a, um, poor, wretched; wicked, vicious, perverse.**

**preces, um, f. (sing. defective and not found in Caesar), prayers, entreaties.**

**premō, ere, pressl, pressum, press, press hard; crowd; harass, oppress.**

**prendō, ere, prendl, prēnsum, seize, grasp.**

**prelūm, l, n., price.**

(**prex**), **precis, f.,** see **preces.**

**pridiē, adv., the day before, on the previous day.**

**prīmīplūs, l, m., chief centurion; see plūs.**

**prīmō, adv., at first.**

**prīmūm, adv., first, in the first place; cum or ubi prīmūm, as soon as; quam prīmūm, as soon as possible.**

**prīmūs, a, um, superlative of prior, first, foremost, in the van; in primis, especially.**

**prīn-ceps, -cepl, first, chief, leading; m. as subst., leading man, leader, chief.**

**prīncipātūs, ūs, m., leadership, chief position, first place, lead.**

**prior, lus, comparative, former, earlier; in front; first (of two).**

**prīstīnus, a, um, former, previous; of former days, old-time.**

**prīlus, comparative adv., earlier, sooner; prīlus...quam, before, w. negatives until.**

**prīusquam, conj., before.**

**privātūm, adv., privately, as individuals, as private persons.**

**privātūs, a, um, private, individual, personal; m. as subst., a private person, individual.**

**prō-**, prep. w. abl., before, in front of; on behalf of, for; instead of, in place of, as; in return for; in accordance with, according to; in proportion to, in comparison with; considering, in view of; as far as concerned.

**probō, āre, āvl, ātum, prove;** test, put to the test; approve of, favor, recognize, think highly of.

**prō-cēdō, ere, -cessi, -cessum,** go forward, advance.

**Procillus, I, m., Caius Valerius Procillus,** a Romanized Gaul of rank.

**prōclīnō, āre, āvl, ātum, bend forward;** *res prōclīnatū, a falling cause.*

**prōcōn-sul, -sullis, m., proconsul,** an ex-consul in charge of a province.

**procul, adv., at a distance.**

**prō-cumbō, ere, -cubul,** bend or slope forward, incline; lie down, fall, sink, lodge.

**prōcūrō, āre, āvl, ātum, attend to, have charge of.**

**prō-eurrō, ere, -eucurri (-curri), -cursum,** run or rush forward, rush out, charge.

**prōd-eō, -ire, -il (-lvi), -itum,** go forth, come out, advance.

**prōdesse,** from *prosum*.

**prōditlō, -ōnis, f., treason.**

**prōditor, -tōris, m., traitor.**

**prō-dō, ere, -didl, -ditum,** give forth, publish, report; hand down, bequeath, transmit; betray.

**prō-dūcō, ere, -dūxl, -ductum,** lead forth or out, bring out; prolong, protract.

**proellor, ārl, ātus sum, fight.**

**proellum, I, n., battle, engagement, fighting, fight.**

**profectiō, -ōnis, f., departure.**

**profectus, a, um, from proficisci.**

**prōfectus, a, um, from proficio.**

**prō-ferō, -ferre, -tull, -lātum,** bring forth, bring out.

**prō-ficiō, ere, -fici, -fectum,** gain advantage, gain, effect; advance.

**pro-ficisci, I, -fectus sum, set out, depart, start, go, proceed.**

**pro-fiteor, ērl, -fessus sum, declare, state openly, offer, profess, avow.**

**prōfligō, āre, āvl, ātum, rout,** put to flight.

**prō-fluō, ere, -flūxl,** flow forth, rise.

**prō-fuglō, ere, -fugl, -fugitum,** flee, escape.

**prōgnātus, a, um, sprung, descended;** m. as subst., descendant.

**prō-gredior, I, -gressus sum,** go forward, come forth, advance, proceed, go.

**prōhibeō, ēre, ul, itum, restrain,** keep, prevent, hold, hinder, cut off; protect.

**prōinde, adv., therefore.**

**prō-jiciō, ere, -jēcl, -jectum,** throw down or away, hurl, fling; abandon, renounce.

**prōlātus, a, um, from profero.**

**prōmineō, ere, ul, lean forward.**

**prōmisē, adv., promiscuously, indiscriminately.**

**prō-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum,** let grow; part. *prōmissus, a, um,* as adj., long, flowing.

**prōmontōrium, I, n., headland,** promontory.

**prō-moveō, ēre, -mōvl, -mōtum,** move forward, advance.

**prōmptus, a, um, ready, alert.**

**prōnē, adv., bending forward**

**prōnūntiō, āre, āvl, ātum, state publicly, declare, tell, announce;** give notice, give orders, make proclamation.

**prope, adv. (propius, proximē).** near; nearly, almost; also as prep. w. acc., near.

**prō-pelliō, ere, -puill, -pusum,** drive off, repel, dislodge, defeat.

**properō, āre, āvl, ātum, hasten.**

**propinquitās, -tatis, f., neighbor-hood, vicinity, nearness, proximity; relationship, kinship.**

**propinquus, a, um, near, close; related; m. as subst., relative, kinsman.**

**propior, ius, comparative, nearer; see proximus.**

**proplus, adv., see prope.**

**prō-pōnō, ēre, -posm, -postum, place or set before; display; set forth, explain, state, disclose; offer, present; promise, propose.**

**proprius, a, um, one's own, private, particular; belonging to, peculiar to; n. as subst., a mark, a sign.**

**propter, prep. w. acc., on account of, because of.**

**propterea, adv., on this account, for this reason; propterea quod, because.**

**prōpīgnātor, -tōris, m., defender.**

**prōpūgnō, āre, āvl, ātūm, defend, rush out to fight.**

**prōpulsō, āre, āvl, ātūm, drive off, repel.**

**prōra, ae, f., prow, bow.**

**prō-ruō, ēre, -rul, -rutum, pull down, demolish.**

**prō-sequor, I, -secūtus sum, pursue, follow; accompany, escort; dismiss, address.**

**prōspectus, ūs, m., view, outlook, sight.**

**prō-splētiō, ēre, -spexl, -spec-tum, provide for, take precautions, take care.**

**prō-sternō, ēre, -strāvl, -strā-tum, cast down, destroy.**

**prōsum, prōdesse, prōful, prove an advantage, be of service.**

**prō-tegō, ēre, -tēxl, -tēctum, cover, protect.**

**prōterreō, ēre, ul, itum, frighten away, drive off.**

**prōtinus, adv., at once, immediately.**

**prōturbō, āre, āvl, ātūm, drive off (in confusion), dislodge.**

**prō-vehō, ēre, -vexl, -vectum, carry forward; in pass., be carried, be driven, sail.**

**prō-venlō, īre, -vēnl, -ventum, grow up, come up, yield.**

**prōventus, ūs, m., outcome, issue, result.**

**prō-vldeō, ēre, -vldl, -vlaum, foresee, have foresight; provide for, secure, procure, make provision; take care, see, arrange.**

**prōvinciā, ae, f., province; especially 'the province' of Gallia Transalpina.**

**prōvinciālis, e, of the province.**

**prōvolō, āre, āvl, ātūm, rush forth, rush out.**

**prōximē, adv., superlative of prope, last, most recently, very lately.**

**proximus, a, um, nearest, next; last, recent; see propior.**

**prudentia, ae, f., foresight, prudence, discretion.**

**Ptianil, órum, m. plur., the Ptianii, a tribe of Aquitania.**

**pūb-ēs, -eris, adult, full-grown; m. as subst., adult, full-grown man.**

**pūbličē, adv., publicly, officially, in the name of the state, as a stats.**

**pūbličō, āre, āvl, ātūm, confiscate.**

**pūblicus, a, uni, public, official, of the state or people; in pūbl-enim or in pūblico, in public; res publica, see respública.**

**Pūblius, I, m., Publius, a Roman praenomen.**

**pudet, ēre, pudult, it shames, w. acc. of person; render freely, (one) is ashamed.**

**pudor, -ōris, m., shame, sense of shame.**

**puer, erl, m., boy, child; a puer, from childhood.**

**puerilis, e, of a child, of boyhood.**

**pūgna, ae, f., fight, fighting, battle.**

**pūgnō, āre, āvl, ātūm, fight; in pass., pugnātur, impersonally, the battle goes on, freely (they) fight.**

**pulcher, chra, chrum,** beautiful, fine.

**Puttō, -ōnts,** m., *Titus Putto*, a centurion in Caesar's army.

**putns, a, um,** from **petto**.

**putns, ūs, m.,** stroke, propulsion, **putv-is, -erls,** m., dust, cloud of dust.

**puppls, ls, f.,** stern.

**pūrgō, āre, āvl, ātum,** excuse, clear, free from blame.

**putō, āre, āvl, ātum,** think, believe, hold, consider, suppose.

**Pyrēneaus, a, um, w.** montes, the Pyrenees, between Gaul and Spain.

### Q.

**Q.,** an abbreviation for **Quintus.**  
**quā, adv., where,** at which point, by which road.

**quadrāgēnī, ae, a,** forty each, forty.

**quadrāgintā,** forty.

**quadrīngenti, ne, a,** four hundred.

**quaerō, ere, quaeſīvī, quaeſītū,** ask, enquire, make enquiry; seek, look far.

**quaestlō, -ōnts, f.,** investigation, enquiry, examination.

**quaestor, -tōrls, m.,** quaestor, the officer in charge of the finances of a province or army.

**quaestus, ūs, m.,** gain, gaining, acquisition.

**quālla, e,** of what sort, what.

**quam, adv., how;** w. comparatives, than; w. superlatives, as....as possible.

**quamdlū, adv., as long as.**

**quamobrem, adv., why,** wherefore.

**quamvīs, adv., however.**

**quandō, adv., at any time, at times, ever.**

**quantus, a, um,** how great, how much; as great as, as much as, as; quanto...tanto, by how much...by so much, the...the.

**quān-tusvis, -tavis, -tuvīs,** however great, no matter how great.

**quārē, adv., wherefore,** why, for which, on account of which.

**quārtus, a, um,** fourth.

**qmisi, conj., as if.**

**quattuor or quatuoṛ,** four.

**quattuordeclīm,** fourteen.

**-que,** enclitic conjunction, and.

**quemadmodum, adv., how, as.**

**queror, I, questis sum,** complain, complain of; lament, bewail.

**qui, quae, quod,** rel. pron., who, which, what, that; he who; as co-ordinating relative, this, he; after **Idem**, as.

**qui, quae, quod,** Interrogative adj., what, which.

**qui, qua, quod,** indefinite adj. or rarely pron., some, any; anyone.

**quiequam, from quisquam.**

**quieūmque, quaecumque,** quodcumque, whoever, whatever, whichever.

**quidam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam,** a certain one, n. certain, one, a sort of.

**quidem, adv., certainly,** at least; ne...quidem, not even.

**qui-ēs, -ētis, f.,** rest.

**qui-ētus, a, um,** quiet, at rest, settled, peaceable.

**quin,** conj., but that, that, so that not, as not; often best rendered by from, w. verbal in -ing.

**quin, . iv, nay, in fact.**

**quīnam, quaenam, quodnam,** who, which, what.

**quinc-flnx, -āncls, f., quincunx;** In quincunxem, in the form of a quincunx.

**quīudeclīm,** fifteen.

**quīngenti, ae, a,** five hundred.

**quīnī, ae, a,** five each, five at a time, five.

**quīnquāgintā,** fifty.

**quīnque,** five.

**quintus, a, um, fifth.**

**Qufutus, I, m., Quintus, a Roman praenomen.**

**quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron., who, what; n. quid as adv., why, quis, qua, quid, indefinite pron., any one, anything; n. quid as adv., in any respect, at all.**

**quisquam, quaequam, quodquam or quidquam, any one, anything, any.**

**quisque, quaque, quidque or quodque, each, each one; w. superlatives freely rendered by all.**

**quisquis (quaeque), quidquid or quiequid, whoever, whatecer.**

**quivis, quaevis, quidvis or quodvis, any one, any, any whatever.**

**quō, abl. of qnl, as conj., that, in order that; because.**

**quō, abl. of qnl, as adv., by how much, w. comparatives the; for quo minus see quo minus.**

**quō, adv., 1. interrog., whither, where. 2. relative, whither, where, to, at or into which. 3. indefinite, somewhere, anywhere.**

**quoad, conj., until, as long as.**

**quod, conj., because, that, in that; as for the fact that, as to, as for; the fact that; quod si, but if, if therefore.**

**quominus or quō minus, conj., so that not; freely rendered by from; w. recuso, to.**

**quoniam, conj., since, as, whereas.**

**quoque, conj., also, too, as well.**

**quōqueversus (um), or quō-quaversus (um), adv., in every direction.**

**quot, indeclin., how many.**

**quotannis, adv., yearly, every year.**

**quotidianus, a, um, see cotidianus.**

**quotidē, see cotidic.**

**quotlēs, adv., how often; as often as.**

**quum, conj., see cum.**

## R.

**rād-ix, -iels, m., root (of tree); spn, base, foot (of mountain).**

**rā-dō, ere, -sl, -sum, shave.**

**rāmīs, I, m., branch, bough.**

**rāpiditās, -tāts, f., swiftness.**

**rāpina, ae, f., plundering.**

**rārūs, a, um, scattered, few, in detached groups, in small bodies.**

**rāsus, a, um, from rādo.**

**ratiō, -ōnis, f., calculation, account, list; method, system, plan, way; theory, science; regard, consideration, thought; reason.**

**ratis, ls, f., raft.**

**Raurici, örum, m. plur., the Raurici, a tribe on the Rhine near Switzerland.**

**rebelliō, -ōnis, f., renewal of war.**

**Rebillus, I, m., Cains Caninins Rebillus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.**

**re-cēdō, ere, -cessl, -cessum, withdraw, retire.**

**recēns, -entls, new, recent, late; fresh.**

**re-cēnseō, ēre, -cēnsul, -cēnum, muster, review.**

**receptāculum, I, n., refuge, retreat.**

**receptus, ūs, m., retreat.**

**recessus, ūs, m., retreat, opportunity to retreat.**

**re-clidō, ere, -clidl, -clidum, fall back, recoil, befall.**

**reciperō, āre, āvl, ātum, recover, regain.**

**re-cliplō, ēre, -cēpl, -ceplum, regain, get back; receive, admit; se recipere, (1) recover one's self; recover, (2) retreat, fall back; betake one's self, return.**

**reclitō, āre, āvl, ātum, read out**

**reclīnō, āre, āvl, ātum, make to lean; se reclīnare, to lean; pass. part., reclīnatūs, leaning.**

**rectē, adv., properly, rightly.**

**rēctus**, *a, um, straight.*

**re-enperō**, *āre, āvl, ātum, regāū, recover.*

**recusō**, *āre, āvl, ātum, refuse, object to, decline, spurn, repudiate.*

**rēda**, *ae, f., wagon.*

**redactus**, *a, um, from redigō.*

**red-dō**, *ere, -dīdī, -dītum, give back, return, restore, render, grant, pay.*

**redemptus**, *a, um, from redimō.*

**red-eō**, *-īre, -īl (-īv), -ītum, go back, come back, return; decline; be reduced; depend on, be referred to.*

**red-igō**, *ere, -ēgl, -āetum, reduce, render, make, bring.*

**red-imō**, *ere, -ēml, -ēmptum, buy, purchase, obtain; lease, farm.*

**redintegrō**, *āre, āvl, ātum, renew, restore, revive.*

**reditlō**, *-ōnls, f., return, returning.*

**reditus**, *ūs, m., return, returning.*

**Redones**, *um, m. plur., the Redones, a tribe in the north-west of Gaul.*

**re-dīcēō**, *ere, -dīxīl, -dīctum, lead back, bring back, move back.*

**referō**, *referre, iettulī (or re-tullī), relātum, bring back, carry back, bring; report, announce, tell; refer; pedem referre, retreat, fall back; gratiam ferre, show gratitude, make return.*

**re-ficlō**, *ere, -fēcl, -fectum, repair; refresh, recruit.*

**re-fringō**, *ere, -frēgl, -frāetum, break in, break open, break.*

**re-fuglō**, *ere, -fūgl, -fuglum, retreat, flee back, escape.*

**Rēgnus**, *I, m., Caius Antistius Reginus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

**reglō**, *-ōnls, f., region, district, part, country; direction, line.*

**rēglus**, *a, um, royal.*

**rēgnō**, *āre, āvl, ātum, rule, reign.*

**rēgnūm**, *I, n., royal power, sovereignty, kingdom.*

**regō**, *ere, rēxl, rētum, rule, direct, control, manage.*

**re-gredior**, *I, -gressus sum, retreat.*

**re-Jēlō**, *ere, -Jēcl, -Jectum, throw or hurl back, drive back, throw aside; cast off, reject.*

**re-langnēscō**, *ere, -langul, become weak, lose energy.*

**relātus**, *a, um, from refero.*

**relēgō**, *āre, āvl, ātum, remove, banish.*

**relētus**, *a, um, from relinquō.*

**religlō**, *-ōnls, f., religious rite, observance or scruple; religion, religious matter; superstitious beliefs or fancies.*

**re-linquo**, *ere, -llquī, -lletum, leave, leave behind; abandon, give up; give; allow; in pass., remain.*

**rellquis**, *a, um, remaining, other, left, else, further, future; generally to be rendered by the rest of.*

**re-maneō**, *ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, remain, remain behind, stay.*

**rēm-ex**, *-īglīs, m., rower, oarsman.*

**Rēml**, *ōrum, m. plur., the Remi, a tribe in northern Gaul.*

**remigō**, *āre, āvl, ātum, move back, return.*

**remulgrō**, *āre, āvl, ātum, move back, return.*

**remulseor**, *I, call to mind, remember.*

**re-mittō**, *ere, -mīsl, -missum, send back, hurl back, give back; relax, weaken, give up, lose; part.*

**remissus**, *a, um, as adj., mild, not severe.*

**remollēscō**, *ere, become weak or enervated.*

**re-moveō**, *ēre, -mōvl, -mōtum, remove, send away; withdraw, draw away; part. as adj., remōtus, a, um, distant, remote.*

**remūneror**, *ārt, ātus sum, reward.*

**Rēmus**, *I, m., a Reman, one of the Remi.*

**rēmūs**, L. m., oar.  
**renovō**, āre, āvI, ātum, renew.  
**renūntlō**, āre, āvI, ātum, report,  
 - being back word; declare elected.  
**re-pellō**, ēre, reppull (or re-  
 pull), -pn̄sum, drive back, de-  
 feat; ab spe repellī, to be dis-  
 appointed in a hope.  
**repente**, adv., suddenly.  
**repentītus**, n. um, sudden, hasty;  
 ald. repentinō as adv., suddenly.  
**re-perlō**, ēre, repperl, -per-  
 tum, find, find out, discover;  
 originate.  
**re-petō**, ēre, -petl vI, -petltum,  
 demand, demand back.  
**repl-eō**, ēre, -ēvI, -ētum, amply  
 supply.  
**reportō**, āre, āvI, ātum, carry  
 back.  
**reposcō**, ēre, demand, require.  
**repraesentō**, āre, āvI, ātum, do  
 at once.  
**re pre-hendō**, ēre, -hendl,  
 -hēnsun, blame, censure, find  
 fault with.  
**re-primō**, -ere, -pressl, -pres-  
 sum, check, stop.  
**repudiō**, āre, āvI, ātum, reject.  
**repīgnō**, āre, āvI, ātum, resist,  
 defend one's self; be an obstacle.  
**repulsius**, a, um, from **repello**,  
**re-quirō**, ēre, -quisl vI, -quisl-  
 tum, require, demand; miss.  
**rēs**, sel, f., thing, matter, affair,  
 circumstance, fact, object, interest,  
 situation; the context will gener-  
 ally suggest a more exact render-  
 ing.  
**resar-clō**, Ire, -tum, repair,  
 make good.  
**re-sclndō**, ēre, -seldl, -sclssum,  
 break down, tear down, destroy.  
**re-sclscō**, ēre, -sclvI, -scltum,  
 learn, find out.  
**re-serlbō**, ēre, -scripl, -scrip-  
 tum, transfer, promote, enroll.  
**reservō**, āre, āvI, ātum, keep  
 back, reserve, keep.  
**re-sideō**, ēre, -sēdl, remain.

**re-sldō**, ēre, -sēdl, settle down,  
 become calm.  
**re-sistā**, ēre, -stltl, resist, with-  
 stand, hold one's ground, make  
 resistance, w. dat.; part. resla-  
 tēns, -entls, as adj., firm, stead-  
 fast.  
**re-spīclō**, ēre, -spexl, -spec-  
 tum, look back or behind; con-  
 sider, have regard to.  
**re-spondeō**, ēre, -spondl,  
 -spōnum, answer, take answer,  
 reply.  
**respōnum**, I, n., answer, reply.  
**réspūblīcā**, relpūblīcē, f.,  
 state, public affairs or interests;  
 often written as two words.  
**re-spuō**, ēre, -spul, reject, spurn.  
**re-stlugnō**, ēre, -stlnxl, -stln-  
 tum, extinguish.  
**restlt-nō**, ēre, -nl, -ntum, re-  
 store, replace, rebuild, re-establish,  
 renew.  
**re-thneō**, ēre, -tlndl, -tentum,  
 detain, hold, restrain; keep, main-  
 tain, preserve; keep back.  
**re-trahō**, ēre, -trāxl, -trāc-  
 tum, bring back (by force).  
**re-vellō**, ēre, -velli, -vulsun,  
 tear or wrest away, pull up.  
**rever-tō**, ēre, -tl, -sum (chlefly  
 in perf. tenses), return, come back;  
 turn back.  
**rever-tō**, I, -sus sum (chlefly in  
 pres. tenses), return, come back.  
**re-vlnclō**, Ire, -vlnxl, -vinc-  
 tum, bind fast, fasten, make fast,  
 brace.  
**revocō**, āre, āvI, ātum, recall,  
 call back; call away, entice.  
**rēx**, régis, m., king.  
**rhēnō**, -ōnis, m., reindeer.  
**Rhēnus**, I, m., the Rhine.  
**Rhodanue**, I, m., the Rhone.  
**rlpa**, ae, f., bank.  
**rlvus**, I, m., brook, stream.  
**rōb-ur**, -oris, n., oak.  
**rogō**, āre, āvI, ātum, ask, ask  
 for, request; w. sacramento,  
 enlist.

**Rōma, ne, f., Rome.**

**Rōmāns, n., um, Roman; m. as subst., a Roman.**

**Roscius, I, m., Lucius Roscius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.**

**rōstrum, I, n., beak.**

**rota, ae, f., wheel.**

**rubus, I, m., bramble.**

**Rūfus, I, m., Publius Sulpicius Rufus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.**

**rūmor, -ōris, n., rumor, report.**

**rūpēs, is, f., rock, cliff.**

**rūrsus, adv., again, back again, in turn.**

**Rutēnī, örūni, m. plur., the Rutēni, a tribe in southern Gaul.**

**Rutīns, I, m., Marcus Sempronius Rutilus, one of Caesar's officers.**

### S.

**Sabīnus, I, m., Quintus Titurius Sabīnus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.**

**Sabis, Is, m., the Sabis, now Sambre, a river in north-eastern Gaul.**

**sacer-dōs, -dōtis, m., priest.**

**sacrāmentum, I, n., military oath.**

**sacrificium, I, n., sacrifice.**

**saepe, adv. (saeplus, saepissimē), often.**

**saepenuinerō, adv., often, frequently.**

**saepēs, Is, f., hedge.**

**saeviō, Ire, Ivi, Itum, rage, be violent.**

**sagitta, ae, f., arrow.**

**sagittārius, I, m., archer.**

**sagniūm, I, n., (military) cloak.**

**saltus, ūs, m., defile, glen, pass.**

**sal-ūs, -ūtis, f., safety, welfare, protection.**

**Samarīrīva, ae, f., a town of the Ambiani, in northern Gaul.**

**sanclō, Ire, sānxi, sānetum, make a solemn agreement, ratify, enact; part. sanctus, a, um, as adj., sacred, holy, inviolable.**

**sangu-is, -inis, m., blood.**

**sānitās, -tatis, f., sound mind, sober mind, good sense.**

**sānō, āre, āvī, ātum, remedy makes good.**

**Santones, um, or Santoniōrum, m. plur., the Santones, a tribe on the west coast of Gaul.**

**sānus, n, um, sound, sane; prōsāno, like a discreet man, sensibly, prudently.**

**sup-lō, ere, -Ivi, be wise.**

**sārelna, ae, f., in Caesar always in plur., pack, (personal) baggage.**

**sur-clō, Ire, -sl, -tum, repair, make good.**

**sarmētum, I, n., fagot.**

**satis, adv., enough, sufficiently; tolerably, quite, considerably; often as subst., enoagh, sufficient.**

**satis-faciō, ere, -fēel, -factum, do enough, do one's duty; make amends, satisfy, apologize.**

**satisfactiō, -ōnis, f., apology, excuse.**

**sauclus, a, um, wounded.**

**saxum, I, u., stone, rock.**

**scāla, ae, f., ladder.**

**Scaldis, Is, m., the Scaldis, now Scheldt, a river in north-eastern Gaul.**

**scapha, ae, f., skiff, small boat.**

**scelerātus, a, um, wicked, villainous.**

**scel-ūs, -eris, n., crime.**

**scelerenter, adv. (compar. sceleratus), skilfully, cleverly.**

**scientia, ae, f., knowledge, acquaintance.**

**scindō, ere, scidl, scissum, tear down, break down.**

**scīlō, Ire, Ivi, Itum, know.**

**scorpiō, -ōnis, m., scorpion, a machine for hurling missiles.**

**scribō, ere, scripsi, scriptum, write, state.**

**scrobis, Is, m., ditch, trench.**

**scūtum, I, n., shield.**

**scēlus, see secus.**

**sec-ō, árc, -ul, -tum, cut, reap.**

**sécrétō, adv., privately.**

**sectiō, -ōnis, f., booty.**

**sector, árl, átus sum, pursue, follow after.**

**sectūra, ae, f., mine.**

**secunduni, prep. w. acc., along, according to; besides; next to.**

**secundus, a, um, second; favorable, successful, prosperous;**

**secundo fluviane, down stream.**

**secūris, is, f., axe, borne by dictors as a symbol of authority.**

**secus, adv. (compar. sēclus), otherwise; nihil secus, none the less.**

**secūtus, a, um, from sequor.**

**sed, conj., but.**

**sēdecim, sixteen.**

**sēdēs, is, f., seat, abode, settlement.**

**sēditiō, -ōnis, :., insurrection, rising, revolt.**

**sēditiōsus, a, um, seditious.**

**Sednilius, I, m., a leader of the Lemovices.**

**Sedūnl, órum, m. plur., the Seduni, a tribe in the Alps, between the province and Italy.**

**Sedusli, órum, m. plur., the Sedusti, a German tribe.**

**seg-es, -etis, f., crop; field of grain, corn field.**

**Sēgnī, órum, m. plur., the Segni, a German tribe in north-eastern Gaul.**

**Segontiācl, órum, m. plur., the Segontiaci, a tribe in Britain.**

**Segov-ax, -actis, m., a king ruling in Kent.**

**Segusiāvl, órum, m. plur., the Segusiavi, a tribe in central Gaul.**

**semel, adv., once; semel atque iterum, more than once.**

**sémentis, is, f., sowing of grain.**

**sēlita, ae, f., path, by-path.**

**semper, adv., always.**

**Semproniūs, I, m., Marcus Sempronius Rutilus, one of Caesar's officers.**

**senātor, -tōris, m., senator.**

**senātns, ūs, m., senate.**

**sen-ex, -is, m., old man.**

**sēnl, ae, a, six each, six.**

**Senones, uin, m. plur., the Senones, a tribe in central Gaul on the Seline.**

**sententia, ae, f., opinion, view, idea; scheme, purpose; sentence, judgment.**

**sentiō, Ire, sēnsi, sēnsunt, feel, be aware, know, perceive, learn; think, have an idea, hold an opinion.**

**sentis, is, m., thorn, briar.**

**sēparātlm, adv., separately, by themselves, privately.**

**sēparō, áre, ávl, átum, separate; part. as adj., sēparātns, a, um, separate.**

**septeni, seven.**

**septeatrlō, -ōnis, m. (chiefly in plur.), the seven stars of the constellation of the Great Bear; hence the north.**

**septimus, a, um, seventh.**

**septingentI, ae, a, seven hundred.**

**septuāgintā, seventy.**

**sepultūra, ae, f., burial.**

**Sēquana, ae, f., the Sequana, now Seine, a river in northern Gaul.**

**Sēquanus, a, um, Sequanian, of the Sequani; m. as subst., a Sequanian, in plur., the Sequani, a tribe in Gaul north of the province.**

**sequor, I, secūtus sum, follow, pursue; accompany, attend, attach one's self to; result, ensue.**

**sermō, -ōnis, m., conversation, discourse, discussion.**

**rō, ere, sēvī, saturn, sow.**

**sérō, adv., too late.**

**Sertōrlns, I, m., Quintus Sertorius, a Roman general, who in a time of civil war, held Spain from 80 to 72 B.C.**

**servilis, e, of slaves, slavish.**

**serviō, Ire, Ivl, Ituin, be a slave, follow blindly, devote one's self to.**

**servitūs, -tūtis, f., slavery, bondage, subjection.**

**Servlus, I, m., a Roman praenomen.**

**servō, āre, āvī, ātum, krep. hold, maintain; watch, save, preserve.**

**servus, I, m., slave.**

**sēscēnti, ae, u, six hundred.**

**sēsē, for se, from sui.**

**sēsqūpedāllis, e, a foot and a half.**

**seu, see sive.**

**sevēritās, -tātis, f., strictness, severity, rigor.**

**sēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum, call aside.**

**sēvum, I, n., tallow.**

**sex, six.**

**sexāgintā, sixty.**

**sexeṇti, ae, u, see sēscēnti.**

**Sextius, I, m., 1. Titus Sextius, one of Caesar's lieutenants; 2. Publius Sextius Baculus, a centurion in Caesar's army.**

**si, conj., if, even if; whether, to see whether.**

**Sibuzātes, um, m. plur., the Sibuzates, a tribe in Aquitania.**

**sic, adv., thus, in this way; so, in such a way; as follows.**

**siccitās, -tātis, f., drying up, dryness, drought.**

**sieubl, conj., if anywhere.**

**sicut, conj., just as, just like.**

**sicuti, conj., just as, just as if.**

**sld-us, -eris, n., star, constellation, heavenly body.**

**signifer, erl, m., standard-bearer.**

**significatiō, -ōnls, f., signal, announcement, intimation.**

**significō, āre, āvī, ātum, indicate, announce, make known, intimate, show.**

**signum, I, n., signal; standard; signa convertere, to wheel about; signa ferre or inferre, to advance.**

**Silānus, I, m., Marcus Silanus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.**

**silēntium, I, n., silence; abl. silēntio as adv., in silence, silently.**

**Silius, I, m., Titus Silius, one of Caesar's officers.**

**silvn, ae, f., wood, forest.**

**silvestris, e, wooded.**

**similis, e, like, similar, w dat. or gen.**

**similitū-dō, -dīns, f., resemblance, similarity.**

**simul, adv., at the same time; repeated, both..and; simul atque or sometimes simul alone, as soon as.**

**simulārūm, I, n., image, figure.**

**simulatiō, -ōnls, f., pretence, show, deceit, insincerity.**

**simulō, āre, āvī, ātum, pretend, feign.**

**simultās, -tātis, f., rivalry, feud.**

**sīn, conj., but if.**

**sincērē, adv., honestly, truthfully.**

**sine, prep. w. abl., without.**

**singillātūm, adv., singly, individually, one by one.**

**singulārls, e, single, one by one, by one's self; extraordinary, unparalleled, admirable, distinguished.**

**singull, ae, a, one each, one at a time, one by one, singly, several, one.**

**sinister, tra, trum, left; fem. sinistra as subst., left hand (sc. manus).**

**sinistrōrsus, adv., to the left.**

**sinō, ere, sivi, situm, allow, permit.**

**siquidem, conj., since.**

**situs, ūs, m., position, situation.**

**sive or seu, conj., or if; repeated, whether...or, either...or.**

**socer, erl, m., father-in-law.**

**societās, -tātis, f., alliance.**

**socius, I, m., ally.**

**sōl, sōlls, m., sun; ortens sol, the east; occidens sol, the west.**

**sōlāclūm, I, n., consolation.**

**soldurius, I, m., an Aquitanian word for a retainer sworn to die with his leader.**

**soleō, ēre, solitus sum, be wont;** often best rendered by *usually*.  
**solicitō, āre, see sollicito.**  
**sólitū-dō, -dīnis, f., solitude, wilderness, desert.**  
**sollicita, ae, f., skill, shrewdness, ability.**  
**sollicitō, āre, āvl, ātum, stir up, instigate, urge, tempt, try to bribe, try to win over.**  
**sollicitū-dō, -dīnis, f., anxiety.**  
**soium, I, n., soil, ground; bottom.**  
**sólum, adv., only, alone.**  
**sólus, a, um, alone, only.**  
**solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum, loose; with or without naves, weigh anchor, set sail.**  
**sonitus, ūs, m., sound, noise.**  
**Sontiates, um, m. plur., the Sontiates, a tribe of Aquitania.**  
**sonus, I, m., sound.**  
**soror, -ōris, f., sister.**  
**sors, sortis, f., lot.**  
**spatium, I, n., space, extent; distance, interval; pause, time.**  
**speciēs, ēl, f., appearance, form; show, resemblance.**  
**spectō, āre, āvl, ātum, look, face, slope, lie; look at, consider, regard.**  
**speculator, -tōris, m., spy.**  
**speculatōrius, a, um, of a spy, for spying, reconnoitring.**  
**specular, ārl, ātus sum, spy, act as spy.**  
**spērō, āre, āvl, ātum, hope; hope for; expect.**  
**spēs, el, f., hope; in spēm venire, begin to have hope, entertain a hope.**  
**spiritus, ūs, m., pride, airs.**  
**spoliō, āre, āvl, ātum, strip, deprive, despoil.**  
**spontis (gen.), sponte (abl.), defective noun f.; in abl., of one's own accord, by one's self.**  
**stabilō, Ire, Ivl, Itum, make steady or firm.**  
**stabilitās, -tatis, f., steadiness, firmness.**

**statim, adv., at once.**  
**statiō, -ōnis, f., guard, sentry, outpost, picket.**  
**statuō, ere, -ul, -ūtum, set up, fix; decide, determine, resolve; take measures, punish.**  
**statūra, ae, f., stature, size.**  
**status, ūs, m., position, condition, state.**  
**stīnulus, I, m., goad, spur, prick.**  
**stīpendiārius, a, um, tributary; m. as subst., a tributary, vassal.**  
**stīpendium, I, n., tribute.**  
**stip-ēs, -itis, m., stake, post.**  
**stirps, stirpis, f., stock, race.**  
**stō, āre, steti, statum, stand; abide by.**  
**strāmentum, I, n., straw, thatch; covering, saddle.**  
**streplūs, ūs, m., noise, din, clatter, confusion.**  
**strūctūra, ae, f., gallery, vine.**  
**studeō, ēre, ul, strive, be eager for, be bent upon; be devoted to, pay attention to.**  
**studīosē, adv., eagerly, zealously.**  
**studūm, I, n., eagerness, zeal, devotion, energy, enthusiasm; pursuit.**  
**stuititia, ae, f., folly.**  
**sub, prep. (1) w. abl., under, beneath; at the foot of, close by, near to; (2) w. acc., under, close to; of time, towards, just before.**  
**subāctus, a, um, from subigo.**  
**subdoīns, a, um, crafty, cunning, deceitful.**  
**sub-dūcō, ere, -dūxi, -ductum, draw off, lead off; draw up, haul up, beach.**  
**subductiō, -ōnis, f., hauling on shore, beaching.**  
**sub-eō, -Ire, -II (-Ivl), -itum, come up, approach; enter; undergo, submit to.**  
**sub-fodiō, ere, -fōgl, -fossūm, stab from beneath or in the belly.**  
**sub-igo, ere, -ēgl, -actum, force, compel, constrain.**

**sublitō**, adv., suddenly.  
**sublitus**, a, um, sudden, hasty.  
**sub-jicō**, ere, -jēcl, -jectum,  
throw from beneath; place below;  
bring under, subject, expose, force  
to submit; in pass., lie near, be  
subject.  
**sublātus**, a, um, from tollo.  
**sublevō**, āre, āvl, ātum, sup-  
port, raise up; assist, relieve, help.  
**subliea**, ae, f., pile, stake.  
**sub-luō**, ere, -lūtum, wash.  
**subministrō**, āre, āvl, ātum,  
supply, furnish.  
**sub-mittō**, ere, -mīsl, -missum,  
send (to aid), sen., to one's aid  
**sub-moveō**, ēre, -mōvl, -mō-  
tum, remove, drive off, dislodge.  
**sub-ruō**, ere, -rul, -rutm, dig  
under, dig out, undermine.  
**sub-sequor**, I, -secūtus sum,  
follow (closely), follow up, suc-  
ceed.  
**subsidium**, I, n., aid, assistance;  
support; reserves, reinforcement.  
**sub-sldō**, ere, -sēdl, -sessum,  
remain.  
**sub-sistō**, ere, -stlti, halt, make  
a stand; hold.  
**sub-sun**, -esse, -ful, be near, be  
close at hand.  
**sub-trahō**, ere, -trāxl, -trāc-  
tum, remove, take away, with-  
draw.  
**subvectiō**, -ōnis, f., transporta-  
tion, conveyance.  
**sub-vehō**, ere, -ve tl, -vectum,  
bring up.  
**sub-veniō**, Ire, -vēnl, -ventum,  
come to the support of, come to  
help, aid.  
**suc-cēdō**, ere, -cessl, -cessum,  
succeed, take the place of, relieve,  
w. dat.; come close to; come up,  
advance; be successful.  
**suc-cendō**, ere, -cndl, -cēn-  
sum, set on fire.  
**successus**, ūs, m., app. oach, ad-  
vance.  
**suc-clidō**, ere, -cldl, -clsum, cut  
down.

**suc-cumbō**, ere, -cubui, -cubi-  
tam, give way, succumb, give up  
under.  
**suc-currō**, ere, -currl, -cur-  
sum, run to aid, run up.  
**sndis**, ls, f., stake.  
**sñdor**, -ōris, m., sweat; toil, exer-  
tion.  
**Suēbl**, ḍrūm, m. plur., the Suebi,  
a German tribe on the Rhine.  
**Suesslōnes**, um, m. plur., the Sues-  
siones, a tribe in northern Gaul.  
**suf-fielō**, cre, -fēcl, -fectum, be  
sufficient, hold out.  
**suffrāglum**, I, n., vote.  
**Sugambri**, ḍrūm, m. plur., the  
Sugambri, a German tribe on the  
Rhine.  
**suggestus**, ūs, m., platform, tri-  
bune.  
**sul**, sibi, sē or sēsē, reflex. pron.,  
himself, itself, themselves; him, it,  
them; inter se (to, with, from,  
etc.) one another; per sc, of or  
by one's self, as far as one is con-  
cerned.  
**Sulla**, ae, m., a great Roman gen-  
eral and political leader, living  
from 138 to 78 B.C.  
**Sulpicius**, I, m., Publius Sulpicius  
Rufus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.  
**sum**, esse, ful, be, exist; w. gen.,  
belong to, be a part or mark of.  
**summa**, ae, f., total, sum; chief  
part, main body; chief control,  
command, management, control.  
**summus**, a, um, superlative of  
**superus**, highest, greatest, chief,  
supreme, very great, very high,  
extreme, most important, perfect,  
entire.  
**sūmō**, ere, sūmpsl, sūmptum,  
take, assume; inflict; spend.  
**sūmptuōsus**, a, um, costly.  
**sūmptus**, ūs, m., expense.  
**superbē**, adv., haughtily, arro-  
gantly, arbitrarily.  
**superior**, lus, comparative of **su-**  
**perus**, higher, upper; former,  
previous; superior, more success-  
ful.

**superō, āre, āvī, ātūm, conquer,** defeat, overcome, be victorious, prevail; be superior, surpass, overtop; survive.

**super-sedeō, ēre, -sēdi, -ses-** sum, abstain, restrain.

**super-sum, -esse, -ful, remain,** survive.

**suppet-ō, ere, -lvi, -lrum, be at** hand, be at one's service; hold out.

**supplémentum, I, n., reinforce-** ments.

**suppl-ex, -lcls, suppliant.**

**supplicātiō, -ōnls, f., thanksgiv-** ing.

**suppliciter, adv., as suppliants.**

**supplicium, I, n., punishment,** penalty.

**supportō, āre, āvī, ātūm, bring** up.

**suprā, adv. or prep. w. acc., above,** before.

**sus-cipiō, ere, -cēpl, -ceptum,** undertake, take on one's self.

**su-spiciō, ere, -spexl, -spec-** tuin, suspect; in pass., be an ob-ject of suspicion.

**suspicio, -ōnls, f., suspicion.**

**suspicor, ārl, ātūs sum, suspect.**

**sustentō, āre, āvī, ātūm, hold** out, maintain one's self, sustain, bear up against.

**sus-tineō, ēre, -tinul, -tentum,** sustain, withstand, hold out, bear; check; hold up, rein in, endure, undertake.

**sustui, from tollo.**

**suus, a, um, his, her, its, iheir;** his own, etc.; m. plur. as subst., sul, örüm, his (their) friends, com-rades, men, countrymen; n. plur. as subst., sua, örüm, his (their) possessions, property.

**taceō, ēre, ul, itum, be silent, be** silent about; part. as adj., tacit-

**talus, a, um, silent.**

**talea, ae, f., bar, rod.**

**tālis, e, such, of such a sort.**

**tam, adv., so.**

**tamen, adv., still, however, yet; at** least.

**Tamesis, is, m., the Thames.**

**tumetsl, conj., although.**

**tandem, adv., at least; in ques-** tions, pray.

**tangō, ere, tetlgl, tāctum, touch,** border on.

**tantopere, adv., so much, so earn-** estly.

**tantulus, a, um, so trifling, so** small.

**tantum, adv., only.**

**tantummodo, adv., only, merely.**

**tantundem, adv., just so far, just** as much.

**tantus, a, um, so great, so much,** such; as great, as much; n. tan-tum as adv., so much, so far; tanti, locative, of such value.

**Tarbelli, örüm, m. plur., the Tar-belli, a tribe in Aquitania.**

**tardē, adv., slowly.**

**tardō, āre, āvī, ātūm, retard,** check, delay, hinder.

**tardus, a, um, slow, inactive, dis-**pirited.

**Tarusātes, um, m. plur., the** Tarusātes, a tribe of Aquitania.

**Tasgetlus, I, m., a man of high** rank among the Carnutes.

**taurus, I, m., bull.**

**Taximagulus, I, m., a king ruling** in Kent.

**taxus, I, m., yew.**

**Tectosages, um, m. plur., the** Tectosages, a branch of the Volcae, a Gallic tribe in the province, which had penetrated into Ger-many.

**tēctum, I, n., roof, house.**

**tēctus, a, um, from tego.**

**tegmentum, I, n., covering.**

## T.

**T.,** an abbreviation for **Titus.**

**tabernāculum, I, n., tent.**

**tabula, ae, f., list, document.**

**tabulātum, I, n., story.**

**tegō, ere, tēxl, tēctum, cover, hide, protect.**

**tēlum, I., weapon, missile, dart.**

**temerārius, a, um, reckless, rash.**

**temerē, adv., rashly, hastily; without cause, without good reason.**

**temeritās, -tātis, f., recklessness, rashness, thoughtlessness.**

**tēmō, -ōnis, m., pole (of chariot).**

**temperantia, ae, f., moderation.**

**temperō, āre, āvl, ātum, control, restrain, refrain; part. as adj., temperatus, a, um, temperate, mild.**

**tempestās, -tātis, f., weather; storm.**

**temptō or tentō, āre, āvl, ātum, try; try to force, make an attempt on; tempt.**

**temp-us, -ōris, n., time, season; occasion, crisis, emergency; reliquum tempus, the future.**

**Teneterī, ūrum, m. plur., the Teneteri, a German tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.**

**tendō, ere, tetendī, tēnsum or tentum, stretch, stretch out; pitch a tent, encamp.**

**tenebrae, ārum, f. plur., darkness.**

**teneō, ere, ul, tentum, hold, have, keep, maintain; occupy, comprise; restrain, bind, detain.**

**tener, era, erum, tender, young.**

**tentō, see temptō.**

**tenuis, e, slight, ifling, insignificant; feeble, delicate.**

**tenuitās, -tātis, f., feebleness, poverty.**

**tenuiter, adv., thinly, thin.**

**ter, adv., three times.**

**ter-es, -etis, round, rounded.**

**tergum, I., n., back, rear; tergum vertere, to flee, take to flight.**

**ternī, ae, a, three at a time, three each, three.**

**terra, ae, f., earth, land; ground; country; in terris, in the world.**

**Terrasidius, I., m., Titus Terrasidius, an officer with Caesar.**

**terrēnus, a, um, of earth.**

**terreō, ēre, ul, itum, frighten, alarm, terrify.**

**territō, āre, frighten, terrify.**

**terror, ūris, m., alarm, panic, terror.**

**tertius, a, um, third.**

**testāmentum, I., n., will.**

**testimōnium, I., n., proof, evidence, testimony.**

**testis, is, m., witness.**

**testū-dō, -dīnis, f., testudo, shelter of overlapping shields; shelter, covered gallery.**

**Teutonātus, I., m., king of the Nitiobrogæ.**

**Teutoni, ūrum, or Teutones, um, the Teutones, a German tribe that invaded Gaul about 110 B.C.**

**tignum, I., n., beam.**

**Tigurīnus, a, um, Tigurine; m. plur. as subst., Tigurīnī, ūrum, the Tigurini, one of the four divisions or cantons of the Helvetii.**

**timēō, ere, ul, fear, feel or have fear, be anxious, be afraid.**

**timidē, adv., timidly; non timidē, fearlessly.**

**timidus, a, um, full of fear, frightened, cowardly.**

**timor, -ōris, m., fear, alarm, dread, panic, cowardice.**

**Titūrius, I., m., Quintus Titurius Sabinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.**

**Titus, I., m., Titus, a Roman praenomen.**

**tolerō, āre, āvl, ātum, bear, endure, hold out, sustain.**

**tollō, ere, sustullī, sublātum, raise; take away, remove, destroy. do away with, put an end to; In pass., be elated.**

**Tolōsa, ae, f., Toulouse, a city in the southern part of the province.**

**Tolōsates, um, m. plur., the people of Toulouse.**

**tormentum, I., n., torture; engine (for throwing missiles).**

**torrēō, ēre, ul, tostum, scorch.**

**tot**, indeclinable, *so many*.  
**totidem**, indeclinable, *as many, the same number*.  
**tōtus**, a, um, *whole, entire, all; often rendered freely by entirely, altogether*.  
**trabs**, *trabla*, f., *beam*.  
**trā-dō**, ere, -dīdī, -dītūm, *hand over, give up, surrender; pass on; hand down; entrust, recommend; teach, impart*.  
**trā-dūcō**, ere, -dūxī, -ductūm, *lead across, bring over, lead; win over; transfer, promote*.  
**trāgula**, ae, f., *javelin, lance*.  
**trahō**, ere, *trāxī*, *trāctūm*, *drag along, draw*.  
**trājectus**, ūs, m., *crossing, passage*.  
**trā-jēclō**, ere, -jēclī, -jectūm, *pierce, strike*.  
**trānō**, āre, āvī, ātūm, *swim across*.  
**tranquillitās**, -tātlī, f., *stillness, calm*.  
**trāns**, prep. w. acc., *across, over, beyond, on the other side of*.  
**Trānsalpinus**, a, um, *Transalpine, beyond the Alps (from Rome)*.  
**trān-scendō**, ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *climb over; cross over, board*.  
**trānsdūcō**, see *trādūcō*.  
**trāns-eō**, -ire, -īlī (-īvī), -itūm, *cross, cross over, pass through, go or come over; migrate; pass, go by*.  
**trāns-ferō**, -ferre, -tullī, -lātūm, *bring over, transfer*.  
**trāns-fligō**, ere, -flīxī, -flīxūm, *pierce*.  
**trāns-fodlō**, ere, -fōdlī, -fōsūm, *pierce through*.  
**trāns-gredlō**, I., -gressus sum, *step over or across; cross*.  
**trānsitus**, ūs, m., *crossing, passage*.  
**trānsjēclō**, see *trajēcio*.  
**trānsmarInus**, a, um, *beyond the sea, foreign*.

**trānsmissus**, ūs, m., *passage across*.  
**trāns-mittō**, ere, -mīslī, -misum, *transport, take across*.  
**trānsportō**, āre, āvī, ātūm, *carry, lead, bring or take over*.  
**Trānsrhēnānus**, a, um, *living across the Rhine (from Gaul); m. plur. as subst., those across the Rhine*.  
**trānstrūm**, I., n., *cross-beam, thwart*.  
**trānversus**, a, um, *cross, transverse, oblique*.  
**Trebīlus**, I., m., *Marcus Trebīus Gallus*, one of Caesar's officers.  
**Trebōnīus**, I., m., *Caius Trebonius*, 1. one of Caesar's lieutenants; 2. a Roman knight.  
**trecentī**, ae, a, *three hundred*.  
**treplīdō**, āre, āvī, ātūm, *hurry, be in a hurry, be in confusion, be alarmed*.  
**trēs**, tria, *three*.  
**Trēverī**, ūrum, m. plur., *the Treveri*, a tribe in north-eastern Gaul, on the Rhine.  
**Triboces**, um, or **Triboci**, ūrum, *the Triboci*, a German tribe on the Rhine.  
**tribūnus**, I., m., *tribune*, (an officer in the Roman army).  
**trib-uō**, ere, -ulī, -ūtūm, *grant, give, bestow, have regard, give credit, do for the sake of*.  
**tribūtūm**, I., n., *tribute, tax*.  
**triduum**, I., n., *space of three days, three days*.  
**trilennī**, I., n., *three years*.  
**trigintā**, *thirty*.  
**trīnlī**, ae, a, *three at a time, three, triple*.  
**Trinobantes**, um, *the Trinobantes*, a tribe in Britain.  
**tripertītō**, adv., *in three divisions*.  
**tripl-ex**, -icīs, *triple, threefold*.  
**triquetrus**, a, um, *triangular*.  
**tristis**, e, *sad, dejected*.  
**tristitia**, ae, f., *sadness, dejection*.

**truncus**, I, m., *trunk*.  
**tū**, *tul*, *thou, you*.  
**tuba**, ae, f., *trumpet*.  
**tueor**, ērl, tūtus (or *tultus*) sum, *protect, guard, keep safe, maintain*.  
**Tullingl**, òrum, m. plur., *the Tullingi*, a German tribe near the Helvetians.  
**Tullius**, I, m.. *Quintus Tullius* Cicero, one of Caesar's lieutenants.  
**Tullus**, I, m., *Caius Volcatius Tullus*, one of Caesar's officers.  
**tum**, adv., *then, at that time; cum...tum, both...and, not only...but also*.  
**tumultuor**, ārl, ātus sum, *make an uproar or noise*.  
**tumultuōsē**, adv., *noisily, with much disorder*.  
**tumultus**, ūs, m., *noise, uproar, commotion, disorder; uprising, rebellion*.  
**tumulus**, I, m., *mound, rising ground*.  
**tunc**, adv., *then, at that juncture*.  
**turma**, ae, f., *squadron*.  
**Turoves**, um, or **Turonl**, òrum, m. plur., *the Turones*, a tribe in north-western Gaul.  
**turpis**, e, *disgraceful, base*.  
**turpiter**, adv., *disgracefully, basely, shamefully*.  
**turpitū-dō**, -dinis, f., *disgrace*.  
**turris**, is, f., *tower*.  
**tūtus**, a, um, *safe, secure*; abl. as adv., *tūtō* (compar. *tūtius*), *safely, in or with safety*.  
**tuus**, a, um, *thy, your*.

U.

**ubi**, adv., *where; when; ubi primum, as soon as*.  
**ubiqueumque**, adv., *wherever*.  
**Ubil**, òrum, m. plur., *the Ubii*, a tribe in Germany on the Rhine.  
**ubique**, adv., *anywhere*.

**ulclscor**, I, *nitus sum, punish, avenge*.  
**ūlius**, a, um, *any; as subst., any one*.  
**ulterior**, ius, *comparative, further, more remote*.  
**ultimus**, a, um, *superlative, farthest, most remote, last*.  
**ultrā**, prep. w. acc., *beyond*.  
**ultrō**, adv., *beyond; besides, even; of one's own accord, voluntarily, without provocation; ultro cītroque, to and fro, hither and thither*.  
**ultus**, a, um, from *ulclscor*.  
**ululātus**, ūs, m., *howling, yell*.  
**umerus**, I, m., *shoulder*.  
**unquam**, adv., *ever*.  
**ünā**, adv., *at the same time, together, along, jointly*.  
**unde**, adv., *whence, from which or whom*.  
**ündecim**, eleven.  
**ündecimus**, a, um, *eleventh*.  
**undique**, adv., *from all sides, on all sides*.  
**üniversus**, a, um, *all, the whole, entire, in a body; as subst., all together, the whole body*.  
**ünquam**, adv., *ever*.  
**ünus**, a, um, *one, a single; alone, only; one and the same; ad unum, to a man*.  
**urbānus**, a, um, *of or in the city (i.e. at Rome)*.  
**urbs**, urbis, f., *city*.  
**urgeō**, ēre, ursl, *press hard*.  
**urus**, I, m., *bison, wild ox*.  
**Usipetes**, um, m. plur., *the Usipetes*, a German tribe near the mouth of the Rhine.  
**úsitatus**, a, um, *customary, common, familiar*.  
**usque**, adv., *quite up to, until, even, to such a degree*.  
**úsus**, a, um, from *utor*.

**ūsus, ūs,** m., *experience, use, employment, practice, management, enjoyment; advantage, service; need, necessity;* **ex ūsu,** *of advantage, advantageous;* **usu ve-nire,** *to happen, turn out.*  
**ut,** or **uti,** *that, in order that, generally best rendered by infin. w. to; w. verbs of fearing, that not; even if; as; when; seeing that, since; how.*  
**uter,** *utra, utrum, which (of two).*  
**uterque, utraque, utrumque,** *each (of two), both; m. plur., both sides.*  
**uti,** *see ut.*  
**ūtīlis, e,** *useful, of use, serviceable.*  
**ūtīltās, -tātis,** f., *advantage.*  
**ūtor,** I., *ūsus sum, use, employ, make use of; adopt, show, display, practise, exercise, maintain, avail one's self of, enjoy, have, w. abl.*  
**utrimque,** adv., *on both sides.*  
**utrum,** conj., *whether.*  
**uxor, -ōris,** f., *wife.*

## V.

**Vacalus,** I., m., *a branch of the Rhine near its mouth.*  
**vacātiō, -ōnis,** f., *freedom, exemption.*  
**vaeō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *be unoccupied, lie waste.*  
**vacuus,** a, um, *empty.*  
**vadum,** I., n., *ford; shoal, shallow.*  
**vāgīna, ae,** f., *scabbard.*  
**vagor, ārl, ātus suni,** *wander, roam about.*  
**valeō, ēre, ul,** *be strong, be powerful, have weight or influence; avail, be effective.*  
**Valerius,** I., m., *Valerius, 1. Caius Valerius Flaccus, governor of Gaul in 83 B.C.; 2. Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, a Roman lieutenant, slain in Aquitania about 78 B.C.; 3. Caius Valerius Caburus, with his two sons Proculus and Donnotaurus, Gauls who became Roman citizens.*

**Valetiacus,** I., m., *an Aeduan of rank.*  
**valētū-dō, -dīnis,** f., *health.*  
**vallēs or vallis, is,** f., *valley.*  
**vällum,** I., n., *rampart, wall.*  
**vällus,** I., m., *stake.*  
**Vangloes,** um, m. plur., *the Vangloes, a German tribe on the Rhine.*  
**varietās, -tātis,** f., *variety, diversity.*  
**varius,** a, um, *various, diverse, different.*  
**vāstō, āre, āvī, ātum,** *lay waste, ravage.*  
**vāstus,** a, um, *vast, boundless, immense.*  
**vātīcnātiō, -ōnis,** f., *divination, prophecy.*  
**vectīg-al,** -ālis, n., *tax, tribute; revenue.*  
**vectīgālls,** e, *tributary.*  
**vectōrius,** a, um, *for carrying; vectorium navigium, a transport-ship.*  
**vehēmenter,** adv., *severely, strongly, vigorously, desperately, exceedingly.*  
**vehō, ere, vexī, vectum,** *carry, bring.*  
**vel,** 1. conj., *or;* 2. adv., *either ... or; 2. adv., even.*  
**Velānius,** I., m., *Quintus Velanius, one of Caesar's officers.*  
**Vellocasses,** um, or *Vellocassi, ōrum,* m. plur., *the Vellocasses, a tribe in northern Gaul, near the mouth of the Seine.*  
**Vellaunodūnum,** I., n., *a town of the Senones, in central Gaul.*  
**Vellāvi,** ūrum, m. plur., *the Vellavi, a tribe in southern Gaul, near the province.*  
**vēlōcītās, -tātis,** f., *speed, swiftness.*  
**vēlōcīter,** adv., *(vēlōclus, vēlōcissimē), swiftly, quickly.*  
**vēlōx, -ōcis,** *swift, active.*  
**vēlum,** I., n., *sail.*  
**velut,** adv., *just as.*

**vénatiō, -ōnis, f., hunting, hunt,**  
*the chase.*

**vénātor, -tōris, m., hunter, hunts-**  
*man.*

**vén-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, sell.**

**Venelli, órum, m. plur., the Ve-**  
*nelli, a tribe in the extreme north-*  
*west of Gaul.*

**Venetī, órum, m. plur., the Veneti,**  
*a tribe in the extreme north-west*  
*of Gaul.*

**Venetia, ae, f., the country of the**  
*Veneti.*

**Venetieus, n., um, of or with the**  
*Veneti.*

**venia, ae, f., pardon, favor.**

**veniō, ire, vénī, ventum, come.**

**ventitō, āre, āvī, átum, come**  
*often, resort, visit.*

**ventus, I, m., wind.**

**vér, vérīs, n., spring.**

**Veragri, órum, m. plur., the**  
*Veragri, a tribe in the Alps, be-*  
*tween the province and Italy.*

**Verbigenus, I, m., one of the four**  
*cantons or divisions of the Hel-*  
*vetii.*

**verbum, I, n., word; verba**  
*facere, speak.*

**Vercassivellaunus, I, m., a lead-**  
*ing man among the Arvernī.*

**Vericingetor-Ix. -Igis, m., a**  
*leader of the Arvernī.*

**vereor, ērl, itus sum, fear, be**  
*afraid.*

**vergō, ere, incline, lie, face.**

**vergobretus, I, m., the title of the**  
*chief magistrate among the Aedui.*

**vérslūnīs, e, probable, likely.**

**veritus, a, um, from vereor.**

**vérō, indeed, in fact; but; often**  
*untranslated.*

**versō, āre, āvī, átum, turn about,**  
*change; in pass. as dep., engage in,*  
*be occupied or busied, remain, be.*

**versus, ūs, m., line, verse.**

**versus, adv., and prep. w. aec. pre-**  
*ceding, towards.*

**Vertieō, ônis, m., a Nervian.**

**ver-tō, ere, -tl, -sum, turn;**  
*terga vertere, to flee, take to*  
*flight.*

**Verneloetius, I, m., an Helvetian**  
*of rank.*

**vérus, n, um, true; right, fair.**

**verütum, I, n., dart, javelin.**

**Vesontiō, -ōnis, f., a town of the**  
*Sequani in eastern Gaul.*

**vesper, erl, m., evening.**

**vester, tra, trum, your, yours.**

**vestigium, I, n., footprint, track;**  
*spot; moment.*

**vestiō, ire, ivi, itum, clothe,**  
*cover.*

**vestis, is, f., clothing, garments.**

**vestitus, ūs, m., clothing, dress.**

**veterāus, n, um, veteran.**

**vet-ō, āre, -ui, -itum, forbid,**  
*order not.*

**vet-us, -eris, old, former, long-**  
*standing, veteran.*

**vexillum, I, n., flag.**

**vexō, āre, āvī, átum, harass, an-**  
*noy; ravage, overrun.*

**vía, ae, f., way, road, street, route,**  
*journey.*

**vlātor, -tōris, m., traveller.**

**vicēnl, ne, n, twenty each, twenty.**

**vicēsimus, a, um, twentieth.**

**vicēlēs, adv., twenty times.**

**vicēnitās, -tatis, f., neighbor-**  
*hood; us collective, the neighbors.*

**vicēs, gen. (nom. not found), f.,**  
*change; in vicēm, in turn.*

**vicēma, ae, f., victim.**

**victor, -tōris, m., victor; as adj.,**  
*victorious, triumphant.*

**victōrī, ae, f., victory, success.**

**victus, a, um, from vineo.**

**victus, ūs, m., living, mode of liv-**  
*ing, life; food.*

**vicēus, I, m., village.**

**videō, ēre, vidi, visum, see; in**  
*pass., be seen, seem, appear, seem*  
*good or best.*

**Vienna, ae, f., a town of the Allo-**  
*broges, on the Rhone.*

**vigilla, ae, f., watch, watching** (a watch was one-fourth of the night time).

**viginti, twenty.**

**vilmen, -minis, n., twig, willow, osier, wickerwork.**

**vinclō, ire, vlnxi, vincitum, bind.**

**vinculum, I., a shortened form of vinculum.**

**vincō, ere, vici, victum, conquer, defeat; overcome, exceed; gain a victory, prevail, carry one's point.**

**vineulum, I., n., chain; often in piur., prison.**

**vindicō, are, avl, átum, claim, assert, defend; In libertatem vindicare, assert the liberty of; vindicare in w. acc., punish.**

**vinea, ae, f., vine-arbor; covered shed, movable shed, vinea.**

**vinum, I., n., wine.**

**violō, are, avl, átum, do violence to, harm, injure.**

**vir, viri, m., man; husband.**

**virēs, iun, from vis.**

**vir-gō, -ginis, f., maiden.**

**virgultum, I., n. (only in piur.), brushwood, bushes.**

**Viridomarus, I., m., a leading man of the Aedui.**

**Viridovix, -icis, m., a leader of the Veneili.**

**virithini, adv., man by man, to each.**

**Viromandui, órum, m. piur., the Viromandui, a tribe in north-eastern Gaul.**

**vir-tūs, -tūtis, f., manliness, valor, bravery, courage; vigor, energy; merit, excellence, good quality.**

**vis, vlin, vi, plur. vires, iuni, f., force, strength, power; fury, violence, furious attack; vigor, energy, influence; number, quantity; plur., strength, powers.**

**visus, a, um, from video.**

**vitā, ae, f., life, course of life.**

**vitō, are, avl, átum, avoid, escape.**

**vitrum, I., n., woad.**

**vivō, ere, vixi, victum, live; w. abl., live on.**

**vivus, a, um, alive, living.**

**vix, adv., scarcely, hardly, with difficulty.**

**Vocātes, um, m. plur., the Vocates, a tribe in Aquitania.**

**Vocelō, -ónis, m., a king of the Noriel.**

**vocō, are, avl, átum, call, summon, invite.**

**Vocontii, órum, m. plur., the Vocontii, a tribe in the province, near the Alps.**

**Volene, árunt, m. piur., the Volcae, a tribe in the southern part of the province, with two branches, the *V. Tectorages* and the *V. Arecomici*; a branch of the former of these settled in central Germany.**

**Volcātius, I., m., Caius Volcatius Tullus, one of Caesar's officers.**

**volō, velle, volui, wish, be willing, desire, want; sibi velle, to want, to mean.**

**voluntāris, a, um, voluntary; m. as subst., volunteer.**

**voluntās, -tatis, f., wish, will, desire, inclination; willingness, consent, approval, good will.**

**voluptās, -tatis, f., pleasure.**

**Volusēnus, I., m., Caius Volusenus, a military tribune with Caesar.**

**Vorēnus, I., m., Lucius Vorenus, a centurion with Caesar.**

**vōs, plur. of tū.**

**Vosegus, I., m., the Vosges Mountains, in eastern Gaul.**

**voveō, ère, vōvī, vōtum, vow.**

**vōx, vōcis, f., voice, utterance, statement, cry, shout, word.**

**Vulcānus, I., m., Vulcan, the Roman god of fire and metallurgy.**

**vulgō, adv., commonly, generally, everywhere.**

**vulgus, I., n., the common people, the public, general body.**

**vulnerō, are, avl, átum, wound.**

**vuln-us, -eris, m., wound.**

**vultus, ūs, m., countenance, expression, look.**



**Attack on a Walled City.**

## RULES OF SYNTAX AND EXERCISES IN PROSE COMPOSITION.

---

### INTRODUCTORY.<sup>1</sup>

#### I. ORDER OF WORDS.

1. Because of its wealth of inflections, Latin admits much greater freedom of order than English does, without a corresponding loss of clearness.

The order of words in Latin is not, however, purely haphazard, although no invariable rules exist for their position in a sentence ; there are certain arrangements which are normal or usual, and which should be varied only for some definite purpose, such as to secure emphasis or to promote euphony.

2. In the normal arrangement of a simple sentence, the subject, followed by its attributes, comes first ; the verb comes last, preceded by its modifiers or objects ; as,

*All these differ from one another in language : H̄i omnēs lingua  
inter s̄e differunt.*

3. This order is often changed, especially in the case of :

(a) EMPHASIS.—This is often secured by putting words other than the subject at the beginning of a sentence, or words other than the verb at the end ; as,

---

<sup>1</sup> As these introductory sections are intended chiefly for reference, and find their application in all the exercises that follow, no special exercise has been based upon them.

*Greece was freed by the sagacity of one man : Unius viri prudenter Graecia liberata est.*

*Other route had they none : Aliud iter habebant nullum.*

i. Often, too, emphasis is secured by separating two words in agreement. Antithesis (or emphatic opposition) is frequently expressed by reversing in the second clause the order of the first (*Chiasmus*).

(b) CONNECTION OF SENTENCES.—At the beginning of a sentence are regularly placed words or phrases which refer to the previous sentence or some part of it, and which thus serve as a connecting link, leading from the known to the unknown;<sup>1</sup> as,

*Within those woods (just mentioned) the enemy kept themselves in hiding : Intrâ eâs silvâs hostes in occulto sese continabant.*

*The same day envoys came to Caesar : Eodem die legati ad Caesarem venerunt.*

4. (a) The modifiers of a noun.—i. Cardinal numerals, adjectives denoting size and weight, and pronominal adjectives (except possessives) commonly precede; as, *Four days*: *Quattuor diēs*. *Large forces*: *Magnae cōpiae*. *This part*: *Haec pars*. *Without any danger*: *Sine ullō periculō*.

ii. Ordinal numerals, other adjectives (unless emphatic), genitives and words in apposition commonly follow; as, *The third year*: *Annus tertius*. *The Roman people*: *Populus Rōmānus*. *Part of the summer*: *Pars aestatis*.

iii. Where a noun is modified both by an adjective and by a genitive, the preferred order is adjective, genitive, noun; as, *Immense size of frame*: *Ingēns corporum magnitudo*. This does not apply to the partitive genitive, however; as, *A large part of Gaul*: *Magna pars Galliae*.

iv. When two adjectives or two genitives connected by a conjunction modify a noun, it is commonly placed either before both or after both.

When an adjective or a genitive modifies two nouns connected by a conjunction, it commonly precedes both.

---

<sup>1</sup> To mark this connection Latin constantly uses *qui* for *hic* or *is*; see section 172.

(b) **The modifiers of a verb.**—Either the direct object or an adverb directly qualifying the action of the verb is, as a rule, placed immediately before a verb; the indirect object commonly precedes the direct object; and farthest removed of all are adverbial expressions of place, time, cause or means.

(c) **Pronouns.**—i. Relative and interrogative pronouns are regularly the first words in their clause, preceding even a conjunction and (if used adjectively) a preposition; as, *When Caesar was informed of these things: Quibus de rebus cum Caesar certior factus esset.*

ii. Personal pronouns are apt to be placed in emphatic positions, and where two personal or possessive pronouns occur in the same clause they are generally placed close together.<sup>1</sup>

(d) **Adverbs** commonly precede the words they modify. But *quoque* and *quidem* always, and *semel* generally, follow.

(e) **Prepositions.**—i. These precede the words they govern, with the exception of *cum*, which is regularly suffixed to the ablative of the personal, reflexive and relative pronouns.

ii. A preposition is often separated from its noun by a modifier of that noun; as, *Into the land of the Aeduī: In Aeduōrum finēs.*

iii. A monosyllabic preposition is often placed between an adjective and its noun; as, *On the other side: Alterā ex parte.*

(f) **Negatives** are regularly placed before the word modified. When the whole sentence is negated, the negative is either connected with the verb, or more often comes at the beginning of the sentence (so regularly when *neque* can be substituted for *and* followed by a negative).

*Nē . . . quidem* enclose the word or words modified; as, *Not even the first attack: Nē primus quidem impetus.*

(g) **Verbs.**—i. The Copula or link verb *esse* is seldom placed at the end of its clause; it is generally followed by some important word or words belonging to the predicate; as, *This side is opposite Gaul: Hoc latus est contrā Galliam.* Frequently, however, the copula is omitted.

ii. A dependent infinitive, as a rule, precedes the verb on which it depends; as, *The river can be crossed: Flumen trānsiri potest.*

iii. *Inquam, inquit* follow one or more words of the quotation.

---

<sup>1</sup> The same is true of *quisque* with the reflexive, and of *alius* when doubled.

(h) **Conjunctions.**—i. These are the first words in their own clauses. But they are regularly preceded by a relative pronoun, sometimes by other emphatic or connecting words ; as, *If this were done : Id si fieret.*

ii. *Autem, enim* and *verō* never, and *igitur* very seldom, come first in a sentence.

iii. The particles *que, ne* (interrogative), *re* are enclitics;<sup>1</sup> as, *The senate and people of Rome : Senātus populusque Rōmānus.*

## II. ORDER OF CLAUSES.

**5. Noun and Adjective clauses** are, as a rule, in the position a noun or adjective of similar value would have.

i. A relative clause, however, very frequently, especially when emphatic, precedes a general antecedent, such as *is* or *hic* ; as, *He spoils what he alters ; Quae mūtat, ea corrumpit.*

ii. Indirect questions generally follow the verb on which they depend. So also does the accusative and infinitive construction when extended to any length.

**6. Adverbial clauses** are placed, as a rule, as corresponding adverbial phrases would be.

i. Adverbial clauses that are preparatory to the thought of the principal clause, or express some attending circumstance, regularly either precede the principal clause, or very frequently are inserted in it. Such are the temporal, conditional, causal and concessive clauses.

ii. Adverbial clauses that are explanatory of, or complementary to, the thought of the principal clause regularly follow. Such are the consecutive clauses, and causal sentences where the emphasis lies on the reason advanced.

Final or purpose clauses, on the whole, more frequently follow than precede, the general principle being to place last the clause on which the emphasis falls.

**7. Participial clauses** generally precede, or are inserted in, the principal sentence, and very seldom follow it as in English ; as, *After settling this affair he set sail, having met with suitable weather : His cōstitūtis rēbus, nactus idōneam tempestātem, solvit.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Enclitics are unaccented words which are always appended to some other word.

8. In narrative prose the *order of time* is almost invariably observed in the arrangement of the various clauses of a sentence ; as,

*The Germans threw away their arms when they saw that their comrades were being slain, and rushed out of the camp : Germāni, cum suōs interfici vidērent, armis abjectis sē ex castris ejēcērunt.*

9. THE PERIODIC STRUCTURE is much commoner in Latin than in English. A period is a complex sentence, whose subordinate clauses are inserted in the principal clause in such a way that the sense and grammatical construction of the whole are incomplete without the final words, upon which also the chief emphasis rests. The example given in section 8 above is a period in the Latin, but not in the English.

i. In the Latin period, the subject of the principal and subordinate clauses should as far as possible be the same. In such cases it should be placed at the beginning of the period, and thus do duty for both clauses ; as, *When Caesar learned that the Suebi had retired to the forest, he determined not to advance farther : Caesar postquam comperit Suēbōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, cōstituit nōn prōgredi longius.*

But where a subordinate clause is introduced by a relative with the force of a demonstrative (see section 3, b, footnote), this holds the first place ; as, *When Caesar learned this, he withdrew to Gaul : Quod ubi Caesar comperit, sē in Galliam recēpit.*

### III. CONCORDS.

The following are the general rules of agreement :

10. APPPOSITION.—A word placed in apposition with another agrees with it in case ; as,

*He persuades Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus : Dumnorigi, frātri Divitiāci, persuādet.*

*The city of Rome : Urbs Rōma.*

i. The possessive may have an appositive in the genitive, especially with *ipse*; as, *My own fault*: **Mea ipsius culpa.**

ii. The appositive word may agree with an unexpressed subject; as, *I, Themistocles, have come to you*: **Themistocles vēni ad te.**

**11. ATTRIBUTIVE WORDS.**—An adjective (including the numerals), a pronoun or a participle agrees in gender, number and case with the word to which it belongs.

i. If it belongs to more than one word, it regularly agrees with the nearest; as, *It was a matter requiring great effort and labor*; **Rēs erat multae operaē ac labōris.**

**12. THE PREDICATE.**—(a) The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

i. Where compound or periphrastic forms of the verb are used, the participle follows the rules for predicate adjectives (see b).

ii. (a) Where there is more than one subject, the verb may be plural, or may be singular, agreeing with the nearest and being understood with the others; as, *The Matrona and Sequana separate the Gauls from the Belgians*: **Gallōs a Belgis Mātrona et Sēquana dividit.**<sup>1</sup>

(b). The verb may also be singular when two singular subjects form but one notion; as, *A loud din and shouting arose*: **Clāmor fremitusque oriēbatur.** (*Cf.* ‘The tumult and the shouting dies.’) So regularly with **Senātus populusque Rōmānus.**

iii. Where the subjects are of different persons and the plural is used, the first person takes precedence, then the second; as, *Cicero and I are well*: **Ego et Cicerō valēmus.**

iv. For the unemphatic introductory word *there*, and also for *it* when used as an impersonal or representative subject, Latin has no equivalent; as, *And there were no other ships*: **Neque nāvēs erant aliae.** *It is dangerous to enter*: **Intrāre est periculōsum.**

(b) A predicate adjective (or a participle in the compound tenses of the verb) agrees with the subject of the verb in gender, number and case; as,

<sup>1</sup> In a somewhat similar way a singular noun may agree with the nearer of two adjectives and be understood with the other; as, *The soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions*; **Leglōnis nōnac et decimac militēs.**

*Everything was unknown: Omnia erant incōgnita.*

*The supply seems to be small: Exigua vidētur esse cōpia.*

*He was informed that the ascent was easy: Certior factus est facilem esse ascēsum.*

i. Predicate adjectives are used with the verb **sum**, verbs of *seeming, becoming*, and passive verbs of *making, thinking, calling*.

ii. Where there is more than one subject, the predicate adjective may be either singular or plural, following the number of the verb (see a, ii.).

If it be singular, it will agree in gender with the nearest subject; as, *The cavalry and the charioteers were sent forward: Praemissus est equitātus et essedārii.*

If it be plural, with subjects of different genders, it will be masculine when the subjects refer to living beings, otherwise neuter; as, *Father and mother are dead: Pater et māter mortui sunt. The city and temple were taken: Urbs templumque capta sunt.*

(c) A predicate noun agrees with its subject in case; as,

*He found that now Galba was king: Reperiēbat nunc esse rēgem Galbam.*

*Ariovistus had been called king and friend by the senate: Ariovistus rēx atque amicus ā senātū appellātus erat.*

i. Predicate nouns are used with the verb **sum**, verbs of *seeming, becoming*, and passive verbs of *making, thinking, calling*.

ii. The dative of purpose is used with much the force of a predicate noun (see section 81).

**13. PRONOUN AND ANTECEDENT.**—A relative or demonstrative pronoun agrees in gender, number and person with the word (termed the antecedent) to which in sense it refers; as,

*For many reasons, of which this was the strongest: Multis dē causis, quārum illa fuit jūstissima.*

i. But these pronouns by preference agree with a predicate noun rather than with their antecedent ; as, *To Vesontio, which is the largest town : Ad Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum.*

ii. A pronoun referring to two or more antecedents in common follows the rules given for predicate adjectives in section 12, b, ii.

N.B.—By a **sense construction**, the number or the gender of predicates and relative pronouns is often determined by the meaning, not the form, of the words to which they refer ; as, *A great throng was hurling weapons : Magna multitudo tela conjiciebant. He sends forward the cavalry to see : Equitatum praemittit, qui videant. Six thousand men left the camp at nightfall : Hominum milia sex primâ nocte ē castris egressi sunt.*

### THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

14. After verbs meaning *to say, think, believe, know, perceive, feel*, and the like (*verba sentiendi et declarandi*), Latin uses the infinitive with a subject accusative, where in English we have a noun clause introduced by *that* ; as,

*They bring back word that the ascent is easy : Renuntiant facilem esse ascēnum.*

*They perceive that the strongest nations have been conquered : Intellegunt māximās nātiōnēs superātās esse.*

15. Rules for the USE OF TENSES are as follows :

{ (a) When the time of the infinitive is the *same* as that of its principal verb, use the *present* infinitive ;

(b) When the time of the infinitive is *prior* to that of its principal verb, use the *perfect* infinitive ;

(c) When the time of the infinitive is *subsequent* to that of its principal verb, use the *future* infinitive ; as,

(a) *He was informed that the legion was being hard pressed : Certior factus est legiōnem premi.*

*He will see that the legion is being hard pressed : Vidēbit legiōnem premi.*

(b) *They will think that the Helvetians have moved their camp:*  
**Existimābunt Helvētiōs castra mōvisse.**

*He learned that the Helvetians had moved their camp:* **Cōgnōvit Helvētiōs castra mōvisse.**

(c) *They think that Caesar will make peace:* **Existimant Caesarem pācem esse factūrum.**

*He answered that Caesar would make peace:* **Respondit Caesarem pācem esse factūrum.**

Or, to put the rule in another way: let the student imagine himself using the very words uttered or thought, and then use the corresponding tense of the infinitive (the perfect infinitive doing duty for the imperfect,<sup>1</sup> perfect or pluperfect of the original words).

In the above examples, for instance, the words actually uttered or thought would be: (a) *The legion is being hard pressed:* **Legiō premitur**; (b) *The Helvetians have moved their camp:* **Helvētii castra mōverunt**; (c) *Caesar will make peace:* **Caesar pācem faciet.**

16. (a) As the infinitive is without personal endings, for *I, we, you* the subject accusatives *mē, nōs, tē, vōs*, should be expressed.

For *he, she, they*, when denoting the same person as the subject of the verb of *saying, thinking*, etc., *sē* will be used; but when denoting a different person, the accusative of *is*, or for greater emphasis *ille*;<sup>2</sup> as,

*They answered that they would make peace with him:* **Respon-**  
**dērunt sēsē cum eō pācem esse factūrōs.**

*Caesar had decided to keep Dumnorix with him, because he had discovered that he was eager for power:* **Caesar Dumnorīgem sēcum habēre cōstituerat, quod eum cupidum esse imperiū cōgnōverat.**

(b) In the compound forms of the infinitive containing *esse*, care must be taken to have agreement with the subject accusative in gender, number and case. (See *superātās* in section 14 above.)

<sup>1</sup> For instance, **Dicō urbem obsessam esse**, *I tell you that the city was being besieged, for an original obsūtēbātur.*

<sup>2</sup> This distinction applies to all uses of the words *him, them, etc.*; for *his and their, suus or ejus and eōrum*, respectively, are used.

17. After verbs signifying *to hope, promise, threaten*, and the like, English generally uses the simple infinitive, instead of a noun clause introduced by *that*. In Latin the subject accusative with the *future* infinitive is used in accordance with the above rules (section 15, c); as,

*These tribes promise to give hostages: Hae natiōnēs sē obsidēs datūrās (esse) pollicentur.*

18. i. In English *that* is often omitted; as, *He says he will go.*

ii. Not only single verbs, but also phrases, *sentiendī et dēclarandī* occur; as, *certiōrem faciō, memoriā teneō, fāma est, spem habeō.*

iii. *Esse* is very often omitted in the compound or periphrastic forms of the infinitive.

iv. Verbs of *pretending* are regularly followed by the accusative and infinitive, not, as often in English, by the simple infinitive; as, *They pretend to return home: Domum revertī sē simulant.*

v. Instead of *dicō* followed by a negative, Latin prefers *negō*; as, *He says he can grant no one the right of passing through the province: Negat sē posse iter ulli per prōvinciam dare.*

vi. Verbs of *saying* and *thinking* (except *inquam* and *crēdō*) are not used parenthetically in Latin as in English; as, *You are, I maintain, mistaken: Errāre vōs dicō. He sends messengers to Kent, which, we have already said, is on the sea: Ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōstrāvimus, nūntiōs mittit.* For the position of *inquam* see section 4, g, iii.

vii. With passive verbs of *saying, thinking*, etc., the personal construction is used in Latin (but chiefly with *videor*, and the third person of the present, imperfect and future of other verbs); as, *It was said that the Germans had been invited: Germānī arcessiti esse dicēbantur, not Germānōs arcessitōs esse dicēbātur.* In the perfect the impersonal construction is used.

viii. *Would have* is expressed by the future participle with *fuisse*; as, *He answered that if there had been any need, he would have come to Caesar: Respondit, si quid opus esset, sēsē ad Caesarem ventūrum fuisse.*

ix. Instead of the future infinitive after verbs of *hoping, posse* with the present infinitive is common.

x. The subject accusative is not infrequently omitted when easily understood from the context; but this should not be imitated by the beginner in Latin.

## VERBS WHICH TAKE THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

<i>Announce, report, nūntiō.</i>	<i>Point out, dēmōnstrō, ostendō.</i>
<i>Answer, reply, respondeō.</i>	<i>Promise, polliceor.</i>
<i>Ascertain, learn, cōgnōscō.</i>	<i>Remember, memini.</i>
<i>Believe, crēdō.</i>	<i>Report, bring back word, renūntiō</i>
<i>Deny, negō.</i>	<i>Say, dīcō.</i>
<i>Hear, audiō.</i>	<i>Say . . not, negō.</i>
<i>Hope, spērō.</i>	<i>See, videō.</i>
<i>Inform, certiōrem faciō.</i>	<i>Suspect, suspicor.</i>
<i>Know, sciō, cōgnōvī.</i>	<i>Think, existimō, arbitror.</i>
<i>Notice, observe, perceire, animad- vertō, cōspiciō, sentiō.</i>	<i>Understand, be aware, intellegō.</i>
	<i>Write, scribō.</i>

## EXERCISE I.

## A.

1. He replied that Caesar had conquered Gaul.
2. He thinks that the Roman leader will easily vanquish the Belgians.
3. We saw that the nights were shorter in Britain than on the continent.
4. The enemy sent ambassadors to Caesar, and promised to give hostages.
5. Word was brought to Caesar that the hill was held by the Roman soldiers.
6. To these envoys Caesar replied that the Gauls had been conquered by the Roman army.
7. The general hears that the enemy are hurling javelins at the soldiers.
8. The enemy, he answered (18, vi.), had been hurling javelins at Caesar's cavalry.
9. He learned from the scouts that all the Belgians had encamped on the other side of that river.
10. It is said (18, vii.) that Caesar set out for Gaul, and defeated the Helvetians on the other side of the river Rhone.
11. To that embassy he replied that he would come to the enemy's camp.
12. It was reported to Caesar that the soldiers would not advance.

B. (*Caesar B. G. IV., 20*).

1. He had found out that the traders themselves did not visit this harbor.
2. They answered that the summers were early in all these islands.
3. He writes that almost all the tribes have these customs.
4. We ascertained that auxiliaries were being furnished to Caesar.
5. They promised not to furnish ships to Caesar.
6. I hoped to set out for Britain.
7. They bring back word that the larger harbor is not suitable.
8. He denied having summoned anyone.
9. He pointed out that a large part of the winter was left.
10. They believe that this is unknown to almost all.
11. He thought they had set out.
12. We had heard that our enemies had great experience (had had great experience).
13. He hopes to become acquainted with the country.
14. He said that the character of the inhabitants had not been ascertained.

#### COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

**19.** The present infinitive (active or passive) is often used like the infinitive with *to* in English, to complete the meaning of certain verbs, whose reference would otherwise be incomplete. These verbs are often called *modal* verbs, and the infinitive when so used is termed the *complementary infinitive*.

**20. (a)** With modal verbs the present infinitive without a subject expressed is used to denote another action or condition of the *same* subject ; as,

*They attempt to cross the river : Flūmen trānsire cōnantur.*

*The wind began to be violent : Saevire ventus coepit.*

*They are able to defend themselves : Sē dēfendere possunt.*

*The river can be crossed : Flūmen trānsiri potest.*

*He was unwilling to leave : Discēdere nōlēbat.*

*They were compelled to give hostages : Obsidēs dare coācti sunt.*

i. A predicate noun or adjective with the complementary infinitive agrees with the subject of the modal verb ; as,

*We can be useful friends : Possumus ūtīlēs esse amīci.*

21. (b) With modal verbs the present infinitive with a subject accusative is used to denote the action or condition of a different subject ; as,

*They allow the Helvetians to go:* **Helvētiōs ire patiuntur.**

*He ordered the gates to be closed:* **Portās claudi jussit.**

*He wished the Germans to be alarmed:* **Germānōs timēre voluit.**

*He did not wish that place to be unoccupied:* **Nōluit eum locum vacāre.**

22. i. Prohibeō takes the accusative and complementary infinitive ; as,

*They prevent the Germans from crossing:* **Germānōs trānsire prohibent.**

ii. Some verbs expressing *emotion*, such as *doleō* (*grievēre*) and *gaudeō* (*rejoice*) often take the accusative and complementary infinitive. (See also section 147, ii.)

iii. Where the complementary infinitive is passive, *coepi sum* is used in place of *coepi*, with the same force ; as, *Javelins began to be hurled:* **Tēla conjici copta sunt.**

iv. With *jubeō* the subject accusative is sometimes omitted, when obvious from the context ; as, *He gives orders to fortify a camp:* **Castra mūnire jubet.**

v. *Volō*, *nōlō* and *mālō* often take the accusative and infinitive even when the subject is the same, chiefly with *esse* or a passive infinitive ; as, *They did not wish to be put to death:* **Sēsē interfici nōlēbant.**

vi. *Polliceor* and *spērō* are sometimes treated as modal verbs.

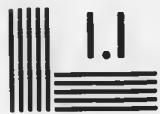
vii. Many of the verbs of *will* and *desire* are followed by *ut* and the subjunctive ; so regularly the verbs of *ordering*, except *jubeō*. *Imperō* also may be used with the passive infinitive ; as, *He orders him to be brought back:* **Eum retrahī imperat.** (See section 27.)

viii. This construction is more restricted in Latin than in English. (See especially sections 23 and 27.) But in poetry Latin more nearly approaches English usage, the complementary infinitive being used not only with verbs and phrases which do not ordinarily admit it, but also with nouns and adjectives. The poets also use the infinitive freely to express purpose.



# MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street  
Rochester, New York 14609 USA  
(716) 482-0300 - Phone  
(716) 288-5989 - Fax

## VERBS WHICH TAKE THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

<i>Allow, patior, sinō.</i>	<i>Forbid, vetō.</i>
<i>Attempt, cōnor.</i>	<i>Hasten, contendō, mātūrō, pro-</i>
<i>Be able, can, possum.</i>	<i>perō.</i>
<i>Be accustomed, be wont, cōn-</i>	
<i>suēvī, soleō.</i>	<i>Hesitate, dubitō.</i>
<i>Be unwilling, nōlō.</i>	<i>Order, jubeō.</i>
<i>Be willing, volō.</i>	<i>Ought, dēbeō.</i>
<i>Begin, incipiō, instituō.</i>	<i>Permit, patior, sinō.</i>
<i>Began, coepi.</i>	<i>Prefer, mālō.</i>
<i>Cease, dēsinō, dēsistō.</i>	<i>Prepare, parō.</i>
<i>Compel, cōgō.</i>	<i>Prevent, prohibeō.</i>
<i>Dare, audeō.</i>	<i>Resolve, see decide.</i>
<i>Decide, determine, cōnstituō, dē-</i>	<i>Strive, contendō, nitor.</i>
<i>cernō, statuō.</i>	<i>Try, cōnor.</i>
<i>Desire, cupiō.</i>	<i>Venture, audeō.</i>
	<i>Wish, volō.</i>

## EXERCISE 2.

## A.

1. The troops began to storm the town.
2. The Helvetians are accustomed to receive, not give, hostages.
3. Stones had begun (22, iii.) to be hurled from all sides against the rampart.
4. Caesar will not permit the Gauls to be crushed.
5. The enemy were unwilling to depart from the Rhine.
6. The cavalry had prevented fires from being made.
7. They will not attempt to cross the rivers.
8. The Germans did not hesitate to engage in battle.
9. The soldiers were ordered to return to the camp.
10. The Romans compelled the enemy to give hostages.
11. He determined to pass the winter there.
12. The Britons will not dare to make war.
13. Caesar was not able to set out.
14. The soldiers were compelled to make a promise to remain at home.
15. We wish him to be a soldier, but he prefers to be a merchant.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 21.*)

1. He ordered a warship to be sent in advance.
2. They themselves hasten to set out.
3. He will attempt to conquer the barbarians.
4. We are unable to return home.
5. He had wished to be made king.
6. They do not wish that design to be reported to Caesar.
7. Caesar began to make liberal promises.
8. He promised to disembark.
9. Volusenus was ordered to visit all the states and ascertain these things.
10. He hopes to ascertain this.
11. He orders a fleet to be built and hostages to be given.
12. They could not be compelled to return to him.
13. Several were unwilling to allow the envoys to be heard.
14. He had not ventured to examine the neighboring districts.
15. The barbarians resolved to embrace the alliance of the Roman people and to be faithful to Caesar.
16. The troops can quickly assemble to this place from every quarter.

---

#### FINAL CLAUSES (CLAUSES OF PURPOSE).

**23.** In English the purpose or end of an action is commonly expressed either by the infinitive with *to*, or by a clause introduced by *that* or *lest*; as, *They remained to avoid suspicion*, or *They remained that they might avoid suspicion*.

But in Latin prose the infinitive should never be used to express purpose.

**24. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.**—One of the commonest modes of expressing purpose in Latin is by *ut* (or *uti*) with the *subjunctive*—in negative clauses *nē*; as,

*They remained in order to avoid suspicion: Ut suspicōnem vitārent, remanēbant.*

*He is setting out to attack the enemy's camp: Proficiscitur ut castra hostium oppūnet.*

*In order that they may not be (or in order not to be) surrounded by the enemy, they will make a sally: Nē ab hostibus circumveniantur, ēruptionem facient.*

*Outposts are stationed lest a sally be made : Stationes pōnuntur nē ēruptiō fiat.*

25. Rules for the SEQUENCE OF TENSES are as follows :

(a) *Primary* tenses—viz., present, future, and future perfect—are followed by the *present* subjunctive.

(b) *Secondary* (or historical) tenses—viz., imperfect, perfect<sup>1</sup>, and pluperfect—are followed by the *imperfect* subjunctive.

Thus the present subjunctive is used where English could use *that . . . may*; the imperfect subjunctive where English could use *that . . . might*.

(For examples see the sentences given in section 24 above.)

26. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.—After certain verbs, especially those of *sending* and *appointing*, relative clauses of purpose are found, *ut* being replaced by *qui*; as,

*He sends scouts in advance to choose a suitable place for the camp : Exploratōrēs praemittit, qui locum idōneum castris dēligant* (literally *who are to choose*).

i. Purpose clauses may be introduced also by relative adverbs, such as *ubi*, *unde*, *quō*.

27. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.—After verbs of *urging*, *asking*, *commanding*, *advising*, *persuading*, *striving* (verbs of *will* and *aim*), Latin does not use the infinitive; it regards the following clause as expressive of the end desired, and therefore uses the subjunctive of purpose with *ut* (*uti*) and *nē*; as,

*He urges them to take up arms : Hortātur ut arma capiant.*

*He induced Casticus to seize the chief power : Persuāsit Casticō ut rēgnūm occupāret.*

*They begged of him not to do that : Ab eō petēbant nē id faceret.*

---

<sup>1</sup> The perfect indicative, when translated by *have*, may take primary sequence, but as a rule it is followed by the imperfect subjunctive.

*Jubeō* and *cōuor* are important regular exceptions to this rule; so also verbs of *striving* and *resolving*, when the subject of both verbs is the same (where English also has the infinitive).

28. i. In clauses of purpose *ut* is not followed by a negative, *nē* being used instead. Hence where *not*, *no one*, *nothing*, *no* (adjectival) and *never* occur, use *nē*, *nē quis*, *nē quid*, *nē qui* (or *quis*) and *nē umquam*; as,

*He ordered the gates to be closed that the townspeople might receive no hurt: Portas claudi jussit nē quam oppidāni injūriam acciperent.*

*He asked him to allow none to cross: Postulāvit nē quōs trānsire paterētur.*

ii. A second final clause, if negative, is connected by *nēve* (or *neu*), not by *neque*; as, *He issues orders that they are to hurl their weapons from a distance, and not approach nearer: Prōnūntiat ut procul tēla conjiciant neu propius accēdant.*

iii. When the clause of purpose contains a comparative, *quō* is commonly used in place of *ut*; as, *They ask for reinforcements, that they may more easily withstand the enemy: Subsidium rogant, quō facilius hostēs sustinēre possint.*

iv. After the historical present either primary or secondary sequence may be used.

v. Certain verbs are used both in the construction given in section 27, and as *verba dēclārandī* with the accusative and infinitive: as, *He writes to Labienus to build the vessels: Labiēnō scribit ut nāvēs instituat. He writes that he has set out: Scribit sē profectum esse.* So also *moneō* and *persuādeō*. (See section 200.)

vi. With verbs of *asking* and *commanding* the subjunctive sometimes occurs without *ut*. This should not be imitated by the beginner in prose.

vii. In poetry, verbs of *urging* and *asking* are found with the present infinitive. (See section 22, viii.)

viii. Sometimes *ut nē* is found for *nē*, but not in Caesar.

ix. Other modes of expressing purpose exist in Latin, the most important being by means of the gerund and gerundive. (See sections 114 and 119, and also 124.)

x. For verbs of *causing*, see section 33, v.

## VERBS WHICH TAKE SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.

<i>Advise</i> , moneō, admoneō.	<i>Instruct</i> , praecipiō.
<i>Ask</i> , petō, rogō.	<i>Permit</i> , concēdō, permittō.
<i>Beg</i> , beseech, ōrō, obsecrō.	<i>Persuade</i> , suādeō, persuādeō.
<i>Command</i> , imperō, praecipiō, mandō.	<i>Prevail on</i> , impetrō.
<i>Commission</i> , mandō.	<i>Request</i> , require, petō, rogō, postulō.
<i>Determine</i> , cōstituō, dēcernō, statuō.	<i>Resolve</i> , see determine.
<i>Exhort</i> , hortor, adhortor, co- hortor.	<i>Strive</i> , contendō, nitor; so id agō, operam dō.
<i>Incite</i> , instigate, impellō.	<i>Urge</i> , hortor, adhortor.
	<i>Warn</i> , moneō, admoneō.

## EXERCISE 3.

## A.

1. They sent Caesar into Gaul to carry on war with the Helvetians.
2. The Gauls had sent envoys to Caesar to ask for peace and to beg him not to storm their town.
3. He instructed the cavalry to take possession of the camp, and not (28, ii.) to pursue the enemy.
4. In order to defeat the Britons, he sent forward the cavalry and the slingers to attack them in the rear.
5. Caesar exhorted the soldiers to fight valiantly, lest they should allow the enemy to cross the river.
6. The Gauls sent a messenger to report to their allies that the Roman troops had built a bridge over the river in order to (28, iii.) pursue the enemy more easily.
7. He asked the Helvetians to go forth from these territories.
8. They ordered the bridge to be destroyed in order that no one might be able to cross the river.
9. He warned the soldiers (28, v.) that the Gauls were at hand; he advised us not to leave the camp.
10. He replied that Caesar had praised the soldiers that they might fight the more valiantly.
11. Caesar ordered (*imperō*) his soldiers to press forward and not to hurl any weapon whatever at the enemy.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 22.*)

1. He urged Caesar not to demand hostages.
2. On account of the season he advises Caesar to do nothing.
3. In order that he may reach Britain, he orders (*jubeō*) ships of war to be collected.
4. He leaves a garrison to hold the harbors.
5. Lest he should be detained by the wind, he did not delay in these parts.
6. Envoys come to ask Caesar not to make war on the Menapii.
7. He promised to receive them under his protection.
8. In order the more easily (*facilius*) to wage war, he advised the lieutenants to collect transports.
9. They warn Caesar to leave no enemy behind him.
10. To excuse themselves, they point out that they are inexperienced.
11. He gives orders to the Morini to bring the hostages to Britain.
12. He left Cotta in the same harbor to procure ships.
13. In order to carry over a larger number of foot-soldiers he determined to leave the cavalry.
14. That this may not happen, he allots ships to the two legions.

---

CONSECUTIVE OR RESULT CLAUSES. CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC.

**29. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF RESULT.** — Dependent clauses expressing result are in English introduced by *that* or *as to*, following *so* or *such*. In Latin result or consequence is expressed by *ut* (or *uti*) with the subjunctive (in negative clauses by *ut nōn*) ; as,

*They advanced with such swiftness that the enemy took to flight : Eā celeritātē iērunt ut hostēs sē fugae mandārent.*

*I am not so uncivilized as not to know this : Nōn tam barbarus sum ut nōn haec sciam.*

**30. The tenses of the English and the Latin verbs in clauses of result as a rule correspond ; the Latin imperfect,**

however, is generally used for the English past (indefinite) tense, as in the first example in section 29.

**31. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT.**—After certain verbs, chiefly those of *happening* and *resulting*, clauses introduced by *that* are rendered by Latin consecutive clauses with *ut* or *ut nōn* and the subjunctive; as,

*It happened that there was a full moon: Accidit ut esset lūna plēna.*

*The result was that the Germans were summoned: Factum est ut Germāni arcesserentur.*

**32. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC.**—Clauses of characteristic are introduced by the relative pronoun or relative adverbs. In these clauses the antecedent is referred to as belonging (or not belonging) to a class characterized by a certain quality. The subjunctive (generally akin to the subjunctive of result,<sup>1</sup> but sometimes, as in the fourth example, to the potential subjunctive, see section 136) is regularly used in these clauses; as,

*Nor was there anyone who was intent on looting: Neque fuit quisquam qui praedae studēret.*

*But I am not the man to be frightened by danger: Neque is sum qui periculō terrear.*

*There were two roads by which they could leave home: Erant itinera duo quibus domō exire possent.*

*Nor had they any place to which they could retreat: Neque quō sē recipenter habēbant<sup>2</sup>.*

i. This subjunctive of characteristic is especially common after such general phrases of existence as *sunt quī, nēmō est quī, unus est quī, sōlus est quī, quis est quī?* *nōn* is *est quī*; also after *dignus, indignus* and *idōneus*; as, *He will not be a fit person to be sent: Nōn erit idōneus qui mittātur.*

ii. The relative clause of characteristic has sometimes a restrictive force; as, *So far as I know: Quod sciam.*

---

<sup>1</sup> In such cases the relative may often be replaced by the phrase *such as or such that.*

<sup>2</sup> By some this is regarded as a relative clause of purpose (section 26, i).

33. i. As *that not* in clauses of result is *ut nōn*, so where *no one, nothing, no* (adjectival) and *never* occur, use *ut nēmō, ut nihil, ut nullus, ut namquam*; as,

*He put the enemy so speedily to flight that no one held his ground at all: Tam celeriter hostēs in fugam dedit utī omnīnō resisteret nēmō.*

ii. *Quīn* is often found instead of *quī nōn* in relative clauses of characteristic after negative phrases; as, *No one is so brave as not to be disturbed: Nēmō est tam fortis quīn perturbētur.*

iii. Sometimes the *perfect* subjunctive instead of the *imperfect* is found corresponding to our past (indefinite) tense. In such cases either (1) the writer is calling attention to the independent fact rather than dwelling on the relation of cause and effect; or (2) the action is summed up as a single whole, and not regarded as continuing; as, *Our men captured the vessels, so that very few reached land: Nostri nāvēs expūgnāvērunt, ut per paucae ad terram pervenerint.*

iv. A common use of the consecutive clause is to form with a preceding *fore* (or *futūrum esse*) a substitute for the future infinitive passive, and sometimes also for the future infinitive active, especially with verbs that lack the supine stem; as, *He hoped that Ariovistus would abandon his obstinacy: Spērābat fore utī Ariovistus pertināciā dēsistaret.*

v. Verbs of *causing* are followed sometimes by a substantive clause of purpose, sometimes by one of result. Hence the negative is sometimes *nē*, sometimes *ut nōn*.

vi. *Ita* (or *sic*) with *ut* and the subjunctive may express restriction or limitation.

#### EXERCISE 4.

##### A.

1. So great a panic seized our soldiers that we did not dare to join battle with the enemy.
2. It happened that no ship reached its destination.
3. We are not so inexperienced as to believe that the Roman people can be conquered by our forces.
4. There is no one but (33, ii.) knows that the Helvetians are marching through our province.
5. Such was the valor of the soldiers that no one withdrew from the ramparts.
6. We have been so taught by our ancestors that we are accustomed to receive, not to give, hostages.

7. Caesar said that from these circumstances it had resulted that they roamed about less widely. 8. So great is the scarcity of boats that we cannot cross. 9. He had judged this cavalryman a suitable person (32, i.) to send to Caesar. 10. He crossed the river with such a large body of cavalry that the Germans were terrified. 11. The messengers made answer to Caesar that the bridge had been so bravely defended by the enemy that no portion of the army had been able to cross. 12. There followed storms which (32) prevented the enemy from attempting to attack the camp.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 23.*)

1. So suitable was the place that he ordered the soldiers to disembark. 2. So great are the forces of the enemy that nothing can be done. 3. It happened that he met with favorable weather. 4. So swift were the foremost vessels that they reached Britain the fourth hour of the day. 5. So quickly (*celeriter*) do the soldiers embark that in the third watch he gives the signal and orders the anchors to be weighed. 6. It happens that the shore is clear and the tide favorable. 7. He pointed out that a weapon could be thrown to the shore from the ship. 8. He gave orders (*imperō*) that the cavalry should follow him and that the other troops should advance to the higher ground. 9. So slowly is everything done that no one is able to set sail. 10. So rapid is the movement of naval warfare that nothing is more uncertain.

#### QUESTIONS, DIRECT AND INDIRECT.

34. A DIRECT QUESTION is a principal clause introduced by

- (a) An interrogative pronoun, pronominal adjective or adverb, or
- (b) One of the interrogative particles, *-ne*, *nōnne*, or *num<sup>1</sup>*; as,

<sup>1</sup> None of these particles, *-ne*, *nōnne* or *num*, should be used when the sentence contains some other interrogative word.

*What do they seek? Quid petunt?*

*Whither are we setting out? Quō proficiscimur?*

*Do you not see? Nōnne vidēs?*

i. -**Ne**, Nōnne, Num. -**Ne** is an enclitic, appended to an emphatic word, which is regularly at the beginning of the question.

-**Ne** asks for information, and is impartial or non-committal ; as, *Is he writing? Sribitne?*

Nōnne asks for confirmation of belief, and invites the answer *yes* ; as,

*Is he not writing? (or He is writing, is he not?) Nōnne sribit?*

Num asks for confirmation of disbelief, and invites the answer *no* ; as,

*Surely he is not writing? (or He is not writing, is he?) Num sribit?*

**35. INDIRECT QUESTIONS.**—A subordinate clause introduced by any of the interrogative words mentioned above is called a *dependent* or *indirect question*, and always has its verb in the subjunctive ; as,

*He asked what they sought: Quaesivit quid peterent.*

*He asks whither we are setting out: Quaerit quō proficiscāmur.*

*He wonders what the reason is: Quae causa sit, mirātur.*

In English we do not usually consider the clause as a dependent question unless the principal verb is of an interrogative nature, but in Latin it may be a verb meaning *to learn, find out, know, tell, point out, see or decide* ; as,

*He learns what is being done: Cōgnōscit quae gerantur.*

*He reported what he had seen: Quae perspexisset renūntiāvit.*

*We perceived where they were betaking themselves: Animadvertisimus quō sē reciperent.*

*They cannot decide in which direction it flows: In utram partem fluat, jūdicāre nōn possunt.*

i. -**Ne** and **num** in dependent questions express *whether*, without any difference of meaning ; as, *He asked whether they were happy: Quaesivit num bēāti essent (or bēātine essent).*

**36. Rules for the USE OF TENSES are as follows :**

In indirect questions as a rule the English tenses will be a sufficient guide.<sup>1</sup> The future is represented by the subjunctive of the active periphrastic conjugation (see section 123).

SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

*Primary Sequence.*

<i>He asks, learns,</i>	}	<i>Quaerit, cōgnōscit,</i>	}
<i>He will ask, learn,</i>	}	<i>Quaeret, cōgnōscet,</i>	}
	{		
<i>what they are doing:</i>		<i>quid faciant.</i>	
<i>what they have done:</i>		<i>quid fēcerint.</i>	
<i>what they did:</i>		<i>quid fēcerint.</i>	
<i>what they will do:</i>		<i>quid factū sint.</i>	

*Secondary Sequence.*

<i>He was asking, learning,</i>	{	<i>Quaerēbat, cōgnōscēbat,</i>	}
<i>He asked, learned,</i>		<i>Quaesivit, cōgnōvit,</i>	
<i>He had asked, learned,</i>		<i>Quaesiverat, cōgnōverat,</i>	
<i>what they were doing:</i>		<i>quid facerent.</i>	
<i>what they had done:</i>		<i>quid fēcissent.</i>	
<i>what they did:</i>		<i>quid fēcissent.</i>	
<i>what they would do:</i>		<i>quid factū essent.</i>	

i. The historical present may take either primary or secondary sequence.

**37. After the verbs mentioned in section 35, English abstract nouns such as *size, number, character, reason, time, place*, and many verbal nouns such as *opinion, intention*, are best rendered into Latin by dependent interrogative clauses ; as,**

<sup>1</sup> The chief exceptions are : (a) After a primary tense the perfect subjunctive takes the place of the imperfect ; as, *I know what he was doing : Scio quid fecerit.*

(b) After the perfect tense secondary tenses are used, even where we should expect primary tenses ; as, *I have shown what resources you have : Quae subsidia habērēs, exposul.* (This last peculiarity is found sometimes also in clauses of result.)

*You see the extent of the danger:* *Vidētis quantum sit periculum.*

*He reported his discoveries:* *Quae cōgnōvisset renūtiāvit.*

*They had learned the situation of affairs:* *Quō in locō rēs esset, cōgnōverant.*

*He could not discover their intentions:* *Quae factūri essent, cōgnōscere nōn poterat.*

**38. DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.**—Where two questions are connected by *or*, involving an alternative choice, we have a *disjunctive, alternative or double question* as opposed to a *simple question*. The first alternative is in Latin regularly introduced by *utrum* (*whether*) or *-ne*, the second by *an* (*or*). Such questions when dependent are of course in the subjunctive; as,

*Does duty or fear weigh more with them?* *Utrum apud eōs officium an timor plūs valet?*

*They were debating whether it was better to lead their forces against the enemy or to defend the camp.* *Dēliberābant cōpiāsne adversum hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere praeſtāret.*

**39. i. Or not,** in the direct disjunctive question, is *annōn*; in the indirect, *necne*.

ii. *Utrum* is often omitted in disjunctive questions, in which case *-ne* is sometimes used for *an* in indirect questions. In simple direct questions also *-ne* is sometimes omitted, especially in impassioned interrogations.

iii. *Yes* and *no* in answers are usually expressed by repeating the verb of the question (with or without *nōn*), or by some other emphatic word, e.g., *certē*, certainly; *sānē*, to be sure; *nōn*, no; *minimē*, by no means.

iv. In indirect questions, *nōnne*, *whether .. not*, is used only after *quaerō*.

v. It is of great importance, but not always easy, to distinguish the dependent interrogative clause from the dependent relative clause with the antecedent omitted, the latter being regularly in the indicative. For instance, in *They could not prevent what had been done*, and *I can go where they can go*, *what* and *where* are to be taken as relatives; in *They could not tell what had been done*, and *I can find out where they can go*, as interrogatives. After the verbs mentioned in section 35, however, doubtful clauses will generally be interrogative; after other verbs, generally relative.

## EXERCISE 5.

## A.

1. Who were leading the forces into our territories? 2. He asked what they wished to be done. 3. He told who had persuaded the soldiers to leave the camp. 4. Caesar had sent horsemen in advance to observe in what direction the enemy were marching. 5. Did you not know that he had asked whether (35, i.) the Roman people would make peace with the enemy? No (39, iii.). 6. Of whom did you ask the date of his return to the city? 7. He sent scouts across the river to ascertain what was going on in the enemy's camp. 8. Are you a Roman soldier or not (38; 39, i.)? What is your reason for coming into these territories? 9. Surely he will not ask whether (38) we have waged war with the Helvetians or not (39, i.)? 10. He could not find out what villages the Gauls had beyond the Rhone, or their size. 11. They wished to learn the strength and the position of the enemy's forces. 12. For what reason did the officers not lead the troops against the enemy to prevent their crossing the river? 13. He sent spies in order to learn with whom the leader of the Gauls had been holding communication.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 24, 25.*)

1. What kind of ship has been sent in advance? 2. With whom were they fighting? 3. Has the plan been discovered? 4. Are they not accustomed to use cavalry? 5. They had ascertained how great was the depth of the sea. 6. He asks where our men will land. 7. He perceives for what reasons we are unable to follow. 8. He observes what ~~real~~ the Romans are accustomed to display. 9. What keeps our men from leaping down into the waves? 10. He pointed out what was keeping our men from advancing. 11. Why do you hesitate? Surely you are not going to retreat? Are you not willing to leap down? 12. He pointed out how great a disgrace they were incurring (had incurred, would incur). 13. He was unable to ascertain the reason for the weapons being hurled. 14. All could see who was bearing the eagle; we cannot see in which hand he carries the eagle.

## THE PRESENT AND PERFECT PARTICIPLES.

40. The participle is a verbal adjective. In Latin, like the adjective, it is inflected to agree with its substantive, while, like the verb, it has distinctions of voice and tense, and has the same case relations as the verb from which it is formed.

The Present Participle has active force, whether formed from active or deponent verbs; the Perfect Participle when formed from active verbs has passive force, but when from deponents, active force.

41. The *time of the participle* is in Latin relative to that of its principal verb.

(a) The *Present Participle* denotes the *same time* as that of its verb.

(b) The *Perfect Participle* denotes time *prior* to that of its verb.

Hence whenever the English, as is so often the case, uses the present participle to denote something that takes place *before* the action expressed by its main verb, the present participle must not be used in Latin, but either the perfect participle or some equivalent; as,

*Returning to the harbor, he found the ships ready:* Ad portum reversus (or cum ad portum rediisset), nāvēs parātās invēnit.

*Being defeated in battle, they sent envoys:* Proeliō superāti, lēgātōs miserunt.

42. THE APPOSITIVE OR CIRCUMSTANTIAL PARTICIPLE.—The most important use of the participle in Latin is its use in the appositive relation to its substantive to define the circumstances of an action, expressing the relation of *time* or *cause* or (less frequently) of *condition* or *concession*; as,

(a) Present Participle :—*He is slain while fighting bravely*: **For-tissimē pūgnāns interficitur.**

*They slew Roscius while returning home*: **Domum redeuntem (or revertentem) Roscium occidērunt.**

(b) Perfect Participle Passive :—*Being repulsed by the cavalry, they hid in the woods*: **Repulsi ab equitātū, sē in silvās abdidērunt.**

*He brought aid to his brother, when hemmed in by the enemy*: **Frātri interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium tulit.**

*Though thrown into confusion, still they did not retreat*: **Perturbāti, tamen pedem nōn rettulērunt.**

*He will come if asked*: **Rogātus veniet.**

(c) Perfect Participle Deponent :—*Haring encouraged the soldiers, he leaped down*: **Cohortātus militēs, dēsiluit.**

*Fearing a scarcity of provisions, he returned*: **Inopiam frūmentī veritus, rediit.**

Notice that although the English participle is frequently preceded by such words as *while*, *when*, *if*, *though*, the corresponding Latin words are not used.

43. It is generally advisable to render this Latin participle more freely into English, using either

(a) a dependent clause introduced by *while*, *when*, *after*, *as*, *because*, *if*, *although*; or

(b) the prepositions *on*, *after*, with a verbal noun, especially the gerund in *-ing*; or

(c) a coordinate sentence followed by *and* or *but*; or

(d) a relative clause.

And conversely all such expressions are commonly best rendered into Latin (where possible) by the circumstantial participle. For instance, in place of the English sentences given in section 42, we may have, corresponding to the same Latin sentences :

*They slew Roscius while (or as) he was returning home, or, They slew Roscius, who was returning home.*

*On being repulsed by the cavalry (or, After their repulse by the cavalry), they hid in the woods.*

*He brought aid to his brother when he had been hemmed in by the enemy, or, who had been hemmed in by the enemy.*

*Though they were thrown into confusion, still they did not retreat, or, They were thrown into confusion but still did not retreat.*

*He will come if he is asked.*

*After he had encouraged the soldiers (or, After encouraging the soldiers) he leaped down, or, He encouraged the soldiers and leaped down.*

*He returned, because he feared a scarcity of provisions, or, As he feared a scarcity of provisions, he returned.*

#### 44. i. Other uses of the Participle are :

(a) As a substantive, chiefly in the oblique cases and especially in the plural ; as, *He followed up the fugitives : Fugientēs prōsecūtus est. Opportunity for resting is given to the wounded : Vulnerātis facultās quietēs datur.*

Note that *those fleeing, those wounded* is not in Latin *ii fugientēs or ii vulnerātī.*

(b) As an adjective ; as, *This state was large and flourishing : Haec civitās fuit ampla atque flōrēns. They thought they were ready : Sē paratōs esse arbitrātī sunt.*

*Parātus* and many other participles are in fact compared like adjectives.

(c) As a predicative complement of certain verbs, especially (a) the present participle with *videō, audiō, faciō*, and other verbs of perceiving or representing ; as, *He noticed a certain man writing : Animadvertisit quendam sribentem* ; and (b) the perfect participle passive with *habeō*, very like the English perfect with *have* ; as, *He sends forward the cavalry which he had collected from the whole province : Equitātum, quem ex cīnī prōvinciā coactum habēbat, praemittit.* (See section 182, ii.)

ii. The perfect participle of many deponent verbs appears often to have the force of the present ; for instance, there is no appreciable difference between *arbitrātus* and *existimāns*. Other words so used are *veritus, diffīsus, suspicātus, ūsus* ; as, *Suspecting that this would happen, Labienus was advancing, employing the same pretence : Quae fore suspicātus, Labienus eādem ūsus simulatiōne progrediēbātur.* In most cases the perfect is defensible as specifying the cause which leads to subsequent action.

iii. The participle occasionally has its force defined more exactly by the use of *nisi* (*except*), *ut* or *tamquam* (*as if*), *etsi* or *quamquam* (*although*), *utpote* (*inasmuch as*).

iv. The lack of a present participle passive is supplied by a subordinate clause with *dum*, *cum*, or *qui*; that of the perfect participle active (where a deponent verb is not available) by a subordinate verb with *cum*, *si*, *etsi*, etc., or by the ablative absolute construction (see section 46).

## EXERCISE 6.

## A.

1. They threw the ambassador into chains while he was attempting to speak. 2. The envoys, after being dismissed, returned home. 3. The cavalry made an attack upon the Gauls, who were scattered and in despair. 4. Thinking the ambassadors would not return, Caesar crossed the river. 5. After encouraging the cavalry the tribunes returned to Caesar. 6. He replied that the Germans would come if asked. 7. Our men attacked the enemy and slew a great number of them. 8. Promising to return in a short time, he followed up the fugitives. 9. He comes upon the soldiers, who are fighting bravely. 10. On his return he found the soldiers engaged in the work. 11. The cavalry, being ordered to cross the river, brought aid to our men, who were resisting with the utmost bravery. 12. He said that the cavalry, though thrown into confusion, still would not retreat.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 25, 26.*)

1. Alarmed by all these things, he began to retreat. 2. We saw the enemy approaching and the soldiers hurling missiles. 3. He will attack our men as they are disembarking (after they have landed). 4. He exhorts his men to follow and leaps into the sea. 5. The ships, after being removed a short distance, are urged forward. 6. Attacking the barbarians, who had been thrown into confusion, they put (them) to flight. 7. An attack was made on our men while they were hesitating. 8. They surrounded Caesar who was fighting vigorously. 9. The boats were filled with soldiers and stationed on the exposed flank. 10. If the troops are driven off and dislodged, they will incur disgrace. 11. While pursuing the enemy they could not keep their ranks. 12. As he leaps down he observes a soldier in difficulty. 13. Though hindered by the shoals, he was still able to reach the island.

## THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

45. In translating into Latin participial phrases (or their equivalents), such as have been described in sections 42 and 43, two difficulties often arise :

(a) The participle required is a perfect participle *active*, which does not exist in Latin (except in the case of deponents) ; as,

*Having heard this, he departed.*

*After receiving hostages, he made peace.*

*They made an attack and drove the enemy back.*

(b) The subject of the verb in the English subordinate clause cannot be brought into direct relation with any single word in the main sentence ; as,

*When the arms had been surrendered, he made peace.*

*Although the defenders were but few, he could not take the town.*

46. In such cases recourse may generally be had to the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE construction, in which a noun (or pronoun) and a participle in agreement are used, in the ablative case ; as,

*Having heard this, he departed : His rēbus auditīs, discessit.*

*After receiving hostages, he made peace : Obsidibus acceptis, pācem fecit.*

*They made an attack and drove the enemy back : Impetū factō, hostēs reppulērunt.*

*When the arms had been surrendered, he made peace : Trāditis armis, pācem fecit.*

*Although the defenders were but few, he could not take the town : Paucis defendantibus, oppidum expugnāre nō potuit.*

**47.** There is a similar nominative absolute construction in English ; as, *Their arms having been surrendered, he made peace.* But the English construction is of comparatively rare occurrence, and seldom furnishes a suitable translation for the Latin ablative absolute, which should rather be rendered freely, for instance by a change of voice, or according to the methods suggested in section 43, viz. :

- (a) a dependent clause introduced by *while, when, after, as, because, if, although* ;
- (b) the prepositions *on, after*, with a verbal noun, especially the gerund in *-ing* ; or,
- (c) a coordinate sentence followed by *and* or *but*.

**48.** In the cases described in section 45, we may also have in place of the ablative absolute, *dependent clauses* expressing *time, cause, concession, or condition* ; for instance, in place of the present participle, *cum* with the imperfect subjunctive or *dum* with the present indicative, and in place of the perfect participle, *cum* with the pluperfect subjunctive or *ubi* or *postquam* with the perfect indicative ; as, *Having heard this, he departed* : **Cum haec audisset** (or *ubi haec audivit*), **discessit**. *Although the defenders were but few, he could not take the town* : **Etsi pauci dēfendēbant, oppidum expūgnāre nōn potuit.**

i. Where also participles do not exist in Latin, these dependent clauses may replace an English participle ; as, *Being unable to cross the river, they returned* : **Cum flūmen trānsire nōn possent, revertērunt.**

**49.** Instead of the participle in the absolute construction, we often find a predicate noun or adjective, without any copula, as the verb *esse* has no present or perfect participle ; as,

*They attempt to cross against his will* : **Eō invitō trānsire cōnantur.**

*He formed a conspiracy in the consulship of Messala and Piso : Messalā atque Pisōne cōsulibus conjūratiōnem fēcit.<sup>1</sup>*

50. i. The ablative absolute construction is not used with the perfect participle passive of intransitive verbs, that is, of verbs which in the active do not govern an accusative ; as,

*Having reached the Rhine, they plunged into the river : Cum ad Rhēnum pervenissent, sē in flūmen praecepitāvērunt. (See sec. 56.)*

ii. In the case of the perfect participle of deponent verbs with active force, the ablative absolute is somewhat sparingly used, and chiefly with intransitive verbs ; as, *A great storm arose, and almost all the ships were wrecked : Māximā coortā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvēs afflictæ sunt.* So also *mōrtuus, profectus, secūtus.*

iii. It is contrary to Latin usage to have the substantive in the ablative absolute denote the same person or thing as is expressed in the principal clause : as, *When Commius landed they seized him* is not *Commio ē nāvī ēgressō, eum comprehendērunt*, but *Commium ē nāvī ēgressum comprehendērunt.<sup>2</sup>*

iv. *Nisi, ut, etc.* (seetion 44, iii.), may be used with the ablative absolute.

v. An ablative absolute with the negative is often equivalent to a phrase introduced by *without* : as, *Without losing any time he sets out : Nūllō tempore intermissō proficiscitur.*

vi. One ablative absolute may define the circumstances of another ; as, *As the ranks were in confusion from hearing the shouting, the rest took to flight : Reliqui, exauditō clāmōre perturbātis ordinib⁹, terga vertērunt.* An ablative absolute may be connected by a conjunction (e.g., *et, -que*) with another ablative absolute, but not with any other (even an equivalent) construction.

#### EXERCISE 7.

##### A.

1. Having settled these matters, he returned.
2. After encouraging the soldiers and giving the signal, he ordered an attack to

<sup>1</sup> Literally *He (being) unicilling; Messala and Piso (being) consuls.*

<sup>2</sup> Yet Caesar has several instances of the ablative absolute in such cases, often apparently to secure emphasis ; e.g., B. G., III. 14, 4; IV. 12, 1; 21, 6; V. 4, 3; 44, 6; VI. 4, 4; 43, 1; VII. 4, 1; 27, 2; 29, 1; 76, 3. This should not be imitated.

be made. 3. He set out against Caesar's will, after promising to return shortly. 4. As no enemy prevented (him), he led the legion back in safety. 5. On this being done, the Roman soldiers, drawing their swords, made an attack upon the enemy. 6. In the consulship of Marius many were put to death without a hearing. 7. After that assembly had been dismissed, the chief men returned to Caesar. 8. After he heard the prisoner he dismissed him (50, iii.). 9. When this battle was fought, the enemy, being impressed by the bravery of our soldiers, sent envoys to Caesar. 10. Having reached their territories, he set fire to all their villages and (then) returned to the camp.

*B. (Caesar, B. G. IV., 26, 27.)*

1. Making an attack, they surround the enemy. 2. After seizing the envoy and putting him in chains, they send for their chief men. 3. As our men were in distress, he ordered reinforcements to be sent. 4. They attack the enemy fiercely and put them to flight. 5. When the enemy were defeated he demanded hostages. 6. By hurling their weapons they throw the enemy into confusion. 7. Being unable to land (48, i.), they asked to be sent back. 8. We shall send Commius back and sue for peace. 9. As Commius is landing from the ship, they seize him (50, iii.). 10. On their promising to do this they were sent back. 11. After they have sued for peace and given hostages, they yet have begun to make war. 12. The leading men on assembling began to complain. 13. Sending the cavalry in advance, he orders the chief men to be seized. 14. They followed the standards and attacked the enemy.

VERBS COMPLETED BY THE DATIVE, GENITIVE OR ABLATIVE.  
THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE.

51. Many verbs followed by a direct object in English are represented in Latin by verbs that take, not the accusative, but some other of the oblique cases ; as,

*They forget the disagreement : Dissensiōnis oblīscuntur.*

*He persuades the state : Civitāti persuādet.*

*He used the timber and bronze : Māteriā atque aere ūtēbātur.*

Thus, while the English verb is transitive, the Latin equivalent is intransitive.

### 52. VERBS WHICH TAKE THE DATIVE.

Many verbs, chiefly denoting *advantage* or *disadvantage* or *disposition towards*, are followed by the dative. Of these the most important are :

*Approach, appropinquō.*

*Obey, pāreō, obtemperō.*

*Believe, crēdō.*

*Oppose, resist, resistō, (repūgnō, obsistō, occurrō).*

*Command,*

(= *order*), imperō, mandō.

*Pardon, ignōscō.*

(= *be in charge of*), prae sum.

*Persuade, persuādeō, suādeō.*

*Injure, damage, noceō.*

*Spare, parcō.*

*Meet, occurrō, so obviam eō.*

*Trust, fidō, cōfidō.*

Other verbs of this class are :

*Aid, assist, subveniō, succurrō.*

*Interrupt, interveniō.*

*Benefit, prōsum.*

*Marry (a man), nūbō.*

*Displease, displiceō.*

*Please, placeō.*

*Distrust, diffidō.*

*Relieve, succeed, succēdō.*

*Envy, invideō.*

*Satisfy, satisfaciō.*

*Favor, faveō, studeō.*

*Serve, serviō.*

*Heal, medeor.*

*Surpass, praestō.*

*Indulge, indulgeō.*

*Threaten, minor.*

### 53. VERBS WHICH TAKE THE GENITIVE.

(a) Some verbs meaning *to pity, remember* or *forget* are followed by the genitive ; namely :

*Pity, misereor, and miseret* (for which see section 91, d).

*Remember, be mindful of, memini.*

*Call to mind, recollect, reminiscor.*

*Forget, oblīscor.*

(b) Two impersonal verbs, **interest** and (rarely) **rēfert**, meaning *it concerns*, *it interests* (*it is of importance to*), take the genitive of the person interested ; as, *It concerns the state*: **Rei pūblicae interest**.

i. But instead of the genitive of the personal and reflexive pronouns, the ablative feminine of the possessives is used, namely, **meā**, **tuā**, **nostrā**, **vestrā**, **suā**; as, *This concerns me*: **Hōc meā interest** (or **rēfert**). In this usage **rēfert** is common.

ii. The *thing which is of importance* is expressed by a neuter pronoun, an infinitive (with or without a subject accusative) or a clause. The *degree of importance* is expressed by an adverb or by the genitive of price (see section 88); as, *Your safety is of great importance to me*: **Māgnī meā interest ut salvus sis.**

#### 54. VERBS WHICH TAKE THE ABLATIVE.

The following verbs (with their compounds) are followed by the ablative :

<i>Use, ūtor.</i>	<i>Enjoy, fruor.</i>	<i>Eat, vescor.</i>
<i>Perform, fungor.</i>	<i>Gain, obtain, potior.</i>	

Also verbs of *lacking*, **egeō**, **careō**.

55. i. That in the case of such verbs the irregularity is only apparent may be seen by observing the exact meaning of the verb; for instance, **serriō**, *am a slave (to)*; **persuīdeō**, *make it acceptable (to)*; **satisfaciō**, *do enough (for)*; **pātreō**, *am at hand (for)*; **resistō**, *stand in opposition (to)*; **prae sum**, *am at the head (with reference to)*; **ūtor**, *benefit myself (by means of)*; **potior**, *become powerful (by means of)*; **careō**, *be cut off (from)*; **oblivīscor**, *become dark (as regards) i.e., become forgetful (of)*.

ii. Accordingly it is not necessary that all verbs having the same English equivalent should take the same case. Thus **jubeō** (*command, order*) takes the accusative and infinitive, and **jurō** (*aid*), **laedō** (*injure*), **dēlectō** (*please*), **offendō** (*displease*), **miseror** (*pity*), and **recordor** (*recollect*), regularly take the accusative.

iii. Some of the verbs given in sections 52-54 are sometimes followed by a different case, especially when used in a different sense. Thus **imperō** (*command*) takes the dative, but **imperō** (*demand, require*) takes the accusative, both being united in, *He demands hostages of the enemy*, **Hostibus imperat obsidēs**. **Memini**, *remember (of recalling a person one has known)*, takes the accusative. **Potior**, *gain sovereignty over*, takes the genitive, chiefly in the

phrase *rērum potīrī*, to obtain control of affairs. And the verbs of remembering and forgetting regularly have the accusative in the case of neuter pronouns or neuter adjectives used substantively.

iv. Certain phrases having the value of verbs which take the dative have the same construction, e.g., *fidēm habeō = cōfīdō*.

v. *Utor* may take a second ablative used predicatively; as, *He used these men as guides*: *His ducibus ūtēbātur*.

vi. *Interdicō, debar*, takes a dative (or sometimes an accusative) of the person debarred, the ablative of the thing forbidden.

**56. THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE.**—In English only the active voice of an intransitive verb may be used. But in Latin even with intransitive verbs (*i.e.*, such as do not govern a direct object in the accusative), the passive may be used impersonally, that is, in the third person singular, and (in the compound tenses) in the neuter. The impersonal passive denotes merely the occurrence of an action without reference to the doer; as, *Pūgnātur*: *fighting takes place*, or *there is a fight*. *Ventam est*: *coming took place*. The usual English equivalent is the active voice, the subject being obtained from the context; as, *Ventum est*. *He* (or *we* or *they*, etc.) *came*. (See also 203, *d.*)

**57.** In Latin all intransitive verbs, if used in the passive, must be used impersonally, and this impersonal passive construction is used to render into Latin the passive of the verbs which take the dative<sup>1</sup> (section 52); as,

*Caesar is obeyed*: **Caesari pārētūr** (*i.e.*, *obedience is rendered to Caesar*).

*They asked to be spared*: **Ōrābant ut sibi parcerētūr** (*i.e.*, *that mercy might be shown to them*).

---

<sup>1</sup> The use of the impersonal passive construction with verbs which take the genitive or ablative occurs chiefly in the passive periphrastic conjugation. (See section 120, *ii.*)

*I had not been pardoned: Mihi nōn erat ignōtum (i.e., forgiveness had not been granted to me).*

Thus where a verb takes the dative in the active voice, that dative must be retained in the passive, and cannot become the subject.

## EXERCISE 8.

## A.

1. Caesar besought the soldiers of the tenth legion to remember their former valor.
2. He answered that Dumnorix was always opposing Caesar's plans and assisting the enemy.
3. These resources he is using in order to gain the sovereign power.
4. He says that the senate distrusted the Gauls and ordered them to obey Caesar's commands.
5. Exercising his usual (*sus*) energy, he promised to spare the Nervii.
6. To this embassy the answer was given that the Roman people could forget the old insult, but not the recent wrongs.
7. It is your interest (53, b) and the interest of all the citizens to obey the laws.
8. Word was brought that these tribes eat corn and flesh.
9. The soldiers whom Labienus commanded were persuaded not to injure the prisoners.
10. We are accustomed to pity those who obey our rule.
11. The states which oppose the Roman people cannot be pardoned.
12. All whom we met said that they lacked food.
13. He demanded (55, iii.) hostages from the other states.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 27-29.*)

1. They were approaching the upper harbor.
2. It happened that he commanded the whole army.
3. The enemy's indiscretion will not be forgiven.
4. Meanwhile he commands part of the cavalry to repair the vessel of which mention has been made.
5. All obey the commander in chief.
6. They are not accustomed to use grain.
7. We persuaded Caesar not to forgive the chief men.
8. He demanded ropes, anchors and other tackling from this state (55, iii.).
9. This storm damages the war vessels.
10. So great a storm arose that several vessels were damaged.
11. He commands our men to resist the cavalry.
12. The mainland was reached the same night.
13. They ask to be forgiven.

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**58.** Conditional sentences consist regularly of two clauses : (a) a subordinate clause containing some assumption and introduced by *si* (or a compound of *si*), and (b) a principal clause containing the conclusion which follows the assumption. The former is called the *Protasis*, the latter the *Apodosis*. The *Protasis* is often called the *conditional clause*.

**59.** One obvious distinction of conditions is that of (1) *present* or *past*, in which the question of fulfilment has already been decided, and (2) *future*, in which a possibility of fulfilment is always conceivable. In each of these, two forms of statement are in common use, making four main classes of conditional sentences.

**60. I.** In PRESENT OR PAST conditions, where *no hint* is given of the accordance of the supposed case with fact, but where it is merely stated that, granting the assumption, the conclusion logically follows, the *indicative* is used in both clauses, the tenses being those used for the same words if occurring in simple sentences ; as,

*If he thinks this, he is mistaken* : *Si hoc existimat, errat.*

*If I did wrong, I did it unwittingly* : *Si peccavi, insciens feci.*

*If they did this, they are not enemies* : *Si hoc fecerunt, non inimici sunt.*

**61. II.** In PRESENT OR PAST conditions, where we wish to represent the assumption (and consequently the conclusion also) as *contrary to fact*, the *subjunctive* is used in both clauses, the *imperfect subjunctive* for *present time*, and the *pluperfect subjunctive* for *past time* ; as,

*If he thought this (but he does not), he would be mistaken* : *Si hoc existimaret, erraret.*

*If he had said this (but he did not), he would have been mistaken : Si hōc dixisset, errāvisset.*

*Had my advice prevailed, we should to-day be free : Si meum cōsilium valuisset, hodiē liberi essēmus.*

i. The imperfect subjunctive may also refer to continued or repeated action in *past* time.

**62. III.** In FUTURE conditions, one class corresponds exactly to that given in section 60, where the *logical* result is emphasized. The English has in the protasis generally the *present* indicative, in the apodosis the future indicative (sometimes the imperative) ; the Latin has in the protasis the *future* or *future perfect* indicative, in the apodosis the future indicative (or imperative).

The difference in tenses is due to the fact that Latin in dependent clauses is more exact than English in indicating both the point of time (present, past or future), and also priority of action in relation to the main verb.

*If he thinks that, he will be mistaken : Si hōc existimābit, errābit.*

*If he does that, he will receive a reward : Si hōc fēcerit, prae-mium cōsequētur. (The doing must precede the receiving.)*

*If they cross the river, hold your ground : Si flūmen trānsierint, sustinēte.*

**63. IV.** In the other class of FUTURE conditions, where a *conceivable* case is put less vividly,<sup>1</sup> the English has in both clauses *should* or *would* (or in the protasis it may have the past subjunctive or *were to*) ; the Latin has the *present subjunctive* in both clauses ; as,

*If he were to say this (or If he said this), he would be mistaken : Si hōc dīcat, erret.*

*Time would fail me, if I should resolve to describe everything : Si velim omnia dēscribere, diēs mē dēficiāt.*

---

<sup>1</sup> The two classes are often distinguished as the *more vivid* and the *less vivid* form of future conditions.

**64.** i. Many departures from these four forms are found, especially other combinations of tenses. Of the cases where the mood is varied, the most important is in conditions contrary to fact (section 61), where *possum*, *dēbeō*, *oportet*, and the periphrastic conjugations (sections 120 and 123) are regularly used in the indicative instead of in the subjunctive; as, *If Caesar had set out, he could have crossed the river: Caesar, sī profectus esset, flūmen trānsire potuit.*<sup>1</sup>

ii. Alternative conditions are introduced by **sīve . . . sīve** (or **seu . . . seu**) *whether . . . or*, which follow the rules for *sī* as regards mood and tense; as, *It will be an easy task, whether they remain or set out: Facilis erit rēs, seu manēbunt seu proficiscetur.*

*Whether . . . or* in this sense should be carefully distinguished from *whether . . . or* represented by *utrum . . . an* (section 38). In the former case we can always add *in either case*, or change to *no matter whether . . . or*.

iii. For *if not*, **sī nōn**, **sī minus** and **nisi** are found. *Nisi (unless)* is used to mark an exception, or after negatives. *Sī minus* is used where the verb is to be supplied from the context.

iv. Two mutually exclusive conditions are introduced by **sī . . . sīn**, *if . . . but if*. For *but if not*, where the verb is omitted, *sīn minus* or *sīn aliter* is used.

v. An important special type of the present or past logical condition (section 60) is the so-called *general condition*, which states what is habitual in any one of a series of recurrent actions. For present time the *perfect*<sup>2</sup> indicative is usual in the protasis, the present indicative in the apodosis; for past time the *pluperfect*<sup>2</sup> indicative in the protasis and the imperfect indicative in the apodosis; as, *If any crime is committed, the Druids fix the penalty: Si quod est admissum facinus, Drūdēs poenam constituant. If ever they began to despair, they would betake themselves to the nearest towns: Si quandō dēspērāre cooperant, sē in proxima oppida recipiēbant.*

vi. For *sī* translated by *in the hope that, to see whether*, see section 177.

---

<sup>1</sup> In poetry and rhetorical prose the indicative of other verbs also is sometimes found in the apodosis of conditions contrary to fact.

<sup>2</sup> The perfect and pluperfect are used on the same principle as the future perfect in section 62.

vii. Participles and adjectives may be used in place of the regular protasis to express condition; as, *He will come, if asked: Rogātus veniet. If we keep together we shall be a match for them: Universi iis erimus.*

viii. Another favorite classification of the conditional clauses is threefold:

(a) Logical conditions (past, present or future) combining classes I. and III. above. Indicative in both clauses.

(b) Ideal or contingent conditions (future)—the same as class IV. above. Present subjunctive in both clauses.

(c) Unreal conditions (present or past)—the same as class II. above. Imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses.

#### EXERCISE 9.

##### A.

1. If Casticus should seize the supreme power in his state, Caesar would wage war against him. 2. If our troops defeat the enemy, the Belgians will at once send ambassadors to Caesar. 3. If the Gauls had been conquered by Caesar, they would have immediately sent ambassadors to him concerning peace. 4. If a dispute arises among them (64, v.), the chief men decide (it). 5. The Germans would not now be carrying on war with the Gauls if Arioivistus had been defeated by the Roman troops. 6. If this is reported to Arioivistus, he will inflict the severest punishment on the hostages. 7. If the general had not sent forward three cohorts, the enemy would have gained the victory and our soldiers would now be in the greatest peril. 8. The Helvetians would return to their territories if the Roman people were to conclude peace with them. 9. Unless Caesar enrolls two legions in that place, he will not be able to carry on the war successfully with the Gauls. 10. If the enemy had set fire to all their towns and villages and burnt up all their corn, they would not have been able (64, i.) to return. 11. If Caesar meets with favorable weather, he will weigh anchor; but if not (64, iv.), he will return. 12. If the Germans had made an attempt to cross the Rhine, Caesar would have marched against them with two legions.

*B. (Caesar, B. G. IV., 28-30.)*

1. If the ships have been wrecked, they are useless. 2. If a storm had not arisen, the chiefs would not have renewed the war. 3. If we cast anchor, the ships will be filled with the waves. 4. If a conspiracy were to be formed, the army would cross over to Gaul. 5. If vessels were wanting, the danger would be great. 6. If we conquer these, no one will cross over. 7. Had corn been provided, they would have wintered in Britain. 8. If the campaign should be prolonged, they would leave the camp. 9. If the moon was full, the tides were high. 10. If the legions are brought over without baggage, the camp will be smaller. 11. If this had happened, they would be confident that no one would make war.

---

## CLUSES OF CONCESSION. CLUSES OF PROVISO.

## CONDITIONAL CLUSES OF COMPARISON.

**65. CLUSES OF CONCESSION** (or **ADVERSATIVE CLUSES**) are subordinate clauses which concede or admit something in spite of which the statement in the principal clause still holds good.

(a) Cluses introduced by *although*, meaning *in spite of the fact that*, or *whereas*, are rendered into Latin by *quamquam*, *etsi* or *tamen* with the *indicative*, or by *cum* with the *subjunctive*; as,

*Although the difficulty was very great, he determined to lead his army across:* *Etsi summa erat difficultas, tamen traducere exercitum constituit.*

*The Romans, in spite of being weary with fighting, yet advanced:* *Romanī, quamquam proeliō fessi erant, tamen prōcedunt.*

*He kept himself in camp, although the enemy every day gave him an opportunity to fight:* *Castris sēsē tenēbat, cum hostēs cotidiē pugnandi potestatēm facerent.*

*He was poor, whereas (or while) he might have been very rich:* *Fuit pauper, cum dīvitissimus esse posset,*

(b) Clauses introduced by *even though*, *even if*, *even granting*, are rendered into Latin by *etsi* or *etiamsi* with the *indicative* or *subjunctive*, according to the rules for the protasis of conditional sentences (sections 60-63), or by *ut* or *nē* with the *subjunctive*; as,

*Even if he cannot show gratitude, he at least can feel it:* **Etiamsi** referre gratiam nōn potest (section 60), *habēre certē potest.*

*Even if my disposition did not bid me, necessity compels me to speak the truth:* **Vēra loqui, etsi meum ingenium nōn movēret** (section 61), *necessitās cōgit.*

*Even supposing everything should turn out contrary to expectation, we are very powerful in ships:* **Ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acci-dant, plūrimum nāvibus possimus.**

(c) Clauses introduced by *although*, meaning *however much, no matter how*, are rendered into Latin by *quamvis* with the *subjunctive* (usually in the present tense); as, *However great expectation may be (or Although expectation be great), yet you will surpass it:* **Quamvis sit māgna exspectatiō, tamen eam vīnē.**

**66.** i. The impersonal verb *licet* and the *subjunctive* (see section 143, fn.) is often used with the force of *even though*.

ii. *Quamvis* is sometimes joined with a single word, the predicate of the subordinate clause being understood; as, *However few they are, they venture to advance:* **Quamvis pauci** (supply *sint*) *adire audent.*

iii. *Quamquam* sometimes introduces an independent clause, and may then be rendered *and yet*.

iv. Only in class (a) is it always certain that what is conceded is a fact.

v. For the concessive ablative absolute see section 48, and for concessive relative clauses, section 171.

**67.** CLAUSES OF PROVISO are subordinate clauses embodying some stipulation. They are introduced in English by *provided*, or *if only*, or *so long as*; in Latin commonly by *dum*, *dummodo* or *modo* with the *subjunctive* (usually in the present tense); as, *Let them hate, provided (or so long as) they fear:* **Ōderint dum metuant.**

i. The negative in clauses of proviso is *nō*.

**68. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON** are subordinate clauses containing a comparison to some imaginary state of affairs. Such clauses are introduced in English by *as if*; in Latin by *quasi*, *tamquam si*, *velut si*, *ut si*, *ac si*, or by *tamquam* or *velut* alone. These are followed by the subjunctive, the sequence of tenses being observed (i.e., present or perfect subjunctive after the primary tenses, imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive after the secondary tenses); as, *We shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus just as if he were present*: *Ariovistī crudelitatem, velut si cōram adsit, horrēmus.*<sup>1</sup>

i. *Quasi*, *tamquam*, *ut* and *velut* are used with a similar force with participles; as, *They halted as if bidden by a voice from heaven*: *Restiterunt tamquam caelestī vōce jussi.*

## EXERCISE 10.

## A.

1. Although he saw that the legions were being hard pressed, he was unwilling to order the soldiers to retreat.
2. Even if Caesar were in command of the army, he would not be able to defeat the enemy.
3. Provided that (67) the enemy do not learn our numbers, we shall attack them to-morrow.
4. Many remain in the camp, as if (68) they were unwilling to return to Gaul.
5. If Caesar comes up with the enemy, he will easily defeat them, no matter how (65, c) brave and numerous they may be.
6. In spite of their having taken up their position on the higher ground, the enemy could not withstand the attacks of our men.
7. Although he had now come in sight of the army, he did not cease from his flight.
8. The cavalry quickly crossed the river, just as if (68) they had been instructed (to do so).
9. Though you can persuade these men to send envoys, you cannot make them friends.
10. Even though he should have met with suitable weather, he would not have sailed for Britain.
11. Whereas they might return without danger, they are unwilling to set out.
12. The enemy sent hostages at once, as if (68, i.) afraid of Caesar's vengeance.

---

<sup>1</sup> In all such clauses, both English and Latin, the verb of the real apodosis has been suppressed; as, *We shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus as (we should shudder) if he were present*: *Ariovistī crudelitatem, velut (horreāmus) si cōram adsit, horrēmus.*

B. (*Cæsar*, B. G. IV., 31, 32.)

1. Although the rest of the ships had been repaired, he had not yet set out.
2. Even if they had given hostages, he would not have set out.
3. Although they were reaping, they had not laid aside their arms.
4. Although he suspects that this has happened, he orders the ships to be repaired.
5. In spite of the fact that all the vessels had been lost, he did not suspect that the enemy would form this plan.
6. Even if we are hard pressed by the enemy, we shall not surrender.
7. Although the ships have been wrecked, we shall not use their timber.
8. The enemy were hurling weapons from every quarter, whereas our men, being crowded together, were with difficulty holding their own.
9. Even if a larger cloud of dust were to be seen, he would not learn our plan.

---

#### USES OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

69. The DIRECT OBJECT of a transitive verb (whether active or deponent) is put in the accusative ; as,

*They slay the man : Hominem interficiunt.*

*He saw the forces of the enemy : Hostium cōpiās cōspicātus est.*

*He builds a bridge : Pontem facit.*

i. The direct object is that which is (a) affected or apprehended, or (b) caused or produced, by the action of the verb.

ii. Some verbs (chiefly verbs of emotion) which are intransitive in English are represented by transitive verbs in Latin, such as *horrēre* (*shudder at*), *dolēre* (*grieve over*), *rīdere* (*laugh at*), *sperāre* (*hope for*), *exspectāre* (*wait for*), *tacēre* (*be silent about*) ; as, *They shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus : Crūdēlitàtem Ariovistī horrent.*

iii. Many intransitive verbs (chiefly verbs of motion) become transitive when compounded with prepositions (especially *circum*, *praeter* and *trāns*) ; as,

*They cross the river : Flūmen trānseunt.*

*The Helvetians meet Caesar : Helvētiī Caesarem conveniunt.*

Compare in English such verbs as *overrun*, *undergo*. (See section 78, v. a.)

iv. A few transitive verbs compounded with *trāns* take two accusatives in the active, one governed by the verb and the other by the preposition; as, *He leads his army across the river*: *Flūmen exercitum trādūcit*. (The preposition may, however, be repeated; as, *Trāns flūmen exercitum trādūcit*.) In the passive the accusative governed by the preposition may be retained.

v. Verbs of *making*, *choosing*, *calling*, *electing*, *considering* and *showing* take two accusatives of the same person or thing, one being the direct object, and the other a predicate noun or adjective; as,

*He calls the Ædui brothers*: *Aeduōs frātēs appellat*. *They let him know*: *Eum certiōrem faciunt*. *They choose these as their leaders*: *Hōs ducēs dēligunt sibi*. *They consider this a mark of valor*: *Hōc proprium virtūtis existimant*.

In the passive both direct object and predicate become nominative; as,

*Ariovistus was called friend*: *Ariovistus amīcus appellātus est*.

vi. Verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, *teaching*, and *concealing* may take two accusatives, the one of the person and the other of the thing; as, *Caesar demands corn of the Ædui*: *Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flagitat*. *I concealed my opinion from him*: *Eum sententiā cēlāvi*. In the passive one accusative, usually of the thing, may be retained. All these verbs, however, may take a prepositional phrase in place of one of the accusatives, as *petō*, *postulō* and *quaerō* regularly do.

vii. In poetry, the passive of verbs of *clothing* is used with a reflexive or 'middle' force, and takes a direct object; as, *Galeam induitur*: *He puts on (himself) the helmet*.

The perfect participle passive of some other verbs also is found with the same accusative of the direct object that the active voice might take; as, *Per pedēs trājectus lōra*: *Having thongs put through his feet*.

#### 70. The accusative is used with the following PREPOSITIONS:

*ad, to*; *adversus, adversum, against*; *ante, before*; *apud, near, at*; *circā, circum, around*; *circiter, about*; *cis, citrā, on this side*

of; **contrā**, opposite to, against; **ergā**, towards; **extrā**, outside; **infrā**, below; **inter**, between, among; **intrā**, within; **jūxtā**, near; **ob**, on account of; **penes**, in the power of; **per**, through; **pōne**, post, behind, after; **praeter**, past, except; **prope**, near; **propter**, on account of; **secundum**, after, following; **suprā**, above; **trāns**, across; **ultrā**, beyond; **versus**, towards.

The accusative is also used with **in**, **into** or **in**, and **sub**, **under**, when they express motion towards, and usually with **subter**, **beneath**, and **super**, **above**. These four also take the ablative (section 108).

i. The adverbs *propius* and *proximē*, *prīdiē* and *postrīdiē*, and the adjectives *propior* and *proximus* sometimes take the accusative.

**71. THE SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE** (except the historical infinitive, section 112) is put in the accusative; as,

*He answered that Cæsar was doing wrong: Respondit Cæsarem injuriam facere.*

*It is dangerous for the Germans to cross the Rhine: Germānōs Rhēnum trānsire est periculōsum.*

**72. COGNATE ACCUSATIVE.**—Intransitive verbs often take an accusative to define more clearly their meaning. This is either a substantive (generally modified by an adjective) of kindred meaning and often of kindred derivation, or more frequently a neuter pronoun or adjective used substantively; as, *We shall live a safer life: Tūtiōrem vitam vivēmus. He makes almost the same mistakes: Eadem ferē peccat.*

This is the origin of the adverbial use of *multum*, *nihil*, *quid*, *quārum*, etc.; as, *He has very great power: Plūrimum potest.*

i. There are also a few isolated phrases (used adverbially) which are closely connected with the cognate accusative, such as *māxi-mā partem*, *for the most part*.

**73. ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.**—In poetry, largely through Greek influence,<sup>1</sup> the accusative is used to denote the part of the body affected; as, *Tremit artūs: He trembles in his limbs. Os deō similis: In face like to a god.*

**74. The accusative is used in EXCLAMATIONS**, with or without an interjection; as, *Ah, wretched me: Mē miserum or O mē miserum.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Hence this is often called the Greek accusative.

75. For the use of the accusative to denote DURATION OF TIME, EXTENT OF SPACE, and LIMIT OF MOTION, see sections 125, 128, and 129.

## EXERCISE 11.

## A.

1. The Gauls had already led three-fourths of their troops across (69, iv.) that river. 2. He learned that they had all encamped within those forests and were there waiting for (69, ii.) the approach of the Romans. 3. It is very easy for our forces to march through these districts. 4. The ships were carried down towards (*ad*) the lower part of the island, which is nearer (70, i.) the west. 5. The tribes which dwell on this side the Rhine have been made tributary. 6. He crossed the river, and having attacked the enemy, he began to storm the city. 7. They are mistaken, if they hope for (69, ii.) aid from us. 8. Before his arrival they had seized the country (*loca*) around the forest which the Greeks call Oreynia. 9. Because of their fear, they concealed (69, vi.) everything from Caesar. 10. Perceiving how much (72) power he had, we determined to wait for reinforcements. 11. On being asked their opinion (69, vi.) they made no answer. 12. For (*ob*) the same reason, he did not trust the Gauls much (72).

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 32, 33.*)

1. On account of the large number of the enemy they adopt this plan. 2. Up to that time they called this legion the seventh. 3. This will make the camp larger. 4. He observed that part of the legion had marched in that direction. 5. They suddenly attack the outposts. 6. They are leaving the field (*lit. battle*), and are betaking themselves to the camp. 7. He reports that this is the custom among all the barbarians. 8. He suspects that this will make the ranks uncertain. 9. They informed the enemy that the cavalry would surround the legion. 10. It is time for the rest of the cohorts to arm themselves. 11. Before the battle he had ordered a squadron of cavalry to fight among the infantry.

## USES OF THE DATIVE.

**76.** The Dative case is used to express the indirect or remote connection of a person or thing with the action, feeling, or quality expressed by a verb or adjective. There are three main uses:<sup>1</sup> to express (1) the indirect object, (2) the person interested, (3) the purpose served. The dative may generally be rendered by *to* or *for*.

**77. THE INDIRECT OBJECT**, completing the meaning of a verb by denoting a person or thing indirectly affected, is put in the dative; as,

*They yield to Caesar : Caesari cēdunt.*

*They granted lands to the Germans : Germānis agrōs dedērunt.*

**78. i.** The dative of the indirect object is found (*a*) with intransitive verbs, (*b*) with transitive verbs in connection with a direct object.<sup>2</sup>

**ii.** Closely allied to the use with verbs is the use of the **DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES**, whose meaning it completes by denoting that to which the feeling or quality is directed; as,

*He was friendly to the Helvetians : Helvētiis erat amicus.*

Such adjectives are those meaning *near*, *friendly*, *like*, *useful*, *easy*, *agreeable*, *known*, and their opposites. Many of these, however, admit other constructions, especially a preposition (*ad* or *in*) with the accusative. The dative is also found with adverbs of like meaning.

**iii.** Often in English, especially with verbs of *giving*, *promising* and *telling*, the preposition *to* is not used, and the indirect object is in form indistinguishable from the direct; as, *He gave the soldiers the signal : Militibus sīgnūm dedit.* *He told Cicero he would return : Cicerōnī dixit sē reversūrum.*

---

<sup>1</sup> This division is not fundamental, but is convenient for practical purposes.

<sup>2</sup> The direct object of course becomes the subject in the passive voice, the indirect object remaining.

iv. Of especial importance are those cases where, because the usual translation is somewhat inexact, a Latin intransitive verb with the indirect object corresponds to an English transitive verb with the direct object. (See section 52.)

v. Another important usage is the DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS. Where an English verb with a preposition and its object is represented in Latin by a verb compounded with the corresponding preposition (e.g., *adeō* = *I go to*), difficulty often arises in determining the case of the Latin noun.

Three different constructions are found, for the use of which no invariable rules can be given; the student must depend upon observation and authority.

(a) The compound is sometimes followed by the same case as the preposition would take. (For the accusative see section 69, iii. and iv.; for the ablative, section 93.)

(b) More often (and especially in the literal local sense) the prefixed preposition is repeated with the noun; as, *They sally out from the camp*: **Ex castris ērumpunt**. *He came up to the camp*: **Ad castra accessit**. *He converses with him*: **Cum ēo colloquitur**. *They put everything into the fire*: **Omnia in ignem inferunt**.

(c) But very often also, in place of the preposition and noun, Latin has the dative (to which in the case of transitive compounds may be added an accusative of the direct object). This dative means literally *with reference to*;<sup>1</sup> as,

*He comes beneath the roof*: **Tēctō succēdit** (literally, *He comes beneath, with reference to the roof*).

*He puts friendship before everything*: **Amīcitiam omnibus rēbus antepōnit** (literally, *He puts friendship in front, with reference to everything*).

This usage is especially common with compounds of *ad*, *ante*, *con-*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *sub*, *super*; generally where the compound is not used in a literal sense; as, *He commanded the cavalry*: **Equitatui pracerat**<sup>2</sup> (more literally, *He was at the head of the*

<sup>1</sup> In no case should this dative be regarded as depending on the preposition, but rather on the whole verb.

<sup>2</sup> Most of the compounds of *sum* are used in a similar way.

*cavalry). He inspired the soldiers with hope : Spem intulit militibus (more literally, He put hope into the soldiers). He put Brutus over the fleet : Brūtum classi praefecit.*

vi. A few verbs, such as *dānō* and *circumdā*, admit a double construction: (1) dative and accusative, (2) accusative and ablative; as, *He presented the plunder to the soldiers : Praedam militibus dōnāvit. They presented him with the citizenship : Eum civitāte dōnāvērunt.*

vii. In the poets the dative of indirect object is extended to include the idea of motion towards<sup>1</sup> (see section 125), and is also used with verbs of *nearness, union, difference and contention.*

**79. THE DATIVE OF INTEREST** denotes the person or thing concerned (especially that benefited or harmed). It is really identical with the dative of the indirect object, but the connection is looser and the dative complement not so essential to the verb; as,

*He ordered each to take thought for himself : Sibi quemque consulere jussit.*

*I do not ask this for myself : Neque mihi haec quaerō.<sup>2</sup>*

**80.** Besides this simple use (often called the *datire of advantage or disadvantage*), the dative of interest includes :

(a) The dative with verbs of *taking away* or *warding off*, with which it is translated by *from ; us*, *They are taking from me my liberty : Mihi libertātem ēripiunt.*

(b) The **DATIVE OF REFERENCE**, modifying the sentence as a whole and denoting a person indirectly interested rather than actually affected. This includes :

i. Many cases where English would use a *possessive*: *us, Pulio's shield is pierced : Trānsfigitur scūtum Puliōni* (more nearly, *Pulio gets his shield pierced*).

ii. The person *in whose eyes* : as, *She is beautiful to many : Fōrmōsa est multis. They wished to be blameless in Caesar's eyes : Caesari pūrgāti esse volēbant.*

<sup>1</sup> This, some grammarians contend, was the original force of the dative.

<sup>2</sup> *For*, meaning *in defence of*, is expressed by *prō* with the ablative.

iii. Participles expressing the point of view : as, *The first town as you come from Epirus*: **Oppidum primum venientibus ab Epirō.**

iv. The dative with interjections ; as, *Woe to the conquered* : **Vae victis.**

(c) The ETHICAL DATIVE, confined to personal pronouns, and indicating a person conceived to be interested in the statement. It is chiefly used in colloquial expressions of emotion, and often answers to the English *pray* or *bless me*. Here belongs the expression *sibi velle* ; as, *What does he mean ? Quid sibi vult ?*

(d) THE DATIVE OF THE APPARENT AGENT with the gerundive, to indicate the person interested, and hence presumably the agent ; as,

*Everything had to be done by Caesar* : **Caesari omnia erant agenda.**

i. This dative is sometimes found (especially in poetry) with other forms of the passive, chiefly the compound ones.

ii. To avoid ambiguity the gerundive may have *ab* and the ablative in place of the dative of agent ; as, *I must show him gratitude* : **Ei à me referenda est grātia.**

(e) The DATIVE OF POSSESSOR, chiefly with the verbs *sum* and *dēsum*, to denote the person interested as owner ; as, *They state that they have nothing* : **Dēmōnstrant sibi nihil esse.**

31. THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE is a predicative dative, denoting the purpose served (that which something tends or is intended to be), and is usually accompanied by another dative of the person interested (the so-called *double dative construction*) ; as,

*They choose a place for the camp* : **Locum castris dēligunt.**

*It was a great hindrance to the Gauls* : **Gallis māgnō erat impedimentō.**

*They were coming to the aid of the Nervii* : **Auxiliō Nerviis veniēbant.**

*He leaves five cohorts for the defence of the camp* : **Quinque cohortēs castris praesidiō relinquit.**

i. This dative is especially common with the verb *sum* (after which it has almost the force of the ordinary predicate noun), and is found also with *fīō*, *veniō*, *mittō*, *relinquō*, *dō*. The nouns so used are generally of a semi-abstract nature, and are always in the singular, some of the commonest being *auxiliō*, *praesidiō*, *subsidiō*, *ūsui*, *impedimentō*, *cūrae*, *salūti*, *odiō*.

## EXERCISE 12.

## A.

1. He consulted the welfare of the troops whom Labienus commanded. 2. He said all these matters would be an object of concern to him. 3. It is well known to all that the departure of the Belgians was like a rout. 4. The soldiers told Labienus that Caesar had always shown special indulgence to this legion. 5. Word was brought to the lieutenant that the general had left two cohorts as a protection to the ships. 6. They said they preferred death to slavery, and that they would oppose themselves to the enemy. 7. He found that traders have (80, e) no access to these tribes. 8. He asked what Caesar meant (80, c), and why he had demanded hostages of the Gauls. 9. To these envoys Caesar made answer that he could have (80, e) no friendship with the Germans. 10. A centurion, who had participated in many engagements, was in command of the troops. 11. He ordered (*imperō*) the soldiers not to surround the camp with a trench nor (28, ii.) to go to the assistance of Labienus. 12. Perceiving that they had become suspected in our eyes (80, b, ii.), they threw themselves at Caesar's (80, b, i.) feet.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 33, 34.*)

1. They point out to Caesar that an opportunity is given to all. 2. He sent the cavalry to the assistance of the infantry. 3. Messengers are sent out to all the barbarians. 4. The small number of the enemy was unknown to our men. 5. Time had not been left for these things. 6. For several days he had fears (*timeō*) for our soldiers. 7. They were drawing near (*appropinquō*) to the camp; they betake themselves to the camp. 8. He had thought this messenger most faithful to Caesar. 9. The noise of

the chariots inspires (*infrō*) fear in the horses. 10. Help will be brought to the Romans. 11. The chariots were of great service to the enemy. 12. He names (*dicō*) a day for the battle. 13. They are not accustomed to make war on the Romans. 14. The cavalry had to leap to their feet.

### USES OF THE GENITIVE.

**82.** The Genitive case is used for the more exact limiting of nouns, and has thus an adjectival force. It is also used to limit certain adjectives, and (by analogy) to complete certain verbs. The genitive is regularly translated (a) by the English possessive case, (b) by means of the preposition *of*, or (c) by means of the phrase *as regards*, or some equivalent preposition.

**83.** The POSSESSIVE GENITIVE is used with nouns to denote the owner ; as,

*The lands of the Helvetians : Helvētiōrum agri.*

i. The possessive genitive may be used in the predicate with *sum*, *fīo*, etc. ; as, *Gaul does not belong to the Roman people : Neque Gallia est populi Rōmāni.*

ii. This predicative use is often found denoting the person whose property, duty, or custom the subject is, especially when the subject is an infinitive or a clause ; as, *It is the part (or duty) of a wise man to obey the laws : Sapientis est lēgibus pārēre.* So *Sapientiae est : It is a mark of wisdom.* But instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns the neuter possessives are used ; as, *It is my duty (or my way) : Meum est.*

iii. The word on which the genitive depends is frequently omitted, regularly so if it has been used previously in the sentence ; as, *He had been in the army of Sulla, and afterwards in that of Crassus : In exercitū Sullae et posteā in Crassi fuerat.*

iv. This genitive is used with *causd*, *instar*, *p̄lidiē* and *postridiē*.

**84.** The SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE is used with nouns expressing action or feeling, to denote the person who acts or feels ; as,

*The flight of the Gauls : Fuga Gallōrum.*

*Caesar's anxiety : Sollici ūdō Caesaris.*

i. In all such cases, if the action or feeling were expressed by a verb, the noun in the genitive would be its subject ; as, *The Gauls fled* : **Galli fūgērunt.**

85. The OBJECTIVE GENITIVE is used with nouns denoting action or feeling, to denote that to which the action or feeling is directed ; as,

*The storming of the camp* : **Expūgnātiō castrōrum.**

*The fear of death* : **Metus mortis.**

i. In such cases, if the action or feeling were expressed by a verb, the noun in the genitive would be its object ; as, *They storm the camp* : **Expūgnant castra.**

ii. This construction is often used when there would be no corresponding Latin verb with the accusative, but where we should expect a dative or ablative or prepositional phrase ; and in such cases it will constantly be found that the English equivalent is a phrase containing some other preposition than *of*, but one that, as a rule, is equivalent to *as regards* or *as to* ; as,

*Confidence in (as regards) one's self* : **Sui fidūcia.** *Exemption from (as regards) military service* : **Militiae vacātiō.** *War with the Veneti* : **Bellum Venetōrum.** *Reputation for valor* : **Opīniō virtutis.** *Danger to the cavalry* : **Periculum equitū.<sup>1</sup>**

iii. Both the objective and the subjective genitive may modify the same noun ; as, *The wrongs done by the Helvetians to the Roman people* : **Helvētiōrum injūriae populi Rōmānī.**

iv. Prepositional phrases<sup>2</sup> and possessive pronominal adjectives are sometimes used instead of the objective genitive ; as, *Injuries to men* : **In hominēs injūriæ.** *Danger to himself* : **Periculum suum (for sui).**

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare *Sibi cōfidere, militiā vacāre, cum Venetis bellāre, dē virtute opināri, periculōsum equitib⁹.*

<sup>2</sup> Nouns in Latin are, as a rule, joined to each other by prepositions only when the word on which the prepositional phrase depends is of verbal origin, and even then but very seldom.

86. The PARTITIVE GENITIVE is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken.

The genitive is used with nouns, pronouns, numerals (especially ordinals and *milia*), adjectives (especially comparatives and superlatives), and occasionally with a few adverbs; as,

*Part of the soldiers*: **Pars militum.**

*Which of you?* **Quis vestrum?**

*Two of the states*: **Duae civitatum.**

*Three miles* (lit. *three thousands of paces*): **Tria milia passuum.**

*The bravest of all these*: **Hōrum omnium fortissimi.**

*Least of all*: **Minimē omnium.**

i. The partitive genitive often depends on neuter pronouns or adjectives used substantively (but only in the nominative or the accusative without a preposition); e.g., *nihil*, *tantum*, *quantum*, *plūs*, *minus*, *quid*, *quod*, *aliquid*, *id*, *hōc*, and also the adverbs *satis* and *parum* used substantively. In most of these cases the English equivalent omits *of*; as, *No time*: **Nihil spatii.** *Less hesitation*: **Minus dubitatiōnis.** *They carried off what corn they could*: **Frūmenti quod potuērunt avexērunt.** *This measure of consolation*: **Hōc sōlāciī.** *Sufficient protection*: **Satis praesidii.**<sup>1</sup>

ii. In other cases an adjective used substantively regularly agrees in gender with the partitive genitive depending on it; as, *Many of the ships*: **Multae nāvium.**

iii. With adjectives and pronouns the partitive idea is often expressed by prepositions, chiefly *ex* or *dē*, but also *inter*, *ante*, *apud* and *in*. Especially is this the case with *ūnus*, *pauci* and *quidam*; as, *One of his sons*: **Ūnus ē filiis.** *A few of our men*: **Pauci dē nostris.**

iv. The partitive genitive should not be used in the following cases:

(a) When, though English uses *of*, not a part but the whole is taken; as,

*To all of us*: **Omnibus nōbis.** *All of whom*: **Qui omnēs.** *Three hundred of us have conspired*: **Trecenti conjūrāvimus.**

<sup>1</sup> This genitive may be an adjective of the first and second declensions used substantively, but not of the third; as, *No evil*: **Nihil mali**, but *Nothing greater*: **Nihil mājus.**

(b) To denote the whole, the remainder, or any local part of anything, as the top, middle, bottom, beginning. Here Latin idiom prefers an adjective in agreement, which regularly precedes the substantive ; as,

*The whole of Gaul : Tōta Gallia. The rest of the struggle : Reliquum certāmen. The top of the hill : Summus collis. The middle of the river : Medium flūmen. At the beginning of spring : Prīmō vēre.*

87. The GENITIVE OF QUALITY<sup>1</sup> is used to denote some character or quality of the noun modified, including value, measure, time, etc. ; as,

*A man of great prudence : Vir cōnsiliī māgnī.*

*Stones of great weight : Māgnī ponderis saxa.*

*A few days' march : Paucōrum diērum iter.*

*A six-foot wall : Mūrus sex pedum.*

i. There must be some adjectival modifier of this genitive ; e.g., *A man of bravery* is not *vir fortitūdinis*, but *vir fortis*.

ii. The modifiers most commonly used are numerals and such adjectives as *māgnus*, *māximus*, *parvus*, *tantus*, *summus*, *pauci*. The genitive of quality should not be used with *pār*, *similis*, *dissimilis*, *aequus*, or with pronouns except in such phrases as *hiūjusmodī*, *ējusmodī*.

iii. The genitive of quality may be used as a predicate ; as, *The depth of the river was three feet : Flūminis erat altitūdō trium pedum.*

iv. For the relation to the ablative of quality see section 105, iii.

88. The GENITIVE OF PRICE denotes the value, but only in general, not definite, terms ; as, *His influence was valued highly : Auctōritās ējus māgnī nabēbātur.*

i. With verbs of estimating are found *tanti*, *quanti*, *māgnī*, *parvī*, *plūris*, *minōris*, *nihilī*, and a few other words.

<sup>1</sup> Also called the *Descriptive Genitive* or *Genitive of Characteristic*.

- ii. With verbs of *buying*, *selling*, and *costing* are found only *tanti*, *quanti*, *pluris*, *minoris*.
- iii. For the ablative of price see section 100.

**89. The GENITIVE OF DEFINITION** is used occasionally to explain the meaning of a noun, as a word in apposition might do; as, *The virtue of justice*: *Virtus iustitiae*.

- i. With words like *urbs*, *oppidum*, *flameu*, etc., this genitive is not used by the best prose writers: e.g., *The city of Rome* is *Urbs Rōma*, not *Rōmae*.

**90. The GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.**—Many adjectives require a genitive (usually objective) to complete their meaning; as,

*Full of confidence*: *Fiduciae plenus*.

*Eager for power*: *Cupidus imperii*.

*Skilled in war*: *Peritus belli*.

*Unaccustomed to toil*: *Insuetus labōris*.

- i. The adjectives so used are chiefly those of *desire*, *knowledge* and *ignorance*, *participation* and *fullness*, so also some verbal adjectives in *-āx* and some present participles used as adjectives; as, *Averse to exertion*: *Fugiens labōris*.

- ii. As with the objective genitive after nouns (see section 85, ii.), so after adjectives the preposition used in the English rendering is frequently not *of*, but some equivalent of *as regards*.

- iii. Many of these adjectives take other constructions; while in poetry the number of adjectives taking the genitive to define their application is largely extended.

- iv. *Similia* commonly takes the genitive of persons, the genitive or dative of things. With personal pronouns the genitive should always be used.

**91. The GENITIVE WITH VERBS.** Many verbs take a genitive to complete their meaning.

- (a) For verbs of *pitying*, *remembering* and *forgetting* see section 53, a.

- (b) Verbs of *reminding* sometimes take the genitive of the thing called to mind with the accusative of the person reminded.

(c) Verbs of *accusing*, *convicting*, *condemning* and *acquitting* take the genitive of the fault or crime charged ; as, *You are accusing him of treason* : *Eum prōditionis insimulātis.* *He was found guilty of wrong-doing* : *Injūriae condemnātus est.*

(d) The impersonal verbs of emotion, *miseret*, *pudet*, *piget*, *paenitet* and *taedet*, take the accusative of the person who feels, and the genitive of that which causes the feeling ;<sup>1</sup> as, *I am ashamed of my folly* : *Mē stultitiae pudet.*

(e) For the genitive with *interest* and *rēfert* see section 53, b.

(f) The genitive is sometimes found with verbs of *plenty* and *want*, with *potior* (see section 55, iii.), and in poetry (after the analogy of the Greek) with verbs denoting *separation*.

#### EXERCISE 13.

##### A.

1. He said that this circumstance had dispelled all doubt as to the arrival of the legions.
2. He was a man of consummate ability, and had very great experience in the art of war.
3. He believed that the soldiers of Ariovistus were wholly inexperienced in this mode of fighting.
4. In the middle of this course is the island of Mona (89, i.).
5. He reminds his men of their old disaster, and urges them not to forget the valor of the enemy.
6. He distributed three months' provisions among the soldiers.
7. It is a consul's duty (83, ii.) to be of service to the rest of the citizens.
8. The top of the hill was held by a few of our men (86, iii.).
9. Your influence is of great value (88), your friendship is of greater.
10. They acquitted him of treachery (91, c), but he was found guilty of carelessness.
11. They compelled the *Ædui* to give them part of their land and to undertake to form no project against the *Sequani*.
12. He says he is ashamed of his treachery (91, d), and sorry for having attempted to revolt.

##### B (*Caesar, B. G. IV., 84-86.*)

1. A large part of the country is unable to withstand the enemy's attack.
2. He had collected thirty-two ships of great speed.
3. So great was the barbarians' fear of the Romans that

<sup>1</sup> These verbs (except *miseret*) sometimes have instead of the genitive an infinitive or substantive clause or a neuter pronoun as subject ; as, *I am sorry for having done this* : *Mē haec fecisse paenitet.*

they turned and fled. 4. He orders the enemy's camp to be burned. 5. On account of the swiftness of Caesar's approach they could not escape. 6. Several of the ships (the rest of the ships) had reached the middle of the harbor. 7. It happened that all of us were inexperienced in sailing. 3. These transports were the weakest of all the vessels. 9. He pointed out how great was the peril of the legion. 10. He saw how great had been the peril of the previous day. 11. Mention has previously been made of the small number of harbors. 12. The cavalry were thought to be very eager (*cupidus*) for plunder.

### USES OF THE ABLATIVE.

**92.** The Ablative case is an adverbial case, used to determine the circumstances attending upon some action. It is composite in its origin, representing three main ideas : the *true ablative*, meaning *from*; the *instrumental* and *comitative*, meaning *with*; and the *locative*, meaning *in or at*.

#### A. THE ABLATIVE PROPER.

**93.** The ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION denotes that from which something is removed or excluded ; as,

*They cut off Caesar from supplies : Commeātū Caesarem interclūdunt.*

*They are in need of assistance : Auxiliō egent.*

i. The idea of separation is commonly expressed by the abl. with *ab* (*ab*), *ex* or *dē*, especially in the literal local sense. The simple ablative is used chiefly with verbs of *relieving*, *depriving* and *lacking* ; with adjectives of *freedom* and *want* ; and also with certain verbs of *removing* and *excluding* (such as *excēdō*, *expellō*, *ēgredior*, *prohibeō*, *interclūdō*, *dējiciō* and *dēsistō*), with which the preposition may either be used or be omitted.

ii. When the ablative denotes a person, the preposition should always be used.

iii. The fact that the verb expressing separation may be a compound of *ab*, *ex* or *dē* does not prevent the use of a preposition with the ablative. (See section 78, v. b.)

**94.** For the ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE FROM WHICH, with or without prepositions, see section 126.

**95.** The ABLATIVE OF SOURCE denotes that from which something is derived. It is found chiefly with participles denoting ancestry or rank ; as,

*Descended from a very old family : Antiquissimā familiā natus.*

i. A preposition is regularly used (*a*) in the case of finite verbs, (*b*) with pronouns, and (*c*) to denote remote origin.

ii. Here belongs the ablative denoting the *material* of which something is made ; with this ablative *ex* is commonly used in prose.

**96.** The ABLATIVE OF CAUSE<sup>1</sup> is used to denote the motive from which some act proceeds, more rarely the cause of something ; as,

*In that hope he sought our friendship : Amicitiam eā spē petivit.*

i. In place of this ablative we find more frequently prepositional phrases with *ex*, *dē*, *ob*, *per*, *propter*, *prae*, the genitive with *causā* or *gratiā*, or, especially to indicate the moving cause, an ablative of means with a participle such as *adductus*, *permotus*.

**97.** The PERSONAL AGENT with passive verbs is denoted by the ablative with *ā* or *ab* ; as,

*Their lands are laid waste by the enemy : Agri eōrum ab hostibus vāstantur.*

i. For the dative of apparent agent see section 80, *d*.

ii. For the so-called secondary agent with *per* see section 99, *i*.

**98.** The ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON (translated by means of *than*) is used after comparatives to denote that with which something is compared ; as,

*The Ubii are more civilized than the rest : Ubii cēteris hū-māniōrēs sunt.*

---

<sup>1</sup> This use may also be classed under the Instrumental Ablative.

- i. This ablative is most often used in negative sentences or their equivalent, and is rarer after adverbs than after adjectives.
- ii. As a rule the ablative of comparison is used only when the first of the words compared is in the nominative or is a subject accusative. But the ablative of the relative pronoun is often used when the first of the words compared is an object accusative.
- iii. In other cases, as well as often where the ablative might be used, *than* is expressed by *quam*, and a noun or pronoun following takes the case of the word with which it is compared;<sup>1</sup> as, *Ireland is smaller than Britain : Hibernia minor est quam Britannia.* After comparative adverbs also, *quam* is commonly found.
- iv. The comparatives *plus*, *minus*, *longius* and *amplius* are regularly used without *quam*, yet without affecting the case of the following word; as, *More than eight hundred ships had been seen : Amplius octingentae nāvēs erant visaē.*
- v. The ablative of comparison of some abstract words such as *opinio* and *spēs* is used in place of a comparative clause; as, *Sooner than anyone expected : Celerius omni opinione.*
- vi. Latin often omits the standard of comparison (e.g., *than is natural*, *than is usual*, *than is desirable*, *than that just mentioned*) when it is easily gathered from the context. In such cases the comparative may generally be translated by *unusually* or *too* with the positive.
- vii. When two qualities in the same object are compared with each other, Latin has either *magis . . . quam* with the positive in both clauses or *quam* with the comparative in both clauses; as, *He is more brave than wise ; Magis fortis est quam sapiens*, or *Fortior est quam sapientior.* So, too, with adverbs.

### B. THE INSTRUMENTAL AND COMITATIVE ABLATIVE.

**99. The ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT** is used to denote that by means of which something is effected; as,

---

<sup>1</sup> As a general rule, unlike English idiom, the same construction follows *quam* as precedes it; as, *He said they were doing nothing else than making preparations for war : Dixit eōs nihil aliud agere quam bellum parare.* See also section 98, vii.

*It cannot be determined by the eyes: Oculis jūdicāri nōn potest.  
They live on flesh and are clad in skins: Carne vivunt, pelli-  
busque sunt vestiti.*

i. A personal instrument is occasionally in the ablative, but is more often expressed by *per* and the acensative (sometimes called the secondary agent); as, *He learns by means of scouts: Cōgnōscit per exploratōres.*

ii. The ablative of means is used (a) to denote the route or means of conveyance; (b) with *ūtor, fr̄nor*, etc.; (c) with *opus est* and *ūsus est*; (d) with verbs of filling and abounding and adjectives of plenty.

100. The ABLATIVE OF PRICE is used with verbs of *buying, selling, exchanging and costing*; as,

*It was purchased for a small price: Parvō pretiō redēmptum est.*

*They exchange war for agriculture: Bellum agricultūrā com-  
mutant.*

i. For the genitive of indefinite price see section 88.

101. The ABLATIVE OF MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is used with comparatives and words implying comparison to denote the amount by which two persons or things differ; as,

*The other road is much easier: Alterum iter est multō facilius.*

*Ireland is considered a half smaller than Britain: Hibernia dimidiō minor quam Britannia existimātur.*

*A few days after: Paucis post diēbus.*

*Three years before: Tribus ante annīs.*

i. This ablative is used also in designations of distance, e.g., with *distō* and *absūm* (where also the accusative may be used), and regularly in the case of the words *spatiū* and *interrāllum*; as, *He halts at a great distance: Māgnō intervallō cōsistit.*

ii. To this usage belong (a) *quō . . . eō* (or *quantō . . . tantō*) with comparatives, as, *The sooner the better: Quō citius eō melius;* (b) *quōd* and *quōminus* with the subjunctive (sections 28, iii. and 139); and (c) *eō* or *hōc* with a comparative.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> This last usage is, however, complicated with the ablative of cause, especially before *quod* clauses.

102. The ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION is used to denote in what respect a statement or term is to be taken as true ; as,

*They excel the rest of the Gauls in valor : Reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt.*

103. The ABLATIVE OF MANNER AND ACCOMPANIMENT expresses manner or the attendant circumstances of an action ; as,

*The news is carried with incredible speed : Incredibili celeritate fama perfertur.*

*They began to mount the rampart with loud shouts : Maximō clamore vallum ascendere coepérunt.*

i. As a rule the ablative of manner and accompaniment requires the preposition *cum* when not modified by an adjective or a genitive, and even when so modified it often has *cum* ; as,

*He is put to death with torture : Cum cruciatu necatur.*

*He did this with the greatest care : Summā (cum) diligentia hōc fecit.*

Some ablatives, however (e.g., *vī*, *jūre*, *cāsū*), never take *cum*, being used virtually as adverbs.

ii. Literal accompaniment is always expressed by *cum* and the ablative ; except that in certain military phrases (chiefly of the troops with which a march is made) *cum* may be omitted if the ablative has a modifier ; as, *They hastened with all their forces : (Cum) omnibus cōpiis contendērunt.*

iii. The ablative of manner denotes that *in accordance with* something is done ; as,

*He did this in accordance with Caesar's instructions : Praeceptis Caesaris hōc fecit.<sup>1</sup>*

104. For the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE, which is perhaps locative in origin, but which in use resembles the ablative of accompaniment in expressing the attendant circumstances of an action, see sections 46-50.

---

<sup>1</sup> This usage is also classed by some as *specification*, by others as arising in the idea of *from*.

105. The ABLATIVE OF QUALITY<sup>1</sup> is used to denote some character or quality of the noun modified ; as,

*A young man of great valor : Māgnā virtūte adulēscēns.*

i. As in the case of the genitive of quality (see section 87, i.), there must be some adjectival modifier of this ablative.

ii. This ablative may be used not only attributively but also in the predicate ; as, *They have long hair : Capillō sunt prōmissō* (*literally, They are [a people] with long hair*).

iii. When the description refers to *number* the genitive of quality should be used. To denote *physical characteristics* or *external appearance* the ablative is used, while for other descriptions either case may be used, with a preference for the genitive to express *permanent* or *inherent qualities*.

### C. THE LOCATIVEABLATIVE.

106. For the ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHERE, see section 127, and for the ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN OR WITHIN WHICH, see sections 130 and 131.

107. The ablative is used with many special verbs and adjectives, really belonging to the classes already mentioned but not always easy to classify.

i. For the ablative with *ūtor, fr̄nor, fungor, potior, vescor*, and with verbs of *lacking*, see section 54.

ii. The ablative is used with *glorior, laetor, gaudēō; fidō, cōfidō, nitor, innitor; assuēficiō*.

iii. The ablative is used with *dignus, indignus; contentus, laetus; fr̄etus*.

108. The ablative is used with the following PREPOSITIONS :

**Ā, ab (abs), from, by :** *absque, without; cōram, in the presence of; cum, with; dē, from, concerning; ē, ex, out of, from; prae, before, in comparison with, because of; prō, before, for (=in behalf of), in place of, in accordance with; sine, without; tenus, as far as.*

The ablative is also used with *in, in* and *sub, under*, expressing the place where, and sometimes with *subter, beneath*, and *super, above, concerning*. These four also take the accusative (section 70).

<sup>1</sup> Also called the *Descriptive Ablative* or *Ablative of Characteristic*.

<sup>2</sup> *Fidō* and *cōfidō* regularly take the dative of persons (52).

## EXERCISE 14.

## A.

1. They strengthened the place with a wall, and filled the trench with water. 2. He was a man of the highest merit and worthy of all praise. 3. Relying on the friendship of the Romans, he had collected all his retainers, two hundred in number. 4. If they had been able to keep our men from supplies, they would have cut them off from returning. 5. They all stain themselves with woad, and thus are of more frightful appearance in battle. 6. In order that the soldiers, influenced by the hope of plunder, might not wander too widely (98, vi.), he did not suffer them to go farther than usual (98, vi.) from the camp. 7. He was informed by scouts that the enemy had encamped at the foot of a mountain two days before. 8. If they are of an unfriendly disposition, they will be incensed at this grievance. 9. With such swiftness and vehemence did our soldiers advance that more than six hundred of the enemy were slain. 10. Advancing with the chariooteers, whom they are accustomed to use in all their battles, they prevent our men from landing from the ship. 11. In accordance with their custom, they were boasting insultingly of their victory. 12. Whether (64, ii.) by chance or design, they had been led out of the camp without baggage. 13. The Helvetians were much braver than the rest of the Gauls.

B (*Caeser, B. G. IV., 37-38.*)

1. The Morini being subdued, Caesar, being influenced by these things, set out with two legions for Britain. 2. All the buildings, about three hundred and twenty in number, were burned by the cavalry. 3. It was announced to the senate that hostages had come from two states. 4. They use the marshes as a place of refuge. 5. Our soldiers fight more bravely than the enemy; our soldiers are braver than the enemy. 6. On receipt of these despatches, more than (98, iv.) three hundred soldiers were landed from the ship. 7. Because of the marshes and forests the legion was led back from the territories of the Menapii. 8. They are unwilling to defend themselves with arms. 9. Aid was sent more

quickly by Caesar than by the lieutenant Cotta. 10. Influenced by this hope, they surround the legion with great shouting. 11. After several had been slain, the rest betook themselves to a marsh of vast extent (*ingēns magnitūdō*). 12. The soldiers ... disembarking (use both *expōnō* and *ēgredior*) hastened to their winter quarters.

### VERBAL NOUNS—INFINITIVE, GERUND, SUPINE.

#### A. THE INFINITIVE.

**109.** The Infinitive is a verbal noun. As a verb it is modified by an adverb, not by an adjective; it governs the same case as other parts of the verb; it has the distinction of tense, and it has a subject. As a noun it is used as a subject or object of verbs, or as an appositive, and is always neuter.<sup>1</sup>

**110. THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT.**—The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used as the *subject* of a verb; as,

*It is better to defend the camp: Castra dēfendere praestat.*

*It is not right for the Germans to cross over: Germānōs trānsire nōn aequum est.<sup>2</sup>*

*It was reported that the cavalry was approaching: Nūntiātum est equitēs accēdere.*

*He shows that carrying out their plans is an easy matter: Perficere esse probat cōnāta perficere.*

i. This usage is found chiefly with (a) certain (so-called) impersonal verbs, e.g., *oportet*, *licet*, *jurat*, *placet*; (b) *est* and neuter adjectives, such as *aequum*, *turpe*, *ūtile*, *necessē*; (c) passive verbs *sentiēndi* et *dēclarandi* (section 14).

ii. Except with passive verbs *sentiēndi* et *dēclarandi*, the tense of the infinitive used as subject is almost invariably the present, the perfect occurring but seldom, and the future never.

<sup>1</sup> In the case of the historical infinitive, however, the infinitive has the value of a verb only, not of a noun.

<sup>2</sup> Notice that neither the introductory *for* nor the representative subject *it* is expressed in Latin by any separate word.

**111. THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT.**—The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, is used as the object of a verb ; as,

*He says Caesar has come : Dicit Caesarem vēnisse.*

*He wished to depart : Discēdere volēbat.*

i. For the accusative and infinitive construction see section 14, for the complementary infinitive, sections 19-21. For the infinitive as an appositive see section 195.

**112. THE HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.**—In lively description the present infinitive, with its subject (when expressed) in the nominative case, is often found instead of the imperfect indicative ; generally several such infinitives are found together ; as,

*Every day Caesar dunned the Aedui ; day after day the Aedui kept putting him off : Cotidiē Caesar Aeduos flāgitāre ; diem ex diē dūcere Aedui.*

### B. THE GERUND.

**113.** The Gerund is a verbal noun found only in the genitive, dative, accusative and ablative singular. Like the infinitive, it is modified by an adverb, and governs the same case as the other parts of the verb.

In use the gerund corresponds pretty closely to the English gerund in -ing, but often also, especially with *ad*, it may be translated by the English (gerundial) infinitive with *to*.<sup>1</sup>

**114. (a)** The Genitive of the gerund is used chiefly with *causā* and as an objective genitive with nouns and adjectives ; as,

*For the purpose of foraging : Frūmentandi causā.*

*Desirous of making war : Bellandi cupidus.*

(b) The Dative of the gerund is rarely found, and is used chiefly with adjectives denoting *fitness* (for which *ad* and the accusative is more common), and in some official phrases ; as *A wall sufficiently high for defence : Satis altus tuendō mūrus.*

<sup>1</sup> Unlike the English usage, the gerund in Latin is not found as the subject or the object of a verb, the infinitive being used instead ; as, *Doing this is easy : Fatiū est haec facere. They began fleeing in all directions : Passim fugere coepérunt.*

(c) The Accusative of the gerund is used only with prepositions, chiefly *ad*; as,

*Ready to fight* (or *Ready for fighting*): **Paratus ad dimicandum.**

(d) The Ablative of the gerund is used to denote means and with prepositions, chiefly *in*, *ab*, *dē* and *ex*; as, *Occupied in reaping*: **In metendō occupati.**

i. The use of the gerund with an accusative object is, on the whole, rare. See section 119.

ii. *Ob* and *in* are the only prepositions, other than *ad*, found with the accusative gerund in the best Latin.

### C. THE SUPINE.

115. The Supine is a verbal noun found only in the accusative and ablative singular, in both cases with adverbial force. It is translated by the English infinitive with *to*.<sup>1</sup>

116. The ACCUSATIVE SUPINE or supine in *-um*, is used to denote purpose, especially after verbs of motion, and if transitive may take an accusative object; as,

*They send envoys to Caesar to ask aid:* **Lēgātōs ad Caesarem inittunt rogātūm auxilium.**

i. The construction is not common in classical Latin, which prefers to express purpose by the final subjunctive, or by the gerund and gerundive with *ad* or *causā*. It is used most frequently with *ēō* and *reniō*, and also in the phrase *nūptum dare* (or *collocāre*).

ii. The rare future infinitive passive is formed by means of *īrī* (present infinitive passive of *eō* used impersonally) and this supine; as, *He says the city will be taken:* **Dīcit urbēm captūm īrī** (literally, *there is a going to take the city*). Here *urbēm* is really the object of *captūm*, not the subject of *captūm īrī*.

117. The ABLATIVE SUPINE, or supine in *-ū*, is used to define the application of certain adjectives and of the nouns *fās* and *nefās*; as,

*This is difficult to do:* **Hōc est diffīcile factū.**

*Incredible to narrate:* **Incrēdibile dictū.**

*It is a sin to say so:* **Hōc nefas est dictū.**

---

<sup>1</sup> The supine in *-um* corresponds to the English (gerundial) infinitive with *to* after verbs; the supine in *-ū* to this infinitive with adjectives and nouns.

- i. The adjectives so used are chiefly those meaning *easy*, *difficult*, *pleasant*, *strange*, *best*. The supines so used are chiefly *auditū*, *dictū*, *factū*, *visū*, *uitū*.
- ii. The ablative supine does not take an object.<sup>1</sup>

## EXERCISE 15.

## A.

1. The lieutenant brought word to Caesar that he had found the ships ready for sailing.
2. They saw that our men were not advancing for the purpose of fighting.
3. After (114, ii.) making a bridge Caesar attempted to cross the river and pursue the enemy.
4. He proves to them that it is a very easy thing to do, to seize the supreme power.
5. For quickness in loading, the ships were made lower.
6. If messengers had come to Caesar to ask help, he would have sent three legions to their assistance.
7. Answer was made that it was better to be slain in battle than not to recover their freedom.
8. By making enquiry, Caesar found that the rest of the cavalry had been thrown into a panic.
9. They hurl their weapons at the enemy and give them no opportunity of retiring.
10. They thought the best thing to do was to cut off our men from supplies.
11. He learned from the soldiers that the ships were useless for sailing.
12. Although he was ready to set out, he thought it would be extremely dangerous for the soldiers to embark.
13. So fierce an onset did the enemy make that there was no possibility of keeping (one's) position on the wall.

B. (*Caesar*, B. G. V., 1.)

1. He orders (*jubeō*) the old vessel to be repaired.
2. Envoys are sent for the purpose of giving satisfaction to Caesar.
3. It is dangerous (*periculōsus*) for the consuls to leave Italy.
4. They are ready for (*ad*) setting out.
5. They had come thither to announce (*supine*) that raids were being made.
6. He points out the method of repairing.
7. What is it best (*optimus*) to do?
8. It seems (*videor*) to be best to put the lieutenant in charge of this legion.

<sup>1</sup> It may however be found in connection with a noun clause (infinitive or indirect question) which forms the subject of the main verb; as, *It is hard to say how powerful they are: Difficile est dicta quid possint.*

9. All these things were of service for loading. 10. They are accustomed to display (*ut*or) quickness in assembling. 11. It has been pointed out that they are accustomed to use lower vessels.

### VERBAL ADJECTIVES—GERUNDIVE, PARTICIPLES.

#### A. THE GERUNDIVE.

118. The Gerundive (sometimes called the future participle passive) is a verbal adjective of the first and second declensions, and agrees with its substantive.

119. THE GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION.—Instead of the *gerund governing* a direct object in the accusative, we often find the substantive put in the case required by the context and the *gerundive in agreement* with it. This is the regular usage after prepositions and in the dative case, and is preferable in the genitive and in the ablative of means ; as,

*He sets out to harass the enemy : Ad hostēs vexandōs proficiscitur* (not *ad vexandum hostēs*).

*They lose time in seeking their comrades : In quaerendī suis tempus dimittunt* (not in *quaerendō suōs*).

*An opportunity is afforded of marching through the province : Facultās datur per prōvinciam itineris faciēndi* (rather than *iter faciēndi*).

*He sets out for the purpose of bringing aid : Auxiliī ferēndī causā proficiscitur* (rather than *auxilium ferēndi*).

i. The various cases are used in the same way in the gerundive construction as in the gerund. (See section 114.)

ii. The gerundive construction cannot be used with intransitive verbs ; as,

*For the purpose of resisting the enemy : Hostib⁹ resistēndī causā* (never *Hostiū resistēndōrum causā*).

But *ut*or, *fruor*, *fungor* and *potior*, which governed the accusative in old Latin, regularly take the gerundive construction ; as,

*The hope of taking the camp : Spēs potiundōrum castrōrum.*

iii. In the case of neuter pronouns and neuter adjectives used substantively the gerund with an object accusative is regular, even after prepositions ; as, *For the purpose of doing something* : **Aliquid agendi causā.**

iv. With *meī, tuī, suī, nostri, restri,* the gerundive in *-ndī* is used, without regard to either gender or number ; as, *For the purpose of clearing themselves (or himself or herself)* : **Sui pūrgandi causā** (not *sui pūrgandōrum* or *sui pūrgandae*).<sup>1</sup>

**120. THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.** — The gerundive is used in the nominative and accusative as a predicate adjective with *sum*, to denote *duty* or *necessity* ; as,

*Everything had to be done by Caesar* : **Caesari omnia erant agenda.**

*He decided that the Rhine must be crossed* : **Statuit Rhēnum esse trānseundum.**

*The leading men should (ought to) have been assembled* : **Principēs convocandi erant.**

i. The expression is always passive, the agent being in the dative (see section 80, *d*). The English equivalent is, however, constantly in the active ; as,

*Caesar had to do everything. He decided that he must cross the Rhine.*

ii. In this construction intransitive verbs are used impersonally (see section 56), the gerundive taking the same case as the verb from which it is formed ; as, *There must be no delay* : **Nōn est cunctandum.** *They had to fight* : **Erat pūgnandum.** *These things ought to be used* : **His rēbus ūtendum est.**

**121.** The accusative of the gerundive is used in predicative agreement with the object of certain verbs (chiefly verbs of *giving, assigning, undertaking and caring for*) to express *purpose* ; as, *He hands them over to the Aēdūi to guard* : **Hōs Aeduis custōdiendōs trādit.** *He provided for the transportation of the army* : **Exercitūm trāsportandum cūrāvit.**

<sup>1</sup> The usual explanation given is that *pūrgandi* is the gerundive agreeing with *sui*, which, like *meī, nostri, etc.*, was in its origin the genitive of the neuter singular possessive, *suum=their (or his or her)* personality.

**B. THE PARTICIPLES.**

**122.** For the grammatical value of the participle and the use of the *present* and *perfect* participles see sections 40-44.

The *future* participle denotes an action as about to happen at a time *subsequent* to that of its principal verb. Its chief uses are (*a*) to form (with *esse*) the future infinitive active in the accusative and infinitive construction, and (*b*) in the active periphrastic conjugation. It is but rarely used as an adjective or substantive (*futūrus* being the chief instance); in poetry and late prose writers it is used appositively to express intention or probability.

**123. THE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.** — The future participle is used as a predicate adjective with *sum* to express *intention*, *likelihood*, or *imminence*; as,

*You are about to fight* : *Pūgnātūri estis.*

*He said that he had been on the point of setting out* : *Dixit sē  
profectūrum fuisse.*

*They are going to send hostages* : *Obsidēs missūri sunt.*

**124.** Various ways of expressing purpose are found in Latin. Thus the sentence *Enroys were sent to seek peace* may be translated :

(*a*) *Lēgāti missi sunt ut pācem peterent* (section 24).

(*b*) *Lēgāti missi sunt qui pācem peterent* (section 26).

(*c*) *Lēgāti missi sunt ad pācem petendam* (section 119).

*Ad* and the *gerund* of intransitive verbs is also used (section 114, *c*).

(*d*) *Lēgāti missi sunt pācis petendae causā* (section 119).

(*e*) *Lēgāti missi sunt pācem petendī causā* (section 114, *a*).

(*f*) *Lēgāti missi sunt pācem petītūm* (section 116).

(*g*) *Lēgāti missi sunt pācem petītūri* (section 122).

Of these the gerund and gerundive constructions are found in short expressions only, while the future participle should be avoided altogether in prose composition.

**EXERCISE 16.***A.*

1. Caesar is about to lead out his forces with the object of crushing the enemy. 2. He answered that the soldiers must not, in searching for their comrades, waste the time for fighting. 3. He caused two bridges to be built (121) for the purpose of follow-

ing up the enemy. 4. All hope of seizing the town has vanished. 5. The enemy was on the point of making an attack on the cavalry. 6. He perceived that he would have to set out at once. 7. We should not let slip the opportunity of freeing ourselves for ever. 8. He will give this legion to Labienus to lead back (121). 9. They did not think that so large a number of hostages should have been required. 10. They were assembling from all sides to defend the camp.

B. (*Caesar*, B. G. V., 1, 2.)

1. He points out what has to be done (what he is going to do).
2. The winter is not sufficient for accomplishing these ends (*rēs*).
3. He was on the point of setting out for the purpose of laying waste the adjacent states.
4. Envoys must be sent to stir up the Germans.
5. These things were of great service in equipping the war vessels.
6. He praised (their) quickness in bringing the hostages.
7. Are twenty ships enough to (*ad*) carry over six hundred *cavēt' y*?
8. The soldiers had to build thirty ships in eight days.
9. The soldiers' unparalleled zeal is to be praised.
10. We are about to visit the winter quarters of all the legions.
11. Caesar should have left the legions in hither Gaul.
12. On account of their zeal in finishing this task, he was able to launch the vessels in a few days.
13. He ordered (*jubēō* and *imperō*) the army to assemble at this harbor for the purpose of setting out for the mainland.
14. He is said not to have been obedient to Caesar's authority.

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE AND TIME.

125. PLACE TO WHICH (limit of motion) is denoted by the accusative with *ad* or *in*, except that with names of towns and small islands, and with *domum*, *domōs* (*home*), and *rūs* (*to the country*), the preposition is omitted; as,

*They hasten to the camp: Ad castra contendunt.*

*He sets out for Britain: In Britanniam proficiscitur.*

*He sets out for Rome: Rōmam proficiscitur.*

*They returned home: Domum redierunt.*

i. With names of towns *ad* is used (*a*) to denote *into* (or *in*) the neighborhood of, and (*b*) sometimes in contrast with *ab* in expressions of direction; as, *He came into the neighborhood of Geneva: Ad Genāvam pervenit.* *He pitched his camp near Alesia: Ad Alesiam castra fecit.*

ii. For the use of the dative in poetry to express the limit of motion see section 78, vii.

126. PLACE FROM WHICH is denoted by the ablative with *ab*, *ex*, or *dē*, except that with names of towns and small islands, and with *domō* (*from home*) and *rūre* (*from the country*), the preposition is omitted; as,

*They withdrew from the shore: Ā litore discesserunt.*

*They crossed over from Belgium: Ex Belgio transierunt.*

*He fled from Corinth: Corinthō fūgit.*

*They had gone away from home: Domō discesserant.*

i. With names of towns *ab* is used (*a*) to denote *from the neighborhood of*, (*b*) sometimes in contrast with *ad* in expressions of direction, and (*c*) with *longē* and verbs of distance; as, *It is three hundred miles from Zama: Ā Zamā abest milia passuum trecenta.*

127. PLACE WHERE is denoted by the ablative with *in*, except that with names of towns and small islands, and with a few common nouns the preposition is omitted; as,

*He stood on the wall: In mūrō cōstituit.*

*They spend the winter in Gaul: In Galliā hiemant.*

*He died at Athens: Athēnis mortuus est.*

i. In names of towns and islands of the first and second declensions in the singular, the locative (identical in form with the genitive) is used, not the ablative; as,

*At Rome: Rōmae. At Corinth: Corinthī.*

So occasionally in the third declension singular (as *Carthāginī*), and regularly in the words *domī*, *rūri*, *humī*, *belli*, *militiae*.

ii. The words *locus* and *pars*, and other nouns when modified by *totus* (and sometimes by *medius*, *omnis* or *cunctus*), may be used in the ablative without a preposition ; as, *On suitable ground : Idoneō locō. Throughout the whole camp : Tōtis castris.* In poetry the preposition is freely omitted with any noun.<sup>1</sup>

iii. Often where English uses *in, motion towards* is implied, and Latin consequently uses the accusative ; as, *They concealed themselves in the woods (that is, went into the woods and hid) : In silvās sē abdidērunt.*

*Collocō* and *pōnō*, however, take the ablative with *in*.

iv. For such expressions as *He came to the senate at Rome* (where *at Rome* is an adjectival phrase modifying *senate*), Latin has *Rōmam ad senātū vēnit* (where both expressions modify the verb). Similarly, *He came from the senate at Rome* is *Rōmā ā senātū vēnit*.<sup>2</sup>

v. With *pars*, *latus*, *agmen*, *cornū*, *tergum*, *frōns*, the direction in which or the side on which is expressed by the ablative with *ab* (and in the case of *pars*, also with *ex*) ; as, *In front : Ā frōnte. On one side : Īnā ex parte.*

vi. The locative *animī* (*in heart*) is used with verbs and adjectives of *feeling* to denote *respect*.

128. EXTENT OF SPACE is expressed by the accusative with verbs and with the adjectives *longus*, *altus* and *lātus* ; as,

*He advances three miles : Tria mīlia passum prōcēdit.*  
*A trench five feet deep : Fossa quinque pedēs alta.*

i. With *absum* and *distō* either this accusative or the ablative of measure of difference may be used. (Section 101, i.)

129. DURATION OF TIME is expressed by the accusative ; as,

<sup>1</sup> In phrases like *castris tenēre*, the ablative is rather instrumental.

<sup>2</sup> On a somewhat similar principle, where English has a common noun (like *town* or *city*), modified by an adjective or its equivalent, in apposition with the name of a place, with the corresponding noun Latin generally uses a preposition to express *motion towards, motion from* or *place where*, instead of having *urb̄s* or *oppidum* in apposition with the proper name ; as, *They halted at Alba, a convenient city : Athēnas in urbe opportinā. I came to Athens, a most famous city : Athēnas in urbem praeclārissimam vēni. He set out from Cures, a town of the Sabines : Cūribus ex oppidō Sabīnōrum profectus est.*

*He waits there a few days:* **Paucōs diēs ibi morātur.**

*He was twenty years old:* **Vigintō annōs nātus erat.**<sup>1</sup>

i. *Per* is sometimes added to the accusative to emphasize the idea of duration.

ii. *How long ago* is expressed by *ab hinc* and the accusative; *how long before* and *how long after*, by *ante* and *post* with (a) the accusative, or (b) the ablative of measure of difference; as, *A few days after:* **Post paucōs diēs** or **Paucis post diēbus.**

**130. TIME WHEN** is expressed by the ablative; as,

*He returns on the fifth day:* **Quintō diē revertitur.**

*At sunset he led back his forces:* **Sōlis occāsū cōpiās redūxit.**

*In all the Gallic wars:* **Omnibus Gallicis bellis.**

**131. TIME WITHIN WHICH** is expressed by the ablative; as,

*He has been put to death within the last few days:* **His paucis diēbus interfectus est.**

i. Occasionally, by inference, the ablative of the time within which, especially with *tōtus*, may be equivalent to the accusative of the time how long; as, *They marched all that night:* **Eā tōtā nocte iērunt.**

#### EXERCISE 17.

##### A.

1. After waiting in Italy three months he returned from Roine to Athens.
2. The enemy took up their position on wooded ground eight miles from Caesar's camp.
3. Four years ago (129, ii.) a battle was fought in the neighborhood (125, i. a) of Massilia.
4. This river, he replied (18, vi.), was sixty feet wide and about five feet deep.
5. Setting out from the army in Gaul (127, iv.), he came a few days later to the river Thames in the enemy's country (127, iv.).
6. They were ordered to leave home within three days and hide in (127, iii.) the nearest woods.
7. He set out for the country at the beginning of spring and returned home the next year.
8. The battle was begun on the right wing (127, v.).
9. He came from Geneva in the consulship of Crassus and Pompey (49), and lived for several years at Rome and Athens.
10. On the

<sup>1</sup> Literally, *He had been born twenty years.*

same day, he was informed that the enemy's forces were three miles distant from Bibracte. 11. He said that he was nine years old. 12. After completing a march of twenty miles, they remained in camp for several successive days.

*B. (Caesar, B. G. V., 1-3.)*

1. The forest of Ardennes used to extend from the borders of this state to the river Rhine. 2. For a large part of the winter they had been under arms in the territories of the Treveri. 3. Britain is about thirty miles distant (*absum*) from the mainland. 4. They point out what is being done in our camp. 5. On Caesar's approach they had hidden themselves in the midst of the forests. 6. Within two days all the leading men had assembled from the whole of Gaul. 7. On coming to Rome he began to be afraid. 8. In the consulship of Caesar I was returning from Rome to Spain. 9. During all these days they were preparing for war in Rome and the adjacent part of Italy. 10. Their territories extend for many miles to the sea. 11. For a few days they are unwilling to come to Caesar in his winter camp. 12. In this war they were unwilling to withdraw from the province. 13. It is easier to collect troops in hither Gaul than in Illyricum. 14. On this day they had set out from the harbor for home.

#### IMPERATIVE. INDEPENDENT USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

**132. COMMANDS.**—The present imperative is regularly used to express commands and entreaties; as,

*Consider Gaul: Respicite Galliam.*

i. As in English, there are many substitutes for the imperative; e.g., (a) periphrases with *jubeō*, *petō*, *orō*, etc.; (b) *velim* (*I should like*), and *sac* or *cūrā* (*see to it, be sure*) with the present subjunctive (with or without *ut*); (c) in the indefinite second person, the present subjunctive alone.

ii. The future imperative expresses rather a contingent command than one to be immediately obeyed. Hence it is used in laws and precepts, and in distinct reference to the future.

**133. PROHIBITIONS** are usually expressed by *nōlī*, *nōlīte* (*be unwilling*) with the present infinitive ; as,

*Do not suppose : Nōlītē existimāre.*

i. Prohibitions are also expressed (a) by *carē*, (or, less commonly, *carē nē*, *ridē nē*, or *jacē nē*), and the present subjunctive ; (b) by *nē* and the present or perfect subjunctive, but chiefly in familiar discourse ; (c) in poetry by *nē* and the present imperative.

**134. The subjunctive is used independently to represent action as willed.<sup>1</sup>** The following varieties exist :

(a) HORTATORY.—The first person of the present subjunctive is used to command, or, with *nē*, to forbid ; as, *Let us consider Gaul : Galliam respiciāmus.* *Let us not despair : Nē dēspērēmus.*

(b) JUSSIVE.—The third person of the present subjunctive is used to command, or, with *nē*, to forbid ; as, *Let the consuls see to it : Videant cōsulēs.*

i. So too the second person of the present or perfect subjunctive is used to express prohibition or command (sections 133, i. b and 132, i. c).

(c) CONCESSIVE.—The present and perfect subjunctive are used to concede for the sake of argument, the negative being *nē* ; as, *Granting that pain is not the greatest evil, still it certainly is an evil : Nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est.*

(d) DELIBERATIVE.—The Subjunctive is used to ask for direction (though without expecting an answer), and thus comes to express perplexity (commonly in the first person of the present or imperfect subjunctive) or again surprise and indignation ; as, *What am I to do ? Quid faciam ? Are we to yield to him ? Huic cēdāmus ?<sup>2</sup>*

**135. The subjunctive is used independently to represent action as desired.**

This is called the OPTATIVE subjunctive, or the subjunctive of DESIRE. The negative is *nē*. The present tense is used to express wishes viewed as practicable ; the imperfect and pluperfect to express wishes viewed as impossible of fulfilment in present and past time respectively. Such clauses are frequently introduced by

<sup>1</sup> This is sometimes termed the VOLITIVE subjunctive.

<sup>2</sup> See further section 136, d. These various types of question are known as *Rhetorical Questions* or *Questions of Appeal*.

*utinam*, regularly so in the case of the imperfect and pluperfect tenses ; as, *May they be happy : Sint beāti.* *Would that he were present : Utinam adeset.* *Would that I had never been born : Utinam nē nātus essem.*

136. The subjunctive is used independently to represent action as conceivable.

This is the so-called POTENTIAL subjunctive, used of present and past time. It is generally to be translated by *could, would or should*, and takes the negative *nōn*. The following types exist :

(a) Modest expressions of wish or regret with *velim* or *vellem* and their compounds, followed often by another subjunctive (of desire) as object ; as, *I should like to know : Velim scire. I would rather he were present : Māllem adeset.*

(b) With the indefinite second person singular ; as, *You (= one) would have thought : Putārēs.<sup>1</sup>*

(c) In softened assertions or questions ; as, *It would scarcely seem probable : Vix vērisimile videātur.* This usage is found chiefly in the protasis of conditional sentences (see sections 61 and 63).

(d) In questions virtually equivalent to a negative statement ; as, *Who could doubt ? Quis dubitet ? Who would ever have thought ? Quis umquam arbitrāretur ?*

i. Latin, however, often has the indicative where we might expect the potential subjunctive. So regularly with *possum*, *dēbō*, etc., with the passive periphrastic conjugation, and with *est* and predicate adjectives such as *aequum, melius, satis, facile,* etc. ; as, *I might have said more : Plūra poteram dicere. It would be tedious to tell everything : Longum est omnia narrāre.* (See section 64, i.)

137. Notice the values of *would* in the following sentences, and the different ways of translating it into Latin :

(a) *I thought he would come : Arbitrābar eum ventūrum esse* (15, c).

(b) *I asked what they would do : Rogāvi quid factūri essent* (36).

(c) *He would not do this : Nōluit haec facere or Negāvit sē haec factūrum.*

<sup>1</sup> The indefinite second person singular of the present subjunctive is also found in independent sentences to state a general fact ; as, *One (often) looks for what is before me's eyes, Quod oculis videās, dēsiderēs.*

- (d) *If he were alive he would be present : Si viveret, adessem (61).*
- (e) *If you should do this, he would come : Si haec facias, veniat (63).*
- (f) *Would that he would come ! Utinam veniat ! (135).*
- (g) *Would that he had come ! Utinam venisset ! (135).*
- (h) *It would be better to do this : Melius est haec facere (136, i).*
- (i) *Who would venture to do this ? Quis haec facere audeat ? (136, b).*
- (j) *I was afraid he would come : Verēbar nē veniret (138).*
- (k) *Whenever they came, he would do this : Ubi vēnerant, haec faciebat (180, b).*

## EXERCISE 18.

## A.

1. Let the Gauls send envoys to Cæsar to seek peace. 2. Would that Caesar were not sending two legions to the assistance of Labienus. 3. Who can endure that his freedom should be taken away ? 4. Reinember the former valor of the Helvetians, soldiers. 5. Let us not fear the enemy, however numerous (66, ii.), nor return to the camp unless victorious (44, iii.). 6. Do not let slip this opportunity of waging war. 7. What was I to say ? It would have been (136, a, i.) easy to make many promises ; but who would have believed me ? 8. I should like you to inform me at once of his departure. 9. Would that Caesar had allowed us to march through the province. 10. Advance towards the shore and do not betray the eagle to the enemy. 11. He would (137, c) not announce to the soldiers when he would set out. 12. One would have supposed that the envoys would not return the next day.

B. (*Cæsar, B. G. V., 4-5.*)

1. Remain loyal ; do not be deterred from this plan. 2. Come to me with all your sons. 3. Let us return (134, a) to the point from which we set out. 4. Tell us, Cæsar, why you are spending the summer there. 5. Cæsar was aware that the rest would be annoyed. 6. If Cæsar himself had been absent, the leading men would not have remained loyal. 7. Would that (135) Cæsar were not absent. 8. Do not be of an unfriendly disposition towards

him. 9. Let us take (134, a) the hostages with us. 10. He had learned from what point they would set out. 11. Who would be willing (136, d) to be left as a hostage? 12. It would be easy (136, i.) to compel them to assemble. 13. Do not fear these uprisings. Let everything be made ready (136, a) for war. 14. When they learned this, they would not (137, c) hold on their course. 15. If he should be driven back by storms, he would be annoyed. 16. Had he summoned the chief men, his influence would be very great.

#### VERBS OF FEARING. USES OF *Quin* AND *Quōminus*.

138. After verbs of fearing and such phrases as *metus est*, *periculum est*, *that* and *lest* are translated by *nē*,<sup>1</sup> and *that not* by *ut*, with the pre-*nt* subjunctive after the primary tenses, the imperfect subjunctive after the secondary tenses; as,

*I fear that he will do this* (or *I fear lest he do this*) : *Vereor nē hōc faciat.*

*I fear that he will not do this* : *Vereor ut hōc faciat.*

*There was danger that they would be surrounded* : *Periculum erat nē circumvenirentur.*

i. For *ut*, *nē nōn* is very commonly used, regularly so after *nōn vereor*.

ii. Verbs of fearing may be used as modal verbs, followed by the infinitive to represent a corresponding infinitive in the English; as, *I fear to do this* : *Vereor haec facere.*

139. Verbs and phrases of *hindering* and *objecting*, and negative verbs and phrases of *doubting*, *failure* or *omission*, are regularly followed by the subjunctive with the introductory particles *quin*,

<sup>1</sup> The apparently redundant negative, *nē*, *quō-minus*, *quin=qui* (an old ablative form = *quō*) + *nē*, in these clauses is due to the fact that the clauses now dependent were once independent clauses expressing a desire; this has been developed through a final clause into a substantive clause; as, *I fear; may he not do this. They hinder the Aedui whereby the less they may bring in corn.* English, unlike Latin, tends to look at what is prevented as the result, not the purpose, of the hindering.

*quōminus* or *nē*, according to the following rules ; the present subjunctive being used after the primary tenses, the imperfect subjunctive after the secondary tenses.<sup>1</sup>

N.B.—*Quin* is used only after negatives or virtual negatives.

(a) Verbs of *hindering*, e.g., *dēterrō*, *impediō*, *retineō*, and also *recūsō*, *object* (if negatived), take *quōminus* or *quin*; or (if not negatived) *quōminus* or *nē*; as,

*They did not object to coming : Nōn recūsābant quin (or quōminus) venirent.*

*They hinder the Aedui from bringing in corn : Aeduōs dēterrent quōminus (or nē) frūmentum cōferant.*

i. *Prohibeō* regularly takes the accusative and infinitive (section 22, i.), while *nōn recūsō* also may take the infinitive.

(b) Negative verbs and phrases of *doubting*, e.g., *nōn dubitō*, *nōn est dubium*, take *quin*; as,

*There was no doubt that they had (or of their having) very great power : Nōn erat dubium quin plūrimum possent.*

i. *Dubitō*, *hesitate*, regularly takes the infinitive.

(c) Negative verbs and phrases of *failure or omission*, such as *nihil praetermittō* (*leare nothing undone*), *haud multum abest* (*be within a little*), *facere nōn possum* (*cannot but or cannot help*), take *quin*; as,

*And a suspicion is not wanting that he committed suicide : Neque abest suspicīō quin ipse sibi mortem cōsciverit.*

*They let no time go by without stirring up the states : Nūllum tempus intermisērunt quin civitātēs sollicitārent.*

i. For *quin* after such expressions as *nēmō est*, see section 33, ii.

#### EXERCISE 19.

##### A.

1. I fear the soldiers will not be able to take the city by storm.
2. Who could doubt (130, d) that (139, b) the Romans are going to take our freedom away ? 3. They promised to raise no objections to being (139, a) under the sway of the enemy. 4. There was great danger of the enemy's crossing the river and making an attack upon the camp. 5. Caesar was afraid that they were about to renew the war. 6. They believed that Caesar by his influence

<sup>1</sup> It should be observed that *quin* and *quōminus* with the subjunctive often answer to the English gerund governed by a preposition.

could hinder (*prohibeō*) the Germans from being brought across the Rhine. 7. He feared that the soldiers would not be able to cross the bridge and attack the enemy in the rear. 8. There was no doubt that (139, b) the Aedui were hesitating to declare war. 9. Several vessels were prevented by the storms from (139, a) being able to reach the same port. 10. There is no one who (33, ii.) does not know that we feared to disembark (138, ii.). 11. We fear that the soldiers will be unwilling to defend the camp. 12. Not even at the conference could the Gauls be deterred from (139, a) hurling weapons at our men. 13. The soldiers did not object to repairing the old vessels. 14. There was no one but knew that Labienus was in charge of that legion.

*B. (Caesar, B. G. V., 6.)*

1. They fear that they will be taken across to Britain. 2. They were afraid lest they should not gain their request. 3. I am hindered by religious scruples from (139, a) giving (*dō*) the oath that Caesar demands. 4. There is no doubt that (139, b) the Aedui are unaccustomed to sailing. 5. Several report to Caesar that the Aedui feel this keenly. 6. They are so (*ita*) unused to the sea that they do not venture to sail. 7. He begged that all hope should not be taken away. 8. The others objected to (139, a) the royal power being conferred on Dumnorix. 9. There is added the fact that the Gauls are eager for change. 10. He saw that Gaul was being robbed of her chief men. 11. It happens that Caesar fears to prevent (*prohibeō*, 139, a, i.) our remaining (113, fn.). 12. They were afraid that Caesar would confer the royal power on Dumnorix. 13. In order that they might not be killed, they urged that they be left on the mainland.

DUTY, NECESSITY, POSSIBILITY, PERMISSION.

140. DUTY or OBLIGATION is expressed most frequently by the *gerundive* with *esse*, also by *dēbeō* and *oportet*.

(a) For the gerundive with *esse* (the passive periphrastic conjugation) see section 120.

(b) *Dēbet* takes the present infinitive as object, and the impersonal verb *oportet* takes the accusative and the present infinitive as subject<sup>1</sup>; as,

*Caesar ought to come to me: Caesar ad mē venire dēbet, or Caesarem ad mē venire oportet.*

i. The infinitive remains in the present tense with all forms of these verbs, while the verbs themselves change according to the time of the action; as *Caesar ought to have come: Caesar venire dēbēbat, or Caesarem venire oportuit. Caesar ought to come tomorrow: Caesar venire crās dēbēbit, or Caesarem venire crās oportēbit.*

141. NECESSITY is expressed most frequently by the gerundive with *esse*, also by *necesse est*.

(a) For the gerundive with *esse* (the passive periphrastic conjugation) see section 120.

(b) *Necesse est* is used with the dative and the present infinitive to express what is *inevitable* rather than what is *obligatory* or *binding*;<sup>1</sup> as,

*All men must die: Omnibus necesse est mori.*

142. POSSIBILITY OR ABILITY is expressed by *possum* and the present infinitive; as,

*The river can be crossed: Flūmen trānsiri potest.*

*They were unable to defend themselves: Sē dēfendere nōn poterant.*

*It is impossible for us to cross: Trānsire nōn possumus.*

*We could (or might) have been useful friends: Poterāmus esse ūtilēs amici. (For the tenses see section 140, b, i.)*

143. PERMISSION is expressed by *licet* with the dative and the present infinitive;<sup>1</sup> as,

*You may remain: Licet vōbis remanēre.*

*They were not allowed to depart: Discēdere illis nōn licēbat.*

i. A predicate noun or adjective referring to the dative agrees with it in case; as, *We may be free: Nōbis licet esse liberis.*

<sup>1</sup> The impersonal verbs *licet*, *necesse est* and *oportet* may also take the subjunctive as subject; as, *You ought to do this: Haec facias oportet.* With *necesse est* the subjunctive often has *ut*.

**144.** Notice the values of *should* in the following sentences and the different ways of translating it into Latin:

(a) *I said I should return at once:* *Dixi mē statim redditūrum esse* (15, c).

(b) *He did this so that I should not return:* *Haec fecit nē redirem* (24).

(c) *If he had done this I should not be returning:* *Si haec fecisset nōn redirem* (61).

(d) *If he should do this (or Should he do this), I should return at once:* *Si haec faciat, statim redeam* (63).

(e) *It is best that he should return at once:* *Optimum est eum statim redire* (110).

(f) *You should return at once:* *Statim vobis est redeundum* (120).

(g) *I should like you to return:* *Velim redeās* (136, a).

(h) *I feared that I should not return:* *Veritus sum ut (or nē nōn) redirem* (138).

(i) *He promised great rewards to anyone that should return:* *Si quis rediisset, māgna praemia pollicitus est* (177).

#### EXERCISE 20.

##### A.

1. You should reply that you are unable to leave the city. 2. The soldiers had to advance into the waves. 3. He answered that Gaul ought to be free, and that he could not allow the Germans to cross the Rhine. 4. They asked to be allowed to march through the province. 5. We must not wait longer; we must set out for home at once. 6. Caesar should have ordered that state to furnish hostages. 7. He was afraid this would inevitably (141, b) happen. 8. The king could not be persuaded (57) to stay longer. 9. The Gauls may be cowards if they wish, but Romans must be brave men. 10. All will have to die some day. 11. You might have left the camp yesterday. 12. Our fields ought not to have been laid waste in sight of your army. 13. These towns will have to be taken by storm.

##### B. (*Caesar*, B. G. V., 7.)

1. We must discover his plans; we cannot discover their plans.
2. Part of the cavalry ought to be sent, in order that he may be

recalled. 3. If we should not get suitable weather, we should not embark. 4. He should have been brought back and put to death. 5. You are injuring the state by whatever means you can. 6. He feared (*rereor*) lest the wind should hinder his sailing. 7. Everything had to be disregarded. 8. He took care that this folly should not go farther. 9. I had announced that I should depart for home. 10. The cavalry must defend themselves. 11. May we offer violence? 12. You could have pursued him. 13. They decided that their departure should be postponed. 14. It is impossible to retain Dumnorix in Caesar's absence. 15. The cavalry are not allowed to return. 16. All ought to have returned.

#### CAUSAL SENTENCES. USES OF CUM.

**145.** Causal sentences are introduced by *quod*, or (less frequently) *quia*, *because*, *for the reason that*; *quoniam*, *seeing that*; *cum*, *ut*, *since*, *as*; and *qui*, *since he*.

- i. For *qui* with the causal subjunctive see section 171.
- ii. For *quod*, meaning *the fact that*, see section 198.
- iii. *Cum* clauses (as giving attendant circumstances) regularly precede the principal clause; *quod* clauses (as emphasizing the reason) generally follow.

**146.** *Quod*, *quia* and *quoniam* take the *indicative* to express a reason advanced by the writer or speaker himself; as,

*He set out for Illyricum, because he wished to become acquainted with that district: In Illyricum profectus est, quod eās regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat.*

- i. Frequently a sort of antecedent (such as *propterēd*, *eō*, *hōc*, *eā dē causā*) is found preparing the way for the *quod* clause.

**147.** *Quod*, *quia* and *quoniam* take the *subjunctive* to quote some other person's reason;<sup>1</sup> as,

*They begged him to lend them aid, because (as they said) they were hard pressed by the Suebi: Ḏrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbis premerentur.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Or even to quote one's own previously expressed reason.

*Aristides was banished from his country on the ground that he was unreasonably just : Aristidēs expulsus est patriā quod praeter modum jūstus esset.*

i. It should not be supposed that the subjunctive casts doubt upon the reason given, or refuses to vouch for its accuracy. It simply quotes without expressing any opinion, and is, in fact, identical with the subjunctive of virtual indirect discourse (section 177). *Quod* with the indicative tells *why* something was said or done ; *quod* with the subjunctive tells *on what grounds* something was said or done.

ii. *Quod* is very commonly used after verbs of *accusation, praise, complaint, thanks, joy, anger,* and the like ; the indicative or subjunctive being used according to the distinction just drawn ; as, *I thank you for setting me free : Tibi gratiās agō, quod mē liberāvisti. Socrates was accused of corrupting the youth : Sōcratēs accūsātus est quod corrumperet juventūtem.*

iii. *Nōn quod* or *nōn quō* is used with the subjunctive of a reason mentioned only to be rejected, = *not because (as one might suppose).* So also *quam quod* or *quam quō* after an actual or virtual comparative.

iv. For the illogical *quod diceret* see section 177, ii.

**148.** *Cum*, with causal force, meaning *since* or *as*, takes the *subjunctive*;<sup>1</sup> as,

*Since they could not defend themselves, they sent envoys to Caesar : Cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt.*

**149.** *Cum*, meaning *whenever* or *when*, in clauses denoting indefinitely recurring action, takes the *indicative*.

When, as is usually the case, the *cum* clause denotes an action preceding that of the main verb, the perfect and pluperfect tenses are used ; but when it denotes what is simultaneous, the present and imperfect (section 178, ii.). The main verb is regularly present or imperfect indicative.

*Whenever our men attacked, the enemy fell back : Cum nostri impetum fēcerant, hostēs pedem referēbant.*

<sup>1</sup> For *cum*, with concessive or adversative force, meaning *although, while, whereas*, see section 65, a.

*Whenever our men attack, the enemy fall back : Cum nostri impetum fecerunt, hostes pedem referunt.*

*Whenever there is need, the enemy fall back : Cum usus est, hostes pedem referunt.*

i. With the same force and with the same construction are used also *quotiens*, *quotienscumque*, *ut*, *ubi*, *si quandō*.

**150.** *Cum*, meaning *when*, referring to present or future time, takes the *indicative*; as,

*When I find out, I shall inform you : Cum cognoverō, faciam tē certiōrem.*

i. The *futuro* and *future perfect* are used with *cum* as with *si* (section 62).

**151.** *Cum*, meaning *when* (or *while*), referring to past time, regularly takes the *subjunctive*; the imperfect of contemporaneous action, the pluperfect of antecedent action (section 178, ii.) ; as,

*When they were approaching Britain, a storm arose : Cum Britanniae appropinquarent, tempestas coorta est.*

*When he perceived this, he sent reinforcements : Quod cum animadvertisset, subsidia submittit.*

In most cases *cum* with the subjunctive describes the *circumstances* or *situation*, very often, as in the last example, combining the causal with the temporal idea.<sup>1</sup>

The following exceptions to this use of *cum* with the subjunctive regularly occur :

i. *When*, meaning *whenever*, is regularly expressed by *cum* and the *indicative* (section 149).

ii. *Cum* expressing *identity of action* or *coincidence of time* regularly takes the *indicative*, chiefly when the principal clause contains *tum*, or some equivalent expression; as, *When they remain quiet (or in remaining quiet), they approve : Cum quiescunt, pro-*

<sup>1</sup> Similarly combining the adversative with the temporal idea, *cum* (meaning *while* or *whereas*) is used with the subjunctive to contrast two situations; as, *The enemy numbered five thousand, while our men had no more than eight hundred cavalry : Hostium erat quinque millium numerus, cum nostrī nō amplius octingentōs haberent.*

bant. At the time when he came to Gaul, there were two factions in that state : (Tum) cum in Galliam vénit, in eā civitāte duae erant factiōnēs.

iii. Cum, meaning *when* or *when suddenly*, in a clause which is logically the principal one, takes the indicative. The principal clause often has *jam*, *vix* or *nōndum*; as, *They were already preparing to depart, when suddenly it was announced that the city had been captured: Jam discēdere parābant, cum repente nūntiātum est urbem captam esse.* (This is sometimes called *cum inversum*.)

iv. *Cum primum*, as soon as, takes the indicative.

v. *Cum . . . tnm*, meaning *both . . . and*, has regularly no influence on the mood of the verb.

#### EXERCISE 21.

##### A.

1. Caesar complained because the enemy were laying waste the territories of the Aedui. 2. When the ships were drawing near the island, so great a tempest arose that they could with difficulty hold their course. 3. As they thought the enemy were within the gates, they rushed out of the town. 4. Caesar feared an ambush, because he had not yet learned why they were withdrawing. 5. Whenever our men began to return to the place from which they had started, they were surrounded by the enemy. 6. They asked to be allowed to remain in our camp, on the ground that they dreaded the vengeance of the Gauls. 7. Since this is the case, I shall set out at once. 8. The soldiers were proceeding with the greatest caution, when (151, iii.) the Helvetians suddenly attacked them in the rear. 9. When our men saw that the camp was being filled with great numbers of the enemy, they immediately took to flight. 10. When Caesar returns (150, i.) to the camp, he will find the ships repaired. 11. At the time when (151, ii.) the enemy were preparing to storm the camp, Caesar was leading the soldiers across the bridge. 12. When Caesar discovered what had been done, he reproved the rashness of the soldiers in that (=because), on the signal being given, they had not halted.

##### B. (*Caesar*, B. G. V., 6, 7.)

1. They urged Caesar to leave them, on the ground that they were not used to sailing. 2. Whenever the wind began to blow,

they begged Caesar to return. 3. Caesar will keep the leading men with him because he is afraid to leave them in Gaul. 4. When (*cum*) this was reported, he perceived that all hope had vanished. 5. Since Dumnorix cannot be kept loyal, Caesar has determined to take him over to Britain. 6. Whenever Caesar is absent, they disregard his authority. 7. He keeps calling out that he must not be killed, because he is a free man. 8. When Caesar finds this out, he will be greatly annoyed. 9. He accused (*accusō*) Dumnorix of being (147, ii.) eager for supreme power. 10. When they were coming in sight of the camp, he began to resist. 11. As orders had been given not to bring him back, they did not venture to pursue him. 12. When they surround him, they will put him to death.

## TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

152. WHEN, AFTER, AS SOON AS,<sup>1</sup> introducing clauses of time, are translated by

(a) *Cum* or *cum primum* (sections 149-151).

(b) *Postquam*, *posteaquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, *simul ac* (or *simul atque*) with the indicative, in narrative chiefly the perfect indicative; as,

*After Caesar reached that place, he determined to cross the Rhine : Eō postquam Caesar pervenit, Rhēnum trānsire cōstituit.*

*When he heard that, he removed to Corinth : Id ut audīvit, Corinthum dēmigrāvit.*

*When they were informed of his approach, they sent envoys to him : Ubi dē ējus adventū certiōrēs facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt.*

*As soon as they perceived this, they began to take up arms : Quae simul atque cōspexērunt, arma capere coēpērunt.*

i. To indicate indefinitely recurring action the perfect and pluperfect tenses would be used as with *cum* (section 149).

<sup>1</sup> Clauses introduced by *when*, *while*, *after*, are also expressed in Latin by participial phrases, especially in the ablative absolute (see sections 43, 47, and 48).

ii. With *postquam* the pluperfect indicative is used when a definite interval is specified; as, *He was killed in the ninth year after he came to Spain: Nōnō annō postquam in Hispāniā vēnerat, occisus est.*

iii. *Postquam* and *postētquam* are often written as two words, in which case *post* is sometimes treated as a preposition; sometimes *quam* is used for *postquam*.

**153.** WHILE, meaning *within the time that*, is expressed by *dum* with the present indicative, even when the reference is to past time; as,

*While this was being done, the Treveri had gathered large forces: Dum haec geruntur, Trēverī māgnās cōpiās coēgerant.*

i. This idea may also be expressed by *cum* and the imperfect subjunctive (section 151), especially if there be any idea of contrast (section 151, fn.).

**154.** WHILE, meaning *as long as*, is expressed by *dum*, *quoad* or *quamdiū*<sup>1</sup> with the indicative.

The tenses are used as in English, except that for future time Latin uses the future where English loosely uses the present; as,

*While their strength lasted they held their ground: Dum vīrēs suppetēbant sustinuerunt.*

*He resisted as long as he could: Quoad potuit, restitit.*

*You shall study as long as you wish: Discēs, quamdiū volēs.*

i. For *dum*, meaning *so long as, provided that*, where the temporal force no longer appears, see section 67.

**155.** UNTIL, introducing clauses of time, is expressed by *dum* or *quoad*.<sup>2</sup>

(a) To denote *mere limit of time* the indicative is used, chiefly with *quoad*; as,

*He was in the senate that day until the senate adjourned: In senātū fuit eō diē quoad senātus est dimissus.*

<sup>1</sup> *Dōnec* also is used in poetry and late prose, often with the subjunctive.

<sup>2</sup> *Dōnec* also is used, but not often in the best prose.

*Until I learn that the winter camp has been fortified, I shall stay in Gaul: Quoad mūnita esse hiberna cōgnōverō, in Galliā morābor.*

(b) To denote *expectation, purpose or end in view*, the present or imperfect subjunctive is used, generally with *dum*; as,

*He waited until the other ships should assemble (or, more freely, he waited for the other ships to assemble): Dum reliquae nāvēs convenirent, exspectāvit.*

- i. For *not until*, meaning *not before*, see section 156, iii.
- ii. As a rule, actions referring to the future may be regarded as denoting either mere limit of time (with the indicative) or expectation (with the subjunctive).

#### 156. BEFORE is expressed by *antequam* or *priusquam*.

(a) To denote *mere priority or limit of time* the indicative is used; as,

*I was born the year before he died: Annō antequam est mortuus, natus sum.*

*And they did not cease their flight before they reached the river Rhine: Neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum pervenērunt.*

(b) To denote *purpose or anticipation or prevention* the present or imperfect subjunctive is used; as,

*Before they could recover from their panic, he led his army across: Priusquam sē ex terrōe reciperent, exercitum trānsdūxit.*

i. *Antequam* and *priusquam* are often written as two words, especially after a negative.

ii. *Priusquam* is commoner than *antequam*, especially with the subjunctive.

iii. To express *not before*, meaning *not until*, both indicative and subjunctive are found, but after secondary tenses the perfect indicative is preferred.

iv. When the pluperfect subjunctive is found after *priusquam* or *antequam*, it is regularly either in indirect narration (actual or virtual) for the perfect or future perfect indicative of the direct, or it is due to attraction (see section 177, i.).

## EXERCISE 22.

## A.

1. The Gauls will wait until Caesar reaches their borders. 2. Before he should make an attack on the enemy, he sent forward a scout to find out what their numbers were. 3. While these things were going on, the envoys who were in the camp took their departure. 4. As soon as they recovered from their panic, they sent envoys to Caesar to sue for peace. 5. For that reason I shall keep silent as long as I can. 6. He did not set out for the army until (155, i.) he learned that the enemy were gathering their forces to one place. 7. Before he reached the harbor, the cavalry had set sail. 8. We shall hold our ground until Caesar sends reinforcements. 9. After they had been informed of our advance, they withdrew into their remotest forests. 10. While our men were getting the ships ready, it was reported that the camp had been attacked. 11. Before these could learn of his departure, he crossed the river. 12. The enemy resisted bravely until they saw our cavalry approaching in the rear.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 7, 8.*)

1. After Dumnorix had taken his departure for home, Caesar ordered the cavalry to bring him back. 2. As long as he disregards Caesar's authority, I shall take care that he does no harm to the state. 3. While this was going on in Britain, two thousand cavalry were guarding the harbor. 4. We shall not embark until supplies are provided. 5. Before Caesar reached the shore, he learned that large forces had assembled. 6. They held on their course until the wind fell at sunset. 7. Whenever they caught sight of (*cōspicīō*) our soldiers, the enemy would conceal (180, b) themselves on the higher ground. 8. While the warships were assembling, we withdrew from the island. 9. Before Caesar could get suitable weather, word was brought that the enemy had learned his design. 10. As soon as he began to offer violence, they set sail. 11. Caesar should have put off his departure until he learned in what part of the island was the best landing place.

PERSONAL, DEMONSTRATIVE, REFLEXIVE AND POSSESSIVE  
PRONOUNS.<sup>1</sup>

**157.** As the pronominal subject is really contained in the personal ending of the finite verb, the nominative of the personal pronouns is not, as a rule, expressed except for *emphasis* or *contrast*; as,

*I drove out kings, you bring in tyrants:* **Ego rēgēs ējēcī, vōs tyraunōs intrōdūcītis.**

i. The third personal pronoun is supplied by *is*, *hic* or *quī*, or if emphatic by *ille*.

ii. *Nōs* is often used for *ego* (compare our 'editorial we'), but *vōs* should never be used for *tū*. So, too, *noster* is used for *meus*.

iii. In the partitive sense the genitives *nostrum* and *vestrum* are used; in the objective sense, the genitives *meī*, *tuī*, *suī*, *nostri* and *vestri*; in the possessive and subjective senses, the adjectives *meus*, *tūus*, *suus*, *noster* and *vester*.

**158.** *Hic, this* (the demonstrative of the first person), denotes something *near* (in place, time or thought). Hence it is used of something just mentioned or something just about to be mentioned; as,

*This present war:* **Hōc bellum.**

*All these (the tribes just mentioned) differ from one another in language:* **Hi omnēs lingua inter sē differunt.**

*The character of the ground was as follows:* **Locī nātūra erat haec.**

**159.** *Is, that, this, the,* refers without emphasis to something named in the preceding context, and also serves as the antecedent of the relative. It is thus also used as the unemphasized third personal pronoun; as,

---

<sup>1</sup> N.B.—It will be understood that the words treated of in sections 157 to 174 are pronouns when they are substitutes for nouns, and pronominal adjectives when they modify nouns.

*They order Lutetia to be burnt and the bridges of that town to be destroyed : Lutētiām incendī pontēsque ejus oppidi rescindi jubent.*

*The legion which he had with him : Ea legiō, quam sēcum habēbat.*

*The number of those who returned home : Eōrum, qui domum rediērunt, numerus.*

*They send envoys to him : Lēgātōs ad eum mittunt.*

i. *Is* sometimes has the force of *such* (= *tūlis*).

ii. *Et is* and *neque is* are used to emphasize, with the force of *and that too ; as, One cohort, and that too a small one* : *Una cohors et ea parva.*

iii. Where English uses *that of* or *those of* to avoid repeating a noun, Latin does not use a pronoun, but the noun is either repeated or understood (see section 83, iii.).

160. *Ille, that* (the demonstrative of the third person), denotes something *remote* in place, time or thought. It is frequently used as the emphatic third personal pronoun, in contrast with *hic*, and also to call special attention to some person or thing ; as,

*Trained not in the customs of former days, but after our modern fashion : Nōn antiquō illō mōre, sed hōc nostrō ēruditus.*

*These are under arms ; those remain at home : Hī in armis sunt, illī domī remanent.*

*The famous Alexander the Great : Māgnus ille Alexander.*

*Part of the cavalry he assigned to him, part he left for himself : Equitātūs partem illi attribuit, partē sibi reliquit.*

i. A very common use of *ille* is to indicate a change of subject, where the new subject has been referred to in the preceding clause. In such cases it may be rendered by an emphatic *he* or *they*, or by *the other, the enemy, the latter*, or some similar phrase.

ii. *Ille*, often, especially in the neuter *illud*, is used to point forward with emphasis to a following clause.

iii. *Hic* is often opposed as *the latter* to *ille, the former*.

161. *Iste, that* (the demonstrative of the second person), denotes something near or belonging to the person addressed ; as, *Those affairs of yours* (or *Those affairs you mention*) : *Istae rēs.* It has also at times a contemptuous force.

162. *Idem*, *the same*, expresses identity, and is often to be rendered by *also* or *likewise*; as,

*The same day he moved his camp*: **Eōdem diē castra mōvit.**  
*Whatever is honorable is also expedient*: **Quicquid est honestum, idem est ūtile.**

- i. For *the same as* see section 174.
- ii. As *idem* is a compound of *is*, *that same* is *ille idem*, not *is idem*.

163. *Ipse*, *-self*, is used for emphatic contrast, not as a reflexive pronoun. It may be used with nouns or with any of the personal pronouns, or may be used independently, meaning *he himself*; as,

*They slew Dumnorix himself*: **Ipsum Dumnorigem interfecērunt**  
*Leaving Labienus on the mainland, he himself set sail*: **Labiēnō in continentī relictō, ipse nāvēs solvit.**

- i. The emphatic force of *ipse* is often best rendered by *very* or *mere*; as, *They were fighting on the very banks of the river*: **In ipsis flūminis ripīs proeliabantur.**
- ii. The genitive of *ipse* with or without the possessive pronominal adjectives may be used as the equivalent of *own*; as, *My own fault*: **Mea ipsius culpa.** *Their own tongue*: **Ipsōrum lingua.**
- iii. *Ipse*, when used to emphasize a reflexive pronoun, agrees with the subject, unless very strong emphasis is to lie on the reflexive; as, *They kill themselves*: **Sē ipsi interficiunt.**
- iv. Occasionally in indirect narration *ipse* is used as a reflexive for the sake of emphatic contrast, or where *sē* might be ambiguous.

164. *Sē*, *himself*, *him*, the reflexive pronoun of the third person, refers back to the subject of the verb. It should be carefully distinguished from (a) the emphatic pronoun *ipse*, and (b) the third personal pronoun referring to others than the subject; as,

*They cannot defend themselves*: **Sē dēfendere nōn possunt.**  
*Commius took the cavalry over with him*: **Commius sēcum equitēs trāsportāvit.**

i. When *sē* refers to the subject of the clause to which it belongs, it is called the 'direct reflexive'; but when, as often, *sē* belongs to a subordinate clause and refers to the subject of the principal clause, it is called the 'indirect reflexive.' In subordinate clauses expressing a thought, statement, wish, command or question, the reflexive, as a rule, is indirect, referring to the person who thinks, commands, etc., but frequently, where there is no ambiguity, it is direct, referring to the subject of its own verb. The direct and the indirect uses may be found together; as, *They asked the king not to keep Hannibal with him, but to surrender him to them: Ab rēge petēbant nē Hannibalem sēcum habēret sibique dēderet.*

ii. The reflexive pronouns with *inter* are equivalent to the reciprocal *each other* or *one another* (including often the English preposition governing these words), as, *They love one another: Inter sē amant. They fight with one another: Inter sē pūgnant.*

iii. For the reflexives of the first and second persons, the personal pronouns are used.

iv. The passive voice of some verbs is used with reflexive force; as, *They exercise themselves: Exercentur or Sē exercent.*

**165. Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noster, Vester,** the possessive pronouns, are seldom expressed except for the sake of emphasis or clearness; in other cases the context gives a sufficient indication; as,

*For the sake of your well-being, they have neglected their own peril: Vestrae salūtis causā suum periculum neglēxerunt.*

i. These pronouns often express what is characteristic of a person; as, *By his own peculiar methods: Suis artibus.*

ii. *Suis*, like *sē* (section 164, i.), is used both as a direct and as an indirect reflexive. Very frequently also *suus* refers to some word in its clause which is not a subject of any verb; as, *They send Mago with his fleet to Spain: Magōnem cum classe suā in Hispaniam mittunt.* As a rule, *ejus* and *eōrum* are used for *his* or *their* when not reflexive.

iii. The possessive pronouns are often used substantively, especially *nostri, sui* and *sua*.

iv. Sometimes we find a genitive in apposition with the genitive idea implied in these words; as *My name in my absence: Nōmen meum absentis. By our own help: Nōstrā ipsōrum operā. Amid the tears of us all: Nōstrō omnium flētū.* (See section 163, ii.).

## EXERCISE 23.

A.

1. After these matters had been settled, a war suddenly broke out in the province itself. The cause of this war was as follows. 2. He himself placed you in charge of us. 3. The enemy had concealed their own forces in the same woods. 4. For the same reason he feared our men would inflict injury upon themselves. 5. I remained with you all that time, he returned to his own home. 6. Caesar had these two legions and those (159, iii.) of Crassus with him. 7. They slew themselves in the very gates of the camp. 8. He also thought this present war itself was dangerous to all of us (86, iv., a). 9. Our cavalry, after encouraging one another (164, ii.), joined battle with the enemy's horsemen. These latter (160, i.) at once betook themselves to their comrades. 10. He made this (160, ii.) promise, that he would give them a safe passage through your province. 11. After their usual (165, i.) custom, they put their wives and all their property in the woods. 12. The Nervii and the Aduatuci were waging war against us; the former (160, iii.) had taken up their position on the other side of the river Sabis; the latter were fortifying their own town.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 9, 10.*)

1. These same men had come from those who were pursuing our cavalry. 2. On the same night they found out that their own vessel had been wrecked. 3. These sailors reported to him that the nature of that place was as follows. 4. He himself forbade my advancing with him. 5. He does not fear for himself. They will prevent Caesar himself from advancing. 6. We repulsed the enemy, you fled. 7. He learned that they had hidden themselves (164, i.) and their possessions (165, iii.) in the woods. 8. I wished you to advance to that river with all your forces. 9. In that place our men caught sight of the enemy's camp. These latter (160, i.) had begun to blockade the very entrances. 10. The soldiers of this legion will encamp in the same place. 11. During all these days they were pursuing those who had been driven out of the fortifications. 12. He has left you (*plur.*) to

guard us. 13. You (*sing.*) have been put in charge of us. 14. While these were fortifying the camp, those were felling trees.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

## ANY.

166. (a) *Quis* (*qui*) means *any*, *anyone*, after *si*, *nē*, *numi*, and *some*, *some one*, after *nisi*; as,

*If any one has heard anything he reports it to the magistrate: Si quis quid accēpit, ad magistrātū dēfert.*

*He ordered the soldiers not to hurl back any weapon: Militibus imperāvit nē quod tēlum rejicerent.*

i. For the tenses used in general conditions introduced by *si quis*, see section 64, v.

(b) *Quisquam* (substantival) means *any one*, and *ullus* (adjectival) means *any*, when all are excluded, that is, when *any* has the force of *any, even one*, suggesting the idea of *no one* or *none*. They are used in negative, or practically negative sentences;<sup>1</sup> as,

*Nor was any one found: Neque repertus est quisquam.*

*The battle was without any danger: Sine ullō periculō erat proelium.*

i. Instead of *nān* followed by *quisquam* or *ullus*, Latin prefers *nēmō*, *nihil* and *nāllus*; but *neque* followed by *quisquam* or *ullus* is preferred to *et* followed by *nēmō*, *nihil* or *nāllus*; as, *They do not expect any disaster: Nūllum cāsum exspectant. And nothing is considered more disgraceful: Neque turpis quicquam habētur.*

(c) *Quīvis*, *quīlibet* mean *any*, *any one*, when all are included, that is, when *any* has the force of *any you please*, suggesting the idea of *every one, all*; as, *The vessels were built to withstand any violence: Nāvēs factae sunt ad quamvis vim perferendam.*

## SOME.

167. (a) *Aliquis* (*aliqui*) means *some*, *some one (or other)*, wholly indefinite; as,

<sup>1</sup> For instance, rhetorical questions, comparative clauses, clauses with *priusquam* denoting *prevention*, and clauses containing such words as *sine*, *vix*, *aegrē*.

*He bade them send some one : Jussit eōs aliquem mittere.*

*They are devising some new plan : Aliquid novī cōsiliī ineunt.*

*Even if some portion be surrounded, the rest can be saved : Si pars aliqua circumventa erit, reliqui servāri possunt.*

i. *Quispam* has the force of *aliquis*, but is much rarer.

(b) *Nōnnūlli* means *some, some few*, suggesting the idea of *some, but not many*; as,

*They lost some (or a few) of their men : Nōnnūllōs ex suis āmisērunt.*

(c) *Nesciō quis* means *some one or other* unknown to the speaker; often, through an affectation of ignorance, it implies contempt; as, *He had raised some rumor or other (or some trifling rumor) : Rūmōris nesciō quid afflāverat.*

i. *Nesciō quis* in this sense is treated as a simple word, and as such is not followed by the subjunctive of indirect question. Similarly *nesciō quō modō* or *nesciō quō pactō, in some way or other.*

(d) *Sunt qui* with the subjunctive (section 32) means *some* (emphatic) or *there are some who*; as, *Some said : Erant qui dicerent.*

(e) *Quidam* means *a certain one, a certain*, of what one has in mind, but is not anxious or able to specify further. Hence it is often used in vague descriptions, meaning *a sort of*; as,

*One of the soldiers said : Quīdam ex militibus dixit.*

*The Romans have defeated us not by valor but by a sort of trick : Nōn virtūte vicērunt Rōmāni sed artificiō quōdam.*

(f) For *alius* repeated, meaning *some . . . others*, see section 168, a. and for *quis*, meaning *some*, see section 166, a.

#### OTHER.

168. (a) **Alius** means *other, another*. When it is repeated in different clauses, the meaning in the singular is *one . . . another*, in the plural *some . . . others*; as,

*They fled in another direction : Aliam in partem ēgērunt.*

*Some were filling the trenches, others were hurling weapons : Alii fossās complēbant, aliī tēla conjiciēbant.*

When in the same clause it is repeated in a different case, or is accompanied by a derivative adverb, the meaning is, in the singular *one . . . one, another . . . another*, in the plural *some . . . one, others . . . another*; as, *Some were carried in one direction, others in another: Alii aliam in partem ferēbantur. They believe one thing one moment, another another: Alias aliud sentiunt.*

i. After *alius* or *aliter* (and similarly after *contrā*), *ac* or *atque* is used to introduce a comparison (*other than*); as, *They wage war in a manner very different from (or far other than) the rest of the Gauls: Longē aliā ratiōne ac reliqui Galli bellum gerunt.*

ii. Sometimes *alius* repeated in the same clause is to be rendered by *one another*; as, *They lead aid to one another (or one to another): Alius alii subsidium ferunt.* (See also 164, ii.).

(b) *Alter* means *the other, the second (of two)*. When repeated in different clauses, the meaning in the singular is (*the*) *one . . . the other*, in the plural *the one party . . . the other party*; as,

*(The) one part he gave up to the Gauls, the other he allotted to the cohorts: Alteram partem Gallis concessit, alteram cohortibus attribuit.*

*One division fled to the mountain, the other to the baggage: Alterī sē in montem recēpērunt, alteri ad impedimenta.*

(c) *Ceteri* and *reliqui* mean *the others, the rest, the remainder*;<sup>1</sup> as,

*They differ from the others: Differunt à ceteris.*

*The Veneti and the other states also prepare for war: Veneti reliquaeque item civitātēs bellum parant.*

#### EACH.

169. (a) *Quisque* means *each (of more than two), every*, and is especially frequent with the reflexive;<sup>2</sup> as,

*It is best for each to return to his home: Optimum est domum suam quemque reverti.*

<sup>1</sup> For the agreement of *ceteri* and *reliqui* see section 86, iv. b.

<sup>2</sup> With pronouns *quisque* and *uterque* are used substantively, taking the partitive genitive; but with nouns they are used adjectively in agreement.

i. With superlatives and ordinal numerals *quisque* has the force of *every* (or *all the*) ; as, *Every man of noble birth* : *Nobilissimus quisque*. *Every tenth man* : *Decimus quisque*. *Primus quisque* means *the very first, the first possible*.

(b) *Uterque* means *each (of two)*, freely *both* ; the plural *utriusque* means *both sides* or *both parties* ; as,

*On each bank (or on both banks) they had villages* : *Ad utramque ripam vicōs habēbant*.

*That day both armies keep within their own lines* : *Eō diē utriusque sēsē suō locō continent*.

#### EXERCISE 24.

##### A.

1. They beheld certain of our men leaping down from the other vessel.
2. They used to inquire what each one had heard concerning each matter.
3. Before he could make any (166, b, fn.) answer, he ordered the others to be summoned to him.
4. Some thought they could gain the victory without a (= *any*) wound.
5. It would be better to suffer any (166, c) fate at the hands of the Romans.
6. They will not make peace on any other terms.
7. The enemy were advancing, some from one direction, others from another (168, a).
8. When he saw that the enemy were pressing him on each flank, he suspected some new design (86, i.) had been formed.
9. If any of the Gauls are captured, the rest will soon surrender.
10. He trusted both chiefs, the one because of his ancient loyalty, the other because of his recent services.
11. Scarcely any one perceives that another plan must be devised.
12. That the flight of the Gauls should not alarm any, he pointed out that the Germans had won by some trick or other.

##### B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 11, 12.*)

1. Labienus was unwilling to build any ships.
2. Some have said that there is timber in each part of the island.
3. If he summons any workmen, they will be ordered to repair the other vessels.
4. He put a certain Labienus in charge of the other legion.
5. Some had been born on the island, others had crossed

over from the mainland. 6. Scarcely any one had learned that Caesar was leaving a garrison for both camps. 7. Some think that the cold is less intense in the interior, others, in the districts on the coast. 8. Others said that some place or other should be chosen. 9. Scarcely any ships have been lost, but some few must be repaired. 10. If any ship was lost (64, v.), he used to order another to be built. 11. He orders the one legion to remain there, the other to make war. 12. The ships should be drawn up, lest we lose any.

### THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

170. *Qui, who, which*, the relative or conjunctive pronoun, is regularly followed by the *indicative*;<sup>1</sup> as,

*The bridge which was at Geneva he orders to be destroyed: Pon-*  
*tem, qui erat ad Genavam, jubet rescindi.*

i. The indicative is regularly found also after relative adverbs, such as *unde*, *ubi*, *quō*, *ut*, relative adjectives such as *quālis*, *quantus*, and indefinite relatives such as *quisquis* and *quicunque*.

ii. For the agreement of the relative with its antecedent see section 13.

iii. In Latin, unlike the English usage, the relative is always expressed; as, *The liberty we have received from our forefathers: Ea libertās, quam à mājōribus accēpimus.*

iv. In the case of two relative clauses coordinate with each other, the second relative is generally omitted if the two relatives would have the same case; as, *He prevails upon Dumnorix, who held the chief authority and was very popular with the common people: Dumnorigi, qui principātum obtinēbat ac māximē plēbi acceptus erat, persuādet.* When the two relatives would be in different cases, as a rule both are expressed; but sometimes the second is replaced by a demonstrative, or (if it would be in the nominative or accusative) is omitted; as, *He has sent a man whom we neither fear nor obey: Hominem, quem neque timēmus neque ei pārēmus, misit.*

<sup>1</sup> This indicative becomes subjunctive in actual or virtual indirect discourse (see sections 175 and 177).

v. Where the same preposition would be used with both antecedent and relative, it is regularly omitted with the relative.

vi. The relative is often found in the ablative absolute construction.

171. The relative is used also with the *subjunctive* to introduce clauses of *purpose* (section 26), clauses of *characteristic* (section 32), and also clauses of *concession* (or *adversative* clauses) and clauses of *cause or reason*,<sup>1</sup> as,

*Though Cicero during all the previous days had kept the soldiers in the camp, on the seventh day he sent five cohorts to forage : Cicerō, qui omnēs superiōrēs diēs militēs in castris continuisset, septimō diē quinque cohortēs frumentātum mittit.*

*It is not without divine aid that the Romans carry on war, seeing that (or since) they are able to move forward such mighty engines : Nōn Rōmānī sine ope divinā bellum gerunt, qui tantās māchinatiōnēs prōmovēre possint.*

*They upbraid the Belgians for surrendering : Increditant Belgās qui sē dēdiderint.*

172. THE COORDINATING RELATIVE.—*Qui* is often used at the beginning of a sentence to introduce, not a subordinate clause, but a new *independent sentence*, which it thus connects more clearly with the preceding words than a personal or demonstrative pronoun such as English uses, would do; as,

*For this reason the Helvetians surpass the other Gauls : Quā dē causā Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs praecedunt.*

*Having completed this business Caesar set out for Gaul : Quibus rēbus cōfectis Caesar in Galliam profectus est.*

The relative may even take the place of a personal or demonstrative pronoun in a subordinate adverbial clause at the beginning of a new sentence; as,

*When they perceived this, they began to close the gates : Quod cum vidiissent, portās claudere coepērunt.*

---

<sup>1</sup> The causal relative sentence is often introduced and emphasized by *quippe, ut, or utpote.*

173. The following peculiarities in the antecedent are of common occurrence :

(a) The antecedent is frequently omitted ; as, *They do what they are ordered : Quod jussi sunt, faciunt. He sent men to find out : Misit qui cōgnōserent.*

(b) The antecedent is often repeated in the relative clause, especially the words *paris, rēs, locus, diēs* ; as, *Dust was seen in the direction in which the legion had marched : Pulvis in eā parte vidēbātur quam in partem legiō iter fecerat.*

(c) The antecedent is often incorporated into the relative clause :

i. Where the relative clause precedes, an antecedent substantive is often put in the relative clause ; as, *That part which had brought the disaster paid the penalty : Quae pars calamitātem intulerat, ea poenās persolvit.*

ii. Where the antecedent is an appositive, it is, as a rule, put in the relative clause ; as, *They inhabit Kent, a country which lies entirely on the coast : Cantium incolunt, quae regiō omnis maritima est.*

iii. Somewhat similar is the transference of a superlative or other modifier of the antecedent to the relative clause ; as, *He sent the largest ship he had : Nāvem, quam māximam habuit, misit.*

(d) The substance of a sentence may be referred to parenthetically by *quod* or *id quod* ; as, *He told them that after the enemy were put to flight (as he saw would be the case) they were all to attack the king : Praecēpit, hostibus in fugam conjectis (quod fore vidēbat), omnēs penterent rēgem.*

174. The relative pronoun *as* in correlative sentences is represented by several words, according to the antecedent. *Idem* is followed by *qui*, or by *ac* (*atque*). (So also *pār* when used with the force of *idem*). *Tālis*, *tantus* and *tot* are followed by *quālis*, *quantus* and *quot* respectively.

*Our men resist in the same manner as on the previous day : Eādem ratiōne, quā pridiē, ab nostris resistitur.*

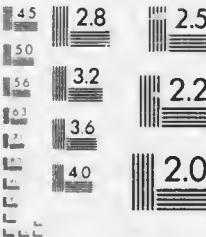
*He was the same kind of man as I perceive you to be : Tālis erat quālem tē esse videō.*

i. *As (many, large, etc.) as possible* is expressed by *quam* and the superlative of adjectives or adverbs, with or without the proper form of *possum* ; as,



# MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street  
Rochester, New York 14609 USA  
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone  
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

*They gather as many ships as possible: Nāvēs quam plūrimās (possunt)<sup>1</sup> cōgunt. As quickly as possible: Quam celerrimē.*

ii. As with *qui* (seetion 173, a) the anteedent *tālis, tantus,* or *cūt* is often omitted; as, *They allot them as much land as seems best: Attribuunt quantum vīsum est agrī.*

#### EXERCISE 25.

[In this exercise the relative should, where possible, be used as in section 172.]

##### A.

1. The ships which he had built in the previous summer, were ordered to assemble at onee. 2. Nor could any vessels be found on which the cavalry could (32) be brought over. 3. Having made these preparations, they fixed a day on which all were to assemble (26) at the banks of the river. 4. When they heard this, they withdrew to the camp whence they had set out. 5. The same thing will happen as happened yesterday. 6. This legion he left to guard the camp, seeing that it (171) was wearied with marching. 7. The number of those who set out from the country of the Helvetians was three hundred and sixty-eight thousand. Of these, those who could bear arms were ninety-two thousand. 8. Dismayed by his advance, the enemy took to flight, although they (171) had gathered large forces. 9. These do not strive with as great eagerness as they are aeeustomed to exhibit in battles on laud. 10. The enemy suddenly eame in sight of the cavalry Caesar had sent to the assistance of the Aedui. 11. These are allowed to go in safety in whatever direction they wish. 12. He sent the bravest horsemen he had (173, c. iii.) with him to Vesontio, which (13, i.) is the largest town of the Sequani.

##### B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 13, 14.*)

1. This is the length of the side which is opposite Ireland. 2. There are three (*trēs*) sides, all of which (86, iv., a) are equal. 3. The distanee is thought to be the shortest possible. 4. Those who inhabit the other district are more civilized. 5. Ireland is not eonsidered to be as large as Britain. 6. This island the

---

<sup>1</sup> With *possunt* the infinitive (*cōgere*) is understood.

Britons inhabit. These, seeing that (171) they dye themselves with woad, are of a hideous appearance. 7. The region which is on the sea some call Kent. 8. The island is of the same circumference as Mona. 9. By these inquiries we have found that the custom is the same as in Britain. 10. They have (*habeō*) milk and flesh in the island, of which I have written. 11. The woad with which the Britons used to dye themselves is thought to have produced a blue color. 12. When the ship was brought to land at this place, we saw that most of the people were clad in skins.

---

### SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.<sup>1</sup>

175. In many of the preceding sections rules have been given for using, now the indicative, now the subjunctive, in subordinate clauses introduced by a relative or conjunction.

But all such subordinate clauses are put in the *subjunctive* when dependent on a clause in indirect discourse, that is, on a clause which is itself dependent on some verb of *stating, thinking, fearing, perceiving, ordering or asking*. The indicative should never be used to express any portion of the quoted words or thoughts of another ; as,

*He answers that he has been silent as long as he has been able : Respondet quamdiū potuerit sē tacuisse.*

*They thought they would recover the hostages that they had given to Crassus : Sē obsidēs quōs Crassō dedissent reciperaūtōs existimābant.*

*It was observed that our men were scarcely suited to an enemy of this sort, because they could not follow up a retreating force : Intellectum est nostrōs, quod īsequi cēdētēs nōn possent, minus aptōs esse ad hūjus generis hostem.*

*He ordered them to await his arrival in the place where they then were : Eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre jussit.*

---

<sup>1</sup> These clauses are sometimes called by the conveniently short term *sub-oblique*.

*H. asked why Cœsar demanded this if he did not think it right : Rogāvit cūr Cœsar, sī nōn aequum existimaret hōc postularet.*

i. An apparent exception is found in the use of the indicative in subordinate clauses that really form no part of the quoted words or thoughts, but either are parenthetic or explanatory additions made by the writer himself, or are the writer's substitute for something actually said or thought ; as,

*He ordered the cohorts which were on guard to set out with him : Cohortēs quae in statioñibus erant sēcum proficisci jussit.*

*Caesar suspected that that would happen which did occur : Caesar fore id, quod accidit, suspicābatur.*

Here *quae in statioñibus erant* formed no part of the order given, while no such clause as *quod accidit* could possibly have been in Caesar's mind.

176. The *sequence of tenses* is observed in these subjunctive clauses, primary tenses following primary and secondary following secondary. In narrative, secondary sequence is the rule, the present and future indicative becoming the imperfect subjunctive, the perfect and future perfect indicative becoming the pluperfect subjunctive (see section 187, b).

But sometimes for the sake of vividness the primary sequence is used in narrative, the present and future indicative becoming the present subjunctive, the perfect and future perfect indicative becoming the perfect subjunctive. (See also section 190, vi.)

177. VIRTUAL INDIRECT DISCOURSE.—The subjunctive is used in any subordinate clause which is conceived as expressing the words or thoughts of another, without any formal or explicit statement to that effect. This is called the subjunctive of *virtual (informal or implied) indirect discourse*; as,

*He offered great rewards if they succeeded in carrying the despatches through : Māgna prōposuit præmia si litterās pertulissent. (Here *prōposuit* is equivalent to *sē datūrum esse pollicitus est.*)*

*They led part of their troops across, in order, if possible, to storm the fortress: Partem suārum cōpiārum trādūxērunt ut, si possent, castellum expūgnārent. (This represents the original thought sī poterimus, castellum expūgnāhimus.)*

*The enemy were waiting, in case our men should cross the marsh: Palūdem si nostri trānsirent hostēs exspectābant. (This represents some such thought as sī trānsihūt, adorūmūr.) In such sentences sī may also be translated by in the hope that or to see whether.<sup>1</sup>*

*He gave me all the books that (as he said) his father had left: Omnes librōs quōs pater suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit.*

For other examples compare the subjunctive with *quod, dum* and *priusquam* (sections 147, 155 and 156).

i. SURJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION—A clause dependent on a subjunctive, and forming a close connection with it, is sometimes itself put in the subjunctive by attraction, without in any way being in virtual indirect discourse; as, *So profound an impression was produced by this war among the barbarians, that envoys were sent to Caesar by those tribes which dwelt beyond the Rhine: Tanta hūjus belli ad barbarōs opiniō perlāta est, uti ab iis natiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, mitterentur lēgāti ad Caesarem. They drove the cavalry before them in such a panic that they did not cease from their flight until they came in sight of our army: Equitēs ita perterritōs ēgerunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in cōspectum agminis nostri vēnissent. When he failed to influence him as he desired, he sent by night to the king the most trusty slave he had: Quem cum minus quam vellet movēret, noctū dē servis suis quem habuit fidēlissimum ad rēgem misit.*<sup>2</sup>

ii. There sometimes occurs an illogical extension (by mistaken analogy) of the subjunctive of virtual indirect discourse, in which the verb of saying or thinking is expressed, and is itself put in the subjunctive; as, *He begged to be left in Gaul because, as he said, he was prevented by religious scruples: Petēbat ut in Galliā relinquerētur, quod religiōnibus impediri diceret* (for *quod religiōnibus impedirētur*).

<sup>1</sup> Such a clause seems to have the value of an indirect question, but is really a protasis in virtual indirect discourse.

<sup>2</sup> The subjunctive mood of *incolerent, vēnissent* and *vellet*, instead of *incolēbant, vēnerunt* (see section 156, a) and *volebat* is due entirely to the subjunctives on which they depend.

## EXERCISE 26.

## A.

1. He promised to send all the cavalry he had with him. 2. He believes that if the Aedui are crushed, the rest of the Gauls will disperse to their homes. 3. Caesar feared that the same thing would happen as had occurred the previous day. 4. We were waiting in ease (177) the Gauls should attempt to break down the bridge. 5. Having offered rewards to those who should (177) first mount the wall, he gave the signal. 6. He ordered Labienus, whom he had put (175, i.) in charge of the camp, to set out as soon as he could. 7. Caesar complains because the Aedui have not lent him aid. 8. The enemy swarmed around in hopes (177) of finding some means of approach. 9. Word was brought that Caesar would send the cavalry by the same road by which the enemy had gone. 10. He inquired how many miles the town in which they dwelt was distant from the camp. 11. Driven by hunger, they secretly went out from the camp to see whether (177) they could find any grain or cattle in the fields. 12. They gave many reasons which (they held) were perfectly valid.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 15, 16.*)

1. He observed that when our men were engaged in battle with the enemy, the cavalry never fought in close order. 2. He feared (*rereor*) that if the enemy were driven back our men would pursue them too eagerly. 3. The two cohorts which Caesar had sent to reinforce our men were ordered to drive back the charioteers who were boldly breaking through the cavalry. 4. They were waiting (*exspectō*) to see whether (177) our men would follow those who designedly retreated. 5. He thinks (*arbitror*) that our men will not dare to make an attack on the charioteers, because they are not suited for this kind of fighting. 6. They asked (*quaerō*) what brought the same danger to the cavalry and to those who had leaped down from their chariots. 7. He had not posted guards, on the ground that all the soldiers were busy fortifying the camp. 8. He perceived that if our men left the standards, the enemy

rushed out of the woods and slew them. 9. He urged (*hortor*) them to fight vigorously because those who had been placed on guard were in great danger.

### TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.<sup>1</sup>

**178.** In the general use of the tenses Latin differs from English in two respects :

i. There is no distinction in form corresponding to the English Progressive, Indefinite and Emphatic tenses, except that the Latin imperfect and perfect nearly correspond to the English past progressive and past indefinite respectively.

[In the subjunctive the perfect usually is equivalent to the English true perfect, while the English simple past is represented as a rule by the imperfect or (to indicate priority of action) the pluperfect.]

ii. Especially in subordinate clauses Latin is more exact than English in indicating both the point of time (present, past or future)<sup>2</sup> and also priority of action in relation to the main verb ; as, *When I find out, I shall inform you, if I can* : *Cum cōgnōverō, faciam tē certiōrem, sī poterō.* (Literally, *When I shall have found out, I shall inform you, if I shall be able.*) [This holds true of the subjunctive also.]

<sup>1</sup> Although sections 179-184 are not printed in large type, they should be carefully studied.

<sup>2</sup> In letters the writer often transfers himself in thought to the time of the reader, and uses the imperfect and pluperfect instead of the present and perfect ; as, *I have nothing to write* : *Nihili habebam quod scriberem.*

## 179. THE PRESENT TENSE IS USED :

(a) Of what is going on now at the present moment ; as, *They are preparing for war* : **Bellum parant.**

(b) Of general truths, and of continued, repeated or habitual actions or states ; as, *Fortune favors the brave* : **Fortūna fortēs adjuvat.** *Those in the interior do not sow grain* : **Interiōrēs frūmenta nōn serunt.**

(c) As an historical present, in animated narrative ; as, *When the news was brought, he makes haste to set out* : **Cum id nūntiātum esset, mātūrat proficisci.**

(d) To express an action attempted or intended in present time (the eonative present) ; as, *They are trying to avoid danger* : **Periculum vitant.**

(e) With *jam* and its compounds to express actions continued from the past into the present, where we should expect the perfect ; as, *He has long been collecting troops* : **Jam diū cōpiās comparat.**

(f) With *dum* (*while*), where we should expect the imperfect (see section 153).

## 180. THE IMPERFECT TENSE IS USED :

(a) Of what was going on in past time ; as, *He was wintering in Gaul* : **In Galliā hiemābat.**

(b) Of continued, repeated, or habitual actions or states in past time, like the English past indefinite ; as, *He used to lead* (or *would lead*, or *kept leading*, or *led*) *his troops out daily* : **Cotidie prōducēbat cōpiās.** *He had the greatest confidence in this legion* : **Huic legiōni cōfidēbat māximē.** *He could not discover anything* : **Nihil reperiēbat** (suggesting repeated failures). *They would not come to the councils* : **Ad concilia nōn veniēbant** (implying repeated refusals).

(c) Hence appropriately where English would use the simple past :

i. To express one's usual way of thinking, or the thoughts or feelings which accompany consideration (while the perfect is used of coming to a decision).

ii. To explain the situation of affairs.

iii. To give the details of movements, or to describe the process as opposed to summing up the result.

iv. To mention the natural features of the scene of past operations.

(d) To express an action attempted or intended (the conative imperfect) or begun in past time (the inceptive imperfect); as, *They tried to prevent our march*: **Nostrōs itinere prohibēbant.** *He proceeded to stir up the Gauls*: **Gallōs sollicitābat.**

(e) With *jam* and its compounds to express action continued from a still earlier time into the past time spoken of, where we should expect the pluperfect; as, *He had long been carrying on war*: **Jam pridem bellum gerēbat.**

(f) In the case of *possum*, *oportet*, *dēbet* and such verbs, to express lack of correspondence with fact.

**181.** The FUTURE tense is used to denote what will take place at some future time; as, *Caesar will take the camp by storm*: **Caesar castra expūgnābit.**

i. Where English has the present in a subordinate clause referring to future time, Latin uses the future when the actions are contemporaneous (section 178, ii.). Compare section 184, i.

**182.** The PERFECT tense is used:

(a) Like the English present perfect, to denote an action completed by the present time; as, *They have left their lands and have hidden in the forest*: **Finibus suis excesserunt, sēque in silvās abdidērunt.**

(b) Like the English past indefinite, to state that something took place in past time; as, *He sent forward the cavalry*: **Equitātum praemisit.**

The perfect narrates; the imperfect describes. The perfect sums up; the imperfect dwells upon the process or the particulars. Compare also section 180, c.

(c) In subordinate clauses to denote an indefinitely repeated action, preceding that of the main verb, which is in the present. (Section 149.)

(d) With *postquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, *simil atque*, where we might expect the pluperfect. (Section 152, b.)

(e) To denote the present state resulting from completed action; as, *He is dead*: **Mortuus est.** *They are gone*: **Discessērunt.** *We are surrounded*: **Circumventi sumus.** This is especially the case with *cōsuēti*, *I am accustomed*; *meminī*, *I remember*; and *nōrī*, *I know* (literally *I have become accustomed*, *I have called to mind*, *I have learned*).

Similarly the pluperfect of these verbs has the value of the imperfect, and the future perfect the value of the future.

i. The perfect tenses of the passive have sometimes *fui*, *fueram*, *fuerō*, instead of *sum*, *eram*, *erō*. The form with *fui* generally implies that the condition spoken of has ceased to exist.

ii. A sort of perfect is formed by *habeō* and the perfect participle passive,<sup>1</sup> emphasizing the continuance of the result of a past action; as, *He has large forces collected*: **Māgnās cōpiās cōactās habet.** Similarly for the pluperfect *habēbam* is used.

### 183. The PLUPERFECT tense is used :

(a) To mark an act as completed or taking place before some point in past time mentioned or implied: as, *They had by this time reached the territories of the Aedni*: **Jam in Aeduōrum finēs per-**  
**venerant.**

i. Sometimes Caesar uses the pluperfect instead of the perfect in referring to previous passages in his Commentaries. (Compare section 178, ii. fn.)

ii. For the pluperfect formed by *fueram* and by *habēbam* see section 182, i. and ii. respectively.

(b) In subordinate clauses to denote an indefinitely repeated action, preceding that of the main verb, which is in the imperfect. (Section 149 and 64, v.)

(c) To denote a past state resulting from a previously completed action. (See section 182, e.)

### 184. The FUTURE PERFECT tense is used to express something completed or attained by some point in the future; as, *Meanwhile he will have gone, or will be gone*: **Interim discesserit.**

i. Where English has the present or present perfect in a subordinate clause referring to future time, Latin uses the future perfect when the action of the subordinate verb is prior to that of the principal verb (section 178, ii.). Sometimes where two future actions are regarded as identical, one involving the other, the future perfect is found in both clauses: as, *He who crushes Antony will (thereby) finish the war*: **Qui Antōnium oppresserit, is bellum cōfēcerit.**

ii. The future perfect is sometimes used to emphasize the completion of a future act; as, *I at least shall have my duty done* (or *I at least shall be found to have done my duty*): **Ego certē meum officium praestiterō.** It thus may come to give assurance of rapidity of action; as, *The first attack will carry the camp forthwith*: **Prīmus impetus castra cēperit.**

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare in English *I have the letter written*, as distinguished from *I have written the letter*.

## EXERCISE 27.

## A.

1. To this legion he always showed especial indulgence. 2. If you assist the enemy, I shall burn your villages. 3. The Druids are accustomed to hold aloof from war, and do not pay taxes. 4. After he had learned this, he thought he ought not to wait longer. 5. If Caesar is at the head of the army, we shall easily conquer the Gauls. 6. He marched through the forest of Ardennes, which extended from the Rhine to the Nervii. 7. By this means they sought (180, *d*) to terrify the others. 8. While this was going on, the enemy had already reached the territories of the Aedui, and were laying waste their lands. 9. On the following day they move their camp two miles. 10. Whenever he saw his men in distress, he would send reinforcements. 11. For the reasons which I have mentioned, Caesar wished to set out for Britain. 12. Before midnight the enemy will be gone (184).

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 17, 18.*)

1. The enemy are rallying. 2. The enemy are repulsed and a large number slain. 3. When (*cum*) Caesar learns this he will send forward the legions. 4. They were accustomed (*cōsuēti*) to leap down from their chariots. 5. For a long time (*diū*) they had been contending with their full force. 6. Whenever they began to forage, the enemy would suddenly show themselves. 7. As soon as all the reinforcements had assembled he proceeded (180, *d*) to cross the river. 8. During all these years they were unable to learn his plans. 9. While the cavalry were foraging, the enemy had withdrawn. 10. They trusted (180, *c. i.*) in the speed of the chariots. 11. Whenever our men make an attack, the enemy betake themselves to flight. 12. When (*ubi*) they had crossed (182, *d*) the river, they halted. 13. When (*cum*) he perceived this, he immediately ordered the cavalry to halt. 14. The enemy's forces are drawn up on the other hill.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE—*Oratio Obliqua*.

185. Direct Discourse (*Oratio Recta*) gives in their original form the words or thoughts of any person.

Indirect Discourse (*Oratio Obliqua*) gives (in dependence upon some verb of *stating*, *thinking*, *perceiving*, *ordering* or *asking*) the substance of the words or thoughts of another person, and even of the writer or speaker when quoting himself.

The rules for changing Direct into Indirect Discourse are as follows :

A. CHANGES IN MOOD.<sup>1</sup>

## 186. 1. Principal Clauses.

(a) Clauses containing a *statement* (assertive or declarative sentences) have their verb in the *infinitive* with subject accusative (section 14).

(b) Clauses containing a *question* (interrogative sentences) have their verb in the *subjunctive* (section 35).

i. Indirect deliberative questions (section 134, d) retain the subjunctive.

(c) Clauses containing a *command* or *request* (imperative sentences) have their verb in the *subjunctive*.

i. This use of the subjunctive is closely related to the substantive final clause (section 27), both being developments of the independent jussive subjunctive (section 134, b). It is thus sometimes difficult, if not impossible, to distinguish the reported command and the substantive final clause, especially after *nē* or when *ut* is omitted (section 28, vi.) ; as for instance in the sentences, *Nuntii postulabant hōs sibi dēderent* : *The messengers demanded that they should surrender these men to them.* *Militibus imperātum est nē hostēs aggrederentur* : *The soldiers were given orders that they should not attack the enemy.*

## • 2. Subordinate Clauses.

All kinds of subordinate clauses (relative, temporal, conditional, causal, etc.) are put in the *subjunctive* mood (section 175 and fn.).

---

<sup>1</sup> In no case is the indicative retained.

*B. CHANGES IN TENSE.*

187. (a) Clauses put in the *infinitive* change as follows:

DIRECT DISCOURSE.		INDIRECT DISCOURSE. becomes Present Infinitive.	
Present Ind.			
Imperfect, Perfect or Pluperfect Ind.		"	Perfect "
Future Ind.		"	Future "
Present or Imperf. Subj. <sup>1</sup>		"	
Future Perf. Ind.		"	
Imperf. or Pluperf. Subj. <sup>1</sup>		"	Inf. in <i>-ūrum fuisse</i> .

(b) Clauses put in the *subjunctive* as a rule observe the sequence of tenses (section 176) as follows:

DIRECT DISCOURSE.		INDIRECT DISCOURSE. <i>Primary Sequence.</i> <i>Secondary Sequence.</i>	
Present Indic. or Subj.	becomes	Present Subj.	Imperfect Subj.
Future "	"	"	"
Imperfect "	"	"	Imperfect "
Perfect "	"	"	Perfect "
Fut. Perf. "	"	"	Pluperfect "
Pluperfect "	"	"	Pluperfect "

Certain exceptions occur, however, in *indirect questions*:

The future indicative becomes (according to sequence) the present or imperfect subjunctive of the active periphrastic conjugation (section 36).

The imperfect indicative becomes (according to sequence) the perfect or pluperfect subjunctive (section 36, fn. I (a)).

i. Of special importance is the use of the pluperfect subjunctive for the future perfect indicative of direct discourse. The difficulty of this common use is due largely to the fact that the original future perfect is foreign to the English idiom (section 178, ii.). Thus, *If I find out, I shall bring back word*: *Si cōgnōverō, re-nūntiābō* would become, *He answered that if he found out, he should bring back word*: *Respondit si cōgnōvisset, sē renūntiā-tūrum esse*. The pluperfect subjunctive in such cases means literally *should have, not had already*.

<sup>1</sup> In the apodosis of a conditional sentence.

## C. CHANGES IN PRONOUNS.

**188.** When, as is generally the case,<sup>1</sup> the first and second persons of the original words are changed in indirect discourse to the third person :

- ego, nōs*, become *sē* (or if emphatic in the nominative, *ipso, ipsi*).
- meus, noster*, " *suus*.
- tū, vōs*, " *ille, illi* (or sometimes *is, ei*).
- tūns, vester*, " *illius, illorum*.
- hic, iste*, " *ille* (or *is.*)

## D. CHANGES IN ADVERBS.

**189.** Adverbs which are relative to the time or place of the speaker, are, as a rule, adapted to the time and place of the reporter. Thus *nunc, hodiē, hic, hiuc, heri*, would become respectively *tum* or *tunc*, *illō diē, ibi, inde, pīdiē*.

**190.** The following real or apparent exceptions also are found :

- i. Clauses introduced by the coordinating relative, which are only apparently subordinate, are put in the infinitive.
- ii. Because of the tendency in Latin to use the same construction after *quam* (*than*) as before it, the accusative and infinitive sometimes occurs in *quam* clauses instead of the subjunctive.
- iii. For the indicative in parenthetic clauses in indirect discourse see section 175, i.
- iv. The hortatory subjunctive (section 134, *a*) is usually changed into the infinitive of the passive periphrastic conjugation.
- v. Rhetorical questions which are virtual denials are often put in the accusative and infinitive.
- vi. Instead of the regular secondary sequence the more vivid<sup>2</sup> primary is often found after historical tenses; and sometimes also a passage may begin with secondary sequence and suddenly change to primary sequence. On the other hand, after the historical present (section 179, *c*) secondary sequence may be used.
- vii. The pronoun *hic* and the adverbs mentioned in section 189 are often retained unchanged in indirect discourse.

<sup>1</sup> Of course where the matter quoted refers to the person reporting or the person to whom it is reported. Latin, like English, will use the first or second persons in indirect discourse.

<sup>2</sup> More vivid because presenting more exactly the original tenses.

viii. The regular rules for the use of *sē*, *ille* and *is* in indirect discourse are not always rigidly followed, especially where no ambiguity arises. See particularly on the use of *sē* and *sunt* sections 164, i. and 165, ii.

**191.** The verb of *saying*, *thinking*, etc., on which the indirect discourse depends, is not always expressed, being often sufficiently suggested by the context.

Further, where the indirect discourse includes more than one variety of reported utterance (statements, commands, questions, requests) it is not Latin usage to change the verb introducing the various indirect clauses, as English often does.

*Ariovistus sends envoys to Caesar saying that he wished to treat with him about these matters and asking him to appoint a day for an interview: Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit: velle sē dē his rēbus agere cum eō: colloquiō diem cōstitueret.*

**192.** In indirect discourse conditional sentences assume the following forms:

*Sī quid habeo dō, / dicit sē, sī quid habeat, dare.*

*becomes* { *dixit sē, sī quid habēret, dare.*

*Sī quid habēbam / dicit sē, sī quid habēret, dedisse.*

*dabam, becomes* { *dixit sē, sī quid habēret, dedisse.*

*Sī quid habui dedi, / dicit sē, sī quid habuerit, dedisse.*

*becomes* { *dixit sē, sī quid habuisset, dedisse.*

*Sī quid habēbō / dicit sē, sī quid habeat, datūrum esse.*

*dabō, becomes* { *dixit sē, sī quid habēret, datūrum esse.*

*Sī quid habuerō / dicit sē, sī quid habuerit, datūrum esse.*

*dabō, becomes* { *dixit sē, sī quid habuisset, datūrum esse.*

*Sī quid habeam / dicit sē, sī quid habeat, datūrum esse.*

*dem, becomes* { *dixit sē, sī quid habēret, datūrum esse.*

*Sī quid habērem / dicit } sē, sī quid habēret, datūrum fuisse*

*darem, becomes* { *dixit } (or esse).*

*Sī quid habuissēm / dicit } sē, sī quid habuisset, datūrum fuisse.*

*dedissem, becomes* { *dixit } sē, sī quid habuisset, datūrum fuisse.*

193. The following examples illustrate the rules for changing from direct to indirect discourse :

1. *Direct.* — We shall give hostages, and shall do whatever you command.

*Indirect.* — (They promised) that they would give hostages, and would do whatever he commanded.

Obsidēs **dabimus**, quaeque **imperāveris faciēmus**.

(Pollieiti sunt) obsidēs **sē datūrōs**, quaeque **imperāvisset factūrōs**.

2. *Direct.* — A larger cloud of dust than is customary is visible in the direction in which the legion has marched.

*Indirect.* — (They reported) that a larger cloud of dust was visible in the direction in which the legion had marched.

**Pulvis mājor quam eōnsuētūdō fert** in eā parte **vidētur**, quam in partem legiō iter **fecit**.

(Renūtiāvērunt) **pulverem mājōrem**, quam eōnsuētūdō **ferret**, in eā parte **vidēri**, quam in partem legiō iter **fecisset**.

3. *Direct.* — Visit as many states as you can, and urge them to embrace the alliance of the Roman people, and announce that I shall quickly come thither. After examining everything, return to me as quickly as possible.

*Indirect.* — (He gives him orders) that he is to visit as many states as he can, and urge them to embrace the alliance of the Roman people, and announce that he will quickly come thither. After examining everything, he is to return to him as quickly as possible.

Quās poteris **adi** eivitātēs, **hortāre**que ut populi Rōmānī fidēi sequantur, mēque cele-  
riter eō ventūrum **nūntiā**. Explorātis omnibus rēbus, ad  
mē quām priūnum revertēre.

(Huie imperat) quās possit **adeat** cīvitātēs, **hortētur**que ut po-  
populi Rōmānī fidēi sequantur,  
**sēque** ecleriter eō ventūrum  
**nūntiet**. Explorātis omnibus  
rēbus ad **sē** quām primum  
revertātur.

4. *Direct.*—It is not without reason that Gaul is being robbed of all her nobility; this is Caesar's plan, to carry over to Britain and kill all those he fears to slay in sight of Gaul.

*Indirect.*—(He said) that it was not without reason that Gaul was being robbed of all her nobility; that this was Caesar's plan, to carry over to Britain and kill all those whom he feared to slay in sight of Gaul.

5. *Direct.*—I was unwilling to leave my people and come to you, for this reason that I might the more easily keep the state in its allegiance; accordingly the state is in my power, and if you permit it I shall come to you in your camp and entrust the fortunes of myself and the state to your protection.

*Indirect.*—(He answered) that he had been unwilling to leave his people and come to him, for this reason that he might the more easily keep the state in its allegiance; accordingly the state was in his power, and if Caesar permitted it, he should come to him in his camp, and entrust the fortunes of himself and the state to his protection.

Nōn sine causā fit, ut Gallia omni nōbilitāte spoliētur; hōc est cōnsilium Caesaris, ut, quōd in cōspectū Galliae interficere verētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necet.

(Dixit) nōn sine causā fieri, ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Cac-saris, ut, quōd in cōspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret.

Ideircō ā meīs discēdere atque ad tē venire nōlēbam, quōd facilius civitātem in officiō continērem; itaque est civitās in meā potestāte, atque si permittēs, ad tē in castra veniam, meās civitatisque fortūnās tuae fidei permittam.

(Respondit) ideircō ab suis dis-cēdere atque ad eum venire nōluisse, quōd facilius civitātem in officiō continēret; itaque esse civitātem in suā potestāte, sēsēque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, suās civitatisque fortūnās ējus fidei permis-sūrum.

6. *Direct.*—Even if time fails, yet it will be of great service to me, if I merely visit the island.

*Indirect.*—(He thought) that, even if time failed, yet it would be of great service to him, if he merely visited the island.

7. *Direct.*—If you think it wrong for the Germans to cross into Gaul against your wish, why do you claim that anything beyond the Rhine is under your sway or power?

*Indirect.*—If he thought it wrong for the Germans to cross into Gaul against his wish, why did he claim that anything beyond the Rhine was under his sway or power?

8. *Direct.*—Leap down, soldiers, unless you wish to betray the eagle to the enemy. I at least shall have done my duty.

*Indirect.*—Let the soldiers leap down, unless they wished to betray the eagle to the enemy. He at least should have done his duty.

9. *Direct.*—Do no harm to the Trinobantes, Cassivellanus.

*Indirect.*—He ordered Cassivellaunus to do no harm to the Trinobantes.

(Observe how the vocative may be represented in indirect discourse.)

Si tempus dēficiet, tamen māgnō mihi ūsui erit, si modo insulam adierō.

(Arbitrābatur) si tempus dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsui fore, si modo insulam adiisset.

Si tē invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsire nōn aequum existimās, eūr tuī quicquam esse imperii aut potestatis trāns Rhēnum postulās?

Si sē invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsire nōn aequum existimāret, eūr sui quicquam esse imperii aut potestatis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?

Dēsilite, militēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere. Ego certē meum officium praestiterō.

Dēsilirent militēs, nisi vellent aquilam hostibus prōdere. Sē certē suum officium praestitūrum fuisse.

Nōlī, Cassivellaune, Trinobantibus nocēre.

(Imperat Cassivellaunō) nē Trinobantibus noceat.

## EXERCISE 28.

[*The passages quoted in direct form should be turned into indirect for translation.*]

*A.*

1. To these ambassadors he replied : "I will go with you, if you are ready to set out."
2. They sent ambassadors to Caesar saying that they were ready to open the gates they had closed the day before.
3. He told them not to forget the former valor of the Helvetians, nor the wrongs done by them to the Roman people.
4. "I," answered he, "have spared the citizens, you the Gauls."
5. He began to urge them not to set out ; Caesar did not dare to leave them in Gaul; but if they crossed over to Britain, he would kill them all.
6. "Let them not," he wrote, "provoke the enemy to battle, but if they are being harassed themselves, let them hold out until (155, b) I come up."
7. They replied that if these proceedings were reported to Arioistus, they did not doubt that he would inflict the severest punishment on all the hostages who were in his power.
8. What were they to do ? he asked ; it was impossible to defend the camp any longer, and Caesar would have been annoyed if they had set out without his orders.
9. In his consulship (he said) the Germans had most eagerly sought the friendship of Rome. Why should anyone imagine that they would forsake their allegiance ?
10. Would they have sent Commius back, he asked (35, i.), if he had not led his army across ?

*B. (Caesar, B. G. V., 19-21.)*

1. He points out that if the cavalry rush out, the legionary soldiers will not endure the onset.
2. He pointed out that if the cavalry wandered too widely, the Britons would rush out from the woods and seize them.
3. "We shall send you all the corn we have (*habeō*)," they answered Caesar. "Why (*cūr*) are you setting out with the legions ? Do not attack our town."
4. He said that this young man would have held supreme power if he had not been slain by Cassivellaunus.
5. "Let us cross (190, iv.) the river," they answered. "Who can harm us if we are able to conceal ourselves in the marshes ?"
6. The Trinobantes sent an

embassy to Caesar (saying) that they had given up all hope and (promising) that they would surrender to him all the hostages he demanded and (begging him) not to suffer the soldiers to lay waste their lands. 7. They feared (*rereor*) that if Caesar allowed the legions to leave the line of march, the enemy would seize many of the soldiers. 8. They said they were accustomed to assemble in these towns, whenever the enemy made a raid. 9. They promised (him) the kingship, if he did not attach (177) himself to Caesar.

### DIFFERENT FORMS OF THE NOUN CLAUSE.

**194.** A noun (or substantive) clause is one that takes the place and discharges the functions of a substantive, whether as *subject* or *object* of a verb or equivalent phrase, or as an *appositive*<sup>1</sup> to some other word in the sentence.

N. B.—The accusative and infinitive construction is here treated as a noun clause because it represents the English noun sentence introduced by the conjunction *that*. Similarly in substantive clauses of result, and in clauses with *quān* and *quōminus*, the adverbial notion of result or purpose has become so weakened that they may properly be treated as noun clauses like their English equivalents.

i. Clauses, like infinitive phrases, are always regarded as neuter.

**195.** After verbs of *saying* and *thinking*, many so-called impersonal verbs, and many expressions composed of a neuter adjective and *est*, English noun clauses with *that* are expressed by the accusative and infinitive.

(a) Subject.—*It is not right that the Germans should cross the Rhine:* **Nōn aequum est Germānōs Rhēnum trānsire.**

(b) Object.—*They thought they possessed limited territories:* **An-gustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur.**

(c) Appositive.—*This report was brought to Caesar, that they were attempting to march through our province:* **Caesari id nūntiātum est, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnāri.**

<sup>1</sup> A noun clause is occasionally used as a restrictive appositive to an accusative of anticipation; as, *You know Marcellus how slow he is: Nōstī Mārcellum quam tardus sit. They feared that supplies could not be brought in: Rem frumentāriam ut supportāri posset timent.*

196. After words of *ordering*, *asking*, *determining*, and verbs of *fearing*, English noun clauses with *that* are expressed by clauses with *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive. This subjunctive is akin to the subjunetive of purpose, and like it is in its origin the subjunetive expressing will (see section 186, 1, c, i.).

(a) Subject.—*The soldiers have been given orders that they are to attack the enemy*: **Militibus imperātum est ut hostēs aggredi-**

(b) Object.—*I fear that I may be deserted by all*: **Vereor nē ab omnibus dēserar.**

(c) Appositive.—*Their aim is that they may recover their liberty*: **Id agunt ut libertātem recipiant.**

197. After verbs of *happening* and *causing*, English noun clauses with *that* are expressed by clauses with *ut* and the subjunctive, which is a weakened subjunctive of result.<sup>1</sup>

(a) Subject.—*It happened that there was a full moon*: **Accidit ut esset plēna iūna.**

(b) Object.—*He brought it about that supplies could be conveyed to him without danger*: **Commeātūs ut sine periculō ad eum portāri possent, efficiēbat.**

(c) Appositive.—*The day had this result, that a very great number of the enemy were wounded*: **Diēs hunc habuit ēventum, ut māximus hostium numerus vulnerārētur.**

198. English noun clauses with *that* after verbs expressing *emotion*, and clauses with *that* = *the fact that*, are expressed by clauses with *quod* and either the indicative, or the subjunetive of virtual indirect discourse.

(a) Subject.—*There was also the fact that he had stated this in the assembly of the Aedui*: **Accēdēbat hūc quod in conciliō Aedu-ōrum haec dixerat.**

(b) Object.—*He complains that he has been abandoned*: **Quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.<sup>2</sup>**

(c) Appositive.—*A most fortunate thing happened, that the next day the Germans came into the camp*: **Opportūnissima rēs acci-dit, quod postridiē Germāni in castra vēnērunt.**

<sup>1</sup> The substantival notion became so much more prominent than the notion of result that this construction came to be used in cases where not even the faintest trace of result can be discerned.

<sup>2</sup> Here, as often, the substantival and causal notions are combined.

(d) Adverbial Accusative.—*As to the fact that you threaten me you will not disregard the wrongs of the Aedui, no one has contended with me, except to his own destruction:* **Quod mihi dēnūtiās tē Aeduōrum injūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēmō mēcum sine suā p̄e. niciē contendit.**

**199.** After verbs of *asking, learning, knowing, telling, etc.*, English noun clauses introduced by an interrogative are expressed by an interrogative clause with the subjunctive of indirect question.

(a) Subject.—*It cannot be determined with the eyes in which direction it flows:* **Oculis in utram partem fluat jūdicāri nōn potest.**

(b) Object.—*He found out what was being done:* **Cōgnōvit quid gererētur.**

(c) Appositive.—*This is the real question, whether he has returned:* **Illud quaeritur num redierit.**

**200.** The same verb may have more than one construction, the difference of construction in most cases representing a difference of meaning.<sup>1</sup>

(a) *They determine that these should leave the town:* **Cōstituunt ut hī oppidō excēdant.**

*They determine that it is best to return:* **Cōstituunt optimum esse reverti.**

*He determined what tribute Britain should pay:* **Quid vectigālis Britannia penderet, cōstituit.**

(b) *Word was brought that they were not to attack the enemy:* **Nūntiātum est nē hostēs lacesserentur.** (Compare section 195, c.)

(c) *There was also the fact that they fought in small groups:* **Acēdēbat hūc ut rāri proeliārentur.** (Compare section 198, a.)

N.B.—It is important to distinguish carefully (a) between substantive clauses with *that* and the purely adverbial clauses of purpose and result also introduced by *that*, and (b) between substantive interrogative clauses and relative clauses with omitted antecedent (section 39, v.).

---

<sup>1</sup> Observe that the clause which follows verbs of *determining, announcing, telling, etc.*, will be in the infinitive or subjunctive according to the rules of indirect discourse (section 186, 1).

## EXERCISE 29.

## A.

1. It is best that we should announce to the soldiers that they are not to provoke the enemy to battle. 2. They made the complaint that the enemy were laying waste their lands. 3. The result was that it was quickly ascertained what tribes inhabited the island. 4. There was danger that it would be difficult to determine what should be done. 5. There was added the fact that (198, a) he had stated that Caesar had conferred the chief power upon him. 6. It happened that some of the soldiers were intercepted by the sudden approach of the cavalry. 7. It was reported that Caesar had given orders to the soldiers to storm the enemy's camp. 8. By means of messengers he informs Caesar what he thinks should be done. 9. He answered that he did not know why the soldiers had received orders that they were to attack the town. 10. There is no doubt that the Helvetians are the most powerful. 11. He was of the opinion that it would be dangerous to the province that the enemy should become accustomed to cross the Rhine. 12. This report had been brought, that the Germans had betaken themselves to the woods. 13. He sent messengers to announce that Caesar had determined that (200, a) Labienus should not return.

B. (*Caesar, B. G. V., 22-23.*)

1. There was added the fact that (198, a) some ships had been driven back. 2. This report had been brought (*nuntiō*) to Cassivellaunus that Caesar had determined to lead his forces back to the mainland. 3. When he had determined what should be done, he urged (*hortor*) that they should wait for the vessels. 4. There is danger (*periculum*) that Caesar will determine that all the legions shall winter in Gaul. 5. It happened that the ships in which he had ordered that the army should be sent back had been lost in the storm. 6. Caesar complained (*queror*) that they had not paid the tribute. 7. He announced that the best (*optimus*) thing was for the envoys to fritter away the rest of the summer. 8. The result of this was (*quō factum est*) that Caesar was not aware how many

(*quot*) losses had been sustained. 9. It was announced that because it happened that the equinox was at hand, the army must be taken back at one trip. 10. He gave orders that they were not to harm the king. 11. They send messengers (stating) that their lands are being laid waste. 12. It was said (*dicō*) that (18, vii.) four kings governed these states.

---

### CONTINUOUS PROSE AND IDIOMATIC TRANSLATION.

**201.** Passages of continuous narrative set for translation into Latin prose may conveniently be arranged in three divisions of increasing complexity : *first*, those passages in which little more is required than in the detached sentences heretofore given for translation, namely proper choice of words, correct inflection and observance of the rules of Latin syntax ; *second*, those passages where, in addition, the phraseology requires alteration, either to adapt the passage to Latin idiom or to avoid difficulties arising from a limited vocabulary ; and *third*, those passages in which some alteration is necessary or desirable not merely in phraseology but also in the structure or relation of sentences.

N.B.—The same division holds of passages to be translated from Latin into English, and much of what follows may, with the necessary changes, be applied to the idiomatic translation of Latin into English.

The three following sections discuss the chief points to be observed in each of these divisions.

---

### CONNECTION OF THOUGHT.

**202.** Even in the simplest kind of narrative passage it will not do to treat the component sentences as so many independent units. Latin differs very markedly from English in regard to the connection of sentences. If a modern book or newspaper be compared with such an author as Caesar, it will be found that in narrative English it is the exception rather than the rule to give formal expression to the connection of thought, while in narrative Latin the reverse holds true.

Hence the general rule that at the beginning of each new sentence in Latin care should be taken to make plain the connection in thought with the preceding words.

(a) The usual means of expressing the connection between sentences are as follows:

i. Particles such as *atque*, *and moreover*; *neque*, *and not*; *at*, *but*; *autem*, *however*; *vero*, *but indeed*; *itaque*, *therefore*; *nam* or *enim*, *for*.

ii. Pronouns, especially the coordinating relative *qui* (section 172) and the demonstratives *hic*, *is*, *ille*, *ipse* and *idem* (sections 158-162).

iii. Words or phrases whose meaning suggests a reference to the preceding context, such as *interim*, *meanwhile*; *ita*, *in this way*; *tum*, *thereupon*; *eō*, *to that place*; *postero dīē*, *the next day*; *eādem dē causā*, *for the same reason*; *accēdit quod* or *ut*, *besides this*.

(b) Where the scene shifts and a new actor comes upon the stage, Latin is generally careful to mark the change of subject *early* in the sentence.

If the new subject has been mentioned in the preceding sentence, *qui*, *hic*, *is* and (for emphatic contrast) *ille* are generally used; if it has not been mentioned, a substantive is used, as, for instance, *Caesar*, *hostēs* or *nostri*. In the latter case very often none of the connecting links mentioned above is used; apparently the contrast afforded by the change of subject is in such cases felt to be a sufficient mark of connection.

On the other hand, where the subject is not changed, it is seldom repeated, but is indicated in Latin merely by the personal ending of the main verb of the new sentence.

(c) It may be noticed here that Latin prefers as a connective *neque* (or *nec*) to *et* followed by *nōn*; and similarly *nec quisquam*, *nec nullus*, *nec unquam* are preferred to *et nēmō*, *et nullus*, *et numquam*.

#### PHRASEOLOGY.

203. Before an English sentence can be turned into idiomatic Latin, it often requires remodelling and adaptation (in whole or part) because of differences in the form

of expression preferred by each language. In our own language, as we know, the same thought may be expressed in many different ways, and of these some are sure to be more, some less, like the form of expression a Roman would choose. So it often happens that when at first it would seem impossible to turn an English sentence into Latin because it contains some words for which the student knows no Latin equivalent, the whole difficulty is easily solved by expressing the thought of the sentence in some other way. But again, even when the student does know a Latin equivalent for *each individual* word in an English sentence, he may yet fail to get a tolerable rendering, for the reason that Latin may put the *whole thought* into a form quite unlike the English.

To a certain extent differences of phraseology between Latin and English are matters of detail that the most complete vocabulary could not fully treat, but certain general rules may be given which have a very wide application. These rules are really illustrations of one great principle : that the genius of the Latin language is above all things *direct, definite* and *concrete*, like the Roman character itself, straightforward, business-like, practical and unimaginative.

Hence the general rule for narrative prose, first to see clearly what is the exact meaning of the English phrase, and then to express that meaning in the simplest and most direct manner. Some important special applications of this rule are as follows :—

(a) AVOID METAPHORICAL OR PICTURESQUE EXPRESSIONS.

Very little modern English prose is as simple and direct as Caesar's style ; much even of our everyday language is in fact

highly metaphorical. In narrative prose, the best plan is to avoid figurative language altogether; translate the thoughts and not the words. So for example:

*He took the field : Ad bellum profectus est.*

*He left no stone unturned : Nihil praetermisit.*

*He turned a deaf ear to this advice : Quod cōsilium nōn probāvit.*

*He sacrificed friendship on the altar of patriotism : Amicitiam rei pūblicae p̄ 'habuit.*

Where figurative language is used in Latin (as in Cicero's oratory and Livy's semi-poetical prose) we constantly find either that a simile is preferred to a metaphor or that the metaphor is quite different from the English one, and even then is apt to be toned down by *tamquam*, *quasi*, *quidam*, etc.

#### (b) AVOID ABSTRACT FORMS OF EXPRESSION.

Latin has fewer abstract words than English, and those it does possess it uses much more sparingly than we do, many of them being found only in philosophical writings. The number of abstract words which can safely be ventured upon in narrative prose is very limited, such as *amicitia*, *auctoritās*, *celeritās*, *magnitūdō*, *studium*. Almost invariably the English abstract expression should be turned by a concrete Latin phrase; as,

*On the conclusion of this war : Hōc bellō cōfēctō.*

*On the receipt of this information : Quod cum nūntiātum esset.*

*They promised submission to his authority : Ea quae imperāssent sē factūrōs pollicī sunt.*

*In Caesar's consulship : Caesare cōsule.*

*His measures : Ea quae faciēbat.*

*In pursuance of his annual custom : Ut quotannīs cōsuēverat.*

So the indirect question furnishes an equivalent for many abstract words (see section 37), and the vague word *rēs* often affords a convenient translation for various kinds of *circumstances*, *situations*, *measures*, etc.

Similarly Latin is very deficient in class names which express the doer of an action, such as *fugitive*, *defender*, *combatant*, *discoverer*, *believer*. These can generally be expressed by the verb: e.g., *fugientēs* or *qui fugiebant*.

(c) AVOID THE PERSONIFICATION OF INANIMATE THINGS OR OF  
QUALITIES.

Latin seldom represents anything but a living thing as the doer of an action, while English so constantly makes inanimate objects or abstract nouns the subject of a verb of action that we scarcely notice the personification.

*Caesar's sudden approach frightened them into submission : Cæsar is repentinō adventū commotī, lēgātōs dē dēditiōne mittunt.*

*The darkness of the night hid us from the enemy : Propter tenebrās, hostēs nostrōs nōn cōspicāti sunt.*

*Speed alone will save us : Una est in celeritāte posita salūs.*

*His dying words : Ejus morientis verba.*

(d) THE CHIEF WEIGHT OF THE SENTENCE FALLS IN LATIN  
UPON THE VERB.

In English there is a tendency to make the noun the significant word. So for English phrases consisting of some unemphatic verb, such as *make, have, take, do*, etc., followed by a verbal noun which is the really significant word, Latin often has a verb which contains the meaning of the English noun within itself ; as,

*He made reply to me : Mihi respondit.*

*He has no hesitation : Nōn dubitat.*

*He took his departure : Discessit.*

*We have both the power and the daring to cross : Et possumus et audēmus trānsire.*

This verb is often accompanied by a cognate accusative (see section 72) in the form of a neuter pronoun or adjective ; as,

*They can do no harm to us : Nihil nōbis nocēre possunt.*

*He made many promises : Multa pollicitus est.*

*They make the same attempt : Idem cōnāntur.*

This idiom is especially noticeable in the impersonal use of the passive voice of intransitive verbs (section 56) ; as,

*Mention has been made of him : Dē illō dictum est.*

*There must be no delay : Nōn cunctandum est. (Compare also section 37.)*

(e) THE ACTIVE VOICE IS PREFERRED TO THE PASSIVE IN THE  
LEADING VERBS.

This is because of the desire to state exactly and naturally what takes place. But as Latin prefers to keep the same subject throughout a period, the verbs in the subordinate clauses and in participial phrases will often be passive while the main verb is, according to rule, in the active voice. Two important and frequent examples of the use of the passive are the ablative absolute construction, and the impersonal passive construction.

(f) THE PRECISE MEANING OF BOTH ENGLISH AND LATIN  
WORDS MUST BE CLOSELY WATCHED.

It will seldom happen that a word in one language corresponds exactly in all its uses to any one word in the other.

i. For instance, in English very many transitive verbs may be used intransitively also, whereas in Latin this very seldom occurs. In such cases the intransitive use is expressed sometimes by the passive voice, sometimes by the active with the reflexive pronoun, and sometimes by a quite different verb ; as,

<i>move</i>	(transitive), <i>movēre</i> ;	(intransitive), <i>movēri</i> .
<i>surrender</i>	(transitive), <i>dēdere</i> ;	(intransitive), <i>sē dēdere</i> .
<i>increase</i>	(transitive), <i>augēre</i> ;	(intransitive), <i>crēscere</i> or <i>augēri</i> .

ii. Again, many English words have widely different meanings, according to the context ; as,

*weight* (burden), *onus* ; (influence), *auctōritās*.

*Rome* (the city), *Rōma* ; (the nation), *populus Rōmānus*.

*field* (piece of land), *ager* ; (battle), *aciēs* or *proelium*.

*ask* (make a request), *petō* ; (put a question), *quaerō*.

*command* (give an order), *imperō* ; (have authority over),  
*praesum*.

iii. An entirely different source of mistakes is the fact that many English words derived from Latin originals have in the course of time taken on a very different meaning. For instance :

*obtineō* = *hold, possess* ;      *obtain* = *cōsequor, adipiscor*.

*occupō* = *seize* ;      *occupy* = *obtinēo*.

*officium* = *duty* ;      *office* = *magistrātus*.

*recipiō* = *recover, regain* ;      *receive* = *accipiō*.

*sēcūrus* = *free from anxiety* ; *secure* = *tūtus*.

## (g) OMIT UNNECESSARY AND MERELY ORNAMENTAL EPITHETS.

Some English writers are fond of heightening the effect by adding words or phrases that may adorn the style but add nothing to the meaning. These may safely be omitted; as, *The enemy was awaiting the approach of our (gallant) leader. They aimed their weapons particularly at the horses (of the enemy's cavalry).*

## (h) BE PRECISE IN THE USE OF THE TENSES.

Attention has already been called to the precision shown in the Latin use of the tenses, especially i. in subordinate clauses referring to an action prior to that of the main verb (sections 178, ii. and 187, b, i.); ii. in the tenses of the participle (section 41); iii. after verbs of *promising* and *hoping*, etc. (section 17). In one important respect only is Latin less exact than English, namely, in the frequent use of primary sequence after secondary tenses (section 190, vi.).

## STRUCTURE.

**204.** It may happen, however, that all the preceding rules about syntax, connection and phraseology have been carefully observed, and yet that the result is far from being good Latin prose. For it may be that the English passage is constructed in a way that is very unlike Latin usage.

Modern English narrative is apt to consist of a series of detached sentences, each comparatively simple in its structure, generally short, and containing very few verbs. Classical Latin narrative is more apt to group several of these crisp sentences into a longer and more complex sentence, making the verb which expresses the main idea the principal verb, and putting the others in various subordinate relations.

Again, even when English does have a long complex sentence, it is more loosely constructed than the Latin period (section 9). In the Latin period (as in the Latin

short sentence) the main thought is, as a rule, not complete until the final words are given; the period is intended to be grasped as a whole; grammatically it may appear very involved, but the thoughts are marshalled in a perfectly logical order. But in the English long sentence (as often in the short sentence also) we seldom find the main thought left in suspense until the very end of the sentence; the final words are not the emphatic ones; the thought is intended to be grasped in detail.

Contrast the following passages :

*Our men then marched back to camp. Not a man had been killed, and very few wounded. Yet they had expected a formidable campaign, for the enemy numbered four hundred and thirty thousand men. Nostri ad unum omnēs incolumēs perpaucis vulneratēs extanti belli timore, cum hostium numerus capitum quadringentōrum trīgintā milium fuisse, sē in castra recēpērunt.*

In the elementary stages of the writing of continuous Latin prose, it is not necessary to study very closely the formation of the Latin period, which, after all, is by no means invariably employed by even the most careful Latin prose authors; the following suggestions, however, will be found of importance for even the beginner.<sup>1</sup>

(a) Arrange the various clauses of a sentence in the logical order of thought, which in narrative commonly means the order of time. Put all clauses or phrases expressing attendant circumstances before the main verb, and put last the clause on which the emphasis falls. This will generally be the principal clause, but see section 6, ii.

(b) Reduce the number of principal verbs by grouping short independent sentences that relate to a common topic into a complex sentence.

<sup>1</sup> On the other hand, it is of the utmost importance that the pupil in turning Latin into English should become accustomed to translating Latin periods and complex sentences into the simpler and looser structure characteristic of English, and especially should he familiarize himself, by practice, with the various ways suggested in sections 43 and 47 of translating participial clauses. Good examples for such practice may be found in Caesar, B. G., IV. 23, 6; 24, 1; 30, 1 and 2; 32, 4 and 5; V. 7, 6; 8, 1 and 2; 9, 1; and 15, 3 and 4.

(c) Within this complex sentence or period, avoid as far as possible changes of subject. The subject of the main verb should, if expressed at all (section 202, b), appear early in the sentence and be made, where possible, the subject of the dependent clauses also.

(d) Latin is very fond of inserting a subordinate clause in the middle of a clause on which it depends, but the loosely joined parenthesis should be carefully avoided.

(e) Even where there is no need for grouping short sentences into a period, it may often be convenient to readjust some of the clauses or phrases in the passage for translation, shifting them from one part of the sentence to another or even transferring them to the preceding or the following sentence. For instance, in the passage : *On receiving this news he led his forces against the enemy. His march, though rapid, was so conducted as to save the troops from all fatigue,* the translation is simplified by transferring the idea of marching rapidly to the preceding clause : **Quae cum audivisse cōpiās adversus hostēs quam celerrimē dūxit ; ita tamen ut nō labōre et itinere nōn dēfatigāti sint.** Similarly, instead of presenting one action as the *result* of some preceding action it may be more convenient to represent the latter as the *cause* of the former.

#### 205. Some miscellaneous differences of idiom also deserve notice.

(a) English often expresses emphasis by means of the verb *to be*, generally followed by the relative pronoun or adverb ; as, *It was I who did it.* *Piso was the first to reach the camp.* Latin has nothing corresponding to this, but expresses emphasis by other means ; as, **Ego feci. Primus ad castra pervenit Piso.**

(b) Latin constantly tends to look upon an action as proceeding from a certain source or quarter, where in English it is considered as happening *in* that quarter ; as, *He fought on horseback : Ex equō pūgnābat.* *They attack our troops on both flanks : Nostrōs ab utrōque latere aggrediuntur.* (See also section 127, v.)

(c) In Latin demonstrative and relative pronouns (especially *hic*) referring to some previous noun or the substance of a previous clause are put in agreement with a noun, instead of in the objective genitive depending on it. English has frequently this same condensed form of expression ; as, *Through fear of this circumstance (or through this fear) : Hoc metū (= Hujus reī metū).*

(d) In such expressions as *The shrewd Fabius, Your excellent father, So brave a man as you,* Latin uses an appositive with the superlative in agreement ; as, **Fabius callidissimus imperātor,**

**Pater tuus vir optimus, Tū vir fortissimus.** When, however, such epithets have no bearing on the context, they should be omitted altogether (see section 203, *g*).

(e) *This great* is regularly in Latin **hic tantus** not **hic magnus**.

(f) Latin frequently uses **et** or **-que** to join adjectives, where English omits the connective; so especially with **multi**; as, *Many great contests*: **Multae et magnaे contentiōnēs**.

(g) The Latin adjective or participle is frequently found where English would use a noun; as, *Our men*: **Nostri**. *All their property*: **Omnia sua**. *Wise men, philosophers*: **Sapientēs**. *The retreating force*: **Fugientēs**.

(h) In many phrases the adjective is used in Latin where an adverb or adverbial clause would be found in English. Such cases are *primus, prior, medius, ultimus, invitus, imprudēns, rārus, tōtus*. In all these cases the condition of what is expressed by the noun, not the manner of action expressed by the verb, is looked to; as, *They came unwillingly (or against their will)*: **Invitī vēnērunt**.

(i) Where in English a verbal or abstract noun is connected with another noun by the preposition *of*, in Latin this abstract noun is often represented by a perfect participle passive put in agreement with the Latin noun corresponding to the object of the preposition; as, *Before the founding of Rome*: **Ante Rōmam conditam**. *The news of the disaster*: **Nūntiāta clādēs**. (See also section 203, *b* and *d*.)

(j) Latin often uses the name of a tribe or people instead of the name of the country or city; as, *He marched through the territory of the Ligurians*: **Per Ligurēs iter fēcit**. *He came to Gortyna*: **Ad Gortyniōs vēnit**.

(k) In English a coordinating relative clause is often appended to the main clause of a sentence, containing an additional statement which might equally well have been expressed by an independent principal clause introduced by a conjunction (*who = and he*); in Latin the coordinating relative should be placed only at the beginning of a new independent sentence; as, *Influenced by these events the Helvetians at once sent envoys, who threw themselves at Caesar's feet and in tears begged for peace*: **His rēbus adducti, Helvētiū statim lēgātōs mittunt. Qui sē ad pedēs Caesari prōjēcērunt flentēsque pācem petivērunt**.

Other ways of translating such appended clauses into Latin are (*a*) by using coordinate principal clauses connected by a conjunction, or (*b*) by enlarging the main clause of the English sentence into a participial or subordinate clause, as; *He sends*

*messengers to these kings, whom he orders to attack the naval camp : Ad hōs régēs nūntiōs mittit, atque his imperat uti castra nāvālia oppūgnent. This fact was reported by scouts to Cæsar, who sent in his legions and seized the town : Quā rē per explōrātōrēs nūntiātā, Cæsar legiōnēs intrōmittit atque oppidō potitūr.*



**Ancient City Wall and Gate.**  
*(The Porta Appia in the Aurelian Wall, Rome.)*

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

*[For the principal parts of the verbs reference may be made to the Vocabulary to Caesar, page 101.]*

### A

**abandon**, prōdō, ere.  
**ability**, ingenium, I, N.  
**able**, be, possum, posse, potui.  
**about** (=concerning), dē, with abl.; (with numerals), circiter.  
**access**, aditus, ūs, M.  
**accordance**, in — with, prō, with abl., or abl. alone.  
**account**, on — of, propter, with acc.  
**accustomed**, be, cōsuēvi, isse (perf. tense of cōsuēscō).  
**accustomed**, become, cōsuēscō, ere.  
**acquit**, absolvō, ere.  
**across**, trāns, with acc.  
**added**, be, accēdō, ere.  
**Aduatnel**, Aduatuci, ūrum, M.  
**advance**, verb, prōcēdō, ere; prōgredior, I.  
**advancee**, noun, adventus, ūs, M.; send in **advancee**, praemittō, ere.  
**advise**, admoneō, ēre.  
**Aednl**, Aedui, ūrum, M.  
**after**, prep., post, with acc.; conj., postquam, cum; or use perfect participle.  
**afraid**, be, vereor, ēri; (of, express by acc.).  
**against**, in, contrā, with acc.; (with bellum gerō), cum, with abl.  
**ago**, abhinc, with acc.  
**aid**, auxilium, I, N.; subsidium, I, N.; bring **aid** to, auxilium ferō, ferre, with dat.  
**alarm**, permovereō, ēre; commovereō, ēre.

**all**, omnis, e.  
**allegiance**, officium, I, N.  
**allow**, patior, I, passus sum.  
**allowed**, be, licet, licēre, licuit, impersonal with dat.  
**ally**, socius, I, M.  
**aloof**, hold, absum, esse, āful.  
**already**, iam.  
**also**, he, use idem.  
**although**, et si; quamquam; quamvis; or by concessive relative.  
**always**, semper.  
**ambassador**, lēgātus, I, M.  
**ambush**, Insidiae, ūrum, F. plur.  
**among**, inter, with acc.  
**ancestors**, mājörēs, um, M.  
**anchor**, welgh, = set sail.  
**ancient**, vetus, -eris.  
**and**, et, -que, atque, ae.  
**annonnee**, nūntiō, āre.  
**annoyed**, be, graviter ferō, ferre.  
**another**, aliis, a, ud.  
**answer**, give (or make) answer, respondeō, ēre.  
**any**, ullus, a, um; after si, or nē, qui (quis), qua, quod.  
**appearance**, aspeetus, ūs, M.  
**approach**, verb, accēdō, ere; appropinquō, ēre, with dat.  
**approach**, noun, adventus, ūs, M.  
**Ardennes**, Arduenna, ae, F.  
**Ariovistus**, Ariovistus, I, M.  
**arise**, coorior, Ir.  
**arms**, arma, ūrum, N. plur.  
**army**, exercitus, ūs, M.  
**around**, circum, with acc.  
**arrival**, adventus, ūs, M.

**art of war**, rēs militāris, f.  
**as** (=since), eum, or use participle.  
**as—as possible**, quam, with superl.  
**as soon as**, simul atque.  
**ascertūm**, cōgnōscō, ere.  
**ashamed**, be, pudet, impersonal.  
**ask<sup>1</sup>** (of making a request), petō, ere; rogō, āre.  
**ask<sup>2</sup>** (of asking a question), quaerō, ere; rogō, āre.  
**ask for**, petō, ere, with acc.  
**assemble** (intransitire), conveniō, īre.  
**assembly**, concilium, i., n.  
**assist**, subveniō, īre, with dat.; juvō, āre, with acc.  
**assistancee**, auxiliū, i., n.  
**assistantee**, go to—of, auxiliō eō, with dat.  
**at**, of time when, use abl.; of place where, use locative, or in and abl.; after coniicio, in, with acc.; in phrase throw one's self at feet, ad, with acc.  
**at once**, statim, adv.  
**Athens**, Athēnae, ārum, f. plur.  
**attack**, verb, (of places), oppūgnō, āre; (of men), aggredior, i.; adoror, īrī; impetum facere in, with acc.  
**attack**, noun, impetus, ūs, m.  
**attempt**, make an, cōnor, āri.  
**away, take**, tollō, ēre, sustuli, sublātum.

**B**

**baggage**, impedimenta, īrum, n. plur.  
**bank**, ripa, ae, f.  
**battlē**, proelium, i., n.; pūgna, ae, f.  
**be**, sum, esse, fui; to express distance, use absun, abesse.  
**bear**, ferō, ferre.  
**because**, quod.  
**because of**, propter, with acc.

**before**, prep. (of time and place), ante, with acc.  
**before**, adv., anteā.  
**before**, conj., antequam, prius quam.  
**beg**, īrō, āre.  
**begin**, īnelpiō, ēre; for the perfect tenses, use coepi, isse, coemptus sum.  
**begin battle**, proelium committō, ēre.  
**beginning**, use prius.  
**behold**, viēō, ēre; cōspieor, āri.  
**Belgians**, Belgae, ārum, m. plur.  
**believe**, crēdō, ēre, with dat.  
**beseach**, īrō, āre; obseerō, āre.  
**best**, optimus, a., um.  
**betake**, recipiō, ēre.  
**betake one's self to flight**, sē fugae mandāre.  
**better**, melior, ius.  
**better, it is**, praestat, āre, impersonal.  
**betray**, prōdō, ēre.  
**beyond**, trāns, with acc.  
**Bibracte**, Bibracte, is, n.  
**boast of**, glōrior, āri, with abl.  
**bont**, nāvis, is, f.  
**body (of cavalry)**, multitūdō, -inis, f.  
**border** (=beginning, edge), initium, i., n.; **borderies** (=territories), finēs, ium, m.  
**both . . . and**, et . . . et.  
**both**, use uterque, utraque, utrumque, =each.  
**brave**, fortis, e.  
**bravely**, fortiter.  
**bravery**, virtūs, tūtis, f.; fortitūdō, -inis, f.  
**break down**, reseindō, ēre.  
**break out**, eoorior, īrī.  
**bridge**, pōns, pontis, m.  
**bring**, ferō, ferre.

\* The person who is asked is with *rogō* in the acc., with *petō* in the abl. with *ab*, with *quaerō* in the abl. with *ex* or *ab*.

**bring** (*followed by across*), trādūō, ere; trāsportō, āre.  
**bring over**, trādūcō, ere.  
**bring word**, nūntiō, āre.  
**Britain**, Britannia, ae, F.  
**Briton**, Britannus, I, M.  
**build**, aedificō, āre; faciō, ere.  
**burn**, incendō, ere.  
**burn up**, combūrō, ere.  
**but**, conj., sed.  
**but (=who—not)**, quin.  
**by**, ā, ab, *with abl.*

**C**

**Caesar**, Caesar, -aris, M.  
**call**, appellō, āre.  
**camp**, castra, ūrum, N. plur.  
**can**, possim, posse, potui.  
**capture**, capiō, ere.  
**carelessness**, indiligentia, ae, F.  
**carry down**, déjiciō, ere.  
**carry on**, gerō, ere.  
**case, be the**, ita esse (=be so).  
**Castlius**, Castius, I, M.  
**cattle**, pecus, -oris, N.  
**cause**, cūrō, āre, *with gerundive*.  
**canton**, wth, cautē; wth the greatest canton, cautissimē.  
**cavalry**, equitātus, ūs, M. (*in sing.*); equitēs, uni, M. (*in plur.*).  
**cavalry-man**, eques, -itis, M.  
**cease**, dēsistō, ere, *with abl.*  
**centurion**, centuriō, -onis, M.  
**certain**, quidam, quaedam, quid-dam or quoddam.  
**chain**, catēna, ae, F.  
**chance**, cāsus, ūs, M.  
**charge**, be in-of, prae sum, esse, *with dat.*  
**charge, place (put) in-of**, prae-ficiō, ere, *with acc. and dat.*  
**charioter**, essedārius, I, M.  
**chief, chief man**, princeps, -eipis, M.  
**chief power**, rēgnū, I, N.; imperium, I, N.

**circumstance**, rēs, rel, F.  
**clitzen**, elvis, is, M.  
**city**, urbs, urbis, F.  
**element**, élémentia, ae, F.  
**close**, claudō, ere.  
**cohort**, cohors, -hortis, F.  
**collect**, cōgō, ere.  
**come**, veniō, ire.  
**come up**, accēdō, ere.  
**come up with**, cōsequor, I, *with acc.*  
**come upon**, ocurrō, ere, *with dat.*  
**command, verb**, (=order), imperō, āre, *with dat.*; (=be in command), prae sum, esse, *with dat.*  
**command, noun**, (=military power), imperium, I, N.; (=order given), imperātum, I, N.  
**command, be in, have-of**, prae-sum, esse, *with dat.*  
**communieation, hold**, collo-quor, I.  
**compel**, cōgō, ere.  
**complain**, queror, I.  
**complaint, make**, queror, I.  
**complete**, cōficiō, ere.  
**comrades, their**, sui, ūrum, M. plur.  
**conceal**, oecultō, āre; cēlō, āre.  
**concern, object of**, cūra, ae.  
**concerning**, dē, *with abl.*  
**conclude (=make)**, faciō, ere.  
**confer, deferō, -ferre; (upon, express by dat.)**  
**conference**, colloquium, I, N.  
**confusion, throw into**, per-turbō, āre; *throw into great confu-sion*, māgnopere perturbō.  
**conquer, vineō, ere**; superō, āre.  
**consul**, cōnsul, cōnsulis, M.  
**consulship, in the- of**, use cōnsul in the abl. absolute (49).  
**consult welfare of**, cōsulō, ere, *with dat.*  
**consummate**, summus, a, um.  
**continent**, continēns, -entis, F.  
**corn**, frūmentum, I, N.

**country** (=district), loca, órum, N.  
 plur.; regiō, ónis, F.; (=lawn),  
 ager, agrī, M.; finēs, ium, M.  
 plur.; (=state), res pùblica, rei  
 pùblicae, F.; (=native country),  
 patria, ae, F.; (=rural districts),  
 rūs, rūris, N.  
**course**, eurus, ūs, M.  
**coward**, ignāvus, I, M.  
**Crassus**, Crassus, I, M.  
**cross, cross over**, trānseō, ire.  
**crush**, opprimō, ere.  
**custom**, cōsnētūdō, -dinis, F.;  
 mōs, mōris, M.  
**cut off**, intercūdō, ere.

**D**

**danger**, periculum, I, N.  
**dangerous**, periculōsus, a, um.  
**dare**, audeō, ēre, ansus sum.  
**date**, the—of, use clause with  
 quandō (=when).  
**day**, diēs, ēi, M.  
**day before, the**, pridiē, adv.  
**death**, mors, mortis, F.  
**death, put to**, interficiō, ere.  
**decide** (=form a resolve), cōstī-  
 tuō, ere; (=form an opinion), jū-  
 dicō, āre; (=adjudicate), dēcermō,  
 ere.  
**declare** (with bellum), indieō, ere.  
**deep**, altus, a, um.  
**defeat**, repellō, ere; superō, āre.  
**defend**, défendō, ere.  
**demand**, imperō, āre; poseō, ere.  
**depart**, discēdō, ere.  
**departure**, discessus, ūs, M.; pro-  
 fectiō, -onis, F.; take one's depa-  
 ture, discēdō, ere; proficisciō, I.  
**design**, cōsiliū, I, N.  
**despair, be in despair**, dēspérō,  
 īre; (of, dē, with abl.).  
**destination, reach**, iocum capiō.  
**destroy**, rescindō, ere.  
**deter**, dēterrō, ēre; impediō, ire.  
**determine**, cōstituō, ere.  
**devise**, capiō, ere; incō, ire.

**die**, morior, mori.  
**difficult**, difficilis, e.  
**difficulty, with**, vix, aegrō, adr.  
**direction**, pars, partis, F.  
**directions, from all**, undique,  
 adr.; or use pars.  
**disaster**, calamitās, -tatis, F.  
**discover**, cōgnoscō, ere; reperlō,  
 ire.  
**disembark**, ē nāvibus ēgredior, I.  
**dismiss**, permovere, ēre.  
**dismiss**, dimittō, ere.  
**dispel**, expeliō, ere.  
**disperse**, discēdō, ere.  
**disposition**, animus, I, M.  
**dispute**, contrōversia, ac, F.  
**distant**, be, absum, abesse.  
**distress**, be in, labōrō, āre.  
**distribute**, distribuō, ēre;  
 (among, express by dat.).  
**district**, regiō, -onis, F.  
**distrust**, diffidō, ere, -fisus sum,  
 with dat.  
**do**, faciō, ere.  
**double**, duplex, duplicitis.  
**doubt**, verb, dubitō, āre.  
**doubt**, noun, dubitatiō, -onis, F.;  
 there is no doubt, nōn est du-  
 biūm.  
**draw** (with gladiis), dēstringō, ere.  
**draw near**, =approach.  
**dread**, vereor, ērl.  
**drive** (=urge on), impelliō, ere.  
**Druuids**, Druidēs, um, M. plur.  
**Dumnorix**, Dumnorix, -igis, M.  
**dwell**, incolō, ere.

**E**

**energely**, cupidē.  
**engerness**, alacritās, -tatis, F.  
**engle**, aquila, ae, F.  
**easily**, facile.  
**easy**, facilis; very easy, perfa-  
 cilis, e.  
**eat**, vescor, I (with abl.).  
**eight**, octō.

**embark**, nāvēs cōnseendō, ère.  
**embassy**, lēgātlō, -ōnis, F.  
**encamp**, cōnsidō, ère.  
**encourage**, cohortor, ārī.  
**endure** (=tolerate), patior, I; (=withstand), perferō, -ferre.  
**enemy**, hostis, is, M. (*usually in the plur.*).  
**engage in battle**, proellum committō, ère.  
**engaged**, oecupātus, a, um.  
**engagement**, proelium, I, N.  
**enquiry, make**, quaerō, ère.  
**enrol**, cōscrībō, ère.  
**envoy**, lēgātus, I, M.  
**especial**, use praecipiū = *especially*.  
**even**, etiam; **not even**, nē...quidem; **even if**, even though, etiam si.  
**every**, omnīs, e; quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque = *each*.  
**every one**, omnēs, plur.; or quisque, sing., = *each*.  
**everything**, omnia; omnēs rēs.  
**exercise** (=show), ūtor, I, *with abl.*  
**exhibit**, ūtor, I, *with abl.*  
**escort**, hortor, ārī.  
**ex erlece**, usus, us, M.  
**extend**, pertineō, ère.  
**extremely**, maximē (*or use the superl. degree*).  
**eyes, in the—of**, use the dat.

**F**

**further**, adv., longlus.  
**fate**, fortūna, ae, F.  
**favorable**, idōneus, a, um.  
**fear**, verb, timeō, ère; vereor, ēri.  
**fear, noun**, timor, -oris, M.; metus, ûs, M.  
**few, but few**, pauci, ae, a; **a few**, nōmūlti, ae, a; **very few**, per-pauci, ae, a.  
**field**, ager, agrī, M.  
**fierce**, use acriter, = *fiercely*.  
**fight**, pūgnō, ère.

**fight a battle**, proelium faciō, ère.  
**fighting**, pūgna, ae, F.; *or use gerund of pūgnō*.  
**fill, fill up**, compleō, ère.  
**find**, reperlō, ire; inveniō, ire.  
**find out**, cōgnoscō, ère; emperlō, ire.  
**fire**, ignis, is, M.  
**fire, set—on**, incendō, ère, *with acc.*  
**first**, primus, a, um; **at first**, primō; (=be the first to) use primus.  
**five**, quinque.  
**fix (with diēs)**, dicō, ère.  
**flank**, latus, -eris, N.  
**flee**, cōfugiō, ère; fugiō, ère.  
**flesh**, carō, carnis, F.  
**flight**, fuga, ae, F.  
**flight, take to**, sc̄ fugae mandare.  
**follow**, sequor, I.  
**follow up**, persecutor, I.  
**following**, posterus, a, um; inse-quēns, -entis.  
**follows, as**, hic, haec, hōe.  
**food**, cibus, I, M.  
**foot**, pēs, pedis, M.; **on foot**, pedibus; (**at the foot of**), sub, *with abl.*  
**for (of motion towards)**, in, ad, *with acc.*; (=with a view to) ad.  
**forces**, cōpliae, ārum, F, plur.  
**forest**, silva, ae, F.  
**for ever**, in perpetuum.  
**forget**, oliviseor, i, *with gen.*  
**form (with cōsilium)**, capiō, ère.  
**former**, pristinus, a, um.  
**forsake**, discedō, ère, *with ab and abl.*  
**fortify**, muniō, ire.  
**forward, send**, praemittō, ère.  
**four**, quattuor.  
**fourth**, quartus, a, um; **three-fourths**, = *three parts*.  
**free (verb)**, liberō, āre.  
**free (adj.)**, liber, era, erum.  
**freedom**, libertās, -tatis, F.  
**friend**, amīcus, I, M.

**friendship**, amicitia, ae, f.  
**frightful**, horridus, a, um.  
**from**, à, ab (=away from), ex (=out of), with abl.  
**fugitives**, fugientēs, = those fleeing.  
**furnish**, order to, imperō, ūre  
 (with dat. of persons ordered, acc. of that to be furnished).

**G**

**gain**, potior, Iri, with abl.; adipiscor, i, with acc.  
**gate**, porta, ae, r.  
**gather**, cōgō, ere.  
**Gaul** (the country), Gallia, ae, f.  
**Gaul** (a native of Gaul), Gallus, i, m.  
**general**, imperātor, -ōris, m.  
**Geneva**, Genāva, ue, f.  
**German**, noua, Germānus, I, m.; adj., Germānus, a, um.  
**give**, dō, dare, dedi, datum.  
**go**, eō, ire, ii (vi), itum.  
**go forth**, go out, excō, ire.  
**going**, be-on, fiō, fieri; geror, i.  
**gone**, be, discessi,isse.  
**grain**, frumentum, I, n.  
**great**, māgnus, a um; how great, quantus, a, um; so great, ns great, tantus, a, um.  
**Greek**, Graecus, I, m.  
**grieveance**, dolor, -ōris, m.  
**ground** (=place), locus, I, m.; loca, ūrum, N.  
**ground**, stand (hold) one's, consistō, ere; sustineō, ēre.  
**ground**, on the—that, quod, conj.  
**guard**, praesidium, I, n.  
**guilty**, fūnd, condemnō, ēre.

**H**

**halt**, cōsistō, ere.  
**hand**, be at, adsum, -esse.  
**hands**, at the—of, à, ab, with abl.  
**happen**, accidō, ere; fiō, fieri.  
**harass**, laeessō, ere.

**harbor**, portus, ūs, m.  
**hard pressed**, be, premor, I.  
**have**, habeō, ēre; (=cause), cūrō, āre.

**he**, is; sē.

**head**, bent the—of, praeſum, esse, with dat.

**hear**, hear of, audiō, ire, with acc.  
**hearing**, without n, indictā causā  
 (lit. the case being unpleaded).

**help**, auxilium, I, n.

**Helvetian**, nonn, Helvētius, I, m.; adj., Helvētius, u, um.

**hesitate**, dubitō, ūre.

**hide**, sē abdere; (in, in with acc.).

**high**, altus, a, um; (=great), magnus, a, um.

**higher** (of position), superior, ius.

**hill**, collis, is, m.

**himself**, ipse, a, um; sē.

**hindrance**, impediō, ire; prohibeō, ēre.

**his**, suus, a, um; ejus.

**hold**, teneō, ēre; (=regard), habeō, ēre.

**hold out**, sustineō, ēre.

**home**, domus, ūs, f.; at home, domi; for motion towards use domin or dīmī.

**hope**, verb, spērō, are; (for, express by acc.).

**hope**, noun, spēs, spel, f.

**horseman**, eques, -itis, m.

**hostage**, obses, -sidis, m.

**how much**, quantum.

**however**, quanvis.

**hunger**, famēs, is, f.

**hurl**, conieidō, ere; (at, in with acc.).

## I

**If** (=in case that), si; (=whether), num; as If, quasi, velut.  
**imagine**, putō, ūre.  
**immediately**, statim.  
**impossible**, be, nse possum.  
**impress**, commoveō, ēre.

**In**, in, with abl.; (=into), in, with acc.

**licensed**, be-nt, exāndēscō, ere, with abl.

**Indulge**, indulgō, ēre, with dat.

**Indulgence**, show, indulgō, ēre.

**Inevitably**, usus necesse est.

**Inexperienced**, imperitus, a, um.

**inflict** (of punishment), sumō, ēre; upon, dē, with abl.); (of injury), inferō, ferre; (upon, express by dat.).

**Influence**, verb, undūcō, ēre; per-moveō, ēre; impellō, cre.

**Influence**, noun, auctoritās, -tatis, F.

**inform**, certiōrem (certiōrēs) faciō, ēre; (of, dē, with abl.).

**Inhabit**, incolō, ēre.

**Injure**, noceō, ēre, with dat.

**Injury**, injuria, ae, F.

**Inquire**, quaerō, ēre; rogō, āre.

**Instruct**, praecipiō, ēre, with dat.; jubeō, ēre, with acc.

**insult**, contumēlia, ae, F.

**insolently**, insolenter.

**Instead**, use future partic. in-ūrus with sum.

**Intercept**, intercipiō, ēre.

**Interest**, be of, interest; rēfert.

**into**, in, with acc.

**island**, Insula, ae, F.

**Italy**, Italia, ae, F.

**It, Its, use is.**

### J

**Javelin**, pilum, I, N.; tēlum, I, N.

**join battle**, proelium comittō.

**Judge**, iudicō, āre; arbitrator, āri.

### K

**keep from**, prohibeō, ēre, with infin., or with ab and abl.

**kill**, interficiō, ēre; occidō, ēre.

**know**, sciō, īre.

### L

**Labiens**, Labiēnus, I, M.

**lack**, careō, ēre, with abl.

**land** (=country), ager, agrī, M.; sīnes, iūm, M.; (opposed to water), terra, ac, F.

**land, on**, pedestris, tris, tre, adj.

**land, verb**, (nāvī) ēgredior, I.

**large**, māgnus, a, nm; how large, quantus, a, nm; so large, such a large, tantus, a, nm.

**later** (=after), post, adr.

**law**, lēx, lēgis, F.

**lay waste**, vāstō, āre.

**lead**, dūcō, ēre; (=influence), ad-dūcō, ēre.

**lead across**, trānsdūcō, ēre, often with two accusatives.

**lead back**, redūcō, ēre.

**lead out**, ēdūcō, ēre.

**leader**, dux, ducis, M.

**leap down**, dēsiliō, īre.

**learn**, cōgnoscō, ēre.

**leave** (=leave behind), relinquo, ēre; (=go away from), discedo, ēre, with ab and abl.; (=go out of), ēgredior, I, with ex and abl.

**legion**, legiō, -ōnis, F.

**lend** (with auxiliū), ferō, ferre (=bring).

**less**, minus, adr.

**lest**, nē.

**let slip**, dimittō, ēre.

**lieutenant**, lēgātus, I, M.

**like**, similis, e, with dat.

**like, I should**, velim.

**likely**, be-to, use future partic. in-ūrus with sum.

**live**, vivō, ēre; (on, express by abl.).

**load**, onerō, āre.

**long, as-as**, dñm, conj.

**longer, any longer**, dñtius.

**low**, humiliis, e.

**lower (of situation)**, inferior, lus.

**loyalty**, fidēs, ei, F.

**M**

**make**, faciō, ere.  
**make war**, bellum inferō, inferre; (on, express by dat.).  
**man**, vir, viri, M.; homō, hominis, M.; (=soldier), miles, -itis, M., or use the possessive pronoun.  
**many**, multi, ae, a.  
**march**, verb, iter faciō, ere.  
**march**, noun, iter, itineris, N.  
**marching**, iter, itineris, N.  
**Marius**, Marius, I, M.  
**Massilia**, Massilia, ae, F.  
**matter**, rēs, ref, F.  
**matter, no—how**, quamvis.  
**mean**, volō, velle, with dat. of reflexive pronoun.  
**means** (=measures), rēs.  
**means of approach**, aditus, ūs, M.  
**means, by—of**, per, with acc.  
**meet**, ocurrō, ere, with dat.  
**meet with**, nanciscor, i, with acc.  
**mention**, commemorō, āre.  
**merchant**, mercator, -ōris, M.  
**merit**, virtūs, -ūtis, F.  
**messenger**, nuntius, I, M.  
**middle**, use medius, a, um, adj.  
**midnight**, media nox (noctis, F.).  
**mile**, =a thousand paces.  
**mistaken**, be, errō, āre.  
**mode**, genus, -eris, N.  
**Mona**, Mona, ae, F.  
**month**, mēnsis, is, M.  
**more**, plūs, amplius.  
**mount**, ascendō, ere.  
**mountain**, mōns, montis, M.  
**move**, moveō, ēre.  
**much**, adv., multum; multō.  
**my**, meus, a, um.

**N**

**nearer**, propius, adr.  
**nearest**, proximus, a, um.  
**neighborhood**, In the—of, ad, prep. with acc.

**Nervii**, Nervii, ūrum, M. plur.  
**new**, novus, a, um.  
**next**, posterus, a, um; proximus, a, um.  
**night**, nox, noctis, F.  
**ntne**, novem.  
**ninety**, nōnāgintā.  
**no**, nūllus, a, um, or use nōn or nihil.  
**no one**, nēmō; gen., nūllius; acc., nēminem; abl., nūllō; **that no one**, nē quis.  
**not**, nōn (in final and imperative clauses, nē); **and not**, neque (or in final clauses, nēve, neu).  
**now** (=by this time), iam; (=at this present time), nunc.  
**number**, numerus, I, M., or use clause with quot=how many.  
**number, great or large**, multūdō, -dinis, F.; māgnus numerus, I, M. (use only in sing.).  
**numerous**, erēber, bra, brum; multi, ae, a.

**O**

**obey**, pārēō, ēre, with dat.; obtemperō, āre, with dat.  
**object, with the of**, causā, with gen.  
**object, raise objections**, recūsō, āre, with quōdīnnis and subjunctive.  
**observe**, videō, ēre.  
**occur**, fiō, fieri.  
**of** (=about), dē, with abl.; with verbs of asking see fn. page 310.  
**offer**, prōpōnō, ere.  
**officer**, lēgātus, I, M.  
**old**, vetus, -eris; (so many years) old, nātus, a, um.  
**on** (of place where), in with abt.; (of time when), use abl. only; (of making attack on), in with acc.; (of direction), ab or ex with abl.; (=concerning), dē, with abl.  
**once, at**, statim, adv.  
**one another**, inter sē.  
**onset**, impetus, ūs, M.

**open**, patefaciō, ere; *passive*, patefiō, -fieri.  
**opinion**, sententia, ae, f.  
**opinion**, *be of the*, existimō, āre.  
**opportunity**, occasiō, -onis, f.; facultās, -tatis, f.; potestās, -tatis, f.  
**opportunity, give**, facultātem dare, or potestātem facere.  
**oppose** (=resist), repūgnō, āre; resistō, ere, *with dat.*  
**oppose** (=set in opposition), oppōnō, ere.  
**or**, aut; (*in questions*), an; **or not** (*in questions*), annōn (*direct*), neene (*indirect*).  
**Orcynia**, Oreynia, ae, f.  
**order**, jubeō, ēre, *with ace.*; imperō, āre, *with dat.*  
**orders, receive**, jubeor, ēri.  
**order, In—that**, ut; (*with negative*), nē.  
**order, In—to**, ut, causā, ad.  
**orders, give**, imperō, āre.  
**orders, without his**, injussū suō.  
**other, another**, aliis, a, ud.  
**other, the (of two)**, alter, era, erum; (=the remaining), reliquis, a, um.  
**others, the**, reliqui, ae, a; ceteri, ae, a.  
**ought, use gerundire passive with sum**; or dēbeō, ēre; oportet, ēre.  
**our**, noster, tra, trum.  
**over (of bridges over rivers)**, in, *with abl.*  
**overwhelm**, opprimō, ere.

**P**

**pace**, passus, ūs, m.  
**panic**, timor, -oris, m.  
**panie**, throw into a, perterreō, ēre.  
**pardon**, ignōscō, ere, *with dat.*  
**part**, pars, partis, f.  
**participate In**, intersim, -esse, *with dat.*

**pass the winter**, hiemō, āre.  
**passage**, iter, itineris, n.  
**pay**, pendō, ere.  
**peace**, pāx, pācis, f.  
**people** (=community), populus, I, M.; (=persons), hominēs, um, M.  
**perceive**, cōspicīo, ere; intellegō, ēre.  
**peril**, periculum, I, n.  
**permit**, patior, I.  
**person** (=a man), often *untranslated*:  
**persuade**, persuādeō, ēre, *with dat.*  
**pitily**, misereor, ēri, *with gen.*  
**place**, nouu, locus, I, M. sing.; loca, ūrum, n. plur.  
**place, in that**, ibi, adv.  
**plan**, cōsiliū, I, n.  
**plunder**, praeda, ae, f.  
**point out**, doceō, ēre; ostendō, ēre.  
**point, be on the—of**, usc fut. part. in -ūrūs *with sum.*  
**Pompey**, Pompēius, I, M.  
**port**, portus, ūs, M.  
**portion**, pars, partis, f.  
**position**, locus, I, M.; or use clause with ubi or quō in locō.  
**position, keep one's**, cōsistō, ēre.  
**position, take up a**, cōsidiō, ēre.  
**possession**, gatū—of, potior, iri, *with abl.*  
**possession, take—of**, occupō, āre, *with ace.*  
**possibility**, potestās, -tatis, f.  
**power**, potestās, -tatis, f.  
**power, sovereign, supreme**, rēgnū, I, N.; imperium, I, N.  
**power, have**, possum, posse.  
**powerful be**, possum, posse.  
**praise, verb**, laudō, āre.  
**pr: Ise, noun**, laus, laudis, f.  
**pr-fer (with nouns)**, antepōnō, ēre; (*with the infinitive*), mālō, mālle.  
**prepare**, parō, āre.

**preparations**, make, comparō, āre.  
**present**, this, hic, haec, hōe.  
**press**, press hard, urgeō, ēre; premō, ere.  
**press forward**, instō, āre.  
**prevent**, prohibeō, ēre.  
**previous**, superior, ins.  
**prisoner**, captivus, i. M.  
**proceed**, prōgredior, i.; prōcēdō, ēre.  
**proceedings**, = *things*.  
**procure**, parō, āre; comparō, āre.  
**project**, form a, cōsūlūm capiō or inēō.  
**promise**, make a promise, pollicor, ēri.  
**property**, their, sua, órum, N.  
**protection**, praesidium, i., N.  
**prove**, probō, āre.  
**provided that**, dum.  
**province**, prōvinciā, ae, F.  
**provisions**, commētūs, ūs, M. (*use the singular*).  
**provoke to battle**, proeliō (*abl.*) lācessō, ēre.  
**punishment**, supplicium, i., N.  
**purpose for the—of**, causā, *with gen. preceding*.  
**pursue**, prōsequor, i.; cōsequor, i.; sequor, i.  
**put**, collocō, āre; pōnō, ēre.  
**put to death**, interficiō, ēre.

**Q**

**quickly**, celeriter.  
**quickness**, celeritās, -tatis, F.

**R**

**rampart**, vällum, i., N.  
**rashness**, temeritās, -tatis, F.  
**rate, at any**, certē.  
**rather**, potius, magis.  
**reach**, perveniō, īre, *with ad or in and acc.*  
**ready**, parātus, a, um; (**for or to**, ad, *with acc.*).

**ready, make**, comparō, āre.  
**ready, get**, parō, āre.  
**rear**, novissimum agmen (agminis, N.); **In the rear**, à tergo.  
**reason**, causa, ae, F.; *or use clause with cur or quamobrem*.  
**receive**, accipiō, ēre.  
**receive orders** = *be ordered*.  
**recent**, recēns, -entis.  
**recover** (= *wia back*), reciperō, āre; (= *regain courage*), sē recipere.  
**refforcements**, subsidium, i., N.  
**relying on**, frētus, a, um, *with abl.*  
**remain**, remaneō, ēre; manēō, ēre.  
**remember**, memini, isse (*imperative, mementō, -tōte*); reminiseor, i.  
**remind**, commonefaciō, ēre.  
**remotest**, ultimus, a, um.  
**renew**, renovō, āre.  
**repair**, reficiō, ēre.  
**reply**, respondeō, ēre.  
**report**, brīlung report, nūntiō, āre; nūntiō, āre.  
**reprove**, reprehendō, ēre.  
**require**, imperō, āre, *with acc. and dat.*  
**resist**, resistō, ēre, *with dat.*  
**resources**, opēs, opum, F. plur.  
**rest**, *use reliquias*, a, um, adj.  
**result, be the result**, fiō, fieri.  
**retainer**, cliēns, -entis, M.  
**retire**, sē recipere; sē cōferre.  
**retreat**, pedem referō (*ferre*); sē recipere.  
**return**, verb, revertor, i., -verti; redeō, āre.  
**return, returning, noun**, redditus, ūs, M.; *or use clause with verb*.  
**revolt**, dēfleio, ēre.  
**reward**, praemium, i., N.  
**Rhine**, Rhēnus, i., M.  
**Rhone**, Rhodanus, i., M.  
**right**, dexter, tra, trum.  
**river**, flūmen, -minis, N.  
**road**, via, ae, F.; iter, itineris, N.  
**roam about**, vagor, ārl.

**Roman**, noun, Rōmānus, I., M.; adj., Rōmānus, a., um.

**Rome**, Rōma, ae, F.; at **Rome**, Rōmae.

**rout**, fuga, ae, F.

**rule**, imperium, i., N.

**rush out**, sē ējicere; (of, ex with abl.).

### S

**sabls**, Sabis, is, M.

**safe**, tūtus, a., um.

**safety**, salūs, -ūtis, F.; In safety, use incolūmis, c. adj., =safe.

**sail**, nāvigō, āre; (for, in with acc.).

**same**, idem, eadem, idem.

**say**, dicō, ēre; if followed by negative, use negō, āre, =deny.

**scarcely**, vix.

**scatter**, dispergō, ēre.

**scarcity**, inopia, ac, F.

**scout**, explorātor, -ōris, M.

**search for**, quaerō, ēre, with acc.

**secretly**, clam.

**see**, videō, ēre.

**seek**, petō, ēre.

**seize** (=take possession of), occupō, āre; (=take prisoner), comprehendō, ēre.

**senate**, senātus, ūs, M.

**send**, mittō, ēre.

**send back**, remittō, ēre.

**send forward, send in advance**, praemittō, ēre.

**Seqvani**, Sēquani, ḫrum, M. plur.

**seriously**, graviter.

**service**, officium, I., N.; be of service, ūsui esse.

**set fire to**, incendō, ēre, with acc.

**set out**, proficiscor, I.

**set sail**, nāvēs solvō, ēre, =loose the ships.

**settle** (=decide), cōstituō, ēre.

**several**, complurēs, a.

**severe**, gravis, c.

**ship**, nāvis, is, F.

**shore**, litus, -oris, N.

**short**, brevis, o; In a short time, brevi.

**shortly**, brevi.

**should** (=ought), use gerundive with sum; for other values see section 144.

**side**, latus, -eris, N.; pars, partis, F.; from all sides, undique, adv.

**side, on this—of**, cis or extrā, prep. with acc.

**side, on the other—of**, trāns, prep. with acc.

**sight**, cōspectus, ūs, M.; come in sight, in cōspectum veniō.

**signal**, signum, i., N.

**silent**, be or keep, tacēō, ēre.

**since**, cum.

**six hundred**, secenti, ae, a.

**sixty**, sexāgintā.

**size**, māgnitūdō, -dinis, F.; or use clause with quantus, a., um.

**slavery**, servitūs, -tūtis, F.

**slay**, interficiō, ēre; occidō, ēre.

**slinger**, funditor, -ōris, M.

**slip, let**, dimittō, ēre.

**so** (=to such an extent), tam, ita, adeo.

**soldier**, miles, -itis, M.

**some** (=some or other), aliquis (aliqui), -qua, -quid or -quod; (=a few), nōnnūlli, ae, a.

**some . . . others**, alii . . . alii.

**some one**, aliquis.

**some day**, aliquandō.

**soon**, mox, brevi; as soon as, simul atque.

**sorry, be**, paenitet, impersonal.

**sovereign power**, imperium, I., N.; rēgnū, I., N.

**spare**, pareō, ēre, with dat.

**speak**, dicō, ēre.

**special, show—Indulgence**, =indulge specially.

**specially**, praecipue.

**spite, in—of**, use quamquam (=although).

**spring**, vēr, vēris, N.

**spy**, speculātor, -ōris, M.

**stain**, inficiō, ere.  
**start**, ēgredior, I; proficior, I.  
**state**, verb, dicō, ere.  
**state**, noun, civitās, -tatis, F.; rēs  
pública, rēs públicae, F.  
**stay**, moror, āri.  
**still**, tamen.  
**stone**, lapis, -idis, M.  
**storm**, verb, expūgnō, āre.  
**storm**, noun, tempestās, -tatis, F.  
**storm, take by**, expūgnō, āre.  
**strength**, use clause with quot.  
**strengthen**, firmō, āre; mūniō, ire.  
**strive**, contendō, ere; nitor, I.  
**successfully**, bene; fēciter.  
**successive**, continuus, a, um.  
**such (=so great)**, sñch a large,  
tantus, a, um.  
**sudden**, repentinus, a, um.  
**suddenly**, subitō.  
**sne for**, petō, ere, with acc.  
**suffer** (=recīre), accipiō, ere; (=  
allow, endure), patior, I.  
**suitable**, idōneus, a, um.  
**summer**, aestās, -tatis, F.  
**summon** (of several persons), con-  
vocō, āre; (of one person), vocō,  
āre.  
**supplies**, commeātus, ūs, M. (use  
the singular).  
**suppose**, arbitror, āri; putō, āre.  
**supreme power**, rēgnūm, I, N.;  
imperium, i, N.  
**surrender**, transitivē, dēdō, ere;  
intransitivē, sē dēdere.  
**surround** (=get round), circum-  
veniō, ire; (=put round), circum-  
dō, -dare.  
**suspect**, suspicor, āri.  
**suspected, become**, in suspi-  
cionem veniō.  
**swarm around**, circumfundor, I.  
**sway**, diciō, ūnis, F.  
**swiftness**, celeritās, -tatis, F.  
**sword**, gladius, I, M.

T

**take**, capiō, ere.  
**take away**, tollō, ere, sustuli, sub-  
latum.  
**take up a position**, cōnsidō, ere.  
**tanght, be**, discō, ere = learn.  
**tax**, tribūtum, I, N.  
**teach**, see be taught.  
**tell**, dileō, ere, with dat. of person.  
**tempest**, tempestās, -tatis, F.  
**tenth**, decimus, a, um.  
**terms**, condicō, -ōnis, F. (use the  
singular).  
**terrify**, terreō, āre.  
**territory**, ager, agri, M.; finēs,  
-ium, M. plur.  
**Thames**, Tamesis, is, M.; (acc.  
Tamesim).  
**than**, quam, or use abl.  
**that**, pronoun, is, ea, id; emphatic,  
ille, a, nd.  
**that**, conj., with noun clauses un-  
translated; with clauses of pur-  
pose, ut, nē; with clauses of  
result, ut; (=because), quod.  
**their**, suus, a, um; or eōrum.  
**there** (=in that place), ibi; (=to  
that place), eō; (as introductory  
adverb), untranslated.  
**they**, ci, eae, ea; sē.  
**think**, existimō, āre; arbitror, āri.  
**this**, hic, haec, hōc; or often the  
relative pronoun, section 172.  
**though**, =although.  
**thousand**, mille; plur., milia,  
-ium, N.  
**three**, trēs, tria.  
**three hundred**, trecenti, ae, a.  
**through**, per, with acc.  
**throw**, conjiciō, ere.  
**throw one's self**, sē prōjicere.  
**thus**, itaque; in Exercise 1b, 4 use  
hōc.  
**time**, tempus, -oris, N.  
**to**, ad, with acc.; in, with acc.  
**to-morrow**, crās, adv.  
**top**, use summus, a, um, adj.

**towards**, ad, *with acc.*  
**town**, oppidum, I, N.  
**trader**, mercator, -ōris, M.  
**treachery**, perfidia, ac, F.  
**trench**, fossa, ae, F.  
**tribe**, natiō, -ōnis, F.  
**tribune**, tribūnus, I, M.  
**tributary**, vectigālis, e.  
**trick**, artiflēum, I, N.  
**troops**, miliēs, um, M.; cōpiac, ārum, F.  
**trust**, eōfidō, ere, fīsus sum, *with dat.*  
**twenty**, viginti.  
**two**, duo, duae, duo.  
**two hundred**, ducenti, ae, a.

**U**

**unable**, be, *use possuni.*  
**under**, sub, *with abl.*  
**undertake**, suscipiō, ere.  
**unfriendly**, inimicus, a, um.  
**unless**, nisi.  
**until**, conj., dum, quoad.  
**unwilling**, be, nōlō, nōlle.  
**urge**, hortor, āri.  
**use**, ūtor, I, *with abl.*  
**useless**, inūtilis, e; (**for**, ad *with acc.*).  
**usual**, his, *use suus*, a, um.  
**utmost**, summus, a, um.

**V**

**vallantly**, fortiter.  
**valid**, perfectly, jūtissimus, a, um.  
**valor**, virtūs, -tūtis, F.  
**value**, of great, māgnī.  
**vanish**, discēdō, ere.  
**vanquish**, vineō, ere; superō, āre.  
**vehemence**, vis, F.  
**vengeance**, suppliūm, I, N.  
**very (as adjective)**, ipse.  
**Vesontio**, Vesontiō, īnis, F.  
**vessel**, nāvis, is, F.

**victorious**, victor, -ōris, M.  
**victory**, victōria, ae, F.  
**village**, vīeus, I, M.

**W**

**wage**, gerō, ere.  
**walt**, moror, ārl; (*with si*), exspectō, ārc.  
**wait for**, exspectō, āre, *with acc.*  
**wall (of town)**, mūrus, I, M.; (*of camp*), vāllum, I, N.  
**wander**, vagor, ārl.  
**war**, bellum, I, N.  
**warn**, moncō, ēre.  
**waste** (=lose), dirūttō, ēre.  
**waste, lay**, vāstō, āre; popular, āri.  
**water**, aqua, ae, F.  
**wave**, fluctus, ūs, M.  
**weapon**, tēlūm, I, N.  
**weary**, dēfatigō, ārc.  
**weather**, tempestās, -tātis, F.  
**weigh anchor**, nāvēs solvō, ēre,  
=loose the ships.  
**welfare**, consult—of, eōnsulō, ēre,  
*with dat.*  
**well known**, nōtus, a, um.  
**west**, sōlis occāsus, ūs, M.  
**what**, quis, quae, quid.  
**whatever**, pron., qui, quae, quod.  
**whatever**, adv. (=at all), omnīnō.  
**when (relative)**, ubi, cum; (*interrogative*), quandō.  
**whence**, unde.  
**whenever**, cum.  
**whereas**, cum.  
**whether**, num; **whether ... or**, utrum ... an; sive ... sive.  
**which (relative)**, qui, quae, quod.  
**which (of two)**, uter, tra, trum.  
**while**, dum; *or use pres. part.*  
**who (relative)**, qui, quae, quod;  
(*interrogative*), quis, quae, quid.  
**wholly**, omnīnō.  
**why**, cūr; quārē.  
**wide**, lātus, a, um.

**widely**, lātē.

**wife**, conjūnx, -jugis, f.

**will, against the, use** invitus, a., um, adj. (=unwilling).

**willing, be**, volō, velle.

**win, vincō, ere.**

**wing, cornū, ūs, n.**

**winter, pass(spend) the winter,** hiemō, āre.

**winter quarters**, hiberna, ūrum, n. plur.

**wish, volō, velie.**

**with, cum, with abl.; or use abl.** alone; (=among), apud, with ace.

**withdraw, withdraw one's self,** sē recipere; discēdō, ēre; (*if from a rampart*), decēdō, ēre.

**within (of place), intrā, prep. with acc.**

**within (of time), use abl.**

**without, sine, with abl.**

**withstand, sustineō, ēre.**

**wound, vitrum, ī, n.**

**wood, silva, ac, f.**

**wooded, silvestris, e.**

**word, bring, nūntiō, āre.**

**work, opus, -eris, n.**

**worthy, dignus, a, um, with abi.**

**would, for the different values see section 137.**

**wound, vulnus, -eris, n.**

**wrong, injūria, ae, f.; wrongs done to . . . by . . . , use objective and subjective genitives.**

## Y

**year, annus, i, m.**

**yesterday, herī.**

**your, tuus, a, um; vester, tra-** trum.



War-ship.



Virgil.

## INTRODUCTION TO VIRGIL'S AENEID.

---

### I. THE STORY OF TROY.

In those olden days of Greece, when history had not yet begun and when as yet the gods mingled freely with mankind, appearing often upon earth and sometimes even marrying some favored mortal, there was a great city called Troy in the extreme north-western corner of Asia Minor, at the foot of Mount Ida. This was inhabited by a people akin to the Phrygians of Asia Minor, under the rule of a family of kings descended from Teneer. It was in the reign of the seventh king, Priam, that ruin fell upon the kingdom of Troy. He lived with Hecuba, his wife, in great splendor, and his many sons and daughters were growing up around him, until at the time of the birth of one of them, afterwards known as Paris, his mother dreamed that it was a firebrand that was born, which should destroy the city. So the child was cast forth on the slopes of Mount Ida and was there found and

reared by a shepherd. When he grew up he was very beautiful, though rather effeminate, and was at last recognized and reinstated in his rights as the king's son.

But before this last event, a very notable thing had happened. At a certain wedding feast, at which most of the gods and goddesses were present, one who had not been invited, the goddess of Discord, avenged the slight by sending a golden apple inscribed "To the Fairest." Three goddesses claimed it, Juno, Minerva and Venus. The decision was referred to Paris, then a shepherd on Mount Ida. To win his verdict, Juno promised him power, Minerva wisdom, and Venus the fairest woman in Greece as his wife. Paris awarded the apple to Venus and not long after went to Greece. There he fell in love with the most beautiful woman of those days, Helen, the wife of Menelaus, king of Sparta. Her beauty had caused many prinees to sue for her hand in marriage, and before a choice was made they had all sworn to avenge any wrong that might ever be done to her. So now when Paris induced her to flee with him to Troy, Menelaus had no difficulty in getting a large number of kings with their warriors to assist him in recovering Helen and punishing Paris.

Under the leadership of Agamemnon, brother of Menelaus and king of Mycenae, a fleet of nearly twelve hundred ships gathered at Aulis to set sail against Troy. Here they were long detained by calms or contrary winds sent by the goddess Artemis, whom king Agamemnon had once displeased. The oracles declared that only by sacrificeing Iphigenia, the maiden daughter of the king, to Artemis, could the Greeks obtain favoring winds, and reluctantly at length Agamemnon sent for his daughter. Now at last the great host could set sail from Greece. The most famous among the Greeks, besides Agamemnon and Menelaus, were Achilles, the grandest warrior of the age, Ulysses who, while a great warrior, was specially noted for his shrewdness, and Diomedes and Ajax.

For nine long years the siege went on. Many cities in Asia sent forces to Troy to aid Priam, whose best warriors were his son Hector and Aeneas, the latter being the son of Venus and a Trojan prince, Aeneas. The Greeks did not surround the city, but encamped on the shore near their ships, and many battles took place on the plain before Troy. In these nine years the Greeks succeeded in driving the Trojans within the walls and in gaining the surrounding towns.

In the tenth year a notable quarrel arose between Agamemnon and Achilles, and for a time, while Achilles held aloof from fighting, the Trojans had the better of it. Emboldened by success they fought their way to the Grecian fleet drawn up on the shore, and had well-nigh set the ships on fire when Patroclus, the bosom friend of Achilles, begged him, if he would not fight himself, at least to lend his armor and his warriors to repel the enemy. Achilles consented, and Patroclus, driving back the Trojans, saved the ships but was himself slain by Hector and stripped of Achilles' armor. Impelled by rage and grief, Achilles now returned to the battle to avenge the death of his friend. At his approach the Trojans, with the one exception of Hector, fled back to their walls; and him Achilles soon slew. Then tying Hector's body by the feet to his chariot he dragged him to the Grecian camp. It was not long, however, before Achilles himself was slain by Paris, and then, in obedience to the oracles, his son Pyrrhus (or Neoptolemus) was brought to the scene of war.

But when nothing seemed to bring them success, the Greeks tried stratagem, and pretended to sail away homewards, leaving a huge wooden horse as an offering to Minerva. This the Trojans drew, rejoicing, within their walls, but within it were concealed many of the bravest Greeks, who issued from the horse by night, seized the gates and, aided by the other Greeks, who had returned in the fleet, took the city and destroyed it.

In this war the gods took part, some, like Juno, Neptune, Pallas and Apollo, favoring the Greeks, others, like Venus and Mars, aiding Troy, though the latter were unable to prevail over the destiny decreed by fate for Priam and his city.

Aeneas escaped from the burning town and with some followers sailed away under the special protection of his mother, Venus, to found a new city. After many disappointments and wonderful adventures he landed in Italy, and from the settlement he planted there grew the great city of Rome, that in Virgil's day had become the mistress of the whole civilized world. The adventures and experiences of Aeneas form the subject of the poem called the *Aeneid*.

---

## H.—LIFE OF VIRGIL.

Publius Vergilius\* Maro was born B.C. 70 at the little village of Andes near Mantua, in the great northern plain of Italy, watered by the river Padus, the modern Po. The people of this country were of Gallie descent and not close kinsmen of the Romans or southern Italians, and it was not till Virgil was twenty-one years of age that they were made full Roman citizens. Virgil's father lived on a small farm, but was able to give his son all the advantages of education to be obtained in those days, perhaps seeing early in his boy some signs of future greatness. Except that Virgil studied in Cremona and Milan and at sixteen was sent to Rome to the best teachers there, we know practically nothing of his youth. This period fell between the two great civil wars of Rome, and from what we know of Virgil's nature, the comparative peace of his boyhood and youth was more congenial to him than the civil wars that raged from his twenty-second to his fortieth year.

---

\* There seems to be no doubt that the correct spelling is *Vergilius*, and scarcely less doubt that to the English reader the poet will always be *Virgil*.

When in B.C. 41 peace for a time did come, the victorious Octavian confiscated large tracts of land in Italy and distributed them among his soldiers. Virgil's farm (his father being now dead) was thus seized on, but Virgil had become favorably known to Asinius Pollio, the governor of the district, and at his suggestion Virgil went to Rome and appealed to Augustus. Restitution was made by order of Augustus, though Virgil did not regain his farm, and soon we find Virgil living at Rome under the patronage of the court, and on terms of intimacy with the leading writers of the day. His first volume of poetry, the Eclogues, a collection of ten pastoral poems, commenced before he came to Rome, was completed in B.C. 37, and soon after he left Rome and for most of his remaining years lived in Campania near Naples. From B.C. 37 to 30 he worked at his second great poem, the Georgics, a series of four poems on husbandry as one of the glories of Italian life. The remaining eleven years of his life were devoted to his great epic poem, the Aeneid. We are told that in B.C. 23 he read Books II., IV. and VI. to Augustus at the latter's request. In B.C. 19 the poet had completed his epic, but intended to devote three years more to polishing and revising it. However, while on a voyage to Greece and Asia that year, he fell sick at Athens and returned, dying just as he reached Italy.

In his last illness, dissatisfied with the condition of the Aeneid, he asked his executors to burn it, but fortunately Augustus forbade their carrying out Virgil's last wish.

In person Virgil is said to have been tall and dark, of rustic even awkward appearance. He was gentle, shy and reserved in manner, and the purity of his life gained him the name of Parthenias, 'the maiden.' No authentic picture exists.

The tomb in which Virgil was buried near Naples long remained an object of veneration, and Virgil himself in the middle ages came to be looked upon as a sage, magician and prophet.

## IV.—THE AENEID OF VIRGIL.

The Aeneid belongs to the class of poetry called Epic, that is, it is a narrative poem, of an elevated character, describing the exploits of heroes.

The following, condensed from Sellar, gives a general account of Virgil's position and excellence as a poet.

There was before Virgil's time but one Roman Epic, the Annals of Ennius, written two hundred years before, stirring but rugged; about the time when Virgil first came to Rome the poems of Lucretius and Catullus appeared, which were the most artistic in form yet written in Rome. A Roman epic was wanted which would satisfy the national imagination as Ennius did, and also the new sense of art, and the great expansion of national life since Ennius' day. The emperor Augustus was anxious that his exploits should be commemorated by some great poet, and Virgil had long been ambitious to treat the traditions of Alba Longa in heroic verse.

These objects then had to be kept in view—a work of art that could rival the great epics of Homer; a revival of interest in the heroic legends concerning the founding of Rome; the expression of the national feeling of an imperial city; the expression of the deeper feelings and thoughts of his age about the ideals and the problems of life; and the celebration of Augustus. All these Virgil combined by selecting the story of Aeneas, which enabled him to treat of the origin of Rome, to parallel Homer's tales of war and sea-wanderings, and to glorify the family of the Caesars, the Julii, who boasted of their descent from Iulus the son of Aeneas.

As regards Rome itself, Virgil develops the conception entertained by the Romans themselves, that their city was ordained by Heaven to achieve world-wide dominion. Thus Virgil represents Aeneas as guided continually by the gods until he founds the city, destined by the fates to be the greatest

in the world. Aeneas in ancient times and Augustus in his own day are regarded as instruments in the hands of fate, which is a great inscrutable power working out its purposes in the world through the agency of Rome.

With this idea of universal empire is combined a reverence for antiquity, for old customs, for the religious faith of early Italy, and an attachment to all places connected with the history of the nation.

The Aeneid then, as an epic describing the great part Rome played in the history of the world, as determined by the divine decrees, is partly a national and partly a religious epic. It has only a secondary interest as an epic of human action, as a portrayal of manners and character, and it has always been objected to the Aeneid that its central character is a failure—that while Aeneas is blameless, pious, and patient, he is uninteresting, weak, lacking in energy, that he is a passive tool in the hands of fate, not a great hero relying upon his own resources and stirred by ordinary human passions. It may be that Virgil was determined in this largely by his weariness of the civil wars that had been raging so long, and by the desire felt everywhere in his days for the restoration of peace, law, order and piety. This desire was met by Augustus' policy, and in this lay the security of Augustus' position.

Dido stands out as the most life-like and interesting character Virgil has drawn, and even if she does represent to the Roman the hated race of Carthaginians, and even if her desertation by Aeneas calls forth no hint of condemnation from the poet, we cannot but feel that Virgil sympathetically entered into the tragic nature of Dido's story.

Apart from character the main sources of human interest developed in the Aeneid are: the nobility and dignity of the story itself, apart from its connection with the national sentiment; the interest of two romantic legends, the destruction of Troy, and the foundation of Carthage; the scenes familiar, yet full of great memories and associations; the characters

prominent in legend, or else representative of some nation; the interweaving of the old and ever new themes of war and sea-adventures, with the passion of love.

Virgil's restoration of the legendary past is not exact in all its details, or sometimes even in its spirit. There is a mixture of primitive simplicity and luxurious pomp, of the fierceness and roughness of an uncultured age and the courtesy, dignity and kindliness of more polished times. The most unreal of all his portrayals are the battle scenes of the later books, where the real interest lies generally, not in the stirring events of the combat, but in the pathetic death of some interesting character.

But if objection is taken to Virgil's character-drawing, the highest praise has always been given to the artistic excellence of his work, both in its arrangement and in the working out of details. Virgil (as Tennyson has it) 'could write ten lines, they say, at dawn, and lavish all the golden day to make them wealthier in his reader's eyes.' No poet surpasses him in finished execution, in stateliness and majesty of movement. His poetry shows a varied and continuous harmony, a rich, chastened and noble style nowhere else to be found in Latin.

X  
Sellar regards Virgil as supreme among his countrymen in 'that subtle fusion of the music and the meaning of language which touches the deepest and most secret springs of emotion. He touches especially the emotions of reverence and of a yearning for a higher spiritual life, and the sense of nobleness in human affairs, in great institutions and great natures; the sense of the sanctity of human affections, of the imaginative spell exercised by the past, of the mystery of the unseen world.'

MacKail speaks of 'the majestic sadness, the serene and harmonious cadences, of poetry enriched with all the associations of art and learning, and wrought by patient labor into the most exquisite finish. But what Virgil has in a degree that no other poet has ever equalled is pity; the sense of "tears in things" to which in the most famous of his single verses

(Aen. I. 462) he has given imperishable expression, and which fills with strange insight and profound emotion those lonely words and pathetic half lines where he has sounded the depths of beauty and sorrow, of patience and magnanimity, of honor in life and hope beyond death.'

Perhaps nothing so completely expresses the modern view of Virgil as the lines of Tennyson (himself the most Virgilian of all our modern poets), written at the request of the people of Mantua for the nineteenth centenary of Virgil's death, 1881.

Roman Virgil, thou that singest Ilion's lofty temples robed in fire,  
Ilion falling, Rome arising, war, and filial faith, and Dido's pyre;  
Landscape-lover, lord of language more than he that sang the Works  
and Days,  
All the chosen coin of fancy flashing out from many a golden phrase;  
Thou that singest wheat and woodland, tillth and vineyard, hive and  
horse and herd;  
All the charm of all the Muses often flowering in a lonely word;  
Poet of the happy Tityrus piping underneath his beechen bowers;  
Poet of the poet-satyr whom the laughing shepherd bound with flowers;  
Chanter of the Poillo, glorying in the blissful years again to be,  
Summers of the snakeless meadow, un laborious earth and oarless sea;  
Thou that seest Universal Nature moved by Universal Mind;  
Thou majestic in thy sadness at the doubtful doom of human kind;  
Light among the vanished ages; star that gildest yet this phantom  
shore;  
Golden branch amid the shadows, kings and realms that pass to rise no  
more;  
Now thy Forum roars no longer; fallen every purple Caesar's dome—  
Tho' thine ocean-roll of rhythm sound for ever of Imperial Rome—  
Now the Rome of slaves hath perish'd, and the Rome of freemen holds  
her place;  
I, from out the Northern Island, sunder'd once from all the human race,  
I salute thee, Mantovano, I that loved thee since my day began,  
Wielder of the statelest measure ever moulded by the lips of man.

## V.—THE METRE OF THE AENEID.

The principle upon which rhythm is based in English poetry is a regular succession of accented and unaccented syllables. In Latin, accent has nothing to do with scansion, which depends rather on the regular succession of long and short syllables.

## LONG AND SHORT SYLLABLES.

A long syllable is one containing a long vowel, or a diphthong,\* or even a short vowel before two consonants, or *j*, *x*, or *z*; e.g. the first syllable in each of the following words is long: *primus*, *aedes*, *mentis*, *major*, *texo*, *gaza*. Even if one of the two consonants be at the beginning of another word this rule holds, e.g. the syllable *sub* is short in *sub ipsa*, but long in *sub montem*. But the rule does not always hold when the two consonants are *l* or *r* preceded by some other letter; e.g. the first syllable of *patris* may be short or long.

A short syllable is one containing a short vowel (except in the cases mentioned in the preceding paragraph), including regularly all cases where a vowel is followed by another vowel or diphthong, e.g. the first syllable in *tenet*, *deus*, *deae*, is short. But genitives in *ius* have *i* sometimes short sometimes long, and many proper names, borrowed from the Greek (in which this rule does not hold) have a long vowel before another vowel or diphthong, e.g. the second syllable of *Aeneas*, *Orion*.

In scansion *h* is not considered, so that the first syllable of *adhuc* is not long, while in *mihi* the first syllable is short as certainly as if it were spelled *mii*.

Syllables then may be short or long either by nature or by position.

---

\* The only diphthongs in Latin are *ae*, *au*, *eu*, *ei*, *oe* and *ui*, the two first being far the commonest.

## RHYTHM.

Virgil uses in the Aeneid the metre known as Dactylic Hexameter, that is a line containing six dactyls, each dactyl consisting of one long syllable followed by two short syllables. Two irregularities however are to be noticed ; first, the last foot has but two syllables (a long and a short, or two long) ; secondly, in any one, two, three or even four of the first four syllables a dactyl may be replaced by a spondee, that is a foot consisting of two long syllables.

This metre is generally represented thus



Thus sixteen different arrangements of the line are possible (apart from the variation in the last foot), viz. one with the first four feet dactyls, four with one spondee in the line, six with two spondees in the line, four with three spondees in the line, and one with four spondees in the first four feet. For examples see the lines indicated on page 336.

## ELISION.

But in a majority of the lines a further difficulty arises. Where the last syllable of a word ends in a vowel, or in *m.* and the first syllable of the next word begins with a vowel or *h.* these two syllables are elided or taken together and counted as one. Such a case is called elision.\* For example *vera inquit*, counts as three syllables in scansion, so also *tegerem ut, divum humo, curru haeret.*

## SCANSION.

Probably the best way for beginners to get the scansion of Virgil is as follows : Mark first all cases of elision ; then the two last feet, which uniformly consist of the last five syllables,

---

\* Elision is usually marked thus : *ver(a) inquit* or *vera-inquit.*

may be marked off; then the quantity of syllables long or short by position, as determined by the preceding rules, can be marked; after which the first four feet can, in a large majority of cases, be easily settled. Finally (and this is all-important, if the student is ever to get beyond this rule of thumb and catch the rhythm of Virgil), the line when scanned should be read over according to the division made.

#### CAESURA.

When a word ends within a foot, a *caesura* is said to occur, and in the dactylic hexameter, the *caesura* or *caesural pause*, when it coincides with a pause in the sense, constitutes much of the charm of the rhythm, the line thus falling into two unequal parts.

The favorite caesural pause occurs in the third foot, but sometimes it comes in the fourth foot, in which case there is often another pause in the second foot, the line thus being divided into three parts.

The pause is far more often after the long syllable of a dactylic foot than after the first short syllable.\*

#### SPECIAL FEATURES AND IRREGULARITIES.

Because of the variety of rhythm possible, this metre affords great possibilities of imitative harmony; excited, or rapid action being often expressed in a line where dactyls abound, and solemn or gloomy ideas, stately or majestic movements, and slow or difficult actions brought out by a line abounding in spondees. It should be noticed, however, that the Latin language is naturally more spondaic than dactylic in its ordinary movement (stately and sonorous rather than lively), and a succession of spondees does not seem to be always

---

\* The caesura is usually marked thus //, and the following will show the completed scansion of a line, with the length of syllables, elisions, feet and caesura indicated:

— vestr(um) hoc | — auguri | um || — ves | troqu(e) in | — numine | Troj(a) est

expressive of something solemn or stately. Alliteration is also a very frequent device of Virgil's.

The following irregularities occur :

1. Many of Virgil's lines are unfinished, though conforming so far as they go to the regular metre. While in some cases these half lines may be intentional or very expressive of certain pathetic emotions, it is possible that Virgil in his final revision would have altered them. As it is, his finer taste preferred an incomplete line to one padded out with weak additions.
2. Occasionally, *i* before a vowel is given the sound of the semi-vowel *y*; e.g., *abiete* is pronounced *abyete*, three syllables instead of four. In such cases the *y* sound counts as a consonant in making position. This shortening is called *Synaeresis*.
3. Syllables regularly long are sometimes shortened, chiefly in the ending *-erunt* of the perfect indie. active, and in the ending *-ius* of the gen. sing. This is called *Systole*.
4. A final syllable regularly short is sometimes lengthened. This lengthening (which is called *Diastole*) occurs only in the first syllable of a foot and generally at the caesural pause. In almost every case the syllable was originally long.
5. It is the exception for a line to end in a monosyllable. This occurs generally where some earlier Latin poet is imitated, or where the sense corresponds to the abrupt ending.
6. Sometimes the fifth foot is a spondee, chiefly to express a slow measured movement, or impressive act, or in Greek proper names. A line of this sort is called *Spondaic*.
7. In a few cases a superfluous syllable (generally *-que*) is found at the end of a line, regularly where there could be an elision with the first word of the next line. Such a case is called *Hypermeter* or *Synapheia*.
8. Sometimes where there is a decided pause in the sense, or with Greek proper names, elision does not occur. This non-elision is called *Hiatus*.

## SCANSION OF BOOK I., 1-510.

Representative lines : 501 ; 10, 127, 82, 228 ; 133, 56, 115, 50, 4, 20 ; 15, 34, 29, 24 ; 53.

Imitative Harmony and Alliteration : 46, 53, 55, 59, 81-82, 86, 87, 105, 117, 118, 124, 147, 245, 249, 269, 272, 364, 399, 462, 481.

Hypermeter : 332, 448.

Hiatus : 16, 405.

Synaeresis : 41, 120, 131, 195, 256.

Shortened syllables : 16, 41, 114, 258, 270.

Lengthened syllables : 308, 343.

Monosyllabic endings : 65, 77, 105, 151, 181 ; (with elision) 64, 148, 386.

N.B.—In l. 73 *u* of *conubio* may be taken as short (though it is generally long), or the word may be made a trisyllable by *synizesis*.



JUNO.

*Elision  
caerulea*

P. VERGILI MARONIS

# AENEIDOS

LIBER PRIMUS.

ARMA virumque cano, Trojae qui primus ab oris  
Italiam, fato profugus, Lavinaque venit  
Litora, multum ille et terris jactatus et alto  
Vi superum, saevae memorem Junonis ob iram ;  
Multus quoque et bello passus, dum conderet urbem, *sunt* 5  
Inferretque deos Latio, genus unde Latinum,  
Albanique patres, atque altae moenia Romae.

Musa, mihi causas memora, quo numine laeso,  
Quidve dolens, regina deum tot volvere casus  
Insignem pietate virum, tot adire labores,  
Impulerit. Tantaene animis caelestibus irae?

Urbs antiqua fuit—Tyrii tenuerū coloni—  
Karthago, Italiā contra Tiberinaque longe  
Ostia, dives opum studiisque asperrima belli ;  
Quam Juno fertur terris magis omnibus unam  
Posthabita coluisse Samo ; hic illius arma,  
Hic currus fuit ; hoc regnum dea gentibus esse,  
Si qua fata sinant, jam tum tenditque foveatque.

10

15

*et al.*

Progeniem sed enim Trojano <sup>no alieno</sup> a sanguine duci  
 Audierat, Tyrias olim quae verteret arces ;  
Hinc populum late regem belloque superbum  
 Venturum excidio Libyae : sic volvere Parcas.  
 Id metuens, veterisque memor Saturnia belli,  
Prima quod ad Trojam pro caris gesserat Argis—  
 Necdum etiam causa*q* irarum saevique dolores      25  
Exciderant animo : manet alta mente repostum  
Judicium Paridis spretaeque injuria formae,  
 Et genus invisum, et rapti Ganymedis honores—  
His accensa super, jactatos aequore toto  
 Troas, rel*quias* Danaum atque immitis Achilli,      30  
 Arcebat longe Latio, multosque per annos  
 Errabant, acti fatis, maria omnia circum.  
Tantae molis erat Romanam condere gentem.

Vix e conspectu Siculae telluris in altum  
 Vela dabant laeti, et spumas salis aere ruebant,      35  
 Cum Juno, aeternum servans sub pectore vulnus,  
 Haec secum : ‘Mene incepto desistere victam,  
 Nec posse Italia Teucrorum avertere regem ?  
 Quippe vtor fatis. Pallasne exurere classem  
 Argivum, atque ipsos potuit submergere ponto,  
 Unius ob noxam et furias Ajacis Oilei ?      40  
 Ipsa, Jovis rapidum jaculata e nubibus ignem,  
 Disjecitque rates evertitque aequora ventis,  
 Illum exspirantem transfixo pectore flamas  
 Turbina corripuit scopuloque infixit acuto.      45  
 Ast ego, quae divom incedo regina, Jovisque  
 Et soror et conjunx, una cum gente tot annos  
 Bella gero. Et quisquam nūmen Junonis adorat  
 Praeterea, aut supplex aris imponet honorem ?’  
 Talia flammato secum dea corde volutans      50

Nimborum in patriam, loca feta furentibus astris,  
 Aeoliam venit. Hic vasto rex Aeolus antro  
 Luctantes ventos tempestatesque sonoras  
 Imperio premit ac vinclis et carcere frenat.  
 Illi indignantes magno cum murmure montis                   55  
 Circum clastra fremunt; celsa sedet Aeolus arce  
 Sceptra tenens, mollitque animos et temperat iras.  
 Ni faciat, maria ac terras caelumque profundum  
 Quippe ferant rapidi secum verrantque per auras.  
 Sed pater omnipotens  speluncis abdidit atris,                   60  
 Hoc metuens, molemque et montes insuper altos  
 Imposuit, regemque dedit, qui foedere certo  
 Et premere et laxas sciret dare jussus habenas.  
 Ad quem tuin Juno supplex his vocibus usa est:  
 'Aeole—namque tibi divom pater atque hominum rex           65  
 Et mulcere dedit fluctus et tollere vento,—  
 Gens inimica mihi Tyrrhenum navigat aequor,  
 Ilium in Italiam portans victosque Penates:  
 Incute vim ventis submersasque obrue puppes,  
 Aut age diversos et disjice corpora ponto.                   70  
 Sunt mihi bis septem praestanti corpore nymphae,  
 Quarum quae forma pulcherrima Deiopea,  
 Conubio jungam stabili propriamque dicabo,  
 Omnes ut tecum meritis pro talibus annos  
 Exigat, et pulchra faciat te prole parentem.'                   75  
 Aeolus haec contra: 'Tuus, O regina, quid optes  
 Explorare labor; mihi jussa capessere fas est.  
 Tu mihi quodcumque hoc regni, tu sceptrum Jovemque  
 Concilias, tu das epulis accumbere divom,  
 Nimborumque facis tempestatumque potentem.                   80  
 Haec ubi dicta, cavum conversa cuspide montem  
 Impulit in latus; ac venti, velut agmine facto,

Qua data porta, ruunt et terras turbine perlant.

Incubuero mari, totumque a sedibus imis

Una Eur~~us~~<sup>usque</sup> Notusque ruunt creberque procellis

85

Africus, et vastos volvunt ad litora fluctus.

Insequitur clamorque virum stridorque rudentum.

Eripunt subito nubes caelumque diemque

Teucrorum ex oculis ; ponto nox incubat atra.

Intonuere poli, et crebris micat ignibus aether,

90

Praesentenique viris intentant omnia mortem.

Extemplo Aeneae solvuntur frigore membra ;

Ingemit, et duplices tendens ad sidera palmas

Talia voce refert : 'O terque quaterque beati,

Quis ante ora patrum Trojae sub moenibus altis,

95

Contigit oppetere ! O Danaum fortissimè gentis

Tydide ! Mene Iliacis occumbere campis

Non potuisse, tuaque animam hanc effundere dextra,

Saevis ubi Aeacidae telo jacet Hector, ubi ingens

Sarpedon, ubi tot Simois correpta sub undis

100

Scuta virum galeasque et fortia corpora volvit ?'

Talia jactanti stridens Aquilone procella

Velum adversa ferit, fluctusque ad sidera tollit.

Franguntur remi ; tum prora avertit, et undis

Dat latus ; insequitur cumulo praeruptus aquae mons. 105

Hi summo in fluctu pendent, his unda deliscens

Terram inter fluctus aperit ; furit aestus harenis.

Très Notus abreptas in saxa latentia torquet —

Saxa vocant Itali mediis quae in fluctibus Aras —

Dorsum immane mari summo ; tres Eurus ab alto

110

In brevia et syrtes urguet, miserabile visu,

Illiditque vadis, atque aggere cingit harenae.

Unam, quae Lycios fidumque vehebat Oronten,

Ipsius ante oculos ingens a vertice pontus

In puppim ferit: excutitur pronusque magister      115  
 Volvitur in caput; ast illam ter fluctus ibidem  
 Torquet agens circum, et rapidus vorat aequore vertex.  
 Apparent rari nantes in gurgite vasto,  
 Arma virum, tabulaeque, et Troia gaza per undas.

Jam validam Ilionei naveam, iam fortis Achati,      120  
 Et qua vectus Abas, et qua grandaevus Aletes,  
 Vicit hiems; laxis laterum compagibus omnes  
 Accipiunt inimicum imbrem, rimisque fatiscunt.

Interea magno misceri murmure pontum,  
 Emissamque hiemem sensit Neptunus, et imis      125  
 Stagna refusa vadis, graviter commotus; et alto  
 Prospiciens, summa placidum caput extulit unda.  
 D'siectam Aeneae toto videt aequore classem,  
 Fluctibus oppressos Troas caelique ruina,  
 Nec latuere doli fratrem Junoris et irae.      130

Eurum ad se Zephyrumque vocat, dehinc talia fatur: *duorum*  
 'Tantane vos generis tenuit fiducia vestri?

Jam caelum terramque meo sine numine, Venti,  
 Miscere, et tantas audetis tollere moles?  
 Quos ego—Sed motos praestat componere fluctus.      135

Post mihi non simili poena commissa luetis.

Maturate fugam, regique haec dicite vestro:  
 Non illi imperium pelagi saevumque tridentem,  
 Sed mihi sorte datum. Tenet ille immania saxa,  
 Vestras, Eure, domos; illa se jactet in aula      140  
 Aeolus, et clauso ventorum carcere regnet.'

Sic ait, et dicto citius tumida aequora placat,  
 Collectasque fugat nubes, solemque reducit.  
 Cymothoe simul et Triton adnixus acuto  
 Detrudunt naves scopulo; levat ipse tridenti,  
 Et vastas aperit syrtes, et temperat aequor,

145

*nob  
simile*

*quibus*

onomalpo  
 Atque rotis summas levibus perlabitur undas.  
 Ac veluti magno in populo cum saepe coorta est  
 Seditio, saevitque animis ignobile vulgus,  
 Jamque faces et saxa volant, furor arma ministrat, 150  
 Tum, pieiate gravem ac meritis si forte virum quem  
 Conspexere, silent, arrectisque auribus astant;  
 Ille regit dictis animos, et pectora muleet:  
 Sic cunctus pelagi cecidit fragor, aequora postquam  
 Prospiciens genitor caeloque invectus aperto 155  
 Fleetit equos, curruque volans dat lora secundo.  
 Defessi Aeneadae, quae proxima litora, cursu  
 Contendunt petere, et Libyae vertuntur ad oras.  
 Est in secessu longo locus: insula portum whereon  
 Efficit objectu laterum, quibus omnis ab alto 160  
 Frangitur inque sinus scindit sese unda reductos.  
 Hinc atque hinc vastae rupes geminique minantur  
 In caelum scopuli, quorum sub vertice late  
 Aequora tuta silent; tum silvis scaena coruscis + Bob's wane  
 Desuper horrentique atrum nemus imminet umbra. 165  
 Fronte sub adversa scopulis pendentibus autrum,  
 Intus aquae dulces vivoque sedilia saxo,  
 Nymphae domus: hic fessas non vincula naves  
 Ulla tenent, unco non alligat ancora morsu.  
 Huc septem Aeneas collectis navibus omni 170  
 Ex numero subit; ac magno telluris amore  
 Egressi optata potiuntur Troes harena,  
 Et sale tabentes artus in litore ponunt.  
 Ac primum silici scintillam excudit Achates,  
 Succepitque ignem foliis, atque arida circum 175  
 Nutrimenta dedit, rapuitque in fomite flammam.  
 Tum Cererem corruptam undis Cerealiaque arma  
 Expediunt fessi rerum, frugesque receptas

Et torrere parant flammis et frangere saxo. 180  
 Aeneas scopulun interea conscendit et omnem  
 Prospectum late pelago petit. Anthea si quem  
 Jactatum vento videat Phrygiasque biremes,  
 Aut Capyn, aut celsis in puppibus arma Caici.  
 Navem in conspectu nullam, tres litore cervos  
 Prospicit errantes; hos tota armenta sequuntur 185  
 A tergo, et longum per valles pascitur agmen.  
 Constitit hic, arcumque manu celeresque sagittas  
 Corripuit, fidus quae tela gerebat Achates;  
 Ductoresque ipsos primuin, capita alta ferentes  
 Cornibus arboreis, sternit, tum vulgus, et omnem 190  
 Miscet agens telis nemora inter frondea turbam;  
 Nec prius absistit, quam septem ingentia victor  
 Corpora fundat humi et numerum cum navibus aequet.  
 Hinc portum petit, et socios partitur in oinnes.  
 Vina, bonus quae deinde cadis onerarat Acestes 195  
 Litore Trinacrio dederatque abeuntibus heros,  
 Dividit, et dictis maerentia pectora mulcet:  
 'O socii—neque enim ignari sumus ante malorum—  
 O passi graviora, dabit deus his quoque finem.  
 Vos et Scyllaeam rabjom penitusque sonantes 200  
 Accestis scopulos, vos et Cyclopia saxa  
 Experti: revocate animos, maestumque timorem  
 Mittite; forsan et haec olim meminisse juvabit.  
 Per varios casus, per tot discrimina rerum  
 Tendimus in Latium, sedes ubi fata quietas 205  
 Ostendunt; illic fas regna resurgere Trojae.  
 Durate, et vosmet rebus servate secundis.'  
 Talia voce refert, curisque ingentibus aeger  
 Spe.n vultu simulat, premit altum corde dolorem.  
 Illi se praedae accingunt dapibusque futuris: 210

Tergora deripiunt costis et viscera nudant ;  
 Pars in frusta secant veribusque trementia figunt ;  
 Litore aena locant alii, flamasque ministrant.  
 Tum victu revocant vires, fusique per herbam  
 Implentur veteris Bacchi pinguisque ferinae. 215  
 Postquam exempta fames epulis mensaeque remotae,  
 Amissos longo socios sermone requirunt,  
 Spemque metumque inter dubii, seu vivere credant,  
 Sive extrema pati nec jam exaudire vocatos.  
 Praecipue pius Aeneas nunc acris Oronti, 220  
 Nunc Amyci casum gemit et crudelia secuin  
 Fata Lyci, fortemque Gyan, fortemque Cloanthum.  
 Et jam finis erat, cum Juppiter aethere sumino  
 Despiciens mare velivolum terrasque jacentes  
 Litoraque et latos populos, sic vertice caeli 225  
 Constitit, et Libyae defixit lumina regnis.  
 Atque illum tales jactantem pectore curas  
 Tristior et lacrimis oculos suffusa nitentes  
 Alloquitur Venus : 'O qui res hominumque deumque  
 Aeternis regis imperiis, et fulmine terres, 230  
 Quid meus Aeneas in te committere tantum,  
 Quid Troes potuere, quibus, tot funera passis,  
 Cunctus ob Italiam terrarum clauditur orbis ?  
 Certe hinc Romanos olim, volventibus annis,  
 Hinc fore ductores, revocato a sanguine Teucri, 235  
 Qui mare, qui terras omni dictione tenerent,  
 Pollicitus : quae te, genitor, sententia vertit ?  
 Hoc equidem occasum Trojae tristesque ruinas  
 Solabar, fatis contraria fata rependens ;  
 Nunc eadem fortuna viros tot casibus actos 240  
 Insequitur. Quem das finem, rex magne, laborum ?  
 Antenor potuit, mediis elapsus Achivis,

Illyricos penetrare sinus, atque intima tutus  
 Regna Liburnorum et fontem superare Timavi,  
 Unde per ora novem vasto cum murmure montis      245  
 It mare proruptum et pelago premit arva sonanti.  
 Hic tamen ille urbem Patavi sedesque locavit  
 Teucrorum, et genti nomen dedit, armaque fixit  
 Troia, nunc placida compostus pace quiescit :  
 Nos, tua progenies, caeli quibus adnus arcem,      250  
 Navibus—infandum !—amisis, unius ob iram  
 Prodimur, atque Italica longe disjungimur oris.  
 Hic pietatis honos ? Sic nos in sceptra reponis ?

Olli subridens hominum sator atque deorum,  
 Vultu, quo caelum tempestatesque serenat,      255  
 Oscula libavit natae, dehinc talia fatur :  
 ' Parce metu, Cytherea ; manent imita tuorum  
 Fata tibi ; cernes urbem et promissa Lavini  
 Moenia, sublimemque feres ad sidera caeli  
 Magnanimum Aenean ; neque me sententia vertit.      260  
 Hic tibi—fabor enim, quando haec te cura remordet,  
 Longius et volvens fatorum arcana movebo—  
 Bellum ingens geret Italia, populosque feroce  
 Contundet, moresque viris et moenia ponet,  
 Tertia dum Latio regnantem viderit aestas,      265  
 Ternaque transierint Rutulis hiberna subactis.  
 At puer Ascanius, cui nunc cognomen Iulo  
 Additur,—Ilus erat, dum res stetit Ilia regno—  
 Triginta magnos volvendis mensibus orbes  
 Imperio explebit, regnumque ab sede Javini      270  
 Transferet, et longam multa vi mun : Albam.  
 Hic jam ter centum totos regnabitur annos  
 Gente sub Hectorea, donec regina sacerdos,  
 Marte gravis, geminam partu dabit Ilia prolem.

Inde lupae fulvo nutricis tegmine laetus 275  
 Romulus excipiet gentem, et Mavortia condet  
 Moenia, Romanosque suo de nomine dicet.  
 His ego nec metas rerum nec tempora pono ;  
 Imperium sine fine dedi. Quin aspera Juno,  
 Quae mare nunc terrasque metu caelumque fatigat, 280  
 Consilia in melius referet, mecumque fovebit  
 Romanos rerum dominos gentemque togatam.  
 Sic placitum. Veniet lustris labentibus aetas,  
 Cum domus Assaraci Phthiam clarasque Mycenas  
 Servitio premet, ac victis dominabitur Argis. 285  
 Nascetur pulchra Trojanus origine Caesar, ~~ab~~ <sup>Tu uis</sup> ~~qualiter~~  
 Imperium Oceano, famam qui terminent astris,  
 Julius, a magno demissum nomen Iulo.  
 Hunc tu olim caelo, spoliis Orientis onustum,  
 Accipies secura ; vocabitur hic quoque votis. 290  
 Aspera tum positis mitescent saecula bellis ;  
 Cana Fides, et Vesta, Remo cum fratre <sup>Quirinus</sup>,  
 Jura dabunt ; dirae ferro et compagibus artis  
 Claudentur Belli portae ; Furor impius intus  
 Saeva sedens super arma, et centuni vinctus aenis 295  
 Post tergum nodis, fremet horridus ore cruento.'  
 Haec ait, et Maia genitum demittit ab alto,  
 Ut terrae, utque novae pateant Karthaginis arces  
 Hospitio Teucris, ne fati nescia Dido  
 Finibus arceret. Volat ille per aera magnum  
 Remigio alarum, ac Libyae citus astitit oris.  
 Et jam jussa facit, ponuntque ferocia Poeni  
 Corda volente deo ; in primis regina quietum  
 Accipit in Teucros animum mentemque benignam. 300  
 At pius Aeneas, per noctem plurima volvens,  
 Ut primum lux alma data est, exire locosque 305

Explorare novos, quas vento accesserit oras,  
 Qui teneant, nam inculta videt, hominesne feraene,  
 Quaerere constituit, sociisque exacta referre.  
 Classem in convexo nemorum sub rupe cavata, 310  
 Arboribus clausam circum atque horrentibus umbris  
 Occulit; ipse uno graditur comitatus Achate,  
 Bina manu lato crispans hastilia ferro.  
 Cui mater media sese tulit obvia silva,  
 Virginis os habitumque gerens et virginis arma 315  
 Spartanae, vel qualis equos Threissa fatigat  
 Harpalycē, volucremque fuga praevertitur Hebrum.  
 Namque umeris de more habilem suspenderat arcum  
 Venatrix, dederatque comam diffundere ventis,  
 Nuda genu, nodoque sinus collecta fluentes. 320  
 Ac prior, 'Heus,' inquit, 'juvenes, monstrate, mearum  
 Vidistis si quam hic errantem forte sororum,  
 Succinctam pharetra et maculosae tegmine lyncis,  
 Aut spumantis apri cursum clamore prementem.'  
 Sic Venus; et Veneris contra sic filius orsus: 325  
 'Nulla tuarum audita mihi neque visa sororum,  
 O—quam te memorem virgo? namque haud tibi vultus  
 Mortalis, nec vox hominem sonat: O dea certe;  
 An Phoebi soror? an Nympharum sanguinis una?  
 Sis felix, nostrumque leves, quaecumque, labore, 330  
 Et quo sub caelo tandem, quibus orbis in oris  
 Jactemur, doceas; ignari hominumque locorumque  
 Erramus, vento huc vastis et fluctibus acti:  
 Multa tibi ante aras nostra cadet hostia dextra.' 334  
 Tum Venus: 'Haud equidem tali me dignor honore;  
 Virginibus Tyriis mos est gestare pharetram,  
 Purpureoque alte suras vincire cothurno.  
 Punica regna vides, Tyrios et Agenoris urbem;

Sed fines Libyci, genus intractabile bello.  
 Imperium Dido Tyria regit urbe profecta, 340  
 Germanum fugiens. Longa est injuria, longae  
 Ambages; sed summa sequar fastigia rerum.  
 Huic conjunx Sychaeus erat, ditissimus agri  
 Phoenicum, et magno miserae dilectus amore,  
 Cui pater intactam dederat, primisque jugarat 345  
 Ominibus. Sed regna Tyri germanus habebat  
 Pygmalion, scelere ante alios immanior omnes.  
 Quos inter medius venit furor. Ille Sychaeum  
 Impius ante aras, atque auri caecus amore,  
 Clam ferro incautum superat, securus amorum 350  
 Germanae; factumque diu celavit, et aegram,  
 Multa malus simulans, vana spe lusit amantem.  
 Ipsa sed in somnis inhumati venit imago  
 Conjugis, ora modis attollens pallida miris;  
 Crudeles aras trajectaque pectora ferro 355  
 Nudavit, caecumque domus scelus omne retexit.  
 Tum celerare fugam patriaque excedere suadet,  
 Auxiliumque viae veteres tellure recludit  
 Thesauros, ignotum argenti pondus et auri.  
 His commota fugam Dido sociosque parabat. 360  
 Conveniunt, quibus aut odium crudele tyranni  
 Aut metus acer erat; naves, quae forte paratae,  
 Corripiunt, onerantque auro; portantur avari  
 Pygmalionis opes pelago: dux femina facti.  
 Devenere locos, ubi nunc ingentia cernis 365  
 Moenia surgentemque novae Karthaginis arcem,  
 Mercatique solum, facti de nomine By:sam,  
 Taurino quantum possent circumdare tergo.  
 Sed vos qui tandem, quibus aut venistis ab oris,  
 Quove tenetis iter? Quaerenti talibus ille 370

Suspirans, imoque trahens a pectore vocem :  
 'O dea, si prima repetens ab origine pergam,  
 Et vacet annales nostrorum audire laborum,  
 Ante diem clauso componat Vesper Olympo.  
 Nos Troja antiqua, si vestras forte per aures  
 Trojae nomen iit, diversa per aequora vectos  
 Forte sua Libycis tempestas appulit oris.  
 Sum pius Aeneas, raptos qui ex hoste Penates  
 Classe velho mecum, fama super aethera notus.  
 Italianam quaero patriam et genus ab Jove summo. 375  
 Bis denis Phrygium conscendi navibus aequor,  
 Matre dea monstrante viam, data fata secutus ;  
 Vix septem convulsae undis Euroque supersunt.  
 Ipse ignotus, egens, Libyaeg deserta peragro,  
 Europa atque Asia pulsus.' Nec plura querentem 380  
 Passa Venus medio sic interfata dolore est :  
 'Quisquis es, haud, credo, invisus caelestibus auras  
 Vitales carpis, Tyriam qui adveneris urbem.  
 Perge modo, atque hinc te reginae ad limina perfer.  
 Namque tibi reduces socios classemqne relatam 385  
 Nuntio, et in tutum versis aquilonibus actam,  
 Ni frustra augurium vani docuere parentes.  
 Aspice bis senos laetantes agmine cycnos,  
 Aetheria quos lapsa plaga Jovis ales aperto  
 Turbabat caelo ; nunc terras ordine longo  
 Aut capere, aut capias jam despactare videntur :  
 Ut reduces illi ludunt stridentibus alis,  
 Et coetu cinxere polum, cantusque dedere,  
 Haud aliter pupesque tuae pubesque tuorum  
 Aut portum tenet, aut pleno subit ostia velo. 390  
 Perge modo, et, qua te ducit via, dirige gressum.' 400  
 Dixit, et avertens rosea cervice refusit.

*Iwan  
smite*

Ambrosiaeque comae divinum vertice odore in  
Spiravere, pedes vestis defluxit ad imos,  
Et vera incessu patuit dea. Ille ubi matrem  
Agnovit, tali fugientem est voce secutus : 405  
 'Quid natum totiens, crudelis tu quoque, falsis  
Ludis imaginibus ? cur dextrae jungere dextram  
Non datur, ac veras audire et reddere voces ?'  
 Talibus incusat, gressunque ad moenia tendit.  
 At Venus obscuru gradientes aere sapsit,  
 Et multo nebulae circum dea fudit amictu,  
 Cernere ne quis eos, neu quis contingere posset,  
 Molirive moram, aut veniendi possere causas.  
 Ipsa Paphum sublimis abit, sedesque revisit 415  
 Laeta suas, ubi templum illi, centumque Sabaeo  
 Ture calent aerae, sertisque recentibus halant.  
 Corripuerat viam interea, qua semita monstrat.  
 Jamque ascendebant collem, qui plurimus urbi  
 Inminet, adversaque aspectat desuper arces. 420  
 Miratur molem Aeneas, magalia quondam,  
 Miratur portas strepitumque et strata viarum.  
 Instant ardentes Tyrii, pars ducere muros,  
 Molirique arcem et manibus subvolvere saxa,  
 Pars optare locum tecto et concludere sulco ; 425  
 Jura magistratusque legunt, sanctumque senatum ;  
 Hic portus alii effodiunt ; hic alta theatris  
 Fundamenta locant alii, immanesque columnas  
 Rupibus excidunt, scaenis decora alta futuris.  
 Qualis apes aestate nova per florea rura  
 Exercet sub sole labor, cum gentis adultos 430  
 Educunt fetus, aut cum liquentia mella  
 Stipant et dulci distendunt nectare cellas,  
 Aut onera accipiunt venientum, aut agmine facto

*Bee simile*

Connington → McNeil  
for the Latin

Ignavum fucus pecus a praesaepibus arcent : 435  
Fervet opus, redolentque thyino fragrantia mella.  
'O fortunati, quorum jam moenia surgunt !'  
Aeneas ait, et fastigia suspicit urbis.  
Infert se saeptus nebula, mirabile dictu,  
Per medios, miscetque viris, neque cernitur ulli. 440  
Lucus in urbe fuit media, laetissimus umbrae;  
Quo primum jactati undis et turbine Poeni  
Effodere loco signum, quod regia Juno  
Monstrarat, caput acris equi ; sic nam fore bello  
Egregiam et facilem vi<sup>t</sup>u per saecula gentem. 445  
Hic templum Junoni ingens Sidonia Dido  
Condebat, donis opulentum et numine divae,  
Aerea cui gradibus surgebant limina, nexaeque  
Aere trabes, foribus cardo stridebat aenis.  
Hoc primum in luco nova res oblata timorem 450  
Lenuit, hic primum Aeneas sperare salutem  
Ausus, et afflictis melius confidere rebus.  
Namque sub ingenti lustrat dum singula templo,  
Reginam opperiens, dum, quae fortuna sit urbi,  
Artificumque manus inter se operumque laborem  
Miratur, videt Iliacas ex ordine pugnas.  
Bellaque jam fama totum vulgata per orbem,  
Atridas, Priamumque, et saevum ambobus Achillem.  
Constitit, et lacrimans : 'Quis jam locus,' inquit,  
'Achate,  
Quae regio in terris nostri non plena laboris ? 460  
En Priamus ! sunt hic etiam sua praemia laudi ;  
Sunt lacrimae rerum, et mentem mortalia tangunt.  
Solve metus ; feret haec aliquam tibi fama salutem.'  
Sic ait, atque animum pictura pascit inani,  
Multum gemens, largoque umectat flumine vultum. 465

Namque videbat, uti bellantes Pergama circum  
 Hac fugerent Grai, premeret Trojana juventus,  
 Hac Phryges, instaret curru cristatus Achilles.  
 Nec procul hinc Rhesi niveis tentoria velis  
 Agnoscit lacrimans, primo quae prodita somno      470  
Tyrides multa vastabat caede cruentus,  
 Ardentisque avertit equos in castra, priusquam  
 Pabula gustassent Trojae Xanthumque bibissent.  
 Parte alia fugiens amissis Troilus armis,  
 Infelix puer atque impar congressus Achilli,      475  
 Fertur equis, curruque haeret resupinus inani,  
 Lora tenens tamen ; huic cervixque comaeque trahuntur  
 Per terram, et versa pulvis inscribitur hasta.  
 Interea ad templum non aequae Palladis ibant  
 Crinibus Iliades passis, peplumque ferebant,      480  
 Suppliciter tristes et tunsae pectora palmis ;  
 Diva solo fixos oculos aversa tenebat.  
 Ter circum Iliacos raptaverat Hectora muros,  
 Exanimumque auro corpus vendebat Achilles.  
 Tum vero ingentem gemitum dat pectore ab imo,      485  
 Ut spolia, ut currus, utque ipsum corpus amici,  
 Tendentemque manus Priamum conspexit inermes.  
 Se quoque principibus permixtum agnovit Achivis,  
 Eoasque acies, et nigri Memnonis arma.  
 Dicit Amazonidum lunatis agmina peltis      490  
 Penthesilea furens, mediisque in millibus ardet,  
 Aurea subnectens exsertae cingula mammae,  
 Bellatrix, audetque viris concurrere virgo.  
 Haec dum Dardanio Aeneae miranda videntur,  
 Dum stupet, obtutuque haeret defixus in uno,      495  
 Regna ad templum, forma pulcherrima Dido,  
 Incessit, magna juvenum stipante caterva.

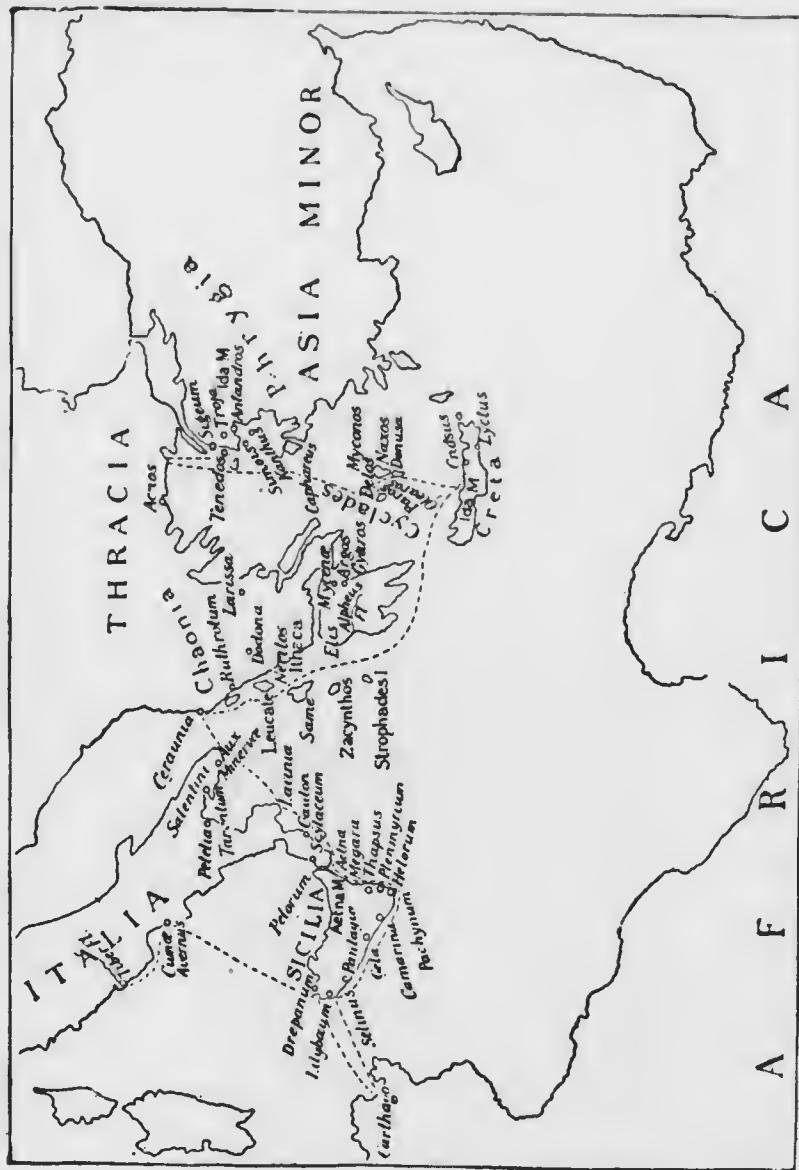
Qualis in Eurotae ripis aut per juga Cythi  
 Exerceat Diana choros, quam mille secutae  
 Hinc atque hinc glomerantur Oreades ; illa pharetram  
 Fert umero, gradiensque deas supereminet omnes :  
 Latonae tacitum pertemptant gaudia pectus :  
 Talis erat Dido, talem se laeta ferebat  
 Per medios, instans operi regnisque futuris.  
 Tum foribus divae, media testudine templi,  
 Saepta armis, solioque alte subnixa resedit.  
 Jura dabat legesque viris, operumque laborem  
 Partibus aquabat justis, aut sorte trahebat :  
 Cum subito Aeneas concursu accedere magno  
Anthea Sergestunique videt fortenuque Cloanthum,  
 Teucroruunque alios, ater quos aequore turbo  
 Dispulerat penitusque alias avexerat oras.

499 *chorus**— goddesses  
virile*

505

510

DIANA (*Phoebi soror*).



MAP SHOWING THE WANDERINGS OF AENEAS.

## NOTES ON VIRGIL, AENEID I. 1-510.

N.B.—The references are to the sections of the Syntax and Composition, beginning at page 169.

The following abbreviations are used: cf.=compare; fn.=footnote; l.=line; lit.=literally; sc.=supply or understand; trans.=translate or translation.

For the story of the siege of Troy see page 323. Book I. opens in the seventh year of Aeneas' wanderings, the story of the earlier part of his adventures being told in Books II. and III.

### 1.7. *The subject of the poem.*

1. **virum**: Aeneas. The accus. with *cano* is that *of which one sings*. **primus**: 'first' (205, *h*); he was the earliest Trojan settler in Italy proper (cf. on l. 242). Many prefer to take it 'of old.'

2. **Italiam**: the accusative of the limit of motion (without *ad*) is more freely used in poetry than in prose, for which see 125. **fato**: 'by fate,' instrumental abl. with *profugus*. **Lavinaque**: *que* is here explanatory, *Larina litora* defining *Italiam* more exactly. The city Lavinium (see Vocabulary) was not yet built, but the epithet suggests Aeneas' mission in Italy.

3. **ille**: resuming the subject *qui*, thus serving to call our attention more forcibly to the hero and his troubles; omit in English. **et terris et alto**: 'both by land and sea'; in phrases telling the place where the preposition is more often omitted in poetry than in prose (127, ii.). **jactatus**: the participle; so *passus*, l. 5.

4. **superum**: for *superorum*. In Virgil many nouns of the first or second declension have *-um* in the gen. plur. **memorem**: the epithet poetically transferred from *Junonis* to *iram*.

5. **quoque et**: each means 'too' or 'also'; the former introduces the new clause *multa . . . passus*; the latter contrasts the adventures in the wars after he reached Italy (*bello*) with those

experienced in his wanderings by sea and land before he reached it (*terris et alto*). **dum conderet**: not 'till he founded' but 'till he should found,' or 'in the effort to found'; for the subj. see 155, b.

6. **deos**: the 'household gods' of the city which Aeneas was bidden in a vision to bring from Troy to his new home; this would strengthen the claim that Rome was the direct descendant of Troy, and that it was founded under divine guidance. **Latio**: 'into Latium.' For the dative used in poetry of the *place to which*, see 78, vii. **unde**: 'from whom,' referring to Aeneas (*qui, ille*). For the verb of the clause supply *erunt* ('are,' freely 'come'), of which *genus, patres* and *moenia* are subjects.

7. **Albanique patres**: 'the lords of Alba'; *patres* not because they were ancestors of the later Romans but referring to the patrician families. The three subjects give the three stages of growth in the legendary order, Lavinium, Alba, Rome; cf. ll. 265-277. **Romae**: note the emphatic position.

This introduction has told us that we are to have an epic of adventure both in war (like the Iliad) and in wanderings by sea and land (like the Odyssey); further, it is to be a national epic, telling the early history of Rome, and a religious epic, in that Rome's founding, it is intimated, is a matter of divine concern. See further on this point pages 328, 329.

### 8-33. *The cause of Juno's wrath against Aeneas.*

8. **Musa**: the goddess who inspired poets. It is idle to ask here which Muse is meant, for Virgil, like Horace, recognizes no 'division of labor' among the Muses.

**quo numine laeso**: an abl. absol. clause, *quo* being the interrog. adj. The phrase may be taken in two ways: (1) the simpler, 'what divine purpose having been thwarted,' the answer to which is contained in ll. 12-22, while the answer to *quid dolens* is given in ll. 23-28; (2) 'what divinity of hers having been insulted,' i.e., 'her divinity having been insulted in what respect,' in which case *quid dolens* is simply another form of the same question. For a freer rendering see on l. 9.

9. **quidve dolens**: the acc. with *doleo* states that *at which* one feels distress (69, ii.). For the enclitic *re* see 4, n, iii.

Trans. the whole freely, either (1) 'for what thwarting of her divine will or from what resentment,' or (2) 'for what insult to her godhead or from what resentment.'

**deum**: cf. on *superum*, l. 4. **regina deum**: Juno, the wife of Jupiter. **volvere**: 'to undergo,' suggesting the notion either of rolling a burden along or of passing through a round of mishaps. Like *adire*, it depends on *impulerit*; the infin. is used more freely in poetry than in prose, in which we should here have had *ut* and subj. (22, viii.).

10. **pietate**: neither piety nor pity quite, but faithful observance of duty whether to gods, parents, fellow-men, or country. Trans. 'goodness.' Aeneas is constantly called *pius* by Virgil, partly from his filial devotion to his father, partly from his dutiful obedience to the voice of the gods and to the leading of fate. That so 'good' a man should be visited by the displeasure of the queen of heaven needs explanation. For the case see 96.

11. **impulerit**: subj. in an interrog. clause dependent on *causas memora* (35).

**tantaene**: for *ne* see 34, i. **animis**: the dative, depending on *sunt* which is to be understood. In prose *esse* is frequently omitted, especially in compound tenses; in poetry *est* and *sunt* also (4, g, i.). For the dat. with *esse* = 'belong,' see 80, e.

**irae**: trans. by the singular; the plur. of abstract nouns often, as here, indicates either the intensity or various manifestations of a feeling. For the thought cf. Milton, 'In heavenly hearts could such perverseness dwell?'

12. **antiqua**: from the poet's point of view, as at the time of Aeneas' visit it was just building, l. 423. **Tyrii . . . coloni**: parenthetic; trans. by relative clause. Carthage was founded by settlers from Tyre in Phoenicia. **tenuere**: the ending *ere* for *erunt* is very common in poetry, being convenient for metrical purposes.

13. **contra**: placed after one of its two objects. **que**: explanatory, as in l. 2. **longe**: may modify the whole phrase *Italianam*

*contra*, etc., correcting or rather explaining it, 'opposite . . . but afar'; or it may (as its position would suggest) be used with adjectival force, after the Greek fashion, 'the distant Tiber mouths.'

14. *opum*: trans. by 'in'; for the gen. with *dires*, see 90, i. and iii. *studiis asperrima*: 'fierce in the pursuits (or arts).' For the abl. see 102.

15. *fertur*: 'is said,' a frequent meaning of *fero* in Virgil. *terris*: see 98. *magis*: freely, 'above.' *unam*: emphasizing the comparison and not to be translated; it is a regular prose usage with the superlative, to which *magis omnibus* is equivalent.

16. *posthabita Samo*: abl. absol.; 'holding [even] Samos less dear.' Samos was one of the chief seats of Juno's worship. *hic*: the adverb. For the irregular scansion see page 335, 3 and 8.

17. *hoc*: according to rule, agreeing in gender with *regnum* the predicate of *esse* instead of with its antecedent *Samo* (13, i.). *esse*: completing the meaning of *tendit* and *foret*, a poetical extension of the accus. and inf. with verbs of wishing. Cf. on l. 9.

18. *qua*: indefinite adverb. *sinant*: the subj. because in a subordinate clause forming part of Juno's virtually quoted thoughts (177). *jam tum*: i.e., even in those first days of Carthage's existence. *tenditque lovetque*: lit. 'she both strives and fosters'; that is 'it is her aim and fond desire.' Trans. 'this the goddess fondly desires to be a seat of empire for the nations.'

19. We have here the first reason for Juno's persecution of Aeneas,—her fear for the supremacy of Carthage. *sed enim*: trans. simply, 'but.' There is really an ellipsis, 'but (she had her fears) for,' etc. *duci*: present inf. because fate was even then being fulfilled, in the person of Aeneas and his followers; in l. 22 the future inf. is used of the subsequent rise of a great nation from these wanderers.

20. *olim*: 'some day.' *verteret*: for the mood see 26.

21. *hinc*: i.e., *Trojano a sanguine*. *late regem*: the adverb modifies the participial idea implied in *regem*; 'widely ruling,' 'of extensive sway.'

22. **excidio Libyae**: dat. of purpose and dat. of interest (81). Libya is a poetical exaggeration for the Carthaginian dominions of later days.

**sic volvere Parcas**: the ace. and inf. construction continued; 'that such was the Fates' decree.' The metaphor in *volvere* is uncertain; it may be from the turning of a wheel, spinning, the unrolling of a book, or the shaking of an urn containing lots.

23. Here follow various personal affronts to Juno, all connected with the Trojan race. **metuens, memor**: the principal verb follows in l. 31, but the long parenthesis of ll. 25-28 has disturbed the natural run of the sentence. **veteris**: probably as contrasted with her present hostility to Aeneas. But it is possible that, by a sort of anachronism, Virgil is mentally contrasting the Trojan war with the later Punic wars, to which he has just been referring, ll. 20-22.

24. **prima**: 'at the first,' 'long ago,' thus reinforcing the idea implied in *veteris*, l. 23. Others make it mean 'foremost of all,' as the leader of the hosts attacking Troy. **ad**: 'at,' 'before,' (125, i.). **Argis**: Argos, the city of Menelaus, is here put for the whole of Greece, as often in Homer. It is called *caris*, because it was one of the chief seats of Juno's worship.

25. **causae irarum**: these are specified in ll. 27 and 28. For the plurals *irarum* and *dolores*, cf. on *ira*, l. 11.

26. **animo**: abl. (93). **manet**: note the emphatic position; the sing. agrees with the nearest of the four subjects, as *repostum* agrees with it in gender also. **alta mente**: lit. 'in her deep mind'; we should say 'deep in her heart.'

27. **judicium Paridis**: see page 324. **spretæ injuria formæ**: explaining *judicium Paridis*. The gen. may be either objective, 'the wrong done to her slighted beauty' (85), or the gen. of definition, 'the insult of her slighted beauty,' i.e., 'consisting in the scorning of her beauty' (89). In the latter case notice the use of the participle instead of an abstract noun (205, i.).

28. **genus**: the whole Trojan race, whose founder Dardanus was a son of Jupiter by Electra, of whom Juno was jealous.

**Ganymedis**: a beautiful youth of the Trojan royal house, carried off to Olympus, by order of Jupiter, to be the cupbearer of the gods, in place of Hebe, Juno's daughter.

29. **his**: neuter, for the prose *his rebus*. **super**: adverb; 'still further,' 'also,' i.e., as well as anxious for Carthage. **jactatos**: with *Troas*, the object of *arcebatur*; best translated by a principal verb in the active voice coordinate with *arcebatur*. **aequore toto**: trans. by 'over.' For the abl. see 127, ii.

30. **Troas**: words of the third declension borrowed from the Greek have often the acc. sing. in *ā*, the nom. plur. in *ēs* and the accus. plur. in *ās*. **reliquias Danaum**: , the remnant left by the Greeks'; lit. 'the Greeks' leavings.' For the subjective gen. see 84. **Danaum**: for the form cf. on l. 4. Virgil, like Homer, constantly uses the names of prominent Greek tribes for the Greeks in general. **Achilli**: Greek proper names in *-ēs* of the third declension have the genitive in both *-is* and *-i*.

31. **Latio**: abl. (93).

32. **circum**: following its case; cf. l. 13.

33. **tantae molis erat**: 'so great a work (task) was it'; lit. 'it was of such difficulty' (87, iii.).

The last words of the introduction thus emphasize the national aspect of the poem, which is about to describe this founding of the nation.

34-49. *As the Trojan fleet is leaving Sicily, Juno dwells indignantly on her failure to keep Aeneas from Italy.*

35. **vela dabant**: the full phrase would be *vela dabant ventis*. **aere**: 'with the prow of bronze'; the prows of ancient vessels were often covered with bronze.

36. **sub pectore**: 'deep in her heart.'

37. **haec secum**: understand *dixit* or some such word, often omitted in poetry when the exact words are quoted; for mood see 151, iii. **me . . desistere**: the acc. and infin. (here with the interrogative particle *-ne*) may be used in an indignant exclamation; so *posse*. Trans. 'Am I to,' etc. **incepto**: see 93. **victam**: 'baffled'

39. **quippe**: ironical; 'forsooth or doubtless.' **Pallas**: in the emphatic position for contrast.

40. **Argivum**: cf. on *Danaum*, l. 30. **ipsos**: contrasted with *classem*, the vessels. **ponto**: 'in the sea'; local abl. : cf. on l. 3.

41. **unius**: the 'one man' was Ajax (the lesser), who, because of the insult offered Cassandra, a Trojan princess, in the very sanctuary of *Pallas*, on the night of the capture of Troy, was visited with the vengeance of the goddess when returning to Greece. **et furias**: the latter half of the line is explanatory of the first half; for the plural cf. on *irae*, l. 11. **Oilei**: possessive gen. dependent on, not in agreement with, *Ajaxis*, by a Greek construction; 'Ajax (son) of Oileus.' In scansion *ei* is to be taken as one syllable, a diphthong.

42. **ipsa**: to emphasize the difference between Pallas and herself. Pallas had actually been allowed with her own hands to wield Jove's thunderbolt.

43. **que . . que**: as in l. 18.

44. **illum**: in emphatic contrast with *rates*. **transfixo**: i.e., by the thunderbolt.

45. **scopulo**: local abl. ; cf. on l. 3 ; or dat. (78, v.c.).

46. **divom**: archaic for *dirum*; cf. on *superum*, l. 4. **incedo**: 'move'; suggesting the majestic stately tread of a queen. So in ll. 405 and 497. Cf. Shakespeare: 'High'st queen of state great Juno comes; I know her by her gait.'

47. **una cum geste**: balancing *unius*, l. 41, and contrasted both with *divom regina* and *tot annos*. **tot**: 'all these,' or 'these many.'

48. **quisquam**: with its usual suggestion of 'no one' (166, b).

49. **praeterea**: 'henceforth,' 'any further'; the use of this word softens the rather peculiar change from the present *adorat* to the future *imponet*, for which some editors read *imponit*. **applex**: see on l. 64. **aris**: for the dat. (here to be translated 'on') see 78, v.c.

50-75. *She goes to Eolus, god of the winds, and asks him to destroy the fleet for her.*

50. **flammato corde**: local abl. **volutans**: see fn. p. 76, and cf. *jactatos*, l. 29.

51. **austris**: put here for any violent wind. **furentibus**: see 44, i. b.

52. **hic**: adverb, explained by *rasto antro*.

54. **vinclis et carcere**: freely 'with dungeon fetters.'

55. **montis**: with *murmure*, not with *clastra*, as l. 245 shows (84).

56. **arce**: the relative position of the citadel and the dungeon-cave is not told us, but Aeolus occupies the citadel as a Greek despot would the 'acropolis' of his city.

57. **sceptra**: the plural giving the effect of dignity and majesty; trans. by the sing.

58. **ni faciat . . . ferant**: 'were he not to do this . . . they would' is more impressive and graphic than *ni faceret . . . ferrent*, 'were he not doing this . . . they would.' The latter tells us that he is in fact restraining them, and that thus there is no danger; the former suggests the consequences of a conceivable omission (61 ; 63).

59. **quippe**: 'assuredly'; its position would in prose naturally be before *ni faciat*. **rapidi**: 'in their swift course.' For the imitative harmony in this line, with which contrast ll. 53 and 55, see p. 334.

60. **speluncis**: again the poetical local abl. without the prep.

61. **molem et montes**: 'the mass (or massive weight) of mountains.' Virgil often (by the figure called *hendiadys*) uses two nouns connected by *and* (*et*, *-que*) instead of a modified noun, to express one complex idea.

62. **foedere**: the 'law' imposed on him by Jupiter.

63. **sciret**: with the complementary inf. means 'should know how to,' etc. For the subj. expressing Jove's purpose, see 26. **premere**: the object is probably *habenæ*, not *rentos*; trans. 'tighten,' lit. 'bear down.' **laxas dare**: 'to let loose.' **jussus**: 'when bidden' i.e., by Jupiter, or 'at his bidding.'

64. **ad quem**: 'addressing him' (172). **supplex**: 'in supplication' (10 ; 205, h).

65. **namque . . . vento**: these words explain why she appeals to Aeolus.

66. **mulcere dedit**: 'has granted [power] to lull'; equivalent to the ordinary complementary infin. with verbs of permitting. **vento**: belongs to *mulcere* as well as to *tollere*; the ancient view was that the winds calmed, as well as raised the sea.

67. **Tyrrhenum aequor**: between Sicily and western Italy; a sort of cognate acc., denoting the space traversed.

68. **Ilium . . . portans**: that is, transferring the traditions and people of Troy to a new home.

69. **incute vim ventis**: 'rouse the winds to fury'; lit. 'strike fury into the winds' (78, v. c.). **submersas obrue**: 'overwhelm and sink'; a proleptic use, like 'strike him dead'; cf. *laxas dare*, l. 63, and *age diversos*, l. 70.

70. **diversos**: masc. agreeing with *nautas* or *Troas*, to be understood from the context; a sensc construction.

71. **sunt mihi**: 'I have' (80, e). **corpore**: 'figure,' or more freely, 'beauty, loveliness' (105).

72. **quae . . pulcherrima**: 'the one who is the fairest.' Supply *est*, cf. on l. 11. The antecedent should have been *Deiopeum*. object of *jungam*, but this has been made part of the relative clause (173, c. i.). **forma**: abl. (102).

73. **propriam dicabo**: 'assign to be thine own forever.' Juno was the goddess of marriage, besides being the mistress of the nymph. For the scansion see page 336.

75. **pulchra prole parentem**: 'father of a goodly race.' The abl. is probably instrumental, but may possibly be abl. of quality.

76-101. *Aeolus, consenting, raises so mighty a storm that Aeneas is filled with dismay.*

76. **haec**: supply *dixit*; cf. on l. 37. **tuus labor**: supply *est*. **optes**: see 35.

77. **mihi fas est**: 'it is my duty.' Notice the emphatic position of the contrasted words *tuus* and *mihi*. By these words he really throws all the responsibility upon Juno.

78. **tu** : the repetition of this word lays stress upon the thought that Juno is the source of all his blessings. **quodcumque hoc regni** : 'this poor kingdom,' 'this kingdom, such as it is'; lit. 'this (extent) of kingdom, whatsoever it is,' *est* being understood. For the gen. see 86, i. He is depreciating his power in comparison with Juno's, in harmony with his idea that it is for her to command, for him to obey. **Jovem concilias** : 'win Jove's favor.'

79. **das accumbere** : see on l. 66. **epulis** : local abl.

80. **nimborum** : for the case see 90. **potentem** : sc. *me*.

81. **dicta** : supply *sunt*; cf. on l. 11. **cavum montem** : i.e., the cavern where the winds were confined.

82. **in latus** : acc. because 'motion towards' is involved. **velut agmine facto** : abl. absol.; 'like an armed host,' or more freely, 'as with one accord.'

83. **qua** : adverb. **data** : supply *est*. **turbine** : see 103.

84. **incubuere** : from *incumbo*; the perfect tense (which without any preliminaries expresses the completion of the act) is used to suggest the suddenness of the action. **mari** : dative (78, v. c). **totum** : understand *mare*, the object of *ruunt*. **a sedibus imis** : freely 'from its lowest depths.'

85. **una** : adverb. **creber procellis** : freely 'gusty.'

87. **virum** : cf. on l. 4.

90. **intonuere poli** : 'the whole heavens thunder' or 'it thunders from pole to pole.' For the tense cf. on l. 84.

91. **intentant** : the English idiom is 'threaten men with death.'

92. **solvuntur frigore** : 'are relaxed (paralysed) with chilling fear.' Fear and cold have somewhat similar effects.

93. **duplices** : 'his two' or 'both his,' not 'clasped,' as the usual attitude in prayer in ancient times was to stand with the arms outstretched and the two palms upturned.

94. **voce** : freely 'aloud.' **terque quaterque** : 'thrice, yea, four times.'

95. **quis** : an old form for *quibus*, here dat. with *contigit* : 'they whose lot it was.' **ora** : here trans. by 'the eycs.'

97. **Tydide**: descent and relationship may be indicated by *patronymics*, having the suffixes *-ades* or *-ides*. These are Greek masculine nouns of the first declension, with the gen. sing. and nom. plur. ending in *-ae*. Diomedes and Aeneas had once met in single combat, and Aeneas had been carried off by his goddess mother, to prevent his being slain. **mene potuisse**: 'to think that I could not have,' etc. Cf. on l. 37.

98. **hanc**: i.e., *mean*. **dextra**: trans. 'beneath,' etc.; for the case see 99.

99. **ubi**: 'where.' **Aeacidae**: i.e., Achilles, the grandson of Aeacus. See p. 325. **jacet**: 'lies slain' or 'fell,' not 'lies buried.' The historical present is due to the vividness with which he recalls the scene of their death.

100. **tot**: with *scuta*, etc. **correpta volvit**: 'bore away and rolled' (43, c; 50, iii.).

101. **virum**: as in l. 87.

102-123. *The storm waxes fiercer, and seven of Aeneas' ships are lost.*

102. **alia jactanti**: 'while he was uttering these wild complaints'; for the dat., lit. 'to him uttering,' see 80, b. **Aquilone**: with *stridens*; instrumental abl.

103. **adversa**: 'full in front,' agreeing with *procella*.

104. **avertit**: 'swings round.' This intransitive use, instead of *avertitur*, is somewhat unusual (203, f, i., p. 303).

105. **insequitur**: 'there follows.' **cumulo**: 'in a heap' (103). **mons**: for the rhythm see p. 335, 5.

106. **hi . . . his**: 'some . . . to others.' The next lines show that he does not mean different men from a single ship, but the crews of different vessels.

107. **furit aestus harenis**: 'the surging waters boil with sand'; i.e., the sand at the bottom of the sea is churned up with the surf.

108. **tres**: the feminine *abreptas* shows that *naves* is to be supplied. **abreptas**: cf. on l. 100.

109. **quae**: would in prose come at the beginning of its clause.  
**Aras**: see 69, v.

110. **dorsum**: in apposition with *saxa*, l. 108. **mari summo**: not inconsistent with *latentia*, l. 108. The rocks may either have just come near the surface, or have been hidden by the waves in stormy weather only.

111. **syrtes**: as it is not certain that Virgil meant the shallow bays east of Carthage (which were far from the scene of the storm) the word has been printed without capitals, in the sense of 'quicksands.' If printed *Syrtes*, it is a case of hendiadys (see on l. 61), = 'the shoals of the Syrtes.' **visu**: 'to see' (117).

112. **vadis**: cf. on *aris*, l. 49.

113. **Lycios**: the Lycians were neighbors of the Trojans, and had been their allies in the late war. **Oronten**: (= *Orontem*), the Greek form of the accusative.

114. **ipsius**: i.e., of Aeneas. **a vertice**: 'from above,' or more freely, 'down-rushing.'

115. **in puppim**: cf. on *in latu*, l. 82. *Puppim* is the regular accus. form. **excuditur**: 'is dashed overboard.' **pronus in caput**: 'forward headlong.'

116. **illam**: 'the ship.' **ibidem**: 'where she lies.'

117. **ter torquet agens circum**: 'sends spinning thrice around.'

118. **rari**: contrasted with *rasto*. The gender shows that he is thinking of the men, although l. 119 substitutes other subjects; it will be less awkward in English if *nantes* be rendered 'swimmers.' Notice the spondaic movement, and cf. p. 334.

119. **arma**: shields and helmets, for example, might float for a few moments, and 'the picture here is momentary, and flashes before the eyes of Aeneas.'

120. **Ilionei**: for the scansion cf. on *Oilei*, l. 41.

121. **qua**: 'that on which,' sc. *narem* (99, ii.). **vectus**: cf. on l. 11.

122. **compagibus**: abl. of means or abl. absol. **omnes**: i.e., *naves*.

123. *imbrex*: here peculiarly used for the sea-water. *rimis*: see 103.

124-156. *Neptune, the god of the sea, aroused by the turmoil, rebukes the winds and calms the storm.*

124. *misceri*: 'was in turmoil.' Notice the difference in tense between *misceri* and *emissum*. Trans. freely 'perceived the turmoil and loud roaring of the sea.' For the case of *murmure* see 103.

126. *stagna*: the still water from the depths of the sea, thrown up by the tempest to the surface. Trans. 'the still deeps upheaved.' *vadis*: see 93. *alto*: 'over the deep' seems better than 'from the deep' (127, ii.).

127. *placidum*: as befitted the majesty and dignity of a god, in spite of *graviter commotus*. *unda*: cf. on *ridis*, l. 126.

128. *toto aequore*: cf. on l. 29.

129. *Troas*: cf. on l. 30. *caeli ruina*: 'the down-pour (or wreck) of the sky.'

130. *fratrem*: 'her brother,' i.e., Neptune. *Junonis*: with *doli et irae*.

131. *dehinc*: to be scanned as one syllable; cf. on l. 41. *fatur*: from *for*.

132. *generis fiducia*: 'pride of birth,' more lit. 'confidence in your origin.' The winds were children of Aurora (the goddess of dawn) and one of the Titans. For the gen. see 85, ii. *tenuit*: 'has possessed.'

133. *jam*: 'at length,' implying that they have presumed further than ever before; freely 'has it come to this, that,' etc. *numine*: here 'assent.' *venti*: vocative.

134. *moles*: 'mighty seas,' 'mountains of water.'

135. *quos ego*: the sentence may be completed by some verb meaning, 'I shall chastise,' but with dramatic effect the sentence is interrupted (*aposiopesis*); the threat will be more forcible if left to the imagination than if put in words.

136. *post*: adverb. *non simili*: 'far different.'

138. **imperium . . . datum**: understand *esse*, in apposition with *haec*, dependent on *dicite*. **saevum**: 'stern.'

139. **sorte**: according to the legend Jupiter, Neptune and Pluto had decided by lot which was to rule the heavens, the sea and the lower world.

140. **vestras**: though only Eurus is mentioned his brother winds are included, *ros* and *vester* never being used in Latin of a single person. Trans. 'the home of thee and thy brethren' or 'where thou and thine dwell.' **jactet**: trans. subj. by 'let'; so *regnet*, l. 141 (134, b).

141. **clauso**: this is the emphatic word of the clause, marking the condition of his rule 'but over the closed' or 'provided . . . be closed,' etc. The abl. may be either local or absolute.

142. **dicto citius**: 'ere his words are ended'; lit. 'more quickly than his utterance' (98, v.).

144. **adnixus**: 'pushing or leaning against them'; though agreeing with *Triton*, to be taken with *Cymothoe* also.

145. **scopulo**: see 93. **ipse**: 'the god himself.' **tridenti**: abl.

147. Notice the smooth movement of the verse, due to the predominance of *l* and *r* and the labial sounds *m*, *v*, *b*, *p*.

148. The simile that follows is noteworthy for two things; first, it is one of the rare cases in Virgil where nature is illustrated by man, not man by nature; second, Virgil was evidently drawing on his recollection of the seditious disturbances all too common in the last years of the republic. **magno in populo**: 'in a great concourse of people' has more point than 'in a mighty nation.' **cum saepe**: more strictly 'often when' or 'when, as often happens.' *Cum* is answered by *tum*, l. 151. For the indic. with *cum* see 149.

151. **pietate**: cf. on l. 10. *Pietate* and *meritis* represent respectively character and conduct. For the abl. see 96. **quem**: indefinite adj. with *virum*.

152. **conspexere**: plur. according to the sense, although *vulgus* is used before; for the tense see 178, ii.

153. **ille**: the subject changes, and our attention is more fixed upon the great man.

154. **cecidit**: 'has fallen,' not 'fell'; cf. on l. 84, and notice that (in l. 156) the present tense follows *postquam*. **aequora prospiciens**: 'looking upon the sea'; the accus. here because the sea is itself the object of his gaze, while in *alto prospiciens*, l. 126, it was the cause of the turmoil which he tried to see, not the waves themselves.

155. **genitor**: 'the sire,' i.e., Neptune; a term of respect. **caelo aperto**: abl. absol.; trans. freely 'beneath a cloudless sky.'

156. **curru**: with *dat*; an old form of the dative. **secundo**: here retaining much of its primitive meaning of 'following,' from *sequor*. It is intended to suggest ease of movement; trans. 'gliding' or 'obedient.'

157-179. *With seren of his ships, Aeneas reaches a quiet harbor on the coast of Africa, where the Trojans gladly land.*

157. **Aeneadae**: cf. on l. 97. **quae . . litora**: sc. *sunt*; cf. l. 72. Trans. freely without the relative. **cursu petere**: 'to run for'; *cursu* is abl. of manner, 'in haste, quickly.'

158. **vertuntur**: for this intransitive use of the passive, see 203, f, i. (p. 303). Sometimes too the active voice with the reflexive pronoun has the value of an intransitive verb; cf. l. 161.

159. **longo**: here trans. 'deep.' **locus**: the spot cannot be identified, the description being imaginary.

160. **objectu laterum**: 'by its jutting sides,' lit. 'by the interposition of its sides.' **quibus**: 'whereon'; but instrumental not local abl. **ab alto**: with *omnis unda*.

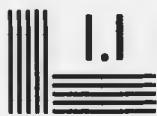
161. **frangitur**: cf. on *vertuntur*, l. 158. **ince**: *que* is seldom attached to a prep. **scindit sese**: 'parts'; cf. on *vertuntur*, l. 158. **sinus reductos**: the meaning is that after breaking on the island barrier, the spent waves run past either side of the island until they lose themselves in the deep inlets of the harbor.

162. **rupes**: subject either of *minantur* or of *sunt* understood; *rupes*, the line of cliffs along the shore, *scopuli*, the peaks or headlands at either entrance. **gemini**: because alike or corresponding.



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



4.5 2.8 2.5

5.6 3.2 2.2

6.3 3.6

7.1 4.0

7.9 2.0

8.7 1.8

9.5 1.6

10.3 1.4

11.1 1.25

11.9 1.1

12.7 1.0

13.5 0.9

14.3 0.8

15.1 0.7

15.9 0.6

16.7 0.5

17.5 0.4

18.3 0.3

19.1 0.2

19.9 0.1

20.7 0.0

21.5 0.0

22.3 0.0

23.1 0.0

23.9 0.0

24.7 0.0

25.5 0.0

26.3 0.0

27.1 0.0

27.9 0.0

28.7 0.0

29.5 0.0

30.3 0.0

31.1 0.0

31.9 0.0

32.7 0.0

33.5 0.0

34.3 0.0

35.1 0.0

35.9 0.0

36.7 0.0

37.5 0.0

38.3 0.0

39.1 0.0

39.9 0.0

40.7 0.0

41.5 0.0

42.3 0.0

43.1 0.0

43.9 0.0

44.7 0.0

45.5 0.0

46.3 0.0

47.1 0.0

47.9 0.0

48.7 0.0

49.5 0.0

50.3 0.0

51.1 0.0

51.9 0.0

52.7 0.0

53.5 0.0

54.3 0.0

55.1 0.0

55.9 0.0

56.7 0.0

57.5 0.0

58.3 0.0

59.1 0.0

59.9 0.0

60.7 0.0

61.5 0.0

62.3 0.0

63.1 0.0

63.9 0.0

64.7 0.0

65.5 0.0

66.3 0.0

67.1 0.0

67.9 0.0

68.7 0.0

69.5 0.0

70.3 0.0

71.1 0.0

71.9 0.0

72.7 0.0

73.5 0.0

74.3 0.0

75.1 0.0

75.9 0.0

76.7 0.0

77.5 0.0

78.3 0.0

79.1 0.0

79.9 0.0

80.7 0.0

81.5 0.0

82.3 0.0

83.1 0.0

83.9 0.0

84.7 0.0

85.5 0.0

86.3 0.0

87.1 0.0

87.9 0.0

88.7 0.0

89.5 0.0

90.3 0.0

91.1 0.0

91.9 0.0

92.7 0.0

93.5 0.0

94.3 0.0

95.1 0.0

95.9 0.0

96.7 0.0

97.5 0.0

98.3 0.0

99.1 0.0

100.0 0.0

A resolution test chart featuring a series of vertical black bars of decreasing size from left to right, followed by the numerical value '1.25' centered below the bars.

APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street  
Rochester, New York 14609 USA  
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone  
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

A graphic element consisting of a triangle filled with horizontal black lines of varying widths, creating a striped pattern.

163. **late** . . . **silent** : ‘the sheltered waters lie wide and still.’

164. **scaena** : the wall in the rear of the stage of a theatre, hence ‘the background,’ closing in the view of those entering the harbor; it may be subject of *est* understood or of *imminet*. **silvis** : see 105.

165. **horrenti umbra** : abl. cf. manner, with *imminet*; were it not for ‘he lack of variety, it might be taken as *silvis*, l. 164. *Horrenti* may be either ‘gloomy,’ or ‘bristling, shaggy’ with reference to the appearance of fir trees.

166. **fronte adversa** : ‘the front of the cliffs facing the entrance’; freely ‘the seaward brow.’ **scopulis** : cf. on *silvis*, l. 164; it is these that make the cave.

167. **vivo saxo** : that is, not formed artificially, but the result of the natural formation of the rock; for the case see 95, ii.

168. **fessas** : the epithet transferred from the sailors to the ship. **non ulla** : for *nulla*. Cables and anchors are not needed in so calm a retreat.

169. **unco morsu** : with *alligat* rather than with *ancora*. It may be noticed that Homer knows nothing of anchors; in his day large stones were used instead.

170. **septem** : Aeneas’ own ship, with the six mentioned in ll. 108, 110, and 144-6. **omni ex numero** : what this was is told in l. 381.

171. **amore** : ‘yearning, longing’ (103). **telluris** : see 85.

172. **Troes** : for the Greek ending (*ες*) see on l. 30. **harena** : see 54.

173. **sale** : ‘with brine.’

174. **silici** : for the dat. meaning ‘from,’ see 80, a. This construction is used more freely in poetry than in prose.

175. **succepit** : an old form for *suscepit*. **foliis** : instrumental abl. **foliis, nutrimenta, fomite** : various names for the same thing, viz., dry leaves and twigs. **circum** : adverb.

176. **dedit** : ‘put, heaped.’ **rapuit** : ‘quickly kindled,’ lit. ‘hurried.’

177. **Cererem** : so in l. 215 *Bacchus* is used for ‘wine,’ by the figure called *metonymy*.

178. **fessi rerum**: 'weary of fortune or trouble.' For the extended use in poetry of the genitive signifying 'as regards' or 'with reference to,' see 90, iii. This is sometimes called the gen. of reference. **receptas**: i.e., from the sea.

179. **torrere**: to make the grain (especially if it was wet) easier to grind.

180-194. *From the top of a cliff Aeneas scans the sea in rain for traces of the other ships, then returning to his men he falls in with a herd of deer, of whom he slays one for each ship.*

181. **pelago**: cf. on *alto*, l. 126. **si**: 'if perchance,' 'to see if,' 'in the hope that.' For this use of *si* and subj. see 177. **Anthea quem**: lit. 'any Antheus'; freely, 'A. anywhere,' or 'anything of A.' For the Greek form of the accus. see on l. 30.

183. **Capyn**: the Greek form of the acc. **in pupibus**: where the shields of the leaders were hung.

186. **pascitur**: cf. on *vertuntur*, l. 158.

187. **hic**: adverb; 'hereupon.'

188. **quae tela**: see 173, c. ii.

189. **capita alta**, etc.: 'bearing their heads high with...antlers,' *cornibus* being abl. of means w. *alta*. [It may also be taken, 'bearing stately heads with... antlers,' *cornibus* being abl. of quality w. *capita*.]

191. **miscet agens**: 'drives in confusion' or more fully, 'driving them with his darts, sends...in confusion.'

193. **fundat, aequet**: the subj. with *priusquam* because it was his intention to kill this number (156, b). **humi**: a locative (127, i.).

195-222. *After Aeneas has consoled and encouraged his comrades, they prepare a meal on the shore, and afterwards mourn their missing friends.*

195. **vina**: Latin poetry often uses the plural where English would have the singular. **deinde**: belongs with *dividit*, and is out of place in the relative clause. **cadis onerarat**: 'had stowed in

jars'; for the dat. see 78, vi.; the more usual construction would be *quibus* (abl.) *cados onerarat*, as the verb regularly = 'load.' **onerarat**: for *onerarerat* (p. 67, fn.). **Acestes**: a distant kinsman of Aeneas, now ruling in Sicily, from whose kingdom they had just come (cf. l. 34).

196. **abeuntibus**: freely 'on their departure.' **heros**: in apposition w. *Acestes*, the compliment acknowledging his generosity.

198. **neque enim**: the reason for addressing them put parenthetically as in l. 65. **ante**: adv. with *ignari sumus*. Trans. 'we have not been,' etc.; for the tense see 179, c. [Some editors take *ante* as attributive to *malorum*, after a common Greek idiom, meaning 'our former ills.']}

199. **passi**: 'ye that have suffered.'

200. **rabiem**: referring to the wolves or hounds which girt the sea-monster Scylla around the waist. **penitus**: 'to their depths,' with *sonantes*.

201. **accestis**: synecopated for *accessistis* (p. 67, fn.). **scopulos**: referring to the cavern of the whirlpool Charybdis, which the Trojans had been near, but had not actually sailed past.

**Cyclopia saxa**: 'the cave of the Cyclops.' The Trojans had not been in this cave, but they had rescued a Greek comrade of Ulysses who told them of its horrors, and they had narrowly escaped with him from Polyphemus and his brethren. (Book III. ll. 588-683.)

202. **experti**: supply *estis*. The ellipsis of the first or second person is very rare.

203. **et haec**: 'this too.' **olim**: cf. on l. 20.

204. **varios casus**: 'chequered fortunes.' **discrimina rerum**: 'perilous adventures'; lit. 'erises of events.'

206. **ostendunt**: 'promise (us).' **fas**: supply *est*. **regna**: 'dominion'; cf. on *vina*, l. 195.

207. **vosmet**: emphatic equivalent of *vos* (164, iii.). **rebus secundis**: dat.; trans. 'for prosperous days.'

208. **voce**: cf. l. 94; here omit in trans. **curis**: trans. 'with,' etc. (96).

209. *vultu*: instrumental abl. *premit altum*: 'hides deep' (69, v.).

210. *se accingunt*: as the ancients had to gird up their long robes when preparing for active work, 'to gird one's self' = 'to make ready.' *praedae dapibusque futuris*: freely 'for the game they are to feast upon.'

211. *tergora*: 'the skins or hides.' *costis*: see 93. *viscera*: all beneath the skin; 'the flesh.'

212. *pars secant*: for the sense construction see 13, N.B. *veribus*: instrumental abl. *trementia*: 'still quivering'; a mark of their eagerness.

213. *aena*: trisyllabic; if this was to boil some of the flesh, Virgil is imputing to Homeric times a custom of his own day, for Homer never speaks of boiling meat. Some suppose that water was to be heated for the bath.

215. *implentur*: 'fill themselves'; for the reflexive use of the passive cf. 203, f, i. *Bacchi*: for the meaning cf. on l. 177; for the case (influenced by Greek usage) see 91, f; for the usual construction see 99, ii. d.

216. *exempta*: supply *est*; so with *remotae, sunt*. *mensae*: as under the circumstances they would scarcely have had tables, Virgil probably uses a formula common in his own day for the conclusion of a meal.

217. *longo sermone requirunt*: freely 'they talk with lingering regret.'

218. *inter*: for the position cf. *contra*, l. 13. *seu . . sive*, used where we should have expected *utrum . . an* (64, ii.). *vivere*: supply *eos*. *credant*: the subj. is not due to the dependence of the clause, for the original form would be *credamus*, deliberative subj. (134, d; 186, b, i.). Trans., therefore, not 'they believe,' but 'they are to believe.'

219. *extrema pati*: equivalent not to *mori* (they are dying), but to *mortuos esse* (they are dead); trans. 'they bear the final doom.' *nec jam*: 'and no longer.' *vocatos*: 'when called' (42); it may be that there is an allusion to the *conclamatio* of the dead,

the calling upon the deceased by name, a preliminary of all funeral rites among the Romans.

220. **Oronti**: cf. *Achilli*, l. 30.

221. **secum**: that his comrades might not be affected by his sorrow ; cf. l. 209 ; freely 'to himself.'

223-253. *Venus complains to Jupiter that instead of their gaining the promised kingdom, misfortune still pursues the Trojans.*

223. **finis**: *i.e.*, of the mourning.

225. **sic**: 'in such wise,' resuming or realling the words *despiciens . . . populos*; more freely 'as he looked.'

226. **constitit**: for the ind. with *cum* see 151, iii. **regnis**: dat. (78, v. c). [It is also explained by some as local abl.]

227. **tales**: 'all these,' to be explained by the lines preceding.

228. **tristior**: 'sadder than her wont.' Venus was often called 'the laughter-loving.' **oculos suffusa**: '(with) her eyes filled.' For the acc. after the pass. part. (lit. *having the eyes filled*); see 69, vii. ; it may also be explained as accus. of specification (or of the part affected) (73).

229. **O qui**, etc. : 'O thou who,' etc. **deum**: cf. on l. 9.

231. **Aeneas**: subj. of *potuit*, to be understood from *potuere*. **quid tantum**: 'what grievous offence *or* wrong.' **committere potuere**: trans. by 'can have.'

232. **quibus . . clauditur**: 'against whom . . is barred.' For the dat. see 79.

233. **ob Italiam**: *i.e.*, to keep them from it.

234. **volventibus**: intrans., cf. on l. 104; trans. by 'as' clause.

235. **fore**: dependent on *pollicitus*, l. 237. **revocato**: 'restored *or* revived,' implying that a new lease of life was to be given to this stock. **Teucri**: genitive.

236. **qui tenerent**: for the subj. (to be translated 'were to') see 26. **omni**: 'full *or* universal.'

237. **pollicitus**: supply *es*; cf. on l. 202. **sententia**: 'purpose.' A poetical variation for 'what has changed thy purpose?'

238. **hoc** : abl. **occasum solabar** : the accus. with *solor* (in prose *consolor*) is often that of the thing mitigated ; here trans. 'I used to console myself for,' etc.

239. **fatis**, etc. : *contraria* is best taken as 'adverse' ; 'balancing (or compensating) adverse fortune with (a different) fortune.'

240. **actos** : 'tried or harassed.'

241. **das** : 'dost thou set or appoint.'

242. **Antenor** : he is said to have led a colony of Trojans to the head of the Adriatic. **elapsus** : trans. by infin., as if co-ordinate with *penetrare*.

243. **penetrare** : 'to make his way past.' In reaching his future home he would have to pass Illyria (lying along the east coast of the Adriatic and including the country of the Liburni) and the mouth of the Timavus. **intima** : not of the interior of the country, but as lying far up the Adriatic ; 'remote.' **tutus** : in emphatic contrast with Aeneas (205, *h*).

245. **unde**, etc. : the river flowed by several underground passages through the rock into the sea ; at certain times the sea forced its way up these and overflowed the land. **murmure montis** : the roaring sound of the sea making its way up through the outlets in the rock.

246. **it** : from *eo* ; trans. 'the sea comes bursting forth.'

247. **hic** : adverb. **tamen** : although he has sought to found a city in so remote (ll. 243, 244) and strange (ll. 245, 246) a country, yet he has met entire success. **urbem Patavi** : for the gen. (in place of the more regular appositive) see 89, i. The gen. of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium* ends usually in *-i* for *-ii*.

248. **armaque fixit** : after escaping some danger, or retiring from some employment, the arms or implements now disused were often hung up in a temple as a votive offering. In this case, therefore, all warfare has ceased.

249. **compostus** : cf. *repostum*, l. 26. 'Now settled in peace and calm, he rests undisturbed.'

250. **nos** : identifying herself with Aeneas' cause. **tua progenies** : in contrast with Antenor, who had no such claim ; trans.

*tua*, 'thine own.' *caeli*, etc. : alluding to the worship of Aeneas as a god in after times. *adnus*: present tense, implying that what Jupiter has once promised is irrevocable.

251. *infandum* : a parenthetical exclamation : 'O woe unutterable !' *unius* : Juno.

253. *hic* : the regular agreement with the predicate (13, i.). *reponis* : *re* often signifies not *back*, but *what is due*, and Venus may be thinking, not of her protégé being restored in Italy to power such as he had once had in Troy, but of his being placed on his rightful throne, rightful because promised by Jupiter.

254-296. *Jupiter reassures Venus, and discloses to her the glorious empire that is to spring from the settlement in Latium, culminating in the reign of Caesar Augustus.*

254. *olli* : archaic for *illi*, 'upon her.'

256. *natae* : dat., lit. 'for his daughter' ; trans. however as if gen. This word, unnecessary for the sense after *olli*, suggests the tenderness of a father to his child. *dehinc* : cf. on l. 131.

257. *metu* : dat. ; cf. on *curru*, l. 156 ; 'spare thy fears' (52). *tuorum* : 'thy people's.'

258. *tibi* : indicating that Venus is interested in his statement ; freely 'be assured' (80, b). *Lavini* : for the quantity of *a*, as compared w. l. 2, see on *Sychaeum*, l. 348.

259. *feres ad sidera* : alluding to the deification of Aeneas after death. Cf. l. 250.

260. *neque . . vertit* : cf. on l. 237 ; freely 'nor is my purpose changed.'

261. *hic* : i.e., Aeneas. *tibi* : as in l. 258 ; here we may trans. 'as thou shalt see,' or with Mackail 'he thou lovest.' *remordet* : the force of *re* may be brought out by 'continually' or 'keeps.'

262. *longius et volvens* : 'and unrolling (or opening) the volume further' ; a metaphor from the unrolling of a scroll (the ancient form of books).

263. *Italia* : local abl. With the mission of Aeneas announced in these two lines cf. that afterwards (Book VI. ll. 851-3) assigned

to the Roman nation, of which both Aeneas and Augustus are (according to Virgil) the impersonation :

"Thine, O Roman, remember, to reign over every race !  
These be thine arts, thy glories,—the ways of peace to proclaim,  
Mercy to show to the fallen, the proud with battle to tame !"

—Bowen.

264. **ponet** : 'shall appoint or establish.'

265. **viderit** : fut. perf. indic. (178, ii. ; 155, a).

266. **terna** : with nouns found in the plural only, distributives are used in place of cardinals. **hiberna** : this is not merely a poetical way of saying 'winters,' but suggests also that Aeneas would be still in camp. **Rutulis** : not abl. absol. but dat. like *jactanti*, l. 102 ; trans. 'had passed over the Rutulians.'

267. **Iulo** : as usual in such phrases, the name is attracted into the case of the possessor (80, e). It was not the old legends that gave Ascanius this name of Iulus; the idea seems to have originated with Julius Caesar, and was taken up by the poets of this age, who sought thereby to compliment the *Julian* family.

268. **Ilus erat**, etc. : this seems entirely out of place as addressed by Jupiter to Venus, and is really for the reader's information. **res** : 'power or state'; cf. *res publica*. **stetit regno** : 'stood firm in royal sway.'

269. **volvendis** : occasionally the Roman poets use this participle with the force of the present part. pass. (which does not exist in Latin); here abl. absol. rather than abl. of quality; 'as the months roll on.' **orbes** : 'cycles'; the meaning is to be gathered from the context.

270. **imperio** : abl. of manner; 'in government.' **Lavini** : cf. on *Patari*, l. 247; for the gen. (here to be translated by 'in') see 89.

272. **regnabitur** : impersonal pass. (56); 'the kingdom shall endure.' **totos** : 'full.'

273. **Hectorea** : there seems little point in the reference to Hector, except that he was the most famous of all that race. **regina** : 'royal.'

274. **Marte**, etc.: 'shall bear to Mars twin offspring.' Romulus and Remus are meant. **Ilia**: this name for Rhea Silvia keeps alive the connection with Aeneas.

275. **laetus**: 'exulting in' or 'decked with'; heroes of ancient times often thus adorned themselves with the skins of wild beasts; here it is peculiarly appropriate to the she-wolf's foster-child.

276. **excipiet**: 'shall take up,' in the sense of 'shall succeed to.' **Mavortia**: with a double reference to the descent of Romulus from Mars and to the warlike character of the nation.

278. **rerum**: 'for their empire.'

280. **metu**: abl. of means, 'with alarms' (i.e., with the fear she causes), or abl. of cause, 'in her fear'; cf. l. 23.

281. **in melius referet**: 'will change for the better,' 'will amend.'

282. **rerum**: 'of the world.' For various forces of *res*, see ll. 178, 204, 229, 268, 278, 342, 450, 452, 462. **togatam**: as the distinctive mark of the Roman citizen, and possibly with a reference to the victories of peace no less great than those of war.

283. **sic placitum**: supply *est*; 'such is my will or pleasure.' **lustris**: abl. absol.; here vaguely used of 'years' or 'ages.'

284. **Phthiam, Mycenas, Argis**: the homes of three of the greatest of the Greeks against Troy, Achilles, Agamemnon and Diomedes.

285. **servitio premet**: Virgil has in mind the conquest of Greece, completed in 146 B.C. **Argis**: local abl.; trans. freely by 'over.'

286. **origine**: abl. of quality. **Caesar**: referring to Augustus, not to Julius Caesar, as ll. 289 and 294 show.

287. **terminet**: expressing Jove's purpose (26); trans. by 'is to' or 'shall.' For the idea cf. Milton, *Paradise Lost*, Book xii., 'He shall . . . bound his reign with earth's wide bounds, his glory with the heavens.'

289. **spoliis Orientis**: alluding to Augustus' campaigns in the East, B.C. 31 and 30, after Actium. On returning to Rome in B.C. 29 he celebrated a triple triumph for his victories, and closed the temple of Janus (cf. on l. 294).

290. **secura**: 'no longer filled with care,' as Venus now was; more freely 'thy cares at an end.' **hic quoque**: i.e., as well as Aeneas (l. 259). Even before his death Augustus was often addressed as a god.

291. **positis bellis**: trans. by coordinate principal clause. The advent of peace after several generations of civil war led many to speak of the return of the golden age to earth.

292. **cana**: as belonging to the good old days. The line celebrates the return of honor, domestic virtue, and civic harmony under Augustus' rule. **Remo**: according to the legend Remus had been killed in a quarrel with his brother. All such fratricidal strife is now to end.

293. **ferro et compagibus artis**: 'with close fastenings of iron.' For the *hendiadys* cf. on l. 61.

294. **Belli portae**: the reference is to the gates of the temple of Janus, which were closed in time of peace, but stood open in time of war. So continuously had the Romans been engaged in war that when the temple was closed by Augustus in B.C. 29 it was for the first time since 235 B.C., just after the first Punic war, and for the second time since the reign of Numa. **Furor impius**: referring to the 'unnatural' civil wars. **intus**: i.e., imprisoned within the closed temple.

297-304. *Mercury is sent to Carthage by Jupiter to ensure a welcome to the Trojans.*

297. **Maia**: for the abl. see 95. Mercury was the messenger of the gods.

298. **novae**: with *Karthaginis*, meaning 'newly built'; cf. l. 366. **pateant**: depending on the idea of ordering implied in *demittit* (27). Trans. freely, 'to have . . . opened.'

299. **hospitio**: dat. of purpose; lit. 'for a shelter'; freely 'in welcome' (81). **fati nescia**: as if it were in the power even of mortals to interfere with the working of fate. For the gen. see 90.

300. **arceret**: expressing the purpose of Jupiter, as distinct from his command (*pateant*). The difference in tense (though more

probably due to metrical convenience) may serve to distinguish them. For the sequence after the hist. pres. *demittit* see 190, vi. **magnum**: 'vast or deep.' **aera**: for the Greek accus. ending see on l. 30.

301. **remigio alarum**: Mereury's winged cap and winged sandals are compared to a ship's oars. **citus**: trans. freely by adverb (205, h).

303. **volente deo**: freely, 'at the divine command.' Our abbreviation D.V. is for *deo volente*, but in the sense of 'if' (not *since*) God wills' (46). **quietum**: negative, 'free from alarm,' while **benignam**, l. 304, is positive, 'well-disposed or friendly.'

304. **accipit**: 'adopts'; lit. 'receives' as if from Mereury. **animum mentemque**: no distinction can be drawn here.

305-334. *Aeneas, setting out to explore the country, is met by Venus in the disguise of a huntress, of whom he asks on what coast they have been cast.*

305. **volvens**: 'who had been pondering.'

306. **ut primum**: 'as soon as'; *ut* = when (152, b). **exire**: with *constituit*, l. 309.

307. **novos**: 'strange.' **accesserit**: for mood see 35; so *teneant*. For the accus. *oras* see 69, iii.

308. **nam . . . videt** parenthetical; 'for he sees but a wilderness.' For the scansion see page 335, 4. **ne . . . ne**: rare for 'whether . . . or' (38).

309. **quaerere**: really unnecessary, as the clauses *quas . . . feraeae* might have gone with *explorare*, but added for clearness' sake. **exacta**: 'his discoveries,' lit. 'the things ascertained.'

310. **in convexo nemorum**: "Here the picture is that of trees upon converging cliffs, overhanging a cove formed under them by the action of the waves." Freely, 'in a cove overarched with woods.'

311. **circum**: adverb. **horrentibus**: for the meaning cf. on l. 165.

312. **comitatus**: in some deponent verbs the perf. partic. has passive force. **Achate**: the simple abl. (of accompaniment) instead of *a<sup>1</sup>* and abl. of personal agent.

313. **bina**: the distributive may be used of what is regarded as a pair. **lato ferro**: referring to the spear-head (105).

314. **cui**: with *obvia*; 'to meet him came,' etc. **obvia**: in agreement with the subject in preference to the natural agreement with *se*.

315. **gerens**: 'wearing,' freely 'with.' **virginis**: repeated because only in the second case (*i.e.*, with *arma*) is it limited by *Spartanæ vel qualis*.

316. **vel qualis**, etc.: 'or of such a one as H. . . . when she,' etc., or more freely 'or like H. when she,' etc.; *qualis*, implying an antecedent *talis* agreeing with *virginis*. **fatigat**: 'out-tires.' The present tense is used probably because in works of art she could still be seen so employed.

317. **Hebrum**: some editors read, without MS. authority, *Eurum*.

318. **de more**: made more definite by *renatrix*, l. 319; lit. 'according to custom . . . as a huntress'; freely 'in huntress' fashion.' Venus' costume is such as is common in representations of Diana, the goddess of hunting.

319. **diffundere**: explanatory of *deederat comam ventis*; an infin. of purpose largely due to imitation of Greek idiom; 'had loosed her tresses for the winds to toss' (22, viii.).

320. **nuda genu**: 'with knee bared': more lit. 'bare at the knee.' For the accus. see 73. **sinus**: *i.e.*, of her garments; lit. 'having the folds gathered in a knot': for the construction see 69, vii. and cf. l. 228. **fluentes**: 'fluttering.' The floating ends of her tunic were gathered in a knot at the breast.

321. **prior**: 'first'; the comparative, because only Venus and Aeneas are in the poet's mind. **monstrare si vidistis**: this is not an indirect question, 'tell me if (=whether) you have seen,' but a true conditional clause, 'show me, if (=in case) you have seen.'

322. **quam**: see 166, *a*. **errantem**: 'straying,' i.e., in search of game, contrasted with *cursum prementem*, l. 324, 'pressing on the track.'

325. **sic Venus**: sc. *dixit*; cf. on l. 37. **orsus**: sc. *est*; from *ordior*.

326. **audita**: sc. *est*. **mihi**: 'by me' (80, *d*, *i*).

327. **O -quam**, etc.: instead of giving some name, he expresses his doubt of her identity. **memorem**: 'shall I call' (134, *d*). **tibi**: sc. *est*. (80, *e*).

328. **hominem sonat**: 'sounds human'; a cognate accus. like 'to look daggers' (72).

329. **an . . . an**: trans. 'art thou . . . or,' etc.; not for *utrum . . . an*, but two distinct questions. **sanguinis**: partitive.

330. **sis, leves**: for the mood see 135; hero trans. 'imperative, as the wish is virtually a request. So *doceas*, l. 332. **quaecumque**: sc. *ex*.

332. **jactemur**: see 35. **locorumque**: for the scansion see p. 335, 7.

334. **multa**: 'many a.' **tibi ante aras**: 'before thine altars' (80, *b*). Or *tibi* may be rendered separately by 'in thy honor.'

335-335. *Venus relates to him the story of Dido and the founding of Carthage, and in answer to her questions Aeneas tells her who he is and in what misfortunes he is involved.*

335. **tum Venus**: cf. on l. 325. **me**: for the reflexive use see 164, iii. **honore**: trans. by 'of'; cf. the abl. with *dignus* (107, iii.).

336. **virginibus . . . est**: 'the Tyrian maidens are wont.' For the dat. cf. *tibi*, l. 327. **gestare**: see p. 76, fn.

337. **alte**: the buskin came halfway up to the knee to protect the hunter from brambles.

338. **Agenoris urbem**: more applicable to the parent city Tyre, than to the colony.

339. **genus**: in apposition with the proper name implied in *Libyci*. The same looseness is possible in English.

340. **imperium regit**: 'holds sway' or 'exercises sovereignty.'

341. **injuria**: 'the tale of wrong.'

342. **rerum**: 'of the story.'

343. **agri**: 'in land'; for the gen. cf. on *opum*, l. 14.

344. **Phoenicum**: partitive. **miserae**: dat. like *mihi*, l. 326, rather than gen. with *amore*; 'by the hapless queen.' The epithet anticipates the story.

345. **primisque . . . ominibus**: repeats the idea of *intactam dederat*. As marriage was attended with the taking of auspices in the old days of Rome, this phrase is equivalent to 'with the first marriage rites.' **jugarat**: cf. on *onerarat*, l. 195.

347. **scelere**: see 102. **ante**: 'than,' more lit. 'beyond,' with which the positive *immanis* would be more regular.

348. **quos inter**: for the order cf. on l. 13. **medius**: 'in the midst' (205, *h*); here 'anger arose between these.' **Sychaeum**: here we have the regular quantity (*y*); in l. 343 it is lengthened. The poets often take such liberties with foreign proper names; cf. on l. 258.

350. **superat**: 'strikes down.' **securus amorum**: 'regardless of his sister's love,' i.e., for her husband. For the gen. see 90, iii.

352. **multa malus simulans**: *malus* is virtually adverbial, 'wickedly'; freely 'with many a crafty pretense' (205, *h*; 203, *d*). **aegram amantem**: 'the love-sick wife.'

353. **ipsa**: 'the very.' **inhumati**: this accounts for the restlessness of the shade (according to ancient ideas) and at the same time aggravates Pygmalion's guilt.

354. **modis miris**: with *pallida*; 'in wondrous wise,' a somewhat antique phrase.

355. **crudeles**: transferred from the deed to the altars which witnessed it.

356. **nudavit**: with a different meaning as applied to the two objects, the figure known as *zeugma*; so in English, 'laid bare.'

357. **celerare, excedere**: for the infin. with *suadet*, cf. on *volvere*, l. 9.

358. **auxilium**: predicative with *thesauros recludit*; 'as aid' or

freely 'to aid.' **viae**: objective gen. (85). **veteres**: 'long-hidden.' **tellure**: 'from' rather than 'in.'

360. **his**: neuter; in prose *his rebus*. **parabat**: cf. on *nudavit*, l. 356.

361. **conveniunt**: the subject is suggested by the relative clause; 'those gather who had or felt.' **quibus**: cf. on *tibi*, l. 327. **tyranni**: cf. on *viae*, l. 358.

362. **paratae**: sc. *sunt*, seldom omitted in dependent clauses.

363. **avari**: recalling the original motive for the crime, and thus giving more point to the loss of these treasures.

364. **pelago**: see 99, ii., a.

365. **locos**: cf. on *Italiam*, l. 2.

367. **mercati**: sc. *sunt*. **Byrsam**: put in apposition with *solum*. The resemblance of the Phoenician *Bosra*=citadel to the Greek *byrea*=a hide, led to the invention of the story that having made the bargain spoken of in l. 368, the new-comers cut the hide into strips and thus surrounded a large tract.

368. **possent**: subj. because virtually quoting the agreement implied in *mercati* (177). Note the spondaic rhythm.

369. **vos**: emphatic; sc. *estis*.

370. **quaerenti talibus ille**: sc. *respondebat*, cf. on l. 37; 'to her questions he answers in these words or thus.'

371. **imo**: see 86, iv., b.

372. **dea**: in spite of her disavowal. **si pergam**: 'were I to tell the whole story'; lit. 'if (retracing from, etc.) I were to go on' (i.e., until the end).

374. **ante**: 'sooner,' i.e., before I could end. **diem**, etc.: the evening star is pictured as laying the day to rest and closing the gates of heaven through which the sun has just departed. **componat**: the natural apodosis to *si pergam et racet* (63).

375. **nos**: object of *appulit*. **vestras**: referring to all her people; cf. on l. 140.

376. **Trojae**: see 89.

377. **forte sua**: adds to the idea of chance the thought that caprice is natural to the winds; trans. 'in its caprice' or 'of its

own wild will.' The Trojans have no idea that Juno has caused the storm. **Libycis**: as he has just learned, l. 339. **oris**: cf. on *Latio*, l. 6.

379. **aethera**: cf. on *aera*, l. 300.

380. **patriam et genus**: 'my country and my ancestry (or my race)', by this meaning the home of his ancestors; for he had learned in a vision (Bk. III., ll. 163-168) that Dardanus, the son of Jupiter, and founder of the royal house of Troy, had originally come from Italy.

381. **denis**: distributives are regularly used in multiplication. **conscendi**: Virgil seems to have had in mind both the going on board ship (*conscendere navem*) and the apparent rising of the sea towards the horizon (for the opposite cf. *devenere*, l. 365); trans. 'I climbed the sea.'

382. **secutus**: see 44, ii.

384. **ignotus**: 'unrecognized'; thus not inconsistent with l. 379.

385. **Europa, Asia**: exiled from Troy and driven back from Italy.

385-417. *Venus announces the safety of the fleet, her words being confirmed by the omen of twelve swans settling after escaping an eagle. As she departs her godhead is recognized by Aeneas, about whom she casts a cloud that makes him invisible to all.*

385. **nec plura**, etc.: 'But Venus not enduring further complaint'; lit. 'not suffering him attempting to complain,' etc. For the conative pres. cf. 179, d.

387. **caelestibus**: see 78, ii. **auras . . . carpis**: 'draw the breath of life.'

388. **qui adveneris**: 'seeing (or in that) you have reached.' For the subj. see 171.

390. **reduces**: from *redux*; sc. *esse*.

391. **versis**: freely 'by the shifting of,' etc.

392. **vani**: explaining *frustra*; 'false, deceiving, or pretenders' or perhaps merely 'mistaken.' It will be best to make two clauses in translation: 'unless my parents were . . . and taught . . .'

393. **senos**: cf. on *denis*, l. 381. The number corresponds to that of the missing ships afterwards recovered. **laetantes agmine**: freely 'in joyous line.' **cyncos**: these birds were sacred to Venus.

394. **Jovis ales**: the eagle. **aperto caelo**: cf. on *alto*, l. 126.

396. **aut capere**, etc.: i.e., some are settling, others are preparing to do so; it is awkward, but apparently necessary, to make *captas* mean 'chosen by the others.' This line furnishes the real parallel between the swans and the ships (cf. l. 400), and the next two lines are largely for ornament and picturesqueness.

397. **ut**: 'as.' **illi**: expressed because of the emphasis due to contrast. The movements in ll. 397-8 really occur between the time of *turbabat* and that of *capere videntur*.

398. **coetu**: to signify their reassembling after being scattered; abl. of manner.

399. **pubesque tuorum**: a poetical variant for *pubes tua*; *tuorum* is not partitive but = 'consisting of your men' (89).

400. **tenet**: in number agreeing with the nearer subject. **ostia**: 'the harbor-mouth.' **pleno velo**: trans. by 'under.'

401. **qua via**: as the scansion shows, not in agreement.

402. **avertens**: see on l. 104; 'as she turned away.' **refulsit**: expressive of the sudden burst of splendor.

404. **pedes ad imos**: except in the case of Diana, the long flowing robe was the characteristic costume of a goddess. Ignore *imos* in translation.

405. **incessu**: cf on *incedo*, l. 46. **patuit**: 'stood revealed.' **dea**: predicate nom. For the scansion see page 335, 8.

407. **natum**: in an emphatic position. **totiens**: Virgil tells of but one former appearance since Troy fell (Bk. II., l. 589), and in that case there was no disguise. **quoque**: 'also,' 'like the rest.'

409. **non datur**: 'is it forbidden.' **veras**: i.e., without concealment or mistake.

411. **obscuro aere**: 'with dim mist.'

412. **circum . . . fudit**: a poetical separation (*tmesis*) of the word *circumfudit*. **dea**: suggesting the divine power exercised. Trans. 'by art divine.' Cf. the effect of *heros*, l. 196.

413. **ne quis . . . posset**: see 28, i. and ii. **eos**: very rare in poetry as a personal pronoun.

415. **sublimis**: 'through the air.'

416. **laeta**: contrast with *tristior*, l. 228. **templum illi**: se. *est*.

418-440. *Drawing near Carthage, Aeneas finds the new colonists busy building their city, and enters invisible.*

419. **plurimus . . . imminet**: 'hangs huge (or a mighty mass) over,' etc. For the dat. see 78, v. c.

421. **molem**: 'the mass of buildings.' The general aspect comes first, then the details as he observed them.

422. **strata viarum**: a poetical variation of *stratas vias*, 'paved streets.' *Viarum* is a partitive gen. [though by some taken as verging on the gen. of quality].

423. **pars**: in partial apposition with *Tyrii*. **ducere**: dependent on *instant* (22, viii.).

424. **subvolvere**: i.e., up to the height where the citadel was building.

425. **tecto**: dat. (81). **concludere sulco**: in order to mark its boundaries (or possibly to make the trench for the foundations).

426. **legunt**: a case of *zeugma*, 'establish or choose'; cf. on l. 356. [On the ground that this line does not harmonize with the context, and is inconsistent with l. 507, it has been suspected by many editors. Still the institution of civil government is just what a Roman would be likely to think of in this connection.]

427. **theatris**: Not implying more than one building, but the plural of majesty (see on l. 57), used to dignify an idea. For the case cf. on *tecto*, l. 425. [There is good authority also for the reading *theatri*, gen. sing.]

We have here another anachronism, for such things as dramas and theatres did not exist till about 500 B.C., and we may well doubt whether this Greek institution ever found its way to Carthage, even in later days.

430. **qualis apes exercet labor**: 'even as bees busily ply their labor'; lit. 'what manner of toil keeps busy the bees (such toil

kept them busy'). The antecedent clause is, as often, unexpressed. **nova**: 'early.'

431. **sub sole**: 'in the sunlight.'

432. **liquentia**: the scansion shows that it is from *liquor*, not *liqueo*. For the indicatives with *cum* see 149.

434. **venientum**: for the regular *venientium*, 'of the newly-arrived.' **agmine facto**: cf. on l. 82; here trans. 'in a band.'

435. **fucos pecus**: in apposition; freely, 'the lazy swarm of drones.'

436. **fervet**: 'goes on apace or goes briskly on'; the metaphor is from the boiling of water.

437. **jam**: 'already.' The struggle to found a city has been called 'the keynote of the Aeneid.'

438. **suspicit**: from this we gather that he has descended the hill.

439. **infert se**: 'he passes.' **dictu**: cf. on *risu*, l. 111.

440. **miscet viris**: as *misceo* cannot be intransitive, *se* must be supplied from l. 439; cf. on *vertuntur*, l. 158. **viris**: for the dat., meaning 'with,' see 78, vii. **ulli**: for the dat., meaning 'by' or 'of,' cf. on *mihi*, l. 326.

441-493. *Coming to a temple which Dido was building to Juno, Aeneas is touched and encouraged to find represented on its walls many scenes from the story of the siege of Troy.*

441. **umbrae**: cf. on *dires opum*, l. 14. [Another well-supported reading is *umbra*, abl. as in l. 275.]

442. **quo loco**: 'where.' **primum**: 'on their arrival' or 'at their landing'; lit. 'at the first.'

444. **sic nam fore**: depending on the idea of statement implied in *signum*.

445. **facilem victu**: 'rich in store or substance'; *victu* from noun *victus* (102). [It may be taken also as abl. supine of *vivo*, lit. 'easy at living,' i.e., 'easily subsisting' (117).] The horse presages success in war and prosperity in peace. The rearing of horses, especially of spirited war-horses, indicated a rich country.

447. **opulentum**: a case of *zeugma* (cf. on l. 356).

448. **aerea**: notice the emphatic repetition of this idea in *aere* and *aenis*; 'bronze was the threshold that rose on (or crowned) its steps, and clamped with bronze the posts.' *cui*: lit. 'with reference to which'; freely, 'its' (80, b); cf. *tibi*, l. 334. **limina**: the plur. probably as in l. 427. **nexaeque**: for the scansion cf. on l. 332.

449. **trabes**: subject of *surgebant* or *erant* understood. **foribus**, etc.: 'of bronze were the doors with their grating hinges'; lit. 'the hinge grated on doors of bronze.' **foribus**: local abl. or possibly dat. (lit. 'for').

450. **timorem**: as to his reception by Dido. Venus had foretold merely the recovery of his vessels.

451. **salutem**: see 69, ii.

452. **afflictis**: i.e., hitherto. **rebus**: may be either dat. or abl. (52; 107, ii.).

454. **quae . . . urbi, miratur**: 'marvels at the city's prosperity.' As Sidgwick puts it, it is 'rather indirect exclamation than indirect question.'

455. **inter se**: a vague phrase, seemingly expressive of the emulation of the artists; freely, 'the handiwork of rival craftsmen.' [Others trans. 'as he compares them.' Some editions read *intra se*, 'within himself,' to be taken with *miratur*.] **operum laborem**: lit. 'the toil of their efforts'; freely, 'their toilsome labor.'

458. **saevum ambobus**: i.e., to the Atridae on the one hand, to Priam on the other, *ambobus* thus being not incorrectly used of three persons. In the former case the reference is to the quarrel that arose from Agamemnon's seizure of Achilles' captive Briseis (a quarrel which, with its consequences, is the theme of Homer's Iliad). If there is any occasion specially referred to in the case of Priam, it is doubtless the incidents of ll. 483, 484.

461. **sunt hic**, etc.: 'here too has worth (or merit) its due reward.' Notice *sua* referring to the dat. (the logical subject). **laudi**: for dat. see 80, e.

462. **rerum**: objective genitive; 'for trouble,' 85, ii. 'There are tears for trouble, and mortal sorrows touch the heart.' Bowen's rendering is, 'Tears are to human sorrows given, hearts feel for mankind.' Cf. Wordsworth, *Laodamia*:

" Yet tears to human suffering are due;  
And mortal hopes defeated and o'erthrown  
Are mourned by man, and not by man alone."

463. **aliquam**: 'some measure of'; complete salvation was to be had only in Italy. **tibi**: not, of course, separating him from the other Trojans.

464. **inani**: with peculiar pathos, suggesting that the men and scenes represented, once all his world, are now no more.

465. **multa**: 'deeply' (72). **flumine**: 'flood of tears.'

466. **uti**: 'how,' followed by subjunctives of indirect question.

469. **niveis tentoria velis**: an anachronism, for Homer's heroes had wooden huts, not tents. For the abl. see 105.

470. **primo somno**: trans. by 'in' or possibly 'by'; the first sleep is the deepest.

473. **gustassent**: for the form see p. 67, fn.; for the mood (virtual indirect discourse, indicating the thought of Diomedes) see 156, iv., and 177. According to the legend there was an oracle that Troy could not be taken if Rhesus' horses should once drink of the Xanthus and feed upon the grass of the Trojan plain. As soon therefore as Rhesus came to Troy to aid Priam, Diomedes and Ulysses made a night attack upon his camp and carried off the horses.

475. **impar congressus**: 'an unequal match'; more lit., 'engaging unequally.' **Achilli**: dat. (78, v. c and vii.).

476. **curru**: dat. as in l. 156.

477. **huic**: freely, 'his'; cf. on *cui*, l. 448.

478. **per**: 'over or along.' **versa**: 'trailing'; lit. 'reversed.'

479. **non aequae**: 'unfriendly.'

480. **peplum**: a costly robe borne as an offering to the goddess, to win her favor.

481. **tunsae**: freely 'beating.' For the tense cf. on l. 382.  
**pectorā**: cf. on l. 228.

482. **solo**: local abl. **aversa**: 'turning away,' 'averting her face.'

483. **raptaverat, vendebat**: the difference in tense implies that only the latter was actually represented. Virgil departs somewhat from Homer's account of this incident. In the Iliad Hector is thrice chased round the walls of Troy, then overtaken and slain, after which his body is dragged at the tail of Achilles' chariot to the Grecian camp. **Hectora**: cf. on *aera*, l. 300.

484. **exanimum**: 'now lifeless,' as Virgil's idea seems to have been that Hector was dragged while yet alive behind the chariot. **auro**: see 100.

485. **vero**: emphasizes *tum*; best translated by emphasis on 'then.'

486. **ut**: 'when'; the repetition expressive of emotion. **currus**: probably that of Achilles, as l. 483 would suggest.

487. **inermes**: i.e., as a suppliant. Homer tells how Priam went secretly to Achilles' tent to ransom his son's body for burial.

488. **permixtum**: i.e., 'joining in battle with.' **Achivis**: cf. on *viris*, l. 440.

489. **Eoas acies**: the Aethiopians whom Homer places, some at the extreme east, others at the extreme west of the world, and not towards the south.

490. **peltis**: abl. of quality.

492. **cingula**: for the plur. cf. on l. 57. **mammae**: dat. (78, v. c). The belt would pass over one shoulder.

493. **bellatrix . . . virgo**: brought into effective contrast by their position. Trans. *virgo*, 'maiden though she be.' **viris**: cf. on *Achilli*, l. 475.

494-510. *Dido now appears in the temple to dispense justice, when suddenly Aeneas sees approaching certain Trojans from the lost vessels.*

494. **Dardanio**: it has been suggested that the epithet is significant, inasmuch as Aeneas' attention is engrossed with the fortunes of the royal house of Troy of which Dardanus was the founder. **Aeneae**: with *videntur*; cf. on *mihi*, l. 326.

495. **obtutu defixus in uno**: 'rapt in one long gaze.'

496. **forma**: us in l. 72.

498. **qualis**: 'us'; the adjective shows that the comparison is between the *persons*, not their *actions*. **Eurotae, Cynthi**: two favorite haunts of Diana.

499. **exercet choros**: 'leads her bands in the dance,' or more simply, 'leads the dance.' **Diana**: elsewhere in Virgil, as regularly in Latin, with *i* short; cf. on *Sychueum*, l. 348. **quam**: obj. of *secutaz*; 'and behind her,' or 'while in her train.'

502. **tacitum**: in translation transfer the epithet to 'joy.'

503. **laeta**: trans. by adv. (205, h).

504. **futuris**: freely 'rising'; for the dat. see 78, v. c.

505. **foribus divae**, etc.: most ancient temples contained a building within a building, the inner shrine being the proper abode of the deity worshipped there. Thus one seated at the entrance to this inner shrine might be both *foribus dirae* and *media testudine templi*. **testudine**: local abl.; trans. by 'beneath.'

506. **solio alte subnixa**: 'raised high upon a throne, or 'high resting on a throne.'

507. **jura legesque**: 'judgment and law'; here not to be distinguished.

508. **partibus**, etc.: 'parcelled by equal portion or gave by drawing of lot' (Bowen). More lit. 'equalized by just division or chose by lot.' **sorte trahebat**: a variation, in Virgil's fashion, of the common phrase *soratem trahere*.

509. **concursu**: of Carthaginians.

510. **videt**: for the mood after *cum* see 151, iii.

511. **aequore**: cf. on *alto*, l. 126.

512. **oras**: cf. on *Italianam*, l. 2.

VOCABULARY TO VIRGIL, AENEID I.  
1-510.

A

**ā, ab**, prep. w. abl., *from; by.*  
**Abās, antis**, m., a Trojan.  
**ab-dō, ere, -dīdī, -ditum, hide.**  
**ab-eō, -ire, -īl (-īl), -itum, go away, depart.**  
**ab-ripō, ere, -ripū, -reptum, carry off, seize.**  
**ab-sistō, ere, -stīl, cease, desist.**  
**ac, conj., and, and further.**  
**ac-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, draw near, approach.**  
**ac-cendō, ere, -cendī, -censam, kindle; inflame, enrage.**  
**ac-cingō, ere, -cīnxī, -cīnetum, gird; make ready.**  
**ac-cepīō, ere, -cēpl, -ceptum, receive, let in; welcome.**  
**ac-cumbō, ere, -cubul, -cubl-tum, lie, recline.**  
**āer, āeris, āere, spirited, brave; keen, lively.**  
**Acestēs, ae, m., a Sicilian king.**  
**Achātēs, ae or I, m., a Trojan.**  
**Achillēs, is or I, m., the bravest of the Greeks against Troy.**  
**Achīlus, a, um, Achaeans, Greek; as subst. in plur., the Greeks.**  
**aelēs, ēl, f., line, rank; plur., forces.**  
**āe'us, from agō.**  
**āetus, a, um, sharp, jagged.**  
**ad, prep. w. acc., to, towards; at.**  
**ad-dō, ere, -dīdī, -ditum, add, give.**

**ad-eō, -ire, -īl (-īl), -itum, approach; face, meet with.**  
**ad-īltor, I, -īlsns or -īlxus sum, lean against.**  
**ad-nōb, ere, -nīl, -nītum, nod, give assent; promise.**  
**adōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, uōre, worship, honor.**  
**adultus, a, um, full grown, mature.**  
**ad-venīō, īre, -vēnl, -ventum, come to, reach.**  
**adversus, a, um, part. of adverb, turned toward, facing, opposite, in front.**  
**Aeneidēs, ae, m., a son or descendant of Aeacus.**  
**āeger, gra, grum, sick; sad, sick at heart.**  
**Aeneadē, īrum, m. plur., the comrades of Aeneas; the Trojans.**  
**Aeneās, ae, m., Aeneas, the hero of the Aeneid.**  
**āenus, a, um, of bronze, copper; neut. as a subst., copper vessel, cauldron.**  
**Aeolia, ae, f., an island near Sicily.**  
**Aeolus, I, m., the god of the winds.**  
**āeqnō, āre, āvī, ātum, make equal, match.**  
**āequor, oris, n., sea.**  
**āeqnns, a, um, even; favorable, friendly.**  
**āēr, āeris, m., air, cloud, mist.**  
**āerens, a, um, of bronze; bronze.**  
**āes, aeris, n., bronze; something made of bronze.**

nescītūs, -tātis, f., summer.  
 nēctus, ōs, m., surge, surf.  
 nēctās, -tātis, f., age, time.  
 nēcternus, a, um, eternat, undying.  
 nēther, eris, m., the upper air;  
     the heavens, sky; heaven.  
 nētherius, a, um, of the sky or  
     heaven.  
 nēfletus, a, um, shattered, ruined.  
**A**rrēns, I, m., the south-west wind.  
**A**gēnor, oris, a king of Phoenicia,  
     ancestor of Dido.  
 ager, agrī, m., land.  
 agger, eris, m., mound, heap,  
     bank.  
 agmen, minis, n., train, band.  
 agnōscō, ere, -guōvī, -gnitum,  
     recognize.  
 agō, ere, ēgl, Actum, drive, impel.  
 Aīō, defective vb., say, speak.  
**A**jāx, Aēls, m., a Greek warrior.  
 ala, ac, f., wing.  
**A**lba, ae, f., Alba Longa, an  
     ancient city in Latium.  
**A**lbānnus, a, um, of Alba, Alban.  
 alēs, ātis, m. or f., bird.  
 Alētēs, Is, m., a Trojan.  
 aliquid, qua, quod, indef. adj.,  
     some.  
 aliter, adv., otherwise; hand  
     aliter, even so.  
 aliūs, a, nd, other; in plur.,  
     others; repeated in plur., some—  
     others.  
 alligō, ēre, ēvl, ētum, fasten.  
 al-loquor, I, -locutus sum, speak  
     to, address.  
 almiss, a, um, kindly, gracious.  
 alte, adv., on high, high.  
 altus, a, uni, high, lofty, stately;  
     deep, profound; neut. as subst.,  
     altum, I, n., heaven, the sky;  
     the deep, the sea.  
 amīns, autis, pres. part. of amb,  
     as subst., m. or f., a lover.  
 Amīzonis, Idis, f., an Amazon.  
 ambigēs, Is, f., circuit; in plur.,  
     details.  
 ambō, ae, ō, in plur. only, both  
     (dat. and abl., ambōbus, am-  
     bōbus).  
 amērosius, a, um, immortal, am-  
     erosial.  
 amēletus, ōs, m., reit, cloak, cover-  
     ing.  
 amēus, I, m., friend.  
 A-mītīb, ere, -mīsl, -mīskum,  
     lose.  
 amor, ūris, m., love, longing.  
 Amīcus, I, m., a Trojan.  
 an, conj., or.  
 ancora, ac, f., anchor.  
 anima, ac, f., breath, spirit, life.  
 animus, I, m., soul, mind, heart,  
     spirit; feeling, disposition;  
     courage, rage, passion.  
 annātēs, Ium, m. plur., history,  
     account, story.  
 ante, prep. w. acc., before; adv.,  
     before, formerly, sooner.  
**A**ntēnor, oris, m., a Trojan.  
**A**ntheus, I, m., a Trojan.  
 antiquus, a, um, old, ancient.  
 antrum, I, n., cave, cavern.  
 aper, apri, m., wild boar.  
 aper-īō, Ire, -āl, -ātum, lay open,  
     disclose, open up.  
 apertus, a, um, open; clear,  
     cloudless.  
 apis, Is, f., bee.  
 appārēb, ēre, ul, Itum, appear.  
 ap-pellō, ere, -pull, -putsum,  
     drive to, bring to.  
 aqua, ac, f., water.  
**A**quīlō, ūnis, m., the north wind.  
 āra, ac, f., altar: Ārē, Ārum,  
     the Attars.  
 arbor, -orūs, f., tree.  
 arboreus, a, um, of a tree; tree-  
     like, branching.  
 arcēnum, I, n., a secret, mystery.  
 areōb, ēre, ul, keep away, keep  
     afar.

**A**

arcu*s*, *as*, *m.*, bow.  
 Ardēns, entl*s*, fiery, eager.  
 Ardeō, *ere*, *arsl*, Arsum, burn; rage.  
 ardu*s*, see hardu*s*.  
 argentīm, *I.*, *n.*, silver.  
 Argīt, òrnum, *m.* plur., Argos, a city in the Peloponnesus.  
 Argīv*l*, òrnum, *m.* plur., the Argives, the Greeks.  
 Aridūs, *a*, *um*, dry.  
 Arma, òrum, *u.*, plur., arms, weapons; instruments, utensils.  
 armentūm, *I.*, *u.*, herd.  
 arrēctu*s*, *a*, *um*, part. of arrigō, pricked up, attentive.  
 arti-fex, -feli*s*, *m.*, craftsman, artist.  
 artu*s*, *as*, *m.*, limb.  
 artu*s*, *a*, *um*, part. of areō, close.  
 arvum, *I.*, *u.*, field.  
 arx, are*s*, *f.*, citadel, stronghold; tower, height.  
 Ascanius, *I.*, *m.*, the son of Aeneas.  
 a-sceendō, *ere*, -scendi, -scēnum, climb, mount, ascend.  
 Asia, *ae*, *f.*, Asia.  
 aspectō, *ere*, Av*l*, Atum, look upon, gaze at.  
 asper, era, erum, harsh, fierce.  
 a-splitō, *ere*, -spex*l*, -spectum, behold, see.  
 Assaracu*s*, *I.*, *m.*, a king of Troy, grandfather of Anchises.  
 ast, conj., another form of at.  
 a-stō, or ad-stō, -stare, -stil*l*, stand, alight.  
 astru*s*, *I.*, *n.*, star.  
 at or ast, conj., but.  
 Ater, tra, trum, black, dark, gloomy.  
 atque, conj., and, and also.  
 Atreidēs, ae, *m.*, son of Atreus.  
 attollō, *ere*, lift up, raise.  
 audeō, *ere*, ansus sum, dare, venture.  
 audiō, *ere*, Ivi, Itum, hear.  
 augurium, *I.*, *n.*, art of divination, augury.  
 aula, ae, *f.*, hall, court, palace.  
 anra, ae, *f.*, air; breath.  
 aurus, *a*, *um*, of gold, golden.  
 auris, *is*, *f.*, ear.  
 aurum, *I.*, *n.*, gold.  
 nuster, tri*l*, *m.*, the south wind; in general, a gale.  
 ansus, from audeō.  
 ant, or; aut-ant, either—or.  
 auxiliū, *I.*, *n.*, aid, assistance.  
 avārs, *a*, *um*, covetous, greedy.  
 à-véhō, *ere*, -vex*l*, -vectum, carry away, bear away.  
 aver-tō, *ere*, -tl, -sum, turn away, keep from, drive off.

**B**

Bacchus, *I.*, *m.*, the god of wine; hence, wine.  
 beatu*s*, *a*, *um*, happy, blessed.  
 bellatrix, Icis, *f.*, warrior maiden, warrior.  
 bellō, Are, Av*l*, Atum, war, wage war.  
 bellum, *I.*, *n.*, war, warfare.  
 benignus, *a*, *um*, kindly, friendly.  
 bibō, *ere*, bib*l*, drink.  
 bli*l*, ae, *a*, a pair, two.  
 biremis, Is, *f.*, a vessel with two banks of oars; galley, ship.  
 bis, adv., twice.  
 bonu*s*, *a*, *um*, good, kindly, generous.  
 brevis, *e*, short; neut. plur. as subst., brevia, linn, shoals.  
 Byrsa, ae, *f.*, the citadel of Carthage.

**C**

cadō, *ere*, eecidi*l*, cāsm, fall.  
 cadu*s*, *I.*, *m.*, jar.  
 caecus, *a*, *um*, blind, blinded; hidden, secret.  
 caelēs, *is*, *f.*, slaughter, carnage.

**caelestis**, *c.*, *heavenly, celestial; m. plur. as subst., caelestes, lmn, the gods.*

**caelum**, *I.*, *n., sky, heaven.*

**Caesar**, *arts*, *m., Caesar Augustus, the first emperor of Rome.*

**Calens**, *I.*, *m., a Trojan.*

**caleō**, *ere*, *nl*, *glow.*

**campus**, *I.*, *m., plain.*

**cauō**, *ere*, *ceclmī*, *sing; tell of.*

**cantus**, *as*, *m., song, singing.*

**cānus**, *a*, *nm*, *hoary; venerable.*

**capessō**, *ere*, *-lvi*, *-ltnm*, *do, execute, carry out.*

**captō**, *ere*, *eēpl*, *captum*, *take; occupy; choose.*

**cap-nit**, *-ltis*, *n., head.*

**Capys**, *yos*, *m., a Trojan.*

**carcer**, *erls*, *m., prison, dungeon.*

**cardō**, *-lns*, *m., hinge.*

**carpō**, *ere*, *-sl*, *-tnm*, *pluck, enjoy.*

**cārns**, *a*, *nm*, *dear, beloved.*

**castra**, *ōrnm*, *n. plur., camp.*

**cāsns**, *as*, *m., fall; chance; misfortune, mishap, disaster; loss, doom.*

**caterva**, *ae*, *f., train, throng.*

**causa**, *ae*, *f., cause, reason.*

**cavō**, *ire*, *āvl*, *ātnm*, *hollow.*

**cavns**, *a*, *nm*, *hollow.*

**ecclidō**, *from eadō.*

**cel-cr**, *-erls*, *-ere*,  *swift.*

**celerō**, *ire*, *āvl*, *ātnm*, *hasten.*

**cella**, *ae*, *f., cell.*

**cēlō**, *ire*, *āvl*, *ātnm*, *conceal, hide.*

**celsns**, *a*, *nm*, *lofty, high.*

**centum**, *indecl. num. adj., hundred.*

**Cereālls**, *c. of Ceres: w. arma, for grinding corn or making bread.*

**Cer-ēs**, *-erls*, *f., the goddess of agriculture; hence, corn, grain.*

**cernō**, *ere*, *crēpl*, *crētnm*, *see, perceive.*

**certē**, *adv., surely, assuredly.*

**certus**, *a*, *nm*, *fixed, sure, inevitable.*

**cervix**, *lcls*, *f., neck.*

**cervus**, *I.*, *m., stag, deer.*

**chorns**, *I.*, *m., ilance, band.*

**clugō**, *ere*, *cluxi*, *clinetum*, *surround, gird, encircle.*

**clingulum**, *I.*, *n., girdle, belt.*

**clēnum**, *adv. and prep. w. acc., around, about.*

**clēnum-dō**, *-dare*, *-dedi*, *-datum*, *surround, encircle.*

**clēnum-fundō**, *ere*, *-fūdl*, *-fūsm*, *pour around; envelop, wrap, encompass.*

**clitō**, *(clitins, clitissimē)*, *adv., quickly.*

**clitus**, *a*, *nm*, *quick, swift.*

**clam**, *adv., secretly.*

**clāmor**, *ōrls*, *m., shout, shouting.*

**clārus**, *a*, *nm*, *famed, renowned.*

**clāssi**, *ls*, *f., fleet.*

**clan-dō**, *ere*, *-sl*, *-sm*, *close, shut; shut in, enclose.*

**clanstra**, *ōrnm*, *n. plur., barriers.*

**Cloanthus**, *I.*, *m., a Trojan.*

**coetus**, *as*, *m., company, throng, flock.*

**cōgnōmen**, *mlnts*, *n., surname; name.*

**col-ligō**, *ere*, *-lēgl*, *-lēctum*, *gather, collect.*

**collis**, *ls*, *m., hill.*

**colō**, *ere*, *colnt*, *entum*, *till; cherish.*

**colōnn**, *I.*, *m., settler.*

**columna**, *ae*, *f., column, pillar.*

**comā**, *ae*, *f., hair, locks, tresses.*

**comitor**, *arl*, *ātns sm*, *accompany, attend.*

**committim**, *I.*, *n., offence.*

**com-mittō**, *ere*, *-mīst*, *-missum*, *commit, transgress.*

**com-moveō**, *ere*, *-mōvl*, *-mōtnm*, *move; disturb, alarm.*

**compāgēs**, *ls*, *f., joint, seam, fastening.*

**com-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum,** settle, still, quiet, calm; lay to rest.

**compostus, for compositus.**

**conclūbō, are, ābū, ātum, win over, obtain.**

**conclū-dō, ere, -si, -sum, enclose.**

**con-currō, ere, -currī (-cucurri), -cursum, engage, fight.**

**concurrit, ūs, m., crowd, throng.**

**con-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, found, build.**

**con-fidō, ere, -fīsus sum, trust, have trust in.**

**con-gredior, I., -gressus sum, engage, encounter.**

**con-jūnx, -jūgis, m. or f., husband, wife.**

**con-seendō, ere, -scendi, -scēnsum, climb, ascend; embark on.**

**con-siliūm, I., n., purpose, design.**

**con-sistō, ere, -stidi, -stitum, halt, stop, stand.**

**con-spectus, ūs, m., sight.**

**con-splētiō, ere, -spexi, -spectum, see, catch sight of, behold.**

**con-stitutō, ere, -ui, -itum, resolve.**

**con-tendō, ere, -di, -tum, strive; hasten.**

**con-tingō, ere, -tigi, -tactum, touch; impers., happen, be one's lot.**

**contrā, adv., against; in reply:**  
**contrā, prep. w. acc., opposite, over against.**

**contrālūs, a, um, opposite; adverse.**

**con-tundō, ere, -tudi, -tūsum, crush, subdue.**

**con-tūlūm, I., n., marriage, wedlock.**

**con-vellō, ere, -velli, -vulsum, rend asunder, shatter.**

**con-veniō, IrI., -vēni, -ventum, assemble.**

**conver-tō, ere, -ti, -sum, turn.**

**convexum, I., n., vault, arch.**

**convulsus, a, um, from convellō.**

**co-orior, IrI., -ortus sum, arise.**

**cor, cordis, n., heart; in plur., feelings, temper.**

**corūs, ūs, n., horn; antler.**

**corp-u-s, -oris, n., body; figure, form.**

**cor-ripiō, ere, -ripui, -reptum, seize, snatch up, catch up; viau, hasten over, speed on.**

**cor-rumpō, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, spoil.**

**coruseus, a, um, wavering, flickering, tremulous.**

**costa, ae, f., rib; side.**

**cothurnus, I., m., hunting-boot, buskin.**

**crēber, bra, brum, frequent, incessant; full (of), abounding (in).**

**crē-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, believe; think.**

**crīnīs, ūs, m., the hair, locks.**

**crispō, are, ātum, brandish.**

**crīstatus, a, um, crested, plumed.**

**crūdēlis, e, cruel, bitter, relentless.**

**crūentus, a, um, blood-stained.**

**cum, prep. w. abl., with.**

**cum, conj., when.**

**cūmīlius, I., m., heap, mass.**

**cūnetus, a, um, all, the whole.**

**cūr, adv., why?**

**cūra, ae, f., care; grief, sorrow, anxiety.**

**cūrrus, ūs, m., chariot, car.**

**cūrsus, ūs, m., running; track.**

**cūsp-i-s, -dīs, f., spear-point, spear.**

**Cyclōplus, a, um, of the Cyclops.**

**cycnus, I., m., swan.**

**Cymothoē, ēs, f., a sea-nymph.**

**Cythus, I., m., a mountain in Delos, the birth-place of Apollo and Diana.**

**Cytherēa, ae, f., the Cytherean, that is, Venus, who rose from the sea near Cythera, an island in the Aegean.**

## D

**Danaī, Ὀρνη**, m. plur., *the Greeks*.  
**(daps), dapls**, f., (regularly plur.), *feast, banquet*.  
**Dardanīns, a, um**, *Dardanian; Trojan*.  
**dē**, prep. w. abl., *from; according to*.  
**dea, ae, f.**, *goddess*.  
**deēns, orls, n.**, *ornament*.  
**dēfessus, a, um**, part. of **dēfetis-**  
*cor, worn out, weary*.  
**dē-fligō, ere, -fīxi, -fīxum**, *fix*.  
**dē-flūō, ere, -flūxi, -flūxum**, *flow down, glide, fall*.  
**dēline, adv.**, *then, thereupon*.  
**dēlinse, ere, -hīvi**, *yawn*.  
**dēlnde, adv.**, *thereupon, then*.  
**Dēlepēa, ae, f.**, *a nymph*.  
**dē-mittō, ere, -mīsi, -missum**, *send down, transmit; in part, derived, drawn, inherited*.  
**dēnī, ae, a**, *ten each, ten*.  
**dē-riplō, ere, -ripul, -reptum**, *tear off, tear away*.  
**dēsertus, a, um**, *deserted; neut.*  
*plur. as subst., dēserta, ὄρη, solitudes, desert, wilderness*.  
**dē-sistō, ere, -stīti, -stitum**, *abandon, give up*.  
**dēspēctō, ēre, look down upon**.  
**dēspiciō, ere, -spexi, spectum**, *look down upon*.  
**dēsuper, adv.**, *from above; above*.  
**dē-trūdō, ere, -trūsi, -trūsum**, *push off*.  
**dens, I, m.**, *god*.  
**dē-venīō, Irē, -vēni, -ventum**, *come down; reach, come to*.  
**dextra, ae, f.**, *the right hand*.  
**Dīana, ae, f.**, *goddess of hunting*.  
**dīctō, ūls, f.**, *sway, dominion*.  
**dīcō, ēre, -vīl, ūtum**, *assign*.  
**dīcō, ēre, dīxi, dictum**, *say, speak, tell; call, name*.  
**dīctum, I, n.**, *word*.

**Dīd-ō, -as, or -ōnis** (acc. **Dīdō**), f., *founder and queen of Carthage*.  
**dīēs, ēt, m.**, *day, daylight*.  
**dī-fūndō, ēre, -fūndi, -fūsnum**, *scatter, blow or toss about*.  
**dīgnor, ārl, ūtus sum**, *deem worthy*.  
**dīlectus, a, um**, part. of **dīligō**, *loved, beloved*.  
**dīrigō, ēre, -rēxi, -rēctum**, *direct, turn*.  
**dīrs, a, um**, *dread, grim*.  
**dīsclīmen, ūtus**, n., *crisis, peril*.  
**dīs-jēctō, ēre, -jēcti, -jectum**, *scatter, disperse*.  
**dīs-jūngō, ēre, -jūnxi, -jūnctum**, *separate, sever*.  
**dīs-pellō, ēre, -pūli, -pūlsum**, *scatter*.  
**dīstend-dō, ēre, -dī, -tum**, *distend, swell, fill*.  
**dītissimus**, from **dīves**.  
**dīti, adv.**, *for a long time, long*.  
**dīversus, a, um**, part. of **dīvertō**, *in different directions, apart, asunder; remote, distant, various*.  
**dīv-es, -tis** (**dītor, dītissimus**), *rich, wealthy*.  
**dīv-idō, ēre, -vīl, -vīsum**, *divide, share*.  
**dīvīnus, a, um**, *godlike, of deity*.  
**dīvus, I, m.**, *god*.  
**dō, dare, dedi, datum**, *give, grant, afford; put, set; give forth, utter; w. vēla, spread or set sail*.  
**dōc-eō, ēre, -vīl, -tum**, *teach, show, tell*.  
**dōleō, ēre, uI, ūtum**, *grieve, resent, be vexed*.  
**dōlor, ūris, m.**, *sorrow, grief, distress; resentment*.  
**dōlus, I, m.**, *trick, wile*.  
**dōmīnuor, ārl, ūtus sum**, *rule, reign over*.  
**dōmīnus, I, m.**, *master, lord, ruler*.

**d**omus, **ds** and **I**, **f.**, *house, home, abode; race.*  
**dōeē**, conj., *until.*  
**dōnum**, **I**, **n.**, *gift; offering.*  
**dorsum**, **I**, **n.**, *back; reef.*  
**dubius**, **a. um**, *in doubt, doubtful.*  
**dūeb**, **ere**, **dūxI**, **ductum**, *lead; draw; trace; derive; in pass., spring.*  
**duetor**, **ōrls**, **m.**, *leader.*  
**duels**, **e**, *sweet, fresh; pleasant.*  
**dūr**, **conj.**, *while, as long as; until.*  
**dupl-ex**, **-lēls**, *twofold, two.*  
**dūrō**, **āre**, **āvI**, **ātum**, *be patient, endure.*  
**dux**, **duels**, **m. and f.**, *leader.*

**E**

**ē**, prep., see **ex**.  
**ē-dñeō**, **ere**, **-dūxI**, **-ductum**, *lead out, lead forth.*  
**effēō**, **efferre**, **extull**, **ētātum**, *raise, lift up.*  
**ef-fieō**, **ere**, **-fēel**, **-fectum**, *form, make.*  
**ef-fodō**, **ere**, **-fōdl**, **-fossūm**, *dig out, dig up.*  
**ef-fundō**, **ere**, **-fōdl**, **-fōsum**, *pour forth; breathe out.*  
**egēns**, **entis**, part. of **egēō**, *destitute, in want.*  
**ego**, **mel**, pron., **I.**  
**ē-gredior**, **I**, **-gressus smū**, *go out, disembark.*  
**ē-gregiñs**, **a. um**, *illustrious, distinguished.*  
**ē-lābor**, **I**, **-lāpsus smū**, *slip away; elude.*  
**ē-mittō**, **ere**, **-mīsl**, **-missum**, *send forth, let loose.*  
**ēn**, interj., *lo! behold!*  
**enīm**, **conj.**, *for.*  
**ēō**, **ire**, **IvI** (**II**), **itum**, *go, come, pass; pour forth.*  
**Ēōus**, **a. um**, *eastern.*

**epulae**, **ārum**, **f. plur.**, *feast, banquet.*  
**equidem**, **adv.**, *truly, indeed.*  
**equus**, **I**, **m.**, *horse, steed.*  
**ē-riplō**, **ere**, **-ripl**, **-reptum**, *snatch away, take (from).*  
**errō**, **āre**, **āvI**, **ātum**, *wander, stray.*  
**et**, **conj.**, *and; also, too; even; et . . . et, both . . . and.*  
**etiam**, **conj.**, *even; too.*  
**Eurōpa**, **ne**, **f.**, *Europe.*  
**Eurōtās**, **ae**, **m.**, *the river on which Sparta stood.*  
**Enrus**, **I**, **m.**, *the southeast or east wind; wind in general.*  
**ē-vertō**, **ere**, **-vertl**, **-versum**, *upturn.*  
**ex** (or **ē** sometimes before a cons.), **prep.** **w. abl.**, *out of, from; of; in accordance with.*  
**exāctus**, **a. um**, part. of **exigō**, *ascertained, discovered.*  
**exālmus**, **a. um**, *lifeless.*  
**exaudiō**, **ire**, **IvI**, **Itum**, *hear.*  
**ex-cēdō**, **ere**, **-cessl**, **-cessum**, *go forth, depart, withdraw.*  
**exclīdūm**, **I**, **n.**, *downfall, destruction.*  
**ex-eldō**, **ere**, **-eldl**, *fall out; pass away, fade.*  
**ex-eldō**, **ere**, **-elldl**, **-elsum**, *hew out.*  
**ex-ēplō**, **ere**, **-ēpl**, **-ceptum**, *take from, take up.*  
**ex-ēndō**, **ere**, **-ēndl**, **-ēnsum**, *strike out.*  
**ex-entō**, **ere**, **-ennsl**, **-ennsum**, *shake off, throw out.*  
**exēmptus**, from **eximō**.  
**ex-ēō**, **ire**, **-II** (**IV**), **-itum**, *go forth.*  
**exercēō**, **ēre**, **uI**, **Itum**, *keep busy, keep in motion; exercise.*  
**ex-igō**, **ere**, **-egl**, **-actum**, *pass, spend.*  
**ex-īmb**, **ere**, **-ēml**, **-ēmptum**, *take away, remove; satisfy.*

**expeditō.** *Ire, Ivi (II), Itum, bring out, make ready.*  
**ex-perīor.** *Irl. -pertus sum, make trial of, have experience of.*  
**expl-ēb.** *ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, fill out, complete.*  
**explōrō.** *āre, āvī, ātum, find out, discover.*  
**exser̄ts.** *a, nm, part. of exserō, thrust out, uncovered.*  
**exspirō.** *āre, āvī, ātum, breathe out, breathe forth.*  
**extemplō.** *adv., at once, straight-way, forthwith.*  
**extrēmns.** *a, nm, extreme; last; neut. plur. as subst., extrēma, īrnum, final doom.*  
**extnll.** *from efferō.*  
**ex-ūrō.** *ēre, -ūssi, -ūstum, burn up, consume.*

**F**

**faciliſ,** *e, easy; prosperous.*  
**faelō.** *ēre, fēl. factum, do, make.*  
**factum,** *I, n., deed, exploit, enterprise.*  
**falsns,** *a, um, part. of fallō, false, feigned.*  
**fāma,** *ae, f., report; repute, glory, renown, fame.*  
**famēs,** *is, f., hunger.*  
**fās,** *indecl. n., divine law; fās est, it is right, one's duty, ordained.*  
**fastigium,** *I, n., pinnacle, roof, gable; point (of a story).*  
**fatigō.** *āre, āvī, ātum, tire, weary; vex, harass.*  
**fatlsebō.** *ēre, yawn, gape.*  
**fātum,** *I, n., oracel; destiny, fate, fortune; doom.*  
**fax,** *faels, f., torch, firebrand.*  
**fēlix,** *īcls, happy; gracious.*  
**fēmina,** *ae, f., woman.*  
**fern,** *ae, f., wild beast.*  
**ferina,** *ae, f., venison.*  
**ferō,** *Ire, strike, smite.*

**ferō, ferre, tull.** *īatum, bear, carry, bring; with sē, move, advance; raise, exalt; say.*  
**ferōx,** *ōcls, bold, fierce, haughty.*  
**ferrum,** *I, n., iron; something made of iron, spear-head, sword.*  
**fer-veō,** *ēre, -bul, boil, be hot.*  
**fessus,** *a, nm, weary.*  
**fētus,** *a, um, teeming, laden.*  
**fētus,** *ōs, m., offspring, brood.*  
**Fidēs,** *el, f., personified, Faith, Honor.*  
**fidūcia,** *ae, f., confidence.*  
**fidns,** *a, nm, trusty, faithful.*  
**figō, ere, fixi, fixum, fix, fasten up; pierce, transfix.  
**filius,** *I, m., son.*  
**flīns,** *is, m., end; in plur., borders, land.*  
**flīns, from figō.  
**flamīma,** *ae, ; īlīcī, fire.*  
**flamīnd,** *āre, āvī, ātum, inflame, kindle.*  
**fleetō,** *ēre, flexi, flexum, turn; guide.*  
**flōrens,** *a, um, flowery.*  
**fluctus,** *ōs, m., wave, billow.*  
**flūmen,** *mlnis, n., stream, flood.*  
**fluō,** *ēre, flāxi, flāxum, flow.*  
**foedns,** *erls, n., treaty; laic.*  
**foliūm,** *I, n., leaf.*  
**fōmes,** *itls, m., dry fuel, tinder.*  
**fōns,** *fontis, m., spring, source.*  
**fōr, fārl,** *fatus sum, speak, say.*  
**fōre,** *fut. infin. of sum.*  
**fōris,** *is, f., door.*  
**fōrma,** *ae, f., form; beauty.*  
**fōrs,** *fortis, f., chance; forte, as adv., by chance, haply.*  
**forsan,** *adv., perhaps, perchance.*  
**fortis,** *e, brave, valiant.*  
**fortūna,** *ae, f., fortune (good or bad), fate, lot.*  
**fortūnatūs,** *a, um, happy, fortunate.*****

**fōveō**, *ere*, **fōvi**, **fōlūm**, *cherish*, *foster*.  
**frāgor**, *ōris*, *m.*, *din*, *uproar*.  
**frāgrāns**, *antis*, *part. of frāgrō*, *sweet-scented*, *fragrant*.  
**frangō**, *ere*, **frēgl**, **frāctūm**, *break*, *snap*; *crush*, *grind*.  
**frāter**, *ōris*, *m.*, *brother*.  
**frēm-ō**, *ere*, **-nl**, **-lūm**, *rage*, *rare*.  
**frēnō**, *āre*, **āvl**, **ātūm**, *curb*, *restrain*.  
**frēgns**, *ōris*, *n.*, *cold*, *chill*.  
**frōndens**, *a*, *um*, *leafy*.  
**frōns**, *frontis*, *f.*, *brow*; *front*.  
**frustrā**, *adv.*, *in rain*.  
**frustum**, *I*, *n.*, *piece*, *bit*.  
**frūx**, **frēgl**, *f.*, *(generally plur.)*, *fruit*, *grain*.  
**frēus**, *I*, *m.*, *drone*.  
**fuga**, *ae*, *f.*, *flight*; *speed*.  
**fuglō**, *ere*, **fōgl**, **fuglūm**, *flee*, *flee or fly from*.  
**fugō**, *āre*, **āvl**, **ātūm**, *put to flight*, *chase away*, *scatter*, *dispel*.  
**fūlmen**, *minis*, *n.*, *lightning*, *thunder-bolt*.  
**fulvus**, *a*, *um*, *tawny*.  
**fundāmentūm**, *I*, *n.*, *foundation*.  
**fundiō**, *ere*, **fōdt**, **fūsuni**, *pour*; *stretch*, *lay low*.  
**fūsus**, *ōris*, *n.*, *funeral rites*; *death*.  
**furia**, *ae*, *f.*, *madness*, *frenzy*.  
**fur-ō**, *ere*, **-nl**, *rage*, *be furious*.  
**fūrōr**, *ōris*, *m.*, *fury*, *madness*, *rage*, *frenzy*; *personified Fury*.  
**fūsus**, *a*, *um*, *part. of fundiō*, *stretched*.  
**fūtūrus**, *a*, *um*, *part. of sum*, *future*, *coming*, *which is to be*.

**G**

**galea**, *ae*, *f.*, *helmet*.  
**Ganymēdēs**, *Is*, *m.*, *Ganymede*, *cup-bearer of the gods*.  
**gandūm**, *I*, *n.*, *joy*.

**gāza**, *ae*, *f.*, *treasure*.  
**gemūlūs**, *a*, *um*, *tiein*.  
**gemūta**, *ās*, *m.*, *groan*, *sigh*.  
**gem-ō**, *ere*, **-nl**, **-lūm**, *groan*, *sigh*; *bewail*, *mouru*, *lament*.  
**genitor**, *ōris*, *m.*, *father*, *sire*.  
**genitūs**, *a*, *um*, *part. of gigno*, *sprung*, *descended*; *child* or *son*.  
**gēns**, **gentis**, *f.*, *race*, *people*, *nation*; *swarm*.  
**genū**, *ās*, *n.*, *knee*.  
**genus**, *ōris*, *n.*, *birth*, *descent*; *kin*, *race*, *people*.  
**germānūs**, *I*, *m.*, *brother*; *germāna*, *ae*, *f.*, *sister*.  
**gerō**, *ere*, **gessl**, **gestūm**, *bear*, *carry*, *wear*; *carry on*, *wage*.  
**gestō**, *āre*, **āvl**, **ātūm**, *bear*, *carry*.  
**gignō**, *ere*, **genit**, **gentitūm**, *bear*, *beget*.  
**glomerō**, *āre*, **āvl**, **ātūm**, *gather*; *in pass.*, *throng*.  
**gradīor**, *I*, *gressus sum*, *advance*, *go*.  
**gradus**, *ās*, *m.*, *step*.  
**Grōl**, *(or Grāll)*, *ōrum*, *m. plur.*, *the Greeks*.  
**grandaevus**, *a*, *um*, *aged*.  
**gravis**, *e*, *heavy*; *pregnant*; *grievous*; *of weight*, *influential*, *revered*.  
**graviter**, *adv.*, *heavily*; *deeply*.  
**gressus**, *ās*, *m.*, *step*, *course*.  
**gurg-ēs**, *-llis*, *m.*, *whirlpool*, *swirling waters*, *flood*.  
**gustō**, *āre*, **āvl**, **ātūm**, *taste*.  
**Gyōs**, *ae*, *m.*, *a Trojan*.

**H**

**habēna**, *ae*, *f.*, *rein*.  
**habēō**, *ēre*, **nt**, **lūm**, *have*, *hold*, *possess*.  
**habili**, *e*, *handy*, *ready*, *light*.  
**habilis**, *ās*, *m.*, *appearance*, *bearing*; *dress*, *raiment*, *garb*.

**hāc**, adv., *on this side*; **hāc-hācē**, *here-there*.  
**haereō, ēre, haesl, haesum, cling**, *be caught; stand fast, remain fixed.*  
**hālō, āre, āvi, ātūm, be fragrant**, *hurēm, ae, f., sand; beach.*  
**Harpalycē, es, f.,** a princess and huntress of Thrace.  
**hasta, ae, f., spear.**  
**hastille, ls, n., spear-shaft, spear.**  
**hāud, adv., not, by no means.**  
**Hebrus, I. m.,** a river of Thrace.  
**Hector, orls, m.,** the eldest son of Priam and bravest of the Trojans.  
**Hectoreus, a, um, of Hector;** hence, generally, *Trojan*.  
**herbu, ae, f., grass, sward.**  
**hērōs, -ōls, m., hero.**  
**heus, interj., ho!**  
**hiberna, īrnu, n., plur., winter-camp; winter.**  
**hic, hāe, hōc, this.**  
**hic, adv., here, hereupon.**  
**hīems, hīemis, f., storm, tempest.**  
**hīnc, adv., hence, from this, thence; 'hen, thereupon; hīnc atque hīnc, on this side and on that, on each side, around.**  
**hom-ō, -ōnis, m. and f., a mortal man; in plur., people.**  
**honor, ūris, m., honor; offering, sacrifice; reward, recompense.**  
**horrēns, entis, part. of horrēō, bristling, shaggy; gloomy.**  
**horridus, a, um, terrible, dreadful.**  
**hosptium, I. n., shelter, welcome.**  
**hostia, ae, f., victim, sacrifice.**  
**hostis, ls, m., (usually plur.), enemy.**  
**hōc, adv., to this place, hither.**  
**humerus, see numerus.**  
**humus, I. f., ground; huml, locative, on the ground.**

**ibdem, adv., in the same place.**  
**Idem, eadem, Idem, the same.**  
**ignārns, a, um, ignorant (of), un-acquainted (with).**  
**ignāvns, a, nm, idle, lazy.**  
**ignis, ls, m., fire, flame; thunder-bolt, lightning, flash.**  
**ignōbilis, e, base, low-born.**  
**ignōtus, a, um, unknown, secret, hidden.**  
**īlla, ae, f., a poetical name of Rhea Silvia, mother of Romulus and Remus.**  
**īlaens, a, um, of Ilium, Trojan.**  
**īllas, adls, f., Trojan woman.**  
**īlonens, el, m., a comrade of Aeneas.**  
**īlum, I, n., a name of Troy.**  
**īlus, a, um, Ilian, Trojan.**  
**īlle, a, um, that; as subst., he, she, it.**  
**īlle, adv., there.**  
**īl-īldō, ēre, -īsl, -īlsum, dash upon.**  
**īlyreus, a, um, of Illyria.**  
**īlus, I, m., an earlier name of Iulus or Ascanius, the son of Aeneas.**  
**īmagō, īls, f., likeness, form; ghost, phantom.**  
**īmber, -bris, m., rain, water.**  
**īmmānls, e, huge, vast, enormous; monstrous, atrocious.**  
**īmīneō, ēre, overhang.**  
**īmīltis, e, merciless, ruthless.**  
**īmōtus, a, um, unmoved, secure, fixed.**  
**īm-par, -paris, unequal.**  
**īm-pellō, ēre, -pull, -pulsum, strike, smite; force, drive.**  
**īmpēriū, I, n., command; authority, power; sovereignty, sway, lordship; dominion, empire.**  
**īmīlus, a, um, sacrilegious, unholy, unnatural.**

**Im-pleō, ēre, -plēvi, -piētum, fill;**  
in pass., take one's fill.

**Im-pōnō, ēre, -posui, -positum,**  
place upon, set on.

**Imus, a, um, lowest, deepest; the**  
bottom of, the depths of, inmost.

**In, prep. (1) w. abl., in, on; (2) w.**  
acc., into, to, upon, against, on,  
among.

**Inānīs, e, empty, unreal, unsub-**  
stantial.

**Incautus, a, um unsuspecting,**  
of one's guard.

**In-cēdō, ēre, -cessi, -cessum, go,**  
move, advance.

**Ineptum, I, n., purpose.**

**Incessus, ūs, m., gait, carriage.**

**Ineub-ō, āre, -ul, -itum, lie upon,**  
brood over.

**Ineultus, a, um, uncultivated,**  
wild.

**In-cumbō, ēre, -cubul, -cubitum,**  
rest upon, fall upon.

**Inēusō, āre, āvī, ātūm, reproach,**  
upbraid.

**In-eutlō, ēre, -eussi, -eussum,**  
strike into.

**Inude, adv., thence; then.**

**Indignor, ārl, ātus sum, be in-**  
dignant, chafe.

**Inermis, e, unarmed.**

**Insanus, a, um, unutterable.**

**Infēlix, Icls, luckless, unfortun-**  
ate.

**Inferō, Iuferō, intui, illātum,**  
bring to; w. se, advance; w.  
bellum, make, wage.

**In-fīgō, ēre, -fīxi, -fīxum, fix**  
upon, impale.

**In-gemō, ēre, -gemul, groan, sigh.**

**In-gēns, entis, huge, vast, massive,**  
enormous; great, mighty, heavy.

**Inhumātus, a, um, unburied.**

**InimicuS, a, um, hostile, un-**  
friendly; deadly.

**Injūria, ae, f., wrong; insult,**  
affront.

**Inquām, Inqnit, defective verb,**  
say (said) I.

**In-scribbō, ēre, -scripsi, -scriptum,**  
write on, mark, score.

**In-sequor, I, -secūtus sum, follow,**  
pursue; follow up, dog.

**Insignis, e, distinguished, con-**  
spicuous.

**In-stō, -stāre, -stīl, -stātum, press**  
on, pursue; be eager, intent.

**In-sula, ae, f., island.**

**Insuper, adv., above, over.**

**In-tāetus, a, um, maiden, virgin.**

**Intentō, āre, āvī, ātūm, threaten.**

**In-ter, prep. w. acc., between,**  
among, amid, through; Inter  
se, with one another.

**In-terēt, adv., meanwhile, mean-**  
time.

**In-terfor, ārl, ātus sum, interrupt.**

**In-tinuus, a, um, superlative of In-**  
terior, inmost.

**In-ton-ō, āre, -ul, -Ātūm, thunder.**

**In-tractābilis, e, untamable.**

**In-tus, adv., within.**

**In-vehō, ēre, -vexi, -vectum,**  
bear along; in pass., be borne,  
ride.

**Invisus, a, um, hated, hateful,**  
detested.

**Ipse, a, um, self (emphatic), him-**  
self; very.

**Ira, ae, f., anger, wrath.**

**Is, ea, il, he, she, it; that, this.**

**Italia, ae, f., Italy.**

**Italus, a, um, Italian, as subst.,**  
Itall, òramy in. the Italians.

**Iter, Itineris, way, course.**

**Italus, I, m., a name of Ascanius,**  
Aeneas' son.

J

**Jaceō, ēre, ul, itum, lie;**  
be out-spread or outstretched; lie  
slain.

**Jactō, āre, āvī, ātūm, toss;**  
pour forth, utter; revolve; w. se,  
boast, vaunt.

**Jaculator, ārl, ātus sum, hurl, dart.**

**Jam**, adv., now, already, at length; thereafter; **Jam tūi**, even then, already.

**Jovis**, see **Juppiter**.

**Jubēō**, ēre, āvī, ātum, order, bid, command.

**Judicium**, I, n., judgment, decision.

**Jugō**, ēre, āvī, ātum, join, marry.

**Jugnūs**, I, n., yoke; height, ridge.

**Jullus**, I, m., the name of a Roman family, to which Julius Cesar and Augustus belonged.

**Jungō**, ēre, āvī, ātum, join, unite.

**Jundō**, ònis, f., queen of the gods, sister and wife of Jove.

**Juppiter**, **Jovis**, m., the supreme deity of the Romans.

**Jus**, **Jūris**, n., justice, law.

**Jussum**, I, n., bidding, command.

**Justus**, a, um, just; fair.

**Juvenis**, is, m., youth, lad.

**Juventūs**, **tūtis**, f., the youth (collectively).

**Juvō**, ēre, āvī, ātum, aūl; be pleasant, give pleasure.

## K

**Karthāgō**, **Iulis**, f., *Carthage*, a city in Northern Africa.

## L

**Lōbor**, I, **lāpsus sum**, slip; glide away, pass away; swoop.

**labor**, **òrls**, m., labor, toil, work, task; hardship, sorrow, trouble.

**lacrima**, ae, f., tear.

**lacrimō**, ēre, āvī, ātum, weep.

**laedō**, ēre, **laesī**, **laesum**, injure; offend, thwart.

**laetor**, ērl, **ātus sum**, rejoice.

**laetus**, a, um, glad, joyous, gay; luxuriant, rich.

**lapsus**, from **lābor**.

**largus**, a, um, copious.

**lātē**, adv., widely, far and wide.

**latēns**, entis, part. of **lātēō**, hidden.

**lātēō**, ēre, uī, lie hid; be unknown to, escape the knowledge of.

**Latīnus**, a, um, of *Latium*, *Latin*, *Latium*, I, n., a district of Italy, south of the Tiber.

**Latōna**, ae, f., the mother of Apollo and Diana.

**lātūs**, a, nm, broad, widespread, far-spread.

**latus**, erts, n., side.

**laus**, laudis, f., praise; worth, merit.

**lāvitūtum**, I, n., a city of Latium, built by Aeneas, and named in honor of his second wife Lavinia.

**lāvinus**, a, um, of *Lavinium*, *Lavinian*.

**laxus**, a, um, loose, loosened.

**lēgb**, ēre, lēgl, tēctum, choose.

**lēnō**, īre, īvī (II), Itum, allay, calm.

**lēvī**, e, light, rapid.

**lēvō**, ēre, āvī, ātum, ruiſe; ease, lighten.

**lēx**, lēgl, f., law.

**lēbō**, ēre, āvī, ātum, touch lightly, kiss.

**lēburnī**, òrum, m. plur., a tribe in Illyria, on the Adriatic.

**lēbīa**, ae, f., *Libya*, *North Africa*.

**lēbycus**, a, um, *Libyan*, of *Libya*.

**lēmen**, mīnlīs, n., threshold; courts, palace.

**lēquēns**, entis, part. of **lēquor**, flowing, liquid.

**lētūs**, oris, n., shore, beach, coast.

**lētō**, ēre, āvī, ātum, place, set; establish, build, fix.

**locūs**, I, m., (plur., **locā**, n., or **lēctī**, in.), place, spot, region, land, country.

**longē**, adv., far, afar; comparative, *longius*, further.

**longus**, a, um, long, lingering.

**lōrum**, I, n., thong; rein.

**I**nctor, **ārl.** **Ātus sum,** struggle.  
**īdens, I.** *ia.*, grieve.  
**īdō, ēre.** **īsl, īsum,** sport; mock, delude, cheat.  
**īmen, mīnis,** *n.*, light; eye.  
**īnātus,** *a.* *um,* moon-shaped, crisscent.  
**īnō, ēre.** **īl,** **ītūm** (**ītūm**), wash away, atone for, expiate.  
**īpa, ae,** *f.*, she-wolf.  
**īstō, āre,** **āvI,** **ātum,** survey, scan.  
**īstrūm, I.** *n.*, period of five years.  
**īx, īcls,** *f.*, light; daylight, dawn.  
**Lycīl, orūm,** *m. plur.*, the Lycians, from Lycia, a district of Asia Minor.  
**Lycus,** *I.* *m.*, a Trojan.  
**lynx, lyncl,** *m. and f.*, lynx.

**M**

**maculōsns,** *a.* *um,* spotted, dappled.  
**maereō, ēre,** grieve, sorrow.  
**maestus,** *a.* *um,* sad, gloomy, anxious.  
**māgālia, ium,** *u. plur.*, huts.  
**magis, adv.,** more.  
**maglster, trl,** *m.*, master; helmsman.  
**magistrātus,** *īs,* *ni.*, magistrate.  
**māgnātūs,** *a.* *um,* great-souled, noble.  
**māgnus,** *a.* *um* (**mājor,** **māxi-**  
*mus*), great, large; mighty, loud, strong.  
**Māta, ae,** *f.*, the mother of Mercury.  
**malum,** *I.* *n.*, evil, misfortune.  
**matuS,** *a.* *um,* evil, wicked; rascaly.  
**mamma, ae,** *f.*, breast.  
**maneō, ēre,** **mānsi,** **mānsum,** remain, abide.  
**mannus,** *īs,* *f.*, hand; handiwork.  
**mare,** *īs,* *n.*, sea.  
**Mārs, Mārtis,** *na.*, the god of war.

**māter, mātris,** *f.*, mother.  
**mātēro, āre,** **āvI,** **ātum,** hasten, speed.  
**Māvortius,** *a.* *um,* of Macors, i.e., Mars.  
**medius,** *a.* *um,* in the middle, the midst, mid.  
**mel, melliS,** *u.*, honey.  
**mettōr,** *īns,* comparative of bonns, better.  
**mettus, adv.,** better.  
**membrum, I.** *o.*, limb.  
**memori,** *īsc,* (perf. stem with force of pres.), remember, recall.  
**Memnon,** *onis,* *m.*, king of the Ethiopians, and ally of the Trojans.  
**memor, oris,** mindful, remembering; relentless, unforgettable.  
**memorō, āre,** **āvI,** **ātum,** tell, recount; call, name.  
**mēns, mentis,** *f.*, mind; heart, soul.  
**mēnsa, ae,** *f.*, table.  
**mēnsis, is,** *m.*, month.  
**mercōr,** **ārl,** **ātus sum,** buy, purchase.  
**meritum,** *I.* *n.*, service, merit.  
**mētā, ae,** *f.*, limil, bound.  
**met-nō, ēre,** *-ul,* **-ātum,** fear, be afraid of, dread.  
**metus,** *īs,* *m.*, fear.  
**meus,** *a.* *um,* my.  
**mit-ō, āre,** *-ul,* dart; gleam, flash.  
**mittē** (plur., **mittīa** or **mittīe**), thousand.  
**ministrō, āre,** **āvI,** **ātum,** serre, tend; supply, provide, furnish, lend.  
**minor,** **ārl,** **ātus sum,** threaten; tower threateningly.  
**mirabilis,** *e.*, wonderful.  
**mirandus,** *a.* *um,* wonderful; *n.* as subst., wonder, marvel.  
**miror,** **ārl,** **ātus sum,** wonder at, marvel at, admire.  
**mirns,** *a.* *um,* wonderful, marvelous.

**mīscēō**, ēre, **mīscul**, **mixtum**,  
*mixt, mix; confound, disturb,  
 throw into confusion.*  
**mīser**, ēra, **crūm**, *hapless, ill-  
 fated.*  
**mīserābilis**, e, *pitcous, lament-  
 able.*  
**mītēseō**, ēre, *soften, grow mild, or  
 gentle.*  
**mīttō**, ēre, **mīsl**, **mīssum**, *send;  
 dismiss, lay aside, put away.*  
**modō**, adv., *only.*  
**modus**, I, m., *way, fashion.*  
**mōcūla**, lūm, n. plur., *walls.*  
**mōlēs**, ls, f., *mass; task, work.*  
**mōllor**, Irl, **lītus sum**, *labor at,  
 build; cause.*  
**mōllib**, Irē, **līl (II) lītum**, *soothe,  
 calm.*  
**mōnus**, *montis*, m., *mountain.*  
**mōnstrō**, ēre, **līl**, **lītum**, *show,  
 point out, point.*  
**mōra**, ae, f., *delay.*  
**mōrs, mortis**, f., *death.*  
**mōrsus**, ūs, m., *bite; of an anchor,  
 fluke.*  
**mōrtalis**, e, *mortal.*  
**mōs, mōris**, m., *custom; law.*  
**moveō**, ēre, **mōvī**, **mōtum**, *move,  
 arouse, disturb; disclose.*  
**mūl-eō**, ēre, -sl, -sum, *calm,  
 soothe, lull.*  
**mūltum**, adv., *much, greatly.*  
**mūltus**, a, um, *much, many;  
 abundant, great, thick, heavy.*  
**mūlūlō**, Irē, **līl (II) lītum**, *fortify,  
 defend.*  
**mūr-mūr, -mūris**, n., *roaring.*  
**mūrus**, I, *wall.*  
**Mūsa**, ae, f., *Mosc, goddess of  
 poetry.*  
**Mycēnae**, īrmī, f., *the city of  
 Agamemnon in Greece.*

**N**

**nam**, conj., *for.*  
**namque**, conj., *for.*

**nāns**, from nō.  
**nāscor**, I, **nātus sum**, *be born.*  
**nāta**, ae, f., *daughter.*  
**nātus**, I, m., *son.*  
**nāvigō**, īre, **līl**, **lītum**, *sail.*  
**nāvīs**, ls, f., *ship, vessel.*  
**nē**, conj., *that not, lest.*  
**-ne**, interrog. enclitic; in direct  
 questions, untranslated; in indirect  
 questions, *whether.*  
**nebula**, ae, f., *cloud, mist.*  
**nec**, conj., see neque.  
**neendum**, adv., *not yet.*  
**nect-ar, -arts**, n., *nectar.*  
**nectō**, ēre, **nexul (nexl)**, **nexum**,  
*bind, fasten, clamp.*  
**nemīs**, oris, n., *grove, wood.*  
**Neptūnus**, I, m., *Neptune, the god  
 of the sea.*  
**neque or nec**, conj., *and not, but  
 not, nor; neque—neque, neither  
 —nor.*  
**neselius**, a, um, *ignorant, un-  
 aware.*  
**nēn**, conj., *and not, nor.*  
**nexus**, from nectō.  
**nīl**, conj. (=nīst), *if not, unless.*  
**niger**, gra, *grum, black, dusky,  
 swarthy.*  
**nīmbus**, I, m., *storm-cloud, cloud.*  
**nītēns**, entis, part. of nīteo,  
*bright.*  
**nīveus**, a, um, *snowy.*  
**nō, nāre, nāvl**, *swim.*  
**nōdns**, I, m., *knot.*  
**nōmen, mīnīs**, n., *name.*  
**nōn**, adv., *not.*  
**nōster, tra, trum**, *our.*  
**nōtīs**, a, um, part. of nōscō,  
*known, well-known.*  
**Notus**, I, m., *south wind.*  
**novem**, *nine.*  
**novus**, a, um, *new; early; strange.*  
**nox, noctis**, f., *night.*  
**noxa**, ae, f., *offence, fault, guilt.*  
**nūbēs**, ls, f., *cloud.*

**nudō, Are, AvI, Atum,** lay bare.  
**nudus, a, um,** bare, uncovered.  
**uillus, a, um,** no, none.  
**nōmen, minis, n.,** divinity, sanctity; divine purpose, presence, assent or approval.  
**numerus, I, m.,** number.  
**uunc, adv., now.**  
**nōntīō, Are, AvI, Atum,** announce, declare.  
**nōtrimentum, I, n.,** food: fuel.  
**nōtrix, Icis, f.,** nurse.  
**nymphā, ae, f.,** nymph.

**O**

**ō, interj., O!**  
**ob, prep. w. acc., on account of,** for, for the sake of.  
**objectus, ōs, m.,** jutting out, opposition, interposition.  
**obliūsus, from offerō.**  
**ob-rūbō, ere, -rul, -rntum,** sink, overwhelm.  
**obscūrus, a, um,** dark, illim.  
**obstūtus, ōs, m.,** look, gaze.  
**obvius, a, um,** in one's way, to meet.  
**occlūsus, ōs, m.,** fall, destruction.  
**oc-culō, ere, -culul, -cūtum,** hide, conceal.  
**oc-cumbō, ere, -cubul, -cubitum,** fall, die.  
**ōceanus, I, m.,** ocean.  
**oculus, I, m.,** eye.  
**odium, I, n.,** hatred, hate.  
**odor, ōris, m.,** odor, fragrance.  
**offerō, offerre, obtull, obliūtum,** put in the way, present; pass., appear, present itself.  
**Offeūs, el,** king of the Locri, father of the lesser Ajax.  
**ōlim, adv., at some time, hereafter, some day.**  
**olle=ille** (archaic).  
**Olympus, I, m.,** a mountain in Thessaly, regarded as the abode of the gods; hence, hearen.

**ōmen, minis, n.,** omen; rite.  
**omnipotēns, entis,** almighty, omnipotent.  
**omnis, e, all, every, the whole.**  
**onerō, Are, AvI, Atum,** load; stow, store.  
**onus, eris, n.,** burden, load.  
**onustus, a, um,** loaded, laden.  
**op-erīor, Irl,** -peritus and -pertus sum, await, wait for.  
**oppet-ō, ere, -Ivl (II), -Itum,** meet; (sc. mortem), die, perish.  
**op-prīmō, ere, -pressl, -pressum,** overwhelm.  
**(ops), opis, f.,** power; in plur., riches, wealth, resources.  
**optūtus, a, um,** part. of optō, desired, longed for, welcome.  
**optō, Are, AvI, Atum,** wish, desire; choose.  
**opulentus, a, um,** rich, enriched.  
**opus, eris, n.,** labor, work, effort.  
**ōra, ae, f.,** coast, shore.  
**ōra, from ōs.**  
**orbis, Is, m.,** circle; cycle; orbis terrarūm, world.  
**ōrdīor, Irl,** ōrsus sum, begin.  
**ōrdō, ōris, m.,** row, train, array; ex ōrdīne, in order, in succession.  
**Orēas, adis, f.,** mountain-nymph.  
**Orīens, entis, m.,** the East.  
**origō, ōris, f.,** origin, birth, descent; beginning.  
**Orontēs, Is or I, m.,** a Trojan.  
**ōs, ōris, n.,** mouth; face.  
**ōsculum, I, n.,** mouth, lip.  
**os-tendō, ere, -tendl, -tēnsum** and -tentum, show, point out.  
**ōstium, I, n.,** mouth, entrance.

**P**

**pābulum, I, n.,** pasture, grass.  
**Pallas, adis, f.,** the Greek goddess of wisdom and war, corresponding to the Roman Minerva.

**pallidus**, a, um, pale.  
**palma**, ae, f., palm, hand.  
**paudō**, ere, **pandī**, pānsūm or passum, spread out; dishevel.  
**Paphos**, I, f., a city of Cyprus, sacred to Venus.  
**Pareae**, ārum, f. plur., the Fates.  
**pareō**, ere, peperel (parsl), parclām (parsum), spare.  
**parens**, entis, m. and f., parent, father.  
**Paris**, Idls, m., a son of Priam.  
**parō**, ēre, āvī, ātūm, prepare, make ready.  
**pars**, partis, f., part, portion; repeated, some—others.  
**partlōr**, Trl, Itus sum, share; divide.  
**partus**, ūs, m., birth.  
**pascō**, ēre, pāvī, pāstūm, feed, feast; in pass., graze.  
**passus**, from **paudō**, or from **patlōr**.  
**Patavium**, I, n., a city near the head of the Adriatic, now Padua.  
**pateō**, ēre, uī, be open, lie open; be manifest, be revealed.  
**pater**, trls, m., father; sire, lord.  
**patlōr**, patl, passus sum, suffer, endure, bear; allow, permit.  
**patria**, ae, f., native country, home.  
**pax**, pāels, f., peace.  
**pectus**, orls, n., breast; heart.  
**pecus**, orls, n., herd; swarm.  
**pelagus**, I, n., sea, main.  
**pellō**, ēre, pepull, pulsum, drive, pelta, ae, f., shield.  
**Penatēs**, iūm, m. plur., the Penates, the household gods.  
**pendeō**, ēre, pependī, hang, be suspended, overhang.  
**penetrō**, ēre, āvī, ātūm, penetrate.  
**penitus**, adv., far within; far away.  
**Penthesilēa**, ae, f., queen of the Amazons, ally of the Trojans.

**peplōs**, I, m., or **peplūm**, I, n., robe.  
**per**, prep. w. acc., through, throughout, during; over, along.  
**pernigrō**, ēre, āvī, ātūm, wander over, traverse.  
**per-ferō**, -ferre, -fūll, -fātūm, bear; w. reflexive, betake one's self, go.  
**perībō**, ēre, āvī, ātūm, blow over.  
**Pergama**, īrum, n. plur., the citadel of Troy; Troy.  
**pergō**, ēre, perrēxt, perrēctūm, go on, proceed.  
**per-lābor**, I, -lāpsus sum, glide over.  
**permiscēō**, ēre, -miscent, -mixtūm, mix, mingle.  
**pertemptō**, ēre, āvī, ātūm, per- vade, fill.  
**pēs**, pedls, m., foot.  
**petō**, ēre, -vī (-ī), -tūm, seek, make for.  
**pharetra**, ae, f., quiver.  
**Phoebus**, I, m., a name of Apollo the Sun-god, brother of Diana.  
**Phœnices**, ūm, m. plur., the Phoenicians.  
**Phryges**, ūm, m. plur., the Phrygians; generally, the Trojans.  
**Phrygia**, a, ūm, Phrygton; Trojan.  
**Phthila**, ae, f., the home of Achilles, in Thessaly.  
**pletūra**, ae, f., painting, picture.  
**pletīs**, tātīs, f., dutiful conduct; filial love, reverence, loyalty.  
**plūgnis**, e, fat; rich.  
**plus**, a, ūm, dutiful, good, pious.  
**placeō**, ēre, uī, Itūm, be pleasing; impersonal, placet, placitum est, it seems best, it is willed.  
**plaetillus**, a, ūm, calm, quiet.  
**platō**, ēre, āvī, ātūm, calm, soothe.  
**plaga**, ae, f., region, quarter, tract.  
**plēnus**, a, ūm, full.  
**plūrimus**, a, ūm, superlative of multus.

**plūs, plūctis** (comparative of **multus**), more.

**pœna, ae, f.**, punishment, penalty.

**Pœnæ, ðromi, m. plur.**, the *Carthaginians* (strictly, the *Phoenicians*).

**pollicor, èrl, Itus sum**, promise.

**polus, I, m.**, the pole : the heavens.

**pondus, erls, n.**, weight, mass.

**pōnō, ere, posul, posulum, put**, place, set, lay; establish, appoint; lay aside.

**pontus, I, m.**, sea.

**populus, I, m.**, people, nation; throng.

**porta, ae, f.**, gate, passage.

**portō, ère, àvl, àtum, carry, bear, bring.**

**portus, ñs, m.**, harbor, haven.

**poseō, ere, poposel, ask, demand.**

**possum, posse, potuI, be able, can.**

**post, adv., afterwards; prep. w. acc., behind.**

**posthabeō, ère, ul, Itum, esteem less, hold less dear.**

**postquam, conj., after, when, as soon as.**

**potēns, entis, part. of possuum, powerful; ruler (over), master (of).**

**poter, Irl, Itus sum, gain, reach.**

**praeelpō, adv., especially.**

**praeda, ae, f.**, booty, spoil.

**praemium, I, n.**, reward.

**praeruptus, a, um, part. of prae-rumpō, broken, sleep, sheer.**

**præsaep̄e, ls, n.**, hire.

**præsens, entis, part. of pruesum, present; instant, immediate.**

**præ-stō, ère, -stilI, -statum or -stlum, surpass, excel; impersonal, praestat, it is better.**

**præterē, adv., besides; hereafter.**

**præ-vertor, I, outstrip.**

**premō, ere, pressI, pressum, press, keep down; check, restrain; control; overwhelm, cover; press after, pursue.**

**Priamus, I, m., Priam, king of Troy.**

**primum, adv., first, at first.**

**primus, a, um, first, foremost, earliest; In primis, especially.**

**principes, -clips, adj., foremost; subst., chief, leader.**

**prior, ðrls, comparative adj., former, first.**

**prius, before, sooner.**

**priusquam or prius . . . quam, conj., before.**

**prō, prep. w. abl., for, in behalf of; in return for.**

**procella, ae, f.**, blast, gust, squall.

**procen, adv., far off, far.**

**prō-dlō, ere, -dild, -ditum, betray, abandon.**

**profector, I, protectus sum, set forth, come.**

**profugus, a, um, exiled.**

**profundus, a, um, deep, profound.**

**prōgenit̄s, èl, f., offspring, race.**

**prōlēs, ls, f., offspring, race.**

**prō-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, promise.**

**prōnōs, a, um, bending forward, headlong.**

**proprius, a, um, one's own.**

**prōra, ae, f., prow.**

**prō-rumpō, ere, -rūpl, -ruptum, hurl forth.**

**prōrups, a, um, part. of prō-rumpō, rushing or bursting forth.**

**prospectus, ñs, m., view, outlook.**

**prō-spielō, ere, -spexl, -spectum, see, perceive, espy.**

**proximus, a, um, nearest.**

**pùbēs, ls, f., youth, young men.**

**puer, erl, m., child, boy, lad.**

**pugna, ae, f., battle, combat.**

**pulcher, ehra, chrum, fair, beautiful; goodly, noble.**

**pulsus, from pellō.**

**pulv-is, -erls, m., dust.**

**P**úniceus, a, um, *Punic, Phoenician.*

pupplis, ls, f., stern; generally, *ship, vessel.*

purpureus, a, um, *purple, red.*

Pygmalión, ónis, m., the brother of Dido.

**Q**

quāl, adv. rel., *where; indef., in any way.*

quaerō, ere, *quaesīvī (quaesī), quæsītūm, seek, search out; ask, inquire.*

quālls, e, rel., *of such sort, such us, as, like.*

quān, conj., *than.*

quaudō, conj., *since.*

quautus, a, um, rel., *as great as, as much as.*

quater, adv., *four times.*

-que, conj., enclitic, *and; -que . . . -que, both . . . and.*

queror, I, *questus sum, complain.*

qui, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that; interrog. adj., what? indef. adj., any.*

quicunque, quæcumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whatever.*

qui-ēscō, ere, ēvī, ētūm, *rest, repose.*

quiétus, a, um, *tranquil, peaceful.*

qnlū, adv., *nay even, nay more.*

qulppe, adv., *surely; ironically, forsooth.*

Quirīnus, I, m., a name of Romulus.

quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron. and adj., *who? what? n. as adv., quid, why? indef. pron., any one.*

quisquam, quæquam, quidquam or quicquam, *anyone.*

qnlquis, quidquid or quicquid, *whoever.*

quō, inter. adv., *whither, where.*

quondam, adv., *once, formerly.*

quoque, conj. or adv., *also, too.*

**R**

rabiēs, em, ē, f., *rage, fury.*

rapidus, a, um, *hurrying, swift.*

raplō, ere, *rapul, raptum, seize, carry off; hurry; rescue.*

raptō, ēre, āvī, ātūm, *drag.*

rārūs, a, um, *scattered, here and there.*

ratls, ls, f., *ship.*

recēus, eutls, *fresh.*

re-ēplō, ere, -ēpl, -ceptum, *recover, rescue.*

re-clūdō, ere, -clūsl, -clūsum, *close.*

red-dō, ere, -dīdī, -ditum, *give back, return; utter.*

redoleō, ēre, ul, *smell of, be fragrant.*

re-dūcō, ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *bring back.*

reductus, a, um, part. of redūcō, *deep, retired.*

re-dnx, dñcls, *restored, returned, returning.*

referō, referre, rettūl, relātūm, *bring back, restore; report; speak, utter.*

re-fulgō, ēre, -fūsl, *shine.*

re-fundō, ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *pour back.*

refusus, a, um, part. of refundō, *pouring forth, boiling up.*

rēgīna, ae, f., *queen; in appos. as adj., royal.*

reglō, ónis, f., *tract, region.*

rēglus, a, um, *royal, queenly.*

rēgnō, ēre, āvī, ātūm, *reign, rule.*

rēgnūm, I, n., *kingdom, realm, dominion; seat of empire, queen city.*

regō, ere, rēxī, rēctum, *rule, sway, control.*

rēliquiae, ārum, f. plur., *remnant.*

rēmigīnūt, I, n., *oarage, rowing, oars.*

re-mordeō, ēre, -morsum, *gnaw, vex, torture.*

**re-movere**, *ere*, *-mōvēt*, *-mōtum*, remove, clear away.  
**rēmus**, *I.* m., oar.  
**Remus**, *I.* m., the brother of Romulus.  
**re-pendō**, *ere*, *-pendēt*, *-pēndūm*, balance.  
**re-pet-ō**, *ere*, *-petōt* (-II), *-petūm*, search back, retrace.  
**re-pōnō**, *ere*, *-posūt*, *-postūm*, put back, restore; put in rightful place.  
**repositus**, *a.* *um*, contracted for **repositus**, part of **repōnō**, laid up, stored, buried.  
**re-quirō**, *ere*, *-quīsītōt* (III), *-quīsītūm*, seek; miss, regret.  
**rēs**, *rel.* f., thing, affair, event, state of things, fortune, power.  
**re-sidō**, *ere*, *-sēdēt*, take one's seat.  
**resupinus**, *a.* *um*, fallen backwards.  
**re-surgō**, *ere*, *-surrēxt*, *-surrētūm*, rise again.  
**re-tegō**, *ere*, *-text*, *-tectūm*, uncover, disclose, reveal.  
**revisō**, *ere*, revisit.  
**revocō**, *ere*, *-vōt*, *-ātūm*, recall; restore, renew, revive.  
**rēx**, *rēglis*, m., king, ruler.  
**Rhēsus**, *I.* m., a Thracian king, ally of Troy.  
**rīma**, *ac.* f., crack, chink, seam.  
**rīpa**, *ac.* f., bank.  
**Rōma**, *ae.* f., Rome.  
**Rōmānus**, *a.* *um*, of Rome, Roman; as subst., *u Romūn*.  
**Rōmulus**, *I.* m., the founder of Rome.  
**roseus**, *a.* *um*, rosy, roseate.  
**rota**, *ac.* f., wheel.  
**rudēns**, *eutis*, m., rope; in plur., rigging, cordage.  
**ruīna**, *ae.* f., fall, downfall, ruin.  
**ruō**, *ere*, *-rūl*, *-rūtūm*, trans., upturn, stir up, throw up; intrans., rush forth, pour forth.  
**rūpēs**, *ls.* f., rock, cliff.

**rūs**, **rūris**, *n.*, country, field.

**Rutulli**, *ōrum*, m. plur., the Rutulians, an ancient people of Latium, who opposed the settlement of Aeneas.

## S

**Sabaens**, *a.* *um*, Sabaeans, of Saba, a town in Arabia famous for its frankincense.

**sacerdōs**, *ōtis*, m. and f., priest, priestess.

**saeclūm**, *I.* n., generation; age.  
**saepe**, adv., often.

**saeplō**, *Ire*, *saepsl*, *saeptūm*, enclose, surround; gird.

**saevlō**, *Ire*, *II* (IvI), *Itūm*, rage.

**saevus**, *a.* *um*, fierce, cruel, pitiless, relentless, stern.

**sagitta**, *ae.* f., arrow.

**sāl**, *sallis*, m. and n., sall; brine; the sea, the deep.

**salūs**, *ōtis*, f., safety; relief.

**Samos**, *I.* f., an island near Asia Minor, sacred to Juno.

**sānctus**, *a.* *um*, part. of **sancitō**, sacred; august.

**sanguis**, *Imis*, m., blood; race, line.

**Sarpēdon**, *ouls*, m., king of Lycia, ally of the Trojans.

**sator**, *ōrls*, m., father.

**Saturnia**, *ae.* f., the daughter of Saturn, i.e., Juno.

**saxum**, *I.* n., rock, stone.

**scena**, *ac.* f., background; scene; loosely, stage (i.e., stage-buildings).

**scelus**, *eris*, n., crime, guill, villainy.

**scēptrum**, *I.* n., sceptre; power.

**scindō**, *ere*, *-seldēt*, *-scissūm*, split, divide.

**scintilla**, *ae.* f., spark.

**selō**, *Ire*, *IvI*, *Itūm*, know.

**scopulus**, *I.* m., crag, rock.

**scūtum**, *I.* n., shield.

**S**cylla*cus*, a, um, of *Scylla*, a sea-monster dwelling on a dangerous rock in the strait between Italy and Sicily.  
**s**cessus, *ns*, m., recess, inlet.  
**seeō**, ēre, **secūl**, **seetnū**, cut.  
**seēndus**, a, um, following; favoring, prosperous.  
**seēfrus**, a, um, free from care; heedless, regardless.  
**sed**, conj., but.  
**seēdō**, ēre, **seēt**, sessum, sit, be seated.  
**seēdēs**, *ls*, f., seat, abode, home, dwelling.  
**seēdile**, *ls*, n., seat.  
**seēdītō**, **ōnis**, f., strife, riot.  
**seēulta**, ae, f., pathway, path.  
**seēutus**, *ns*, m., senate.  
**seēul**, ae, a, six each; six.  
**seētentia**, ae, f., opinion; purpose.  
**seētītō**, ēre, **seēusl**, **seēusum**, perceive.  
**seēptem**, seren.  
**sequor**, I, **seētēns** **suu**, follow, pursue; attend; trace, recount.  
**seērēnō**, ēre, **āvl**, **ātum**, calm, clear.  
**Sergestus**, I, m., a Trojan.  
**sermō**, **ōnis**, m., talk, conversation, discourse.  
**serta**, **ōrum**, n., plur., part. of **serō**, wreaths, garlands.  
**servitium**, I, n., slavery, bondage.  
**servō**, ēre, **āvl**, **ātum**, keep, preserve; maintain, cherish.  
**seēd=sē**, from **suI**.  
**seē**, conj., see **slve**.  
**si**, conj., if, in case.  
**slc**, adv., thus, so.  
**Steu*tus***, a, um, Sicilian, of Sicily.  
**Stidōni*us***, a, um, of *Sidon*, Sidonian; loosely, Tyrian.  
**stid*us***, eris, n., star.  
**signum**, I, n., sign, token.  
**sileō**, ēre, **ui**, be silent, calm, still.  
**stlex**, tels, m. and f., fiut.

**slva**, ae, f., wood, forest.  
**stutillis**, e, like, similar.  
**Stmo-Is**, -entis, m., a river near Troy.  
**stuuil**, adv., at the same time, together.  
**stuntō**, ēre, **āvl**, **ātum**, pretend, feign.  
**stue**, prep. w. abl., without.  
**stngull**, ae, a, one each; v. plur., singula, as subst., each detail.  
**stnō**, ēre, **slv**, **sltnū**, permit, allow.  
**stnus**, *ns*, m., solid; curre; bay, inlet.  
**slve** or **seu**, conj., or if; repeated, whether—or.  
**soeins**, I, m., companion, comrade.  
**sōl**, **ōlls**, sun; sunlight.  
**sotlum**, I, n., throne.  
**sōlor**, ērl, **ātus sum**, console; mitigate.  
**solnum**, I, n., ground, land.  
**solvō**, ēre, **solvl**, **solftum**, loosen, relax; dismiss, banish.  
**sonnus**, I, m., sleep, slumber.  
**son-d**, ēre, -ul, -tum, sound, re-sound; sound like.  
**sonōrus**, a, um, sounding, roaring.  
**soror**, **ōris**, f., sister.  
**sors**, sortis, f., lot.  
**Spartānn**, a, um, Spartan.  
**spēlunca**, ae, f., cave, cavern.  
**spērnō**, ēre, **sprēvl**, **sprētum**, despise, scorn, slight.  
**spērō**, ēre, **āvl**, **ātum**, hope for.  
**spēs**, ēl, f., hope.  
**spīrō**, ēre, **āvl**, **ātum**, breathe.  
**spollum**, I, n., plunder, spoil.  
**spretus**, from **spernō**.  
**spūma**, ae, f., foam.  
**spūmō**, ēre, **āvl**, **ātum**, foam.  
**stabili**, e, enduring, lasting.  
**stāgnum**, I, n., still water.  
**sternō**, ēre, **strāvl**, **strātum**, stretch out; lay low, bring down.

**stipō, ēre, āvī, ātūm, press, pack; crowd around, attend.**  
**stō, stāre, stetī, statum, stand, stand firm.**  
**strātūm, I. n. (part. of sternō), pavement.**  
**strepitus, ūs, m., noise, din.**  
**strīdeō, ēre, and strīdō, ēre, strīdī, make a shrill or harsh sound; whistle, howl, flap, whirr, grate.**  
**strīdor, ūris, m., a shrill or harsh sound; rattling, whistling, creaking.**  
**studium, I. n., zeal; pursuit.**  
**stupeō, ēre, ūt, be astonished, be amazed.**  
**suū-deō, ēre, -sl, -suūt, urge, counsel.**  
**sub, prep. w. abl., beneath.**  
**subāetus, from subigō.**  
**sub-eō, -īre, -ll, -itum, go under; come up, enter, approach.**  
**sub-igō, ēre, -ēgl, -ītum, conquer, subdue.**  
**subitō, adv., suddenly.**  
**sublīmis, e, aloft, on high.**  
**sub-mergō, ēre, -mersl, -mersum, sink, drown, overwhelm.**  
**sub-nectō, ēre, -nexul, -nexum, bind beneath, clasp under.**  
**submīxus, a, um, supported (by), resting (on).**  
**sub-rīdeō, ēre, -rīsl, smile.**  
**sub-volvō, ēre, roll up.**  
**sue-clingō, ēre, -clīxī, clīctum, gird.**  
**suecīplō=suscipīō.**  
**suī-fundō, ēre, -fūdl, -fūsum, overspread, fill.**  
**suī, reflexive pron., 3rd pers., him-self, herself, itself, themselves; him, her, them.**  
**sulcus, I, m., furrow.**  
**sum, esse, ūt, be, exist, belong.**  
**summius, a, um (superlative of superns), highest; top of, summit of, height of; chief, main, supreme.**

**super, adv., above; further, besides; prep. w. acc., above, upon, beyond.**  
**superbus, a, um, haughty, arrogant; exultant, flushed; fierce.**  
**super-ēmīneō, ēre, tower above.**  
**superō, ēre, āvī, ātūm, surmount; pass beyond, pass; overcome; overpower.**  
**super-sum, -esse, -ſūl, be left, remain, survive.**  
**superus, a, um, upper; m. plur. as subst., superl, ūrum, the gods above.**  
**supplex, ūcis, suppliant.**  
**suppliciter, adv., as suppliants, in suppliant guise.**  
**sūra, ae, f., calf; leg, ankle.**  
**surgō, ēre, surrēxl, surrēctum, rise.**  
**sus-ēplō, ēre, -ēpl, -ēptum, lake up, catch.**  
**sus-pendō, ēre, -pendl, -pēnsum, hang, suspend.**  
**su-spīelō, ēre, -spexl, -spectum, look up at, regard.**  
**suspirō, ēre, āvī, ātūm, sigh.**  
**sūns, a, um, one's own.**  
**Syphæus, I, m., the husband of Dido.**  
**syrtis, ls, f., shoal, quicksand.**

## T

**tābeō, ēre, drip.**  
**tabula, ae, f., plank.**  
**tāctus, a, um, silent.**  
**tālls, e, such, of such a kind, such as this, like this.**  
**tamen, conj., yet, still.**  
**tandem, adv., pray, I pray, pri-thee.**  
**tangō, ēre, tetīgl, tāctum, touch.**  
**tantus, a, um so great, so much, such.**  
**taurīnus, a, um, of a bull, a bull's.**  
**tectum, I, n., roof; dwelling, home.**  
**tegmen, mīnis, n., covering; skin.**

**tellūs, ūrls, f., land.**  
**tēlūm, I, n., weapon; spear.**  
**temperō, ēre, āvl, ātum, calm; soothe, appease.**  
**tempēstās, tātis, f., storm, tempest.**  
**tempīlūm, I, n., temple, shrine.**  
**tempus, orls, n., time, period.**  
**tendō, ēre, tetendī, tentum and tēnsum, stretch, extend; w. gressum, or intrans., bend one's steps, take one's way, press on; strive, aim.**  
**teneō, ēre, tennī, tentum, hold; possess, occupy, inhabit; keep, hold fast, cling to.**  
**tentōlūm, I, n., tent.**  
**ter, adv., thīree, three times.**  
**tergum, I, n., back; hide, skin; à tergō, behind.**  
**tergus, orls, n., back; skin, hide.**  
**terminō, ēre, āvl, ātum, bound, limit.**  
**ternī, ae, a, three each; three.**  
**terra, ae, f., earth, land, ground.**  
**terreō, ēre, nī, itum, terrify.**  
**tertius, a, um, third.**  
**testīdō, līls, f., a tortoise-shell; vault, vaulted roof.**  
**Tēucer, erl, m., the first king of Troy.**  
**Teucerī, ὥρα, in vñr., the descendants of Teucer, the Trojans.**  
**theātrum, I, n., theatre.**  
**thēsaurūs, I, m., treasure, hoard.**  
**Thrēlssa, ae, f., adj., Thracian.**  
**thymum, I, n., thyme.**  
**Tiberīnus, a, um, of the Tiber.**  
**Timāvus, I, m., a river of Italy, flowing into the upper Adriatic.**  
**timor, ūrls, m., fear.**  
**togātus, a, um, wearing the toga.**  
**tollō, ēre, sustīll, sublātum, raise.**  
**torqneō, ēre, torst, tortum, whirl; hurl, fling.**  
**torreō, ēre, nī, testum, parch, roast.**

**tot, indec. i., so many.**  
**totlēus, adv., so often.**  
**tōtus, a, um, all, the whole.**  
**trabs (trabēs), trabis, f., beam.**  
**trahō, ēre, trāxi, trāctum, draw, drag.**  
**trā-jelō, ēre, -jēct, -jectum, pierce.**  
**trāns-eō, -ire, -ivl (-II), -itum, pass.**  
**trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tūll, -fētēm, transfer, remove.**  
**trāns-fligō, ēre, -flxi, -flxum, pierce.**  
**tremō, ēre, -nl, tremble, quiver.**  
**trēs, tria, three.**  
**tridēns, entls, m., trident.**  
**trigintā, indecl., thirty.**  
**Trīnaerīus, a, um, Sicilian.**  
**tristis, e, sad, sorrowful.**  
**Tritōn, ūrls, m., a sea-god.**  
**Trōllus, I, m., a son of Priam.**  
**Trōja, ae, f., Troy.**  
**Trōjānns, a, um, Trojan, of Troy.**  
**Trōlus, a, um, Trojan.**  
**Trōs, ūrls, m., a Trojan.**  
**tu, pron., thou, you.**  
**tūn, adv., then, at that time; now; thereupon; next.**  
**tūnīldus, a, um, swollen.**  
**tundō, ēre, tutudī, tūnsum or tūsnum, beat.**  
**turba, ae, f., throng, confused crowd.**  
**turbō, ēre, āvl, ātum, drive in confusion.**  
**turbō, līls, m., whirlwind, hurricane.**  
**tūs, ūrls, n., incense.**  
**tūtus, a, um, part. of tneor, safe, sheltered; n. as subst., safety, a place of safety.**  
**tūns, a, um, thy, thine.**  
**Tydiidēs, ae, m., son of Tydeus, Diomedē.**  
**tyrannus, I, m., tyrant.**

**Tyrius**, a, **um**, *Tyrian, of Tyre; Carthaginian, m., as subst.; Tyrīl, ὄρη, m. plur., the Tyrians.*

**Tyrrhēnus**, a, **um**, *Tyrrhenian, Etruscan.*

**Tyrus**, I, f., *Tyre, a city of Phoenicia.*

## U

**ubl**, rel. adv., *where, when, as soon as.*

**ūllus**, a, **um**, *any; anyone.*

**umbra**, ae, f., *shade, shadow.*

**ūmectō**, āre, **āvI**, **ātum**, *wet, bedew.*

**umerus**, I, m., *shoulder.*

**ūnā**, adv., *together.*

**ūncus**, a, **um**, *hooked, crooked.*

**ūnda**, ae, f., *wave, billow, sea.*

**unde**, adv., *whence, from whom.*

**ūnus**, a, **um**, *one; a single; alone.*

**urbs**, is, f., *city.*

**ūrgneō** or **ūrgeō**, āre, **ūrl**, *drive, force.*

**ut** or **utl**, adv., *how, as; just as; when; conj., w. subj., that, in order that.*

**utor**, I, **ūsūs suni**, *use, make use of.*

## V

**vacō**, āre, **āvI**, **ātum**, *be free; impers., there is time or leisure.*

**vadum**, I, n., *shoal; bottom of the sea, the depths.*

**vallidns**, a, **um**, *stout, strong.*

**vallis** (**vallis**), is, f., *valley, vale.*

**vānus**, a, **um**, *empty; idle, vain; false.*

**varius**, a, **um**, *various, changing.*

**vāstō**, āre, **āvI**, **ātum**, *lay waste, devastate, make desolate, ravage.*

**vāstus**, a, **um**, *vast, huge, enormous; mighty.*

**-ve**, enclitic conj., or.

**vehō**, ēre, **vexl**, **vectum**, *bear, carry.*

**vel**, conj., or.

**vēlvolns**, a, **um**, *sail-winged, studded with sails.*

**vēlm**, I, n., *sail; canvas.*

**velut**, **veintl**, adv., *just as, as, as if.*

**vēnātrix**, Icis, f., *huntress.*

**vēn-dō**, ēre, -dīdī, -dītm̄, *sell.*

**vēntō**, Irc, **vēnl**, **vēntum**, *come.*

**vēntus**, I, m., *wind.*

**Venus**, eris, f., *the goddess of love and beauty, mother of Aeneas.*

**vērō**, adv., *in truth, truly.*

**vērrō**, ēre, **verrl**, **versum**, *sweep.*

**vertex**, Icis, m., *whirlpool, eddy; crown, head; crest, top, height.*

**ver-tō**, ēre, -tl, **sum**, *turn; reverse, change, shift; overturn, overthrow; in pass., turn.*

**verū**, ūs, n., *spit.*

**vērus**, a, **um**, *true, genuine.*

**vesper**, eris and erl, m., *the evening star.*

**Vesta**, ae, f., *the goddess of the hearth and household.*

**vester**, tra, **trum**, *your.*

**vestis**, is, f., *raiment, robe.*

**vet-dō**, āre, -tl, -tum, *forbid.*

**vetus**, eris, old, *ancient.*

**via**, ae, f., *way, street; journey.*

**vīel**, from **vīneō**.

**vīctor**, ὄrls, m., *victor, conqueror; as adj., victorious, triumphant.*

**vīctus**, ūs, m., *food, substance.*

**vīctus**, from **vīneō**.

**vīdeo**, ēre, **vīdl**, **vīsum**, *see; perceive; in pass., seem.*

**vīuelō**, Irc, **vīnxl**, **vīnetum**, *bind.*

**vīueō**, ēre, **vīel**, **vīctum**, *conquer, overcome, defeat.*

**vīnenum** (**vīactum**), I, n., *bond, fetter.*

**vīnum**, I, n., *wine.*

**vīr**, I, m., *man; hero.*

**vīrēs**, from **vīs**.

**virgō, Iūls,** f., maiden, virgin.  
**vis (vīs),** f., strength, power, might; violence, fury.  
**vīscus, eris,** n. (generally in plur.), the vital parts; flesh.  
**vīslī,** from vīdeō.  
**vītūlīs, e,** of life.  
**vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctum,** live, be alive.  
**vīvus,** a., um, living; natural, native.  
**vīx,** adv., hardly, scarcely.  
**vocō, ēre, āvī, ātum,** call, summon; call upon, invoke.  
**vōlō, velle,** volūl, will, ordain.  
**vōlō, ēre, āvī, ātum,** fly, speed.  
**vōlūcer, eris, ēre,** winged, swift.  
**vōlūtō, ēre, āvī, ātum,** revolve; ponder.  
**vōlō, ēre, vōlvī, vōlūtum,** roll; roll up, send rolling; unroll; roll round, roll on; revolve, ponder.

**vōrō, ēre, āvī, ātum,** swallow up; engulf.  
**vōtum,** I, n., vow, prayer.  
**vōx, vōcls,** f., voice, word, speech, accent.  
**vōlgō, ēre, āvī, ātum,** spread abroad.  
**vulgus,** I, m. and n., the common people, common herd; mob.  
**vulnus, eris,** n., wound.  
**vultus, os,** m., countenance, face; aspect, look.

## X

**Xanthus,** I, m., a river near Troy.

## Z

**Zephyrus,** I, m., the west wind.

## INDEX.

(The references are to the sections of the Syntax and Composition,  
beginning on page 169).

Ablative absolute, 45-50; 104.  
Ablative case, various uses of, 92-108; 45-50; 54, 55.  
Accompaniment, ablative of, 103.  
Accusative and infinitive construction, 14-18.  
Accusative case, various uses of, 69-75.  
Adjectives, used as substantives, 205, *g*; used as adverbs, 205, *h*; used in a partitive sense, 86, iv, *b*; genitive with, 90; dative with, 78, ii.; ablative with, 107, iii.  
Adverbial accusative, 72, *i*.  
Agent, ablative of, 97; dative of, 80, *d*; the secondary agent, 99, i.  
Agreement, forms of, 10-13.  
**aliquis**, use of, 167, *a*.  
**alius**, use of, 168, *a*.  
**alter**, use of, 168, *b*.  
Antecedent, peculiarities of, 173; agreement of pronoun with, 13.  
Apposition, 10.  
Arrangement of words and clauses, 1-9.  
Causal clauses, 145-148, 171.  
Cause, ablative of, 96.  
Characteristic, relative clause of, 32.  
Cognate accusative, 72.  
Commands, how expressed, 132.  
Comparison, ablative of, 98; expressed by *quam*, 98, iii.; conditional clauses of, 68.  
Complementary infinitive, 19-22.  
Compound verbs, dative with, 78, v. *c*.  
Concessive clauses, 65, 66; 171.  
Concords, 10-13.  
Conditional sentences, 58-64; in indirect discourse, 192; conditional clauses of comparison, 68.  
Connective of thought, how expressed, 3, *b*; 202.  
Consecutive clauses, 29-33.  
Coordinating relative, 172; 205, *k*.  
**cum** (conjunction), uses of, 148-151.  
Dative case, various uses of, 76-81; 52, 55.  
**dēbet**, use of, 140, *b*.  
Definition, genitive of, 89.  
Deliberative questions, 134, *d*.  
Demonstrative pronouns, uses of, 158-163.  
Dependent questions, 35-37; dependent clauses in indirect discourse, 175, 176; 186, 187.  
Desire, subjunctive of, 135.  
Difference, ablative of measure of, 101.  
Disjunctive questions, 38.  
Distance, accusative of, 128; ablative of, 101, *i*.  
**dum**, uses of, 67; 153-155.  
Duration of time, 129.  
Duty, how expressed, 140.  
Ethical dative, 80, *c*.  
Exclamations, accusative in, 74.  
**Fearing**, construction with verbs of, 138.  
Final clauses, 23-28.  
**fore ut**, periphrasis with, 33, iv.  
Frequentative clauses, tenses in, 149.  
Future infinitive, with verbs of *hoping, promising*, etc., 17.  
Future participle, 122, 128.  
Future perfect tense, uses of, 184.  
Future tense, uses of, 181.

Genitive Case, various uses of, 82-91; 53, 55.  
 Gerund, uses of, 113, 114.  
 Gerundive, uses of, 118-121.  
**Hic**, use of, 158.  
**Hindering**, verbs of, 139.  
 Historical infinitive, 112.  
 Historical present, 179, c.  
 Hortatory subjunctive, 134, a.  
**Idem**, followed by *qui* or *ac*, 174; use of, 162.  
 Idiom, differences between English and Latin, 203; 205.  
**Illi**, use of, 160.  
 Imperative mood, use of, 132, 133; in indirect discourse, 186, 1, c.  
 Imperfect tense, uses of, 180.  
 Impersonal passive, 56, 57.  
 Indefinite pronouns, uses of, 166-169.  
 Indirect discourse, 185-193; principal clauses put in, 186, 1; subordinate clauses in, 175; 186, 2; virtual, 177; tenses in, 187; pronouns in, 188; adverbs in, 189; real or apparent exceptions to rules of, 175, i.; 190; conditional sentences in, 192.  
 Indirect object, 77, 78.  
 Indirect questions, 35-39.  
 Infinitive, uses of, 109-112; 14-18; 19-22; 195.  
**Inquam (Inquit)**, use of, 18, vi.; 4, g.  
 Instrumental ablative, 92; 99.  
**Interest**, construction with, 53, b.  
 Interest, dative of, 79, 80.  
 Interrogative particles, *-ne*, *nōnne*, *num*, 31, i., 35, i., 39, iv.; *utrum*; *an*, 38, 39, ii.; *annōn*, *necone*, 39, i.  
 Intransitive verbs, corresponding to English transitive verbs, 51-55; used impersonally in the passive, 56-57.  
**Ipse**, use of, 163.  
**Is**, use of, 159.  
**Iste**, use of, 161.  
**Jussive** subjunctive, 134, b.  
**Meet**, use of, 143.  
 Limit of motion, accusative of, 125.  
 Locative ablative, 92; 127.  
 Manner, ablative of, 103.  
 Means, ablative of, 99.  
 Motion, limit of, 125; motion *from*, 126.  
 Necessity, how expressed, 141.  
**n̄e**ve, and **n̄en**, 28, ii.  
**nōn (nōlīte)**, with infinitive, to express prohibitions, 133.  
 Nonn clauses, different forms of, 194-199.  
 Object, direct, 69; indirect, 77, 78.  
 Objective genitive, 85; 90.  
**oportet**, use of, 140, b.  
 Optative use of subjunctive, 135.  
**Orātiō obliqua**, see Indirect discourse.  
 Order of words, 1-4; of clauses, 5-9; 204.  
 Participial phrases, value of, 43, 47.  
 Participles, use of, 40-44; 45-50; 118-123; with force of substantives, 205, g; for abstract noun, 205, i.  
 Partitivo genitive, 86.  
 Passive voice, impersonal 56, 57; with reflexive or middle force, 69, vii.; 164, iv.  
 Perfect tense, uses of, 182.  
 Periodic structure, 9; 204.  
 Periphrastic conjugations, 120, 123.  
 Permission, how expressed, 143.  
 Personal pronouns, use of, 157.  
 Place, *from which*, 126; *in which*, 127; *to which*, 125.  
 Pluperfect tense, uses of, 183.  
 Possessive genitive, 83.  
 Possessive pronouns (adjectives), use of, 165.  
 Possessor, dative of, 80, c.  
**possūm**, use of, 142.  
 Potential subjunctive, 136.

Prepositions, with accusative, 70; with ablative, 108; construction with verbs compounded with prepositions, 78, v.

Present tense, uses of, 179.

Price, genitive of, 88; ablative of, 100.

Primary tenses, 25; primary sequence, 25; 176; 187; 190, vi.

Prohibitions, how expressed, 133.

Proviso, clauses of, 67.

Purpose, various ways of expressing, 124; dative of, 81.

Quality, genitive of, 87; ablative of, 105.

**quam**, with superlative, 174, i.; after comparatives, 98, iii.

Questions, direct and indirect, 34-39; in indirect discourse, 186, 1, b; deliberative questions, 134, d; rhetorical questions, page 248, fn. 2.

**qui**, see Relative Pronoun.

**quidam**, use of, 167, e.

**quidam**, with words of *doubting, preferring, etc.*, 139; in relative clauses of characteristic, 33, ii.

**quis**, indefinite, use of, 166, a.

**quisquam**, use of, 166, b.

**quisque**, use of, 169, a.

**quibus**, use of, 166, c.

**quod**, with clauses of purpose, 28, iii.

**quod**, causal, 145-147; introducing noun clauses, 198.

**quominus**, use of, 139.

Reference, dative of, 80, b.

**refert**, construction with, 53, b.

Reflexive pronoun, use of, 16, a; 164.

Relative clauses, ordinary, 170-174; of purpose, 26; of characteristic, 32; causal, 171; concessive, 171.

Relative pronouns, use of, 170-174.

Result, clauses of, 29-33.

**se**, use and reference of, 16, a; 164.

Secondary tenses, 25; secondary sequence, 25, 176, 187; 190, vi.

Separation, ablative of, 93; dative with verbs of, 80, a.

Sequence of tenses, 25, 176, 187, 190, vi.

**Should**, different values and ways of translating, 144.

Source, ablative of, 95.

Space, accusative of extent of, 128.

Specification, accusative of, 73; ablative of, 102.

Structure of sentences in Latin, 1-9; 204.

Subjective genitive, 84.

Subjunctive mood, in principal clauses, 134-136; in clauses of purpose, 24-27; of result, 29-32; in dependent questions, 35; in conditional clauses, 61, 63; in concessive clauses, 65; in conditional clauses of comparison, 68; with verbs of *fearing*, 138; with *quin* and *quoniam*, 139; with *quod*, 147; with *cum*, 148, 151; with *dum, donec, quoad*, 67; 155; with *antequam* and *priusquam*, 158; with *qui*, 28; 32; 171; in indirect discourse, 175; 188; of virtual indirect discourse, 177; by attraction, 177, i.

Substantival use of infinitive, 109-111.

Substantival clauses, 27; 31; 194-199.

Supine, uses of, 115-117.

Temporal clauses, 149-156.

Tenses of the indicative, 178-184; of the infinitive, 15; 110, ii.; of participles, 41; 122; in indirect discourse, 187; of the subjunctive, 25; 30; 33, iii; 36; 61; 63.

Time, duration of, 129; time *when*, 130; time *within which*, 131.

Translation, idiomatic, 201-205.

**tutus**, use of, 166, b.

**uterque**, use of, 169, b.

**utinam**, use of, 135.

**utrum...an**, 38.

Value, genitive of, 88; ablative of, 100.

Volitive subjunctive, 134.

Wish, how expressed, 135.

**would**, different values and ways of translating, 137.

becoming more & more  
more & more

8pm

the more & more

more & more

more & more minutes are  
time — because  
etc.

more & more time

more & more

Syl. used to all documents,  
and preceding that can be  
preceded with it

may be short or long  
it may make it natural and  
it makes it long always

Democracy -

democracy -

I want to put myself over  
but I am not able to do it.

to do it.

if democracy - we  
will be more democratic-  
and able to do it.

Little changes or alterations

people making up a country

Democracy and I would very like  
make changes - important for  
democracy -

Hurry off short say -

not say changes long -

normal before and short - sometimes  
twice - final word preceding  
initial word - & ends of so  
also no final -

Var - 1 - 32

20 - 31

12 - 10 9

20 - 10 15

17 - 10 1

20 - 2 9

12 - 4 3

11 - 4 1

15 - 4 3

10 - 10

~~unpublished~~ - 1919 - 20 - 38 - 23

1919 - 20 - 38 - 23

Caesar IV, 20 - 38

IV, 1 - 23

